

CSI Technical Specifications

NEW CONSTRUCTION FOR

Hangar 10 Reconstruction

Orange County Great Park
Irvine, CA 92618

Prepared by

Gensler

4675 MacArthur Court, Suite 100
Newport Beach, CA
949.863.9434

Bid Addendum 02

May 28, 2026

Project Number 07.3945.000

SPECIFICATIONS GROUP

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS SUBGROUP

DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS

<i>Section.No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
00 10 00	Table of Contents

DIVISION 01 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

<i>Section.No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
01 10 00	Summary
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 26 00	Contract Modification Procedures
01 26 13	Requests for Interpretation (RFIs)
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 74 19	Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
01 81 19	Indoor Air Quality Management
01 81 23	Cal Green Requirements
01 91 13	General Commissioning Requirements

FACILITY CONSTRUCTION SUBGROUP

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS (Not Applicable)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
-------------	--------------------	--------------

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	03 10 00	Concrete Formwork
	03 20 00	Concrete Reinforcing
	03 30 00	Cast in Place Concrete

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY (Not Applicable)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
-------------	--------------------	--------------

DIVISION 05 – METALS

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	05 12 00	Structural Steel Framing
	05 50 00	Metal Fabrications

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
	06 10 53	Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry
	06 16 00	Sheathing
	06 17 33	Wood I Joists
	06 64 00	Plastic Paneling

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	07 21 00	Thermal Insulation
	07 26 16	Under Slab on Grade Vapor Retarders
	07 27 26	Fluid Applied Membrane Air Barriers
	07 42 13.13	Formed Metal Wall Panels
	07 42 13.16	Metal Plate Wall Panels
	07 46 46	Fiber Cement Siding
	07 52 16	Styrene Butadiene Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Roofing
	07 54 19	Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Roofing
	07 62 00	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
	07 72 00	Roof Accessories
	07 92 00	Joint Sealants

DIVISION 08 – OPENINGS

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	08 11 13	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
	08 31 13	Access Doors and Frames
	08 36 13	Sectional Doors
	08 41 13	Aluminum Framed Entrances and Storefronts
	08 41 26	All Glass Entrances and Storefronts
	08 71 00	Door Hardware
	08 80 00	Glazing
	08 83 00	Mirrors

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	09 24 00	Cement Plastering
	09 29 00	Gypsum Board
	09 30 13	Ceramic Tiling
	09 72 00	Wall Coverings
	09 91 13	Exterior Painting
	09 91 23	Interior Painting
	09 96 00.13	Exterior High Performance Coatings

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	10 14 16	Plaques
	10 21 13.13	Metal Toilet Compartments
	10 28 00	Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories
	10 44 13	Fire Protection Cabinets
	10 44 16	Fire Extinguishers

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT (Not Applicable)

Date *Section No.* *Title*

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

Date *Section No.* *Title*
12 36 61.16 Solid Surfacing Countertops.....

DIVISIONS 13 through 19 (Not Applicable)

FACILITY SERVICES SUBGROUP

DIVISION 21 - (Not Applicable)

Date *Section No.* *Title*

DIVISION 22

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	22 05 17	Sleeves And Sleeve Seals For Plumbing Piping
	22 05 18	Escutcheon for Plumbing Piping
	22 05 19	Meters And Gauges For Plumbing
	22 05 23	General Duty Valves For Plumbing
	22 05 29	Hangers And Supports For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
	22 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Plumbing Piping
	22 05 53	Identification For Plumbing Piping And Equipment
	22 07 19	Plumbing Piping Insulation
	22 11 16	Domestic Water Piping
	22 11 19	Domestic Water Piping Specialties
	22 13 16	Sanitary Waste And Vent Piping
	22 13 19	Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties
	22 13 23	Sanitary Waste Interceptors
	22 33 00	Electric, Domestic-Water Heaters
	22 42 13.13	Commercial Water Closets
	22 42 13.16	Commercial Urinals
	22 42 16.13	Commercial Lavatories
	22 47 16	Pressure Water Coolers

DIVISION 23

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	23 05 17	Sleeves And Sleeve Seals For Hvac Piping
	23 05 29	Hangers And Supports For Hvac
	23 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Control For Hvac
	23 05 53	Identification For Hvac Piping And Equipment
	23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting And Balancing For Hvac
	23 07 13	Duct Insulation
	23 07 19	Hvac Piping Insulation
	23 09 00	Building Automation And Control Systems
	23 09 80	Mechanical Commissioning
	23 11 23	Facility Natural Gas Piping
	23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping
	23 31 13	Metal Ducts
	23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories

23 34 23	HVAC Power Ventilators
23 35 33	Listed Kitchen Ventilators
23 36 00	Air Terminal Units
23 37 13	Diffusers, Registers And Grilles
23 81 26	Split System Air Conditioners

DIVISION 24 - (Not Applicable)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
-------------	--------------------	--------------

DIVISION 26

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
	26 00 10	Supplemental Requirements for Electrical
	26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors And Cables
	26 05 26	Grounding And Bonding For Electrical Systems
	26 05 29	Hangers And Supports For Electrical Systems
	26 05 33	Raceways And Boxes For Electrical Systems
	26 05 33.13	Conduits for Electrical Systems
	26 05 43	Underground Ducts And Raceways
	26 05 44	Sleeves And Sleeve Seals For Electrical Raceways And Cabling
	26 05 48	Vibration And Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems
	26 05 53	Identification For Electrical Systems
	26 05 72	Overcurrent Protective Device Short Circuit Study Overcurrent
	26 05 73	Protective Device Coordination Study Commissioning of
	26 08 00	Electrical Systems
	26 09 23	Lighting Control Devices
	26 09 43	Network Lighting Controls
	26 23 00	Low-Voltage Switchgear
	26 24 16	Panelboards
	26 27 13	Electricity Metering
	26 27 26	Wiring Devices
	26 28 13	Fuses
	26 43 13	Surge Protection for Low Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
	26 51 00	Interior Lighting
	26 52 13	Emergency and Exit Lighting
	26 56 00	Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27 through 33 - (Not Applicable)

<i>Date</i>	<i>Section No.</i>	<i>Title</i>
-------------	--------------------	--------------

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 01 10 00 - SUMMARY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Project information.
2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
3. Phased construction.
4. Work by Owner.
5. Work under separate contracts.
6. Future work.
7. Purchase contracts.
8. Owner-furnished, Contractor-installed products.
9. Contractor-furnished, Owner-installed products.
10. Customer's own materials
11. Specification and drawing conventions.
12. Miscellaneous provisions.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all.
- B. Conflicts or discrepancies among the Contract Documents shall be resolved in the following order of priority:
1. Contract modifications (such as Change Orders and Bulletins) of later date take precedence over those of earlier date;
 2. the Agreement;
 3. Addenda of later date take precedence over those of earlier date;
 4. the Supplementary Conditions;
 5. The General Conditions;
 6. Drawings and Specifications; Drawings govern Specifications for quantity and location. Specifications govern Drawings for quality and performance. In the event of ambiguity or conflicts, the greater quantity and the better quality shall govern.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Hangar 10.

1. Project Location: Hangar 10, Great Park, , Irvine, CA 92618 .
 - B. Owner: City of Irvine.
 1. Owner's Representative: DJ Kelly (david.kelly@psomas.com).
 - C. Architect: Gensler, 4675 MacArthur Court Suite 100, Newport Beach, CA 92660.
- 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of Construction of single story 9571 square foot multi-tenant commercial shell building consisting of switchgear, public restrooms, HVAC units and standard lighting. Building has been designed as a risk category III.
 1. The Work includes: architectural, structural,plumbing, fire protection, HVAC and electrical, .
 - B. Type of Contract:
 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.
- 1.5 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS
- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
 - B. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.
 - 2. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific requirements and limitations for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
 - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
 - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of "Substitution Request" form provided in Document 00 60 00 "Forms."
 - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.

- c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES and local regulations.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Bulletin for minor changes in the Work.
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately upon discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Requested substitution provides sustainable design characteristics that specified product provided .
 - c. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - d. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - e. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - f. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - h. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - i. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect may issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on "Bulletin" form included in Document 00 60 00 "Forms."

1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Work Changes Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on Gensler "Change Order" form included in Document 00 60 00 "Forms."

1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

- C. All Construction Change Documents shall be signed by the Architect or Engineer of Record, Structural Engineer (when applicable), delegated professional engineer (when applicable).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 26 13 - REQUESTS FOR INTERPRETATION (RFI)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Requests for Interpretation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Requests for Interpretation (RFI): Contractor initiated written instrument related to the execution of the Work that is addressed to the Architect. The RFI shall be used by the Contractor as the means to ask questions related to the Work; subject to the conditions contained within this Section.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Requests for Interpretation: Include a detailed, legible description of an item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 - 1. Project name.
 - 2. Project number.
 - 3. Date.
 - 4. Name of Contractor.
 - 5. Name of Architect.
 - 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 - 7. RFI subject.
 - 8. Reference to appropriate documents:
 - a. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs.
 - b. Drawing number and detail references.
 - c. Schedule.
 - d. Bulletin number.
 - e. Other Contract Documents, if any.
 - 9. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 - 10. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.

11. Contractor's signature.
12. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
13. Attachments shall be electronic files in Adobe Acrobat PDF format.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFI organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Use software log that is part of Project Web site.
 1. Project name.
 2. Name and address of Contractor.
 3. Name and address of Architect.
 4. RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
 5. RFI description.
 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
 7. Date Architect's response was received.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Authorship: Prior to the commencement of the RFI process, designate a full time "RFI Manager" whose duties shall include the responsibility for enforcing the Request for Interpretation provisions of this Section, to maintain an up-to-date log of all RFI, advise the Architect, in writing, of the status and disposition of all RFI at the progress meetings, and be a member of the Contractor's staff. The RFI Manager shall be experienced in administration and supervision of the type of Work indicated on the Contract Documents.
 1. RFI Manager may be the Contractor's Job Superintendent.
 2. Each RFI shall originate solely from the RFI Manager. An RFI submitted to the Architect by an entity, or individual, other than the RFI Manager shall be returned to the Contractor.

1.7 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Processing Time: Allow five working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFI received by Architect after 3:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following business day.
 1. Allow additional time if coordination with other work is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a RFI being processed must be delayed for coordination.

2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
 - B. Architect's action on RFI that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Proposal Request according to Section 01 26 00 "Contract Modification Procedures."
 1. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
 - C. Frivolous RFI:
 1. RFI shall not be used for the following:
 - a. Request for approval of submittals.
 - b. Request approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
 - d. Request for adjustment in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - f. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents, or to transfer coordination responsibility from the Contractor to the Owner or Architect.
 - g. Incomplete RFI or inaccurately prepared RFI.
 2. The Owner reserves the right to assess the Contractor for the cost (based on time and materials) of a RFI response performed by the Architect, and any of its consultants, which is deemed by the Owner and the Architect as being frivolous or unnecessary.
 3. Frivolous RFI shall be removed from the RFI log.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of RFI with performance of construction activities.
 1. Submit RFI with such promptness as to cause no delays in the Work. No adjustments of Contract Time or Contract Sum will be granted because of failure to have an RFI submitted with sufficient time to allow for the orderly processing of a response by the Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S ACTION

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
- B. Prior to submission of the RFI, coordinate the nature of the inquiry with the requirements of other Sections or trades as related thereto and responses to previous RFI.
- C. Complete each blank on the RFI form.
- D. In preparing each RFI, verify the applicable dimension(s), field conditions, Drawing requirements (small through large scale details), and/or Specification Section requirements pertaining thereto.
- E. Each RFI shall be reviewed, and signed by the RFI Manager prior to transmitting to the Architect .
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond.
 - 1. Frivolous RFI will be returned without action.
- B. RFI which fail to conform to requirements, (for example, is incomplete or contain numerous errors) shall be returned to the Contractor without a response. No adjustments for Contract Time or Contract Sum shall be granted for an RFI failing to conform to requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. General project coordination procedures.
 - 2. Conservation.
 - 3. Coordination Drawings.
 - 4. Project Web site.
 - 5. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
 - 6. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility will be assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Sections: The following Sections contain requirements that relate to this Section:
 - 1. Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting the Contractor's Construction Schedule.
 - 2. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
 - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating Contract closeout.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Prepare Coordination Drawings if limited space availability necessitates maximum utilization of space for efficient installation of different components or if coordination is required for installation of products and materials fabricated by separate entities or as specified in individual Sections.
 - 1. Indicate relationship of components shown on separate Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - 3. Refer to Divisions in the Facility Services Subgroup for specific Coordination Drawing requirements for mechanical and electrical installations.

- B. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A in Document 00 60 00 "Forms." Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- C. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, on Project Web site, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.4 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in various Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
 4. Arrange pipes, ducts, conduits, and other overhead systems in an orderly manner when indicated to remain exposed.
- B. If necessary, prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities and activities of other contractors to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's Construction Schedule.

2. Preparation of the Schedule of Values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Preinstallation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
- D. Conservation: Coordinate construction activities to ensure that operations are carried out with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - e. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.

2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches in diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
 8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.

2. File Preparation Format: DWG, Version AutoCAD 2010 or later, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using Portable Data File (PDF) format.
4. BIM File Incorporation: coordination drawing files into Building Information Model established for Project.
 - a. Perform three-dimensional component conflict analysis as part of preparation of coordination drawings. Resolve component conflicts prior to submittal. Indicate where conflict resolution requires modification of design requirements by Architect.
5. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of Drawings for use in preparing coordination digital data files.
 - a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to Drawings.
 - b. Digital Data Software Program: Drawings are available in Revit 2020 Format, AutoCAD 2018.
 - c. Digital data files will be provided in the software and format that is used to prepare the Contract Documents. Translations to different programs or modifications to the drawing setup will be the responsibility of the Contractor.
 - d. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement form acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1.6 PROJECT WEB SITE

- A. Use Construction Manager's Provide, administer, and use Project Web site for purposes of hosting and managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion. Project Web site shall include the following functions:
 1. Project directory.
 2. Meeting minutes.
 3. Contract modifications forms and logs.
 4. RFI forms and logs.
 5. Photo documentation.
 6. Submittals forms and logs.
 7. Payment application forms.
 8. Drawing and specification document hosting, viewing, and updating.
 9. Archiving functions.
- B. Provide up to seven Project Web site user licenses for use of the Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants. Provide eight hours of software training at Architect's office for Project Web site users.
- C. On completion of Project, provide one complete archive copy(ies) of Project Web site files to Owner and to Architect in a digital storage format acceptable to Architect.

- D. Provide one of the following Project Web site software packages under their current published licensing agreements:
- E. Contractor, subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Project Web site shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement acceptable to Owner and Architect.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
 - 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 - 3. Minutes: Record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
 - 4. Notification: Inform participants three days prior to meetings not regularly scheduled.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Construction Manager will schedule and conduct Schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 10 days after execution of the Agreement.
 - 1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; manufacturers; suppliers; testing laboratory representatives; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Requirements in individual Specification Sections for preconstruction responsibilities.
 - b. Tentative construction schedule.
 - c. Project coordination
 - d. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - f. Lines of communication.
 - g. Procedures for processing Requests for Interpretation (RFIs.)
 - h. Procedures for processing Bulletins.
 - i. Procedures for processing submittals.
 - j. Procedures for processing substitution requests.

- k. Procedures for processing field decisions, proposal requests and Change Orders.
 - l. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - m. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - n. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - o. LEED requirements Sustainable design requirements.
 - p. Preparation of Record Documents.
 - q. Use of the premises and existing building.
 - r. Work restrictions.
 - s. Working hours.
 - t. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - u. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - v. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - w. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - x. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - y. Office, work, and storage areas.
 - z. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - aa. First aid.
 - bb. Security.
 - cc. Progress cleaning.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
- 1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect Construction Manager of scheduled meeting dates.
 - 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFI.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. LEED requirements Sustainable design requirements.
 - i. Review of mockups.
 - j. Possible conflicts.
 - k. Compatibility requirements.
 - l. Time schedules.
 - m. Weather limitations.
 - n. Manufacturer's written instructions.
 - o. Warranty requirements.

- p. Compatibility of materials.
 - q. Acceptability of substrates.
 - r. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - s. Space and access limitations.
 - t. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - u. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - v. Installation procedures.
 - w. Coordination with other work.
 - x. Required performance results.
 - y. Protection of adjacent work.
 - z. Protection of construction and personnel.
- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 - 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 - 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct Construction Manager will schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
- 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of record documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
 - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
 - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
 - j. Submittal procedures for closeout documents.
 - k. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - l. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - m. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - n. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.

- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct Construction Manager will conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.
1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Status of sustainable design documentation.
 - 6) Deliveries.
 - 7) Off-site fabrication.
 - 8) Access.
 - 9) Site utilization.
 - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 11) Work hours.
 - 12) Hazards and risks.
 - 13) Progress cleaning.
 - 14) Quality and work standards.
 - 15) Pending changes
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
 - 19) Testing and inspection requirements.
 - 20) Status of Request for Information.
 - 21) Other business relating to the Work.

4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to parties who should have been present. Include a brief summary, in narrative form, of progress since the previous meeting and report.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Construction Schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Construction Manager will conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals corresponding to Work which needs to be coordinated. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.
 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work
 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - b. Schedule Updating: Revise Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
 - c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
 - 4) Status of submittals.
 - 5) Requirements for completing sustainable design documentation.
 - 6) Deliveries.
 - 7) Off-site fabrication.
 - 8) Access.
 - 9) Site utilization.
 - 10) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 11) Work hours.

- 12) Hazards and risks.
 - 13) Progress cleaning.
 - 14) Quality and work standards.
 - 15) Change Orders.
3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
 - 1. Startup construction schedule.
 - 2. Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 3. Daily construction reports.
 - 4. Material location reports.
 - 5. Site condition reports.
 - 6. Special reports.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting and distributing meeting and conference minutes.
 - 2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
 - 3. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
 - 1. Critical activities are activities on the critical path. They must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 - 2. Predecessor activity is an activity that must be completed before a given activity can be started.
 - 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. Cost Loading: The allocation of the schedule of values for the completion of an activity as scheduled. The sum of costs for all activities must equal the total Contract Sum unless otherwise approved by Architect.

- C. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.
 - D. Critical Path: The longest continuous chain of activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
 - E. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
 - F. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
 - 1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 - 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the following activity.
 - 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
 - G. Fragnet: A partial or fragmentary network that breaks down activities into smaller activities for greater detail.
 - H. Major Area: A story of construction, a separate building, or a similar significant construction element.
 - I. Milestone: A key or critical point in time for reference or measurement.
 - J. Network Diagram: A graphic diagram of a network schedule, showing activities and activity relationships.
 - K. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format, unless indicated otherwise:
 - 1. Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
 - 2. PDF electronic file.
 - B. Startup construction schedule.
 - 1. Approval of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.

- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following computer-generated reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
 - 1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 - 3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
 - 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from the Notice to Proceed until most recent Application for Payment.
- D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with each Application for Payment.
- E. Qualification Data: For scheduling consultant.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 - 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from parties involved.
 - 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.
- C. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with Owner's construction schedule for Owner's own forces. Revise Contractor's construction schedule, if necessary, after a joint review and mutual agreement. The construction schedule shall then constitute the schedule to be used by Contractor, separate contractors and Owner until subsequently revised.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each principal element of the Work. Comply with the following:

1. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Include selection process activities for finishes and products specified by allowances or specified to be selected during the sample review process. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with Submittals Schedule.
 2. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 3. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
 4. Building Flush-Out: Include at least 10 days for building flush-out as indicated in Section 01 81 19 "Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management."
 5. Demonstration and Training: Training of Owner's personnel as indicated in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures." Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training."
- B. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
1. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 01 10 00 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 2. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Section 01 10 00 "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 3. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
 - e. Use of premises restrictions.
 - f. Provisions for future construction.
 - g. Seasonal variations.
 - h. Environmental control.
 4. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.
 - c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.

- k. Curing.
 - l. Building flush-out.
 - m. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
 - 5. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
 - a. Structural completion.
 - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - c. Permanent space enclosure.
 - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - e. Completion of electrical installation.
 - f. Substantial Completion.
 - 6. Other Constraints:
 - C. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
 - 1. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
 - 2. .
 - D. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
 - 1. Unresolved issues.
 - 2. Unanswered RFI.
 - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
 - 5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.
 - E. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
 - F. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules. Coordinate with Architect regarding which project management software will be used on the Project.
- 2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE
- A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit preliminary horizontal bar-chart-type construction schedule within fifteen days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's Construction Schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
 - 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 30 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
 - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
 - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 - 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.
- C. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the preliminary network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
 - 1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
 - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
 - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
 - c. Purchase of materials.
 - d. Delivery.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Utility interruptions.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 - i. Testing and commissioning.
 - j. Punch list and final completion.
 - k. Activities occurring following final completion.

2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data or a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
- D. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
- E. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a list of straight "early start-total float" sort. Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 2. Description of activity.
 3. Principal events of activity.
 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 5. Early and late start dates.
 6. Early and late finish dates.
 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 8. Total float or slack time.
 9. Average size of workforce.
 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the Schedule of Values).
- F. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
 4. Changes in the critical path.
- 2.4 REPORTS
- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
 2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 4. Equipment at Project site.
 5. Material deliveries.
 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including rain or snow accumulation.
 7. Accidents.
 8. Meetings and significant decisions.

9. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 12. Tests and inspections, including name(s) of testing and inspection agency(ies).
 13. Emergency procedures.
 14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 15. Change Orders received and implemented.
 16. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 17. Services connected and disconnected.
 18. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 19. Partial Completions and occupancies.
 20. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Interpretation (RFI). Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.5 SPECIAL REPORTS

- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate Actual Completion percentage for each activity.
 4. Notify Owner and Architect a minimum of one week prior to issuance of updated schedule of all anticipated significant revisions to the Construction Schedule.

- B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post electronic copies of the updated project schedule on the project website.
 2. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 3. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's and Commissioning Agent's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as action submittals.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's and Commissioning Agent's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as informational submittals.
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or modifications to submittals noted by the Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with start-up construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.

3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
 - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action, informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - h. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - i. Activity or event number.
5. Architect reserves the right to withhold 10 percent of each payment request, in addition to retainage fee if any, until the submittal schedule is received and accepted by the Architect.

1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of Drawings of the Contract Drawings and Project Manual will not be provided by Architect.
- B. Architect's Digital Data Files: At Contractor's written request, electronic copies of Drawings of the Contract Drawings will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals and Project record documents.
 1. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 2. Execute and submit the Data Transfer Agreement form included in Document 00 60 00 "Project Forms." Do not distribute digital data drawing files prior to transmitting to Architect copies of Data Transfer Agreement signed by each entity requesting the files.
- C. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
 1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit all Action and Informational submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
 - a. Exception: Where samples for initial selection and samples for verification are both required, submit samples for verification after initial selection has been returned by Architect.

3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- D. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. Architect will document on submittal the date of receipt. Submittals received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Duration of initial submittal review shall be as agreed upon in the final submittal schedule. Allow 10 working days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination. Delaying submittals to facilitate coordination between submittals shall not constitute a delay of the Work nor shall it be the basis for an extension of time.
 2. Concurrent Consultant Review: Transmit submittals directly to Architect's consultants, provide duplicate copy of transmittal to Architect. Duration of initial submittal review shall be as agreed upon in the final submittal schedule. Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor. Concurrent review of submittals is limited to the following:
 - a.
 3. If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 4. Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- E. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file with links enabling navigation to each item.
 - a. Unique identifier, including revision number. Submittals shall be numbered with the Section number, followed by a dash, followed by a three-digit number, followed by a dash, and ending with a sequential submission number as indicated below. The numbering system shall be retained throughout all revisions.
 - 1) Section Number: Section number where submittal is specified.

- 2) Three-Digit Number: Sequential number, beginning with "001," for each submittal transmitted to Architect for each Section.
 - 3) Submission Number: Use "0" for initial submittal, "1" for first resubmittal, "2" for second resubmittal, and so forth.
 - 4) Example: 061000-001-0 (Section 06 10 00, first submission of the Section, initial submittal).
2. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
3. Scanned Copies: Legible scanned PDF files of paper originals are acceptable. Scanned submittals that are not legible will be rejected.
4. Sheet Orientation: Orient PDF sheets to a "Ready-to-Read" orientation with majority of text horizontal to the sheet with no additional adjustments or formatting required by the viewer.
5. File Security: Do not set any permissions on the file. Protected documents will not be accepted.
6. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use software-generated form from electronic project management software.
7. Metadata: Include the following information in the electronic submittal file metadata:
 - a. Title: Project title
 - b. Author: Contractor's name.
 - c. Subject: Submittal type (product data, shop drawing, report, etc.)
 - d. Keywords: Number and title of appropriate Specification Section; manufacturer name; product name/model number.
8. File Size: Limit file size of each submittal as follows. Break larger PDF files into multiple packages where necessary to meet delivery restrictions. Identify split packages as "1 of #" and "2 of #" in the subject line.
 - a. Email Delivery: 2 Megabytes.
 - b. FTP Delivery: 100 Megabytes.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate document, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Resubmit submittals until they are stamped with Architect's action stamp marked "NO EXCEPTIONS TAKEN" or "MAKE CORRECTIONS NOTED."

4. Costs of compensation for Architect's additional services and expenses made necessary for review of submittals exceeding the limits set forth below shall be at the Contractor's expense.
 - a. Reviews of Each Submittal: Two, including initial review.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- J. The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples or similar submittals until the respective submittal has been reviewed by Architect and returned to Contractor with Architect's action stamp marked "NO EXCEPTIONS TAKEN" or "MAKE CORRECTIONS AS NOTED."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Project Web site specifically established for Project. Do not post zipped files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 2. Submit electronic submittals via email as PDF electronic files. Do not post zipped files.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 3. Sample Material Submittals: Submit three copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies. Mark up and retain one returned copy as a Project Record Document.
 4. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
 5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.

- b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - 6. Systems Submittals: Identify submittals for systems such as fire alarms and fire protection systems, on the transmittal and act upon the system singularly as a combined submittal. If resubmission is required, resubmit entire system submittal,
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
 - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard printed data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - c. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - d. Standard color charts.
 - e. Mill reports.
 - f. Standard product operating and maintenance manuals.
 - g. Compliance with recognized trade association standards.
 - h. Compliance with recognized testing agency standards.
 - i. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - j. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - k. Availability and delivery time information.
 - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 - 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 - 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 - b. Paper copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare and submit Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not reproduce, digitally or otherwise, the Contract Documents and submit as Shop Drawings. Do not use, copy or reproduce title blocks, dimensions, notes, keynotes, symbols schedules or details from Contract Drawings, digital or otherwise. Use of the Contract Drawings shall be limited to reproduction, digitally or otherwise, of the exterior wall layout, interior partition layout, grid lines, doors, and windows. Do not base Shop Drawings on standard printed data.

1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Fabrication and installation drawings.
 - c. Roughing-in and setting diagrams.
 - d. Wiring diagrams showing field-installed wiring, including power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
 - e. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
 - f. Templates and patterns.
 - g. Schedules.
 - h. Design calculations.
 - i. Compliance with specified standards.
 - j. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - k. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - l. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - m. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than size of Contract Drawings.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
 4. BIM File Incorporation: Develop and incorporate Shop Drawing files into Building Information Model established for Project.
 - a. Prepare Shop Drawings in the following format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Drawings.
 - b. Refer to Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements for coordination drawings.
- D. Samples: Submit physical units of materials or products for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Refer to individual Specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 3. Submit corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.

4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line.
 - b. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from the same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with the product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples:
 - 1) Submit three sets of Samples.
 - 2) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 3) Submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations if variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample.
 - b. Architect will retain one Sample set; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a Project record sample.
7. Preparation: Mount, display, or package Samples in manner specified to facilitate review of qualities indicated. Prepare Samples to match Architect's sample where so indicated. Attach label on unexposed side that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name or name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.

8. Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a final check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between final submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
 - a. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 - b. Refer to individual Specification Sections for requirements for Samples that illustrate workmanship, fabrication techniques, details of assembly, connections, operation, and similar construction characteristics.
- E. Product Schedule or List: Prepare and submit a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
 1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
 2. Submit product schedule in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for action required.
- G. Test and Inspection Reports and Schedule of Tests and Inspections Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."
- H. Certified Surveys: Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- I. Operation and Maintenance Data: Submit written and graphic instructions and procedures for operation and normal maintenance of products and equipment. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- J. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements.
- K. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements.
- L. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements.
- M. Material Safety Data Sheets: If requested by Owner, submit data sheets directly to Owner. Do not submit data sheets to Architect. Architect will not review data sheets and will not return them to Contractor.

- N. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally-signed PDF electronic file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance/Material Submittals: Refer to requirements in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, coordinated, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that have not been properly transmitted, reviewed by Contractor, or do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review submittal , make marks to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it to Contractor. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp as illustrated at the end of this Section, and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
 - 1. "NO EXCEPTIONS TAKEN": No further review of Submittal required.
 - 2. "MAKE CORRECTIONS AS NOTED. Resubmittal not required unless Contractor cannot comply with corrections noted.": Incorporate corrections in Work. If Contractor cannot comply with corrections as noted, revise to respond to exceptions and resubmit.
 - 3. "REVISE AS NOTED AND RESUBMIT": Revise as noted and resubmit for further review.
 - 4. "RESUBMIT PROPERLY Submittal not reviewed for reasons noted."
 - 5. "NOT REVIEWED Submittal not required by Contract Documents.": Remove from submittal log.
 - 6. "RECEIVED FOR CLIENT'S RECORD ONLY. Submittal not reviewed."
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will not be reviewed and may be discarded or returned marked "NOT REVIEWED."
- G. Substitution items received as product data, shop drawing, or sample submittals required by individual Sections will be returned to Contractor without review. Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for submission of substitution request.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Project Inspector and testing lab must be employed by the owner and approved by the architect or engineer of record, structural engineer (when applicable) and DSA.
- D. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for repair and restoration of construction disturbed by testing and inspecting activities.
 - 2. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and ensure that proposed construction complies with requirements.

- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that completed construction complies with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site, unless indicated otherwise. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source (e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop).
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

- K. Professional Engineer: Engineer currently licensed to practice in the State of California.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
 - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility sent to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
 - 1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the designated seismic system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
 - 2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the wind-force-resisting system quality-assurance plan prepared by Architect.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:

1. Specification Section number and title.
2. Description of test and inspection.
3. Identification of applicable standards.
4. Identification of test and inspection methods.
5. Number of tests and inspections required.
6. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
7. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

F. Testing Agency and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports that include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Ambient conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

G. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

H. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- I. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager shall not have other Project responsibilities.
 2. .
- C. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- D. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced and expert in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a three-year record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a three-year record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish specified in individual Sections, to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 - 2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
 - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 - 5. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise indicated.

1.9 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not..
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.

2. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 - a. Contractor shall not employ the same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
 6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
 7. Provide quality assurance and control services required due to changes in the Work proposed by or made by the Contractor.
 8. Provide quality control services for Work done contrary to the Contract Documents, without prior notice, when so specified, or without proper supervision.
 9. Overtime expenses and schedule delays accruing as a result of executing quality control services shall be the Contractor's responsibility and shall not be charged to the Owner.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit schedule concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule as specified in Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation."
1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, Commissioning Authority, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.
- 1.10 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner, as indicated in Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:
- B. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified special inspector as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections and in Statement of Special Inspections attached to this Section, and as follows:

1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviews the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
2. Notifying Architect, Commissioning Authority, and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect and Commissioning Authority, with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
6. Retesting and reinspecting corrected work.
7. .

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "approved," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Operations at Project site including unloading, temporarily storing, unpacking, assembling, erecting, placing, anchoring, applying, working to dimension, finishing, curing, protecting, cleaning, and similar operations.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "As Required": As required by regulatory bodies, by referenced standards, by existing conditions, by generally accepted construction practice or by the Contract Documents. In the event of ambiguity or conflicts, the most stringent requirements shall apply.
- J. "By Others" refers to work that is not a part of the Contract.
- K. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

- L. "NIC": "Not in Contract" means the work or the item indicated is not a part of the Contract and will be provided by the Owner.
- M. "Day": Unless stated otherwise, "day" means a calendar day.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents, except comply with standards having different revision dates as referenced in the codes as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project must be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source and make them available on request.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names and Web site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.
 - 1. AA; Aluminum Association (The); www.aluminum.org.
 - 2. AAADM; American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers; www.aaadm.com.
 - 3. AABC; Associated Air Balance Council; www.aabc.com.
 - 4. AAMA; American Architectural Manufacturers Association; www.aamanet.org.
 - 5. AAPFCO; Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; www.aapfco.org.
 - 6. AASHTO; American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; www.transportation.org.
 - 7. AATCC; American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; www.aatcc.org.
 - 8. ABAA; Air Barrier Association of America; www.airbarrier.org.
 - 9. ABMA; American Bearing Manufacturers Association; www.americanbearings.org.
 - 10. ACI; American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); www.concrete.org.
 - 11. ACPA; American Concrete Pipe Association; www.concrete-pipe.org.

12. ADC; Air Diffusion Council; www.flexibleduct.org.
13. AEIC; Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); www.aeic.org.
14. AF&PA; American Forest & Paper Association; www.afandpa.org.
15. AGA; American Gas Association; www.aga.org.
16. AGC; Associated General Contractors of America (The); www.agc.org.
17. AHA; American Hardboard Association; <http://domensino.com/AHA>.
18. AHAM; Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; www.aham.org.
19. AHRI; Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); www.ahrinet.org.
20. AI; Asphalt Institute; www.asphaltinstitute.org.
21. AIA; American Institute of Architects (The); www.aia.org.
22. AISC; American Institute of Steel Construction; www.aisc.org.
23. AISI; American Iron and Steel Institute; www.steel.org.
24. AITC; American Institute of Timber Construction; www.aitc-glulam.org.
25. ALSC; American Lumber Standard Committee, Incorporated; www.alsc.org.
26. AMCA; Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; www.amca.org.
27. ANLA; American Nursery & Landscape Association; www.anla.org.
28. ANSI; American National Standards Institute; www.ansi.org.
29. AOSA; Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; www.aosaseed.com.
30. APA; APA; The Engineered Wood Association; www.apawood.org.
31. APA; Architectural Precast Association; www.archprecast.org.
32. API; American Petroleum Institute; www.api.org.
33. APWA; American Public Works Association; www.apwa.net.
34. ARI; Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
35. ARI; American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
36. ARMA; Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; www.asphaltroofing.org.
37. ASA; Acoustical Society of America; www.acousticalsociety.org.
38. ASC; Adhesive and Sealant Council (The); www.ascouncil.org.
39. ASCA; Architectural Spray Coaters Association.
40. ASCE; American Society of Civil Engineers; www.asce.org.
41. ASCE/SEI; American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
42. ASHRAE; American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers; www.ashrae.org.
43. ASME; ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); www.asme.org.
44. ASPE; American Society of Plumbing Engineers; www.aspe.org.
45. ASSE; American Society of Safety Engineers (The); www.asse.org.
46. ASSE; American Society of Sanitary Engineering; www.asse-plumbing.org.
47. ASTM; ASTM International; (American Society for Testing and Materials International); www.astm.org.
48. ATIS; Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; www.atis.org.
49. ASCI; Association of the Wall and Ceiling Industry; www.awci.org.
50. AWEA; American Wind Energy Association; www.awea.org.
51. AWI; Architectural Woodwork Institute; www.awinet.org.
52. AWMAC; Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; www.awmac.com.
53. AWPAA; American Wood Protection Association; (Formerly: American Wood-Preservers' Association); www.awpa.com.

54. AWS; American Welding Society; www.aws.org.
55. AWWA; American Water Works Association; www.awwa.org.
56. BHMA; Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association;
www.buildershardware.com.
57. BIA; Brick Industry Association (The); www.gobrick.com.
58. BICSI; BICSI, Inc.; www.bicsi.org.
59. BIFMA; BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture
Manufacturer's Association); www.bifma.com.
60. BISSC; Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; www.bissc.org.
61. BWF; Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton
Federation); www.bwfbadminton.org.
62. CCC; Carpet Cushion Council; www.carpetcushion.org.
63. CCFSS; Center for Cold-formed Steel Structures; www.ccfssonline.org.
64. CDA; Copper Development Association; www.copper.org.
65. CEA; Canadian Electricity Association; www.electricity.ca.
66. CEA; Consumer Electronics Association; www.ce.org.
67. CFFA; Chemical Fabrics & Film Association, Inc.;
www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com.
68. CFI; International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association;
www.cfi-installers.org.
69. CFSEI; Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; www.cfsei.org.
70. CGA; Compressed Gas Association; www.cganet.com.
71. CIMA; Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.cellulose.org.
72. CISCA; Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; www.cisca.org.
73. CISPI; Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; www.cispi.org.
74. CLFMI; Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; www.chainlinkinfo.org.
75. CPA; Composite Panel Association; www.pbmdf.com.
76. CPPA; Corrugated Polyethylene Pipe Association;
www.plasticpipe.org/drainage/index.html.
77. CRI; Carpet and Rug Institute (The); www.carpet-rug.org.
78. CRRC; Cool Roof Rating Council; www.coolroofs.org.
79. CRSI; Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; www.crsi.org.
80. CSA; Canadian Standards Association; www.csa.ca.
81. CSA; CSA International; (Formerly: IAS; International Approval Services);
www.csa-international.org.
82. CSI; Construction Specifications Institute (The); www.csinet.org.
83. CSSB; Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; www.cedarbureau.org.
84. CTI; Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute);
www.cti.org.
85. CWC; Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
86. DASMA; Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association;
www.dasma.com.
87. DHI; Door and Hardware Institute; www.dhi.org.
88. ECA; Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
89. ECAMA; Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See
ECIA).
90. ECIA; Electronic Components Industry Association; www.eciaonline.org
91. EIA; Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
92. EIMA; EIFS Industry Members Association; www.eima.com.
93. EJMA; Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.ejma.org.

94. ESD; ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); www.esda.org.
95. ESTA; Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
96. EVO; Efficiency Valuation Organization; www.evo-world.org.
97. FIBA; Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); www.fiba.com.
98. FIVB; Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); www.fivb.org.
99. FM Approvals; FM Approvals LLC; www.fmglobal.com.
100. FM Global; FM Global; (Formerly: FMG; FM Global); www.fmglobal.com.
101. FRSA; Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; www.floridarroof.com.
102. FSA; Fluid Sealing Association; www.fluidsealing.com.
103. FSC; Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; www.fscus.org.
104. GA; Gypsum Association; www.gypsum.org.
105. GANA; Glass Association of North America; www.glasswebsite.com.
106. GBCI; Green Building Certification Institute; www.gbci.org.
107. GS; Green Seal; www.greenseal.org.
108. GSI; Geosynthetic Institute; www.geosynthetic-institute.org.
109. GTA; Glass Tempering Division of Glass Association of North America; (see GANA).
110. HI; Hydraulic Institute; www.pumps.org.
111. HI/GAMA; Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
112. HMMA; Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
113. HPVA; Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; www.hpva.org.
114. HPW; H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; www.hpwhite.com.
115. IAPSC; International Association of Professional Security Consultants; www.iapsc.org.
116. IAS; International Accreditation Service; www.iasonline.org.
117. IAS; International Approval Services; (See CSA).
118. ICBO; International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
119. ICC; International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
120. ICEA; Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; www.icea.net.
121. ICPA; International Cast Polymer Alliance; www.icpa-hq.org.
122. ICRI; International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; www.icri.org.
123. IEC; International Electrotechnical Commission; www.iec.ch.
124. IEEE; Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); www.ieee.org.
125. IES; Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); www.ies.org.
126. IESNA; Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
127. IEST; Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; www.iest.org.
128. IGCC; Insulating Glass Certification Council; www.igcc.org.
129. IGMA; Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; www.igmaonline.org.
130. IGSHPA; International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; www.igshpa.okstate.edu.
131. ILI; Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; www.ili.ai.com.
132. Intertek; Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); www.intertek.com.
133. ISA; International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); www.isa.org.

134. ISAS; Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
135. ISFA; International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); www.isfanow.org.
136. ISO; International Organization for Standardization; www.iso.org.
137. ISSFA; International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
138. ITU; International Telecommunication Union; www.itu.int/home.
139. KCMA; Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; www.kcma.org.
140. LMA; Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
141. LPI; Lightning Protection Institute; www.lightning.org.
142. MBMA; Metal Building Manufacturers Association; www.mbma.com.
143. MCA; Metal Construction Association; www.metalconstruction.org.
144. MFMA; Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.maplefloor.org.
145. MFMA; Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.metalframingmfg.org.
146. MHIA; Material Handling Industry of America; www.mhia.org.
147. MIA; Marble Institute of America; www.marble-institute.com.
148. MIA; Masonry Institute of America; www.masonryinstitute.org.
149. MMPA; Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (Formerly: Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association); www.wmmpa.com.
150. MPI; Master Painters Institute; www.paintinfo.com.
151. MSS; Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; www.mss-hq.org.
152. NAAMM; National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; www.naamm.org.
153. NACE; NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); www.nace.org.
154. NADCA; National Air Duct Cleaners Association; www.nadca.com.
155. NAIMA; North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; www.naima.org.
156. NBGQA; National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; www.nbgqa.com.
157. NCAA; National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); www.ncaa.org.
158. NCMA; National Concrete Masonry Association; www.ncma.org.
159. NCPI; National Clay Pipe Institute; www.ncpi.org.
160. NCTA; National Cable & Telecommunications Association; www.ncta.com.
161. NEBB; National Environmental Balancing Bureau; www.nebb.org.
162. NECA; National Electrical Contractors Association; www.necanet.org.
163. NeLMA; Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; www.nelma.org.
164. NEMA; National Electrical Manufacturers Association; www.nema.org.
165. NETA; InterNational Electrical Testing Association; www.netaworld.org.
166. NFHS; National Federation of State High School Associations; www.nfhs.org.
167. NFPA; NFPA; (National Fire Protection Association); www.nfpa.org.
168. NFPA; NFPA International; (See NFPA).
169. NFRC; National Fenestration Rating Council; www.nfrc.org.
170. NGA; National Glass Association; www.glass.org.
171. NHLA; National Hardwood Lumber Association; www.nhla.com.
172. NLGA; National Lumber Grades Authority; www.nlga.org.
173. NOFMA; National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
174. NOMMA; National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; www.nomma.org.

175. NRCA; National Roofing Contractors Association; www.nrca.net.
176. NRMCA; National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; www.nrmca.org.
177. NSF; NSF International; (National Sanitation Foundation International); www.nsf.org.
178. NSPE; National Society of Professional Engineers; www.nspe.org.
179. NSSGA; National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; www.nssga.org.
180. NTMA; National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); www.ntma.com.
181. NWFA; National Wood Flooring Association; www.nwfa.org.
182. PCA; Portland Cement Association; www.cement.org.
183. PDCA; Painting and Decorating Contractors of America; www.pdca.com.
184. PCI; Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; www.pci.org.
185. PDI; Plumbing & Drainage Institute; www.pdionline.org.
186. PGI; PVC Geomembrane Institute; <http://pgi-tp.ce.uiuc.edu>.
187. PLANET; Professional Landscape Network; www.landcarenetwork.org.
188. PLASA; PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA; Entertainment Services and Technology Association); www.plasa.org.
189. PTI; Post-Tensioning Institute; www.post-tensioning.org.
190. RCSC; Research Council on Structural Connections; www.boltcouncil.org.
191. RFCI; Resilient Floor Covering Institute; www.rfci.com.
192. RIS; Redwood Inspection Service; www.redwoodinspection.com.
193. RMA; Rubber Manufacturers Association; www.rma.org.
194. SAE; SAE International; (Society of Automotive Engineers); www.sae.org.
195. SCTE; Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; www.scte.org.
196. SDI; Steel Deck Institute; www.sdi.org.
197. SDI; Steel Door Institute; www.steeldoor.org.
198. SEFA; Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association; www.sefalabs.com.
199. SEI/ASCE; Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
200. SGCC; Safety Glazing Certification Council; www.sgcc.org.
201. SIA; Security Industry Association; www.siaonline.org.
202. SJI; Steel Joist Institute; www.steeljoist.org.
203. SMA; Screen Manufacturers Association; www.smainfo.org.
204. SMACNA; Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; www.smacna.org.
205. SMPTE; Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; www.smpte.org.
206. SPFA; Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; www.sprayfoam.org.
207. SPIB; Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; www.spib.org.
208. SPRI; Single Ply Roofing Industry; www.spri.org.
209. SRCC; Solar Rating and Certification Corporation; www.solar-rating.org.
210. SSINA; Specialty Steel Industry of North America; www.ssina.com.
211. SSMA; Steel Stud Manufacturers Association; www.ssma.com.
212. SSPC; SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; www.sspc.org.
213. STI; Steel Tank Institute; www.steeltank.com.
214. SWI; Steel Window Institute; www.steelwindows.com.
215. SWPA; Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; www.swpa.org.
216. SWRI; Sealant, Waterproofing, and Restoration Institute; www.swrionline.org.
217. TCA; Tilt-Up Concrete Association; www.tilt-up.org.
218. TCNA; Tile Council of North America, Inc.; (Formerly: Tile Council of America); www.tileusa.com.
219. TEMA; Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; www.tema.org.

220. TIA; Telecommunications Industry Association; (Formerly: TIA/EIA; Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); www.tiaonline.org.
221. TIA/EIA; Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
222. TMS; The Masonry Society; www.masonrysociety.org.
223. TPI; Truss Plate Institute; www.tpinst.org.
224. TPI; Turfgrass Producers International; www.turfgrasssod.org.
225. TRI; Tile Roofing Institute; (Formerly: National Tile Roofing Manufacturing Association); www.tilerroofing.org.
226. UBC; Uniform Building Code; (See ICC).
227. UFAC; Upholstered Furniture Action Council; www.ufac.org.
228. UL; Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; www.ul.com.
229. UNI; Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; www.uni-bell.org.
230. USAV; USA Volleyball; www.usavolleyball.org.
231. USGBC; U.S. Green Building Council; www.usgbc.org.
232. USITT; United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; www.usitt.org.
233. WASTEC; Waste Equipment Technology Association; www.wastec.org.
234. WCLIB; West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; www.wclib.org.
235. WCMA; Window Covering Manufacturers Association; www.wcmanet.org.
236. WDMA; Window & Door Manufacturers Association; www.wdma.com.
237. WI; Woodwork Institute; (Formerly: WIC; Woodwork Institute of California); www.wicnet.org.
238. WMMPA; Wood Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; (See MMPA).
239. WSRCA; Western States Roofing Contractors Association; www.wsrca.com.
240. WPA; Western Wood Products Association; www.wwpa.org.

B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names, telephone numbers, and Web site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. DIN; Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; www.din.de.
2. IAPMO; International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; www.iapmo.org.
3. ICC; International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
4. ICC-ES; ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.

C. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names and Web site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE; Army Corps of Engineers; www.usace.army.mil.
2. CPSC; Consumer Product Safety Commission; www.cpsc.gov.
3. DOC; Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; www.nist.gov.
4. DOD; Department of Defense; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
5. DOE; Department of Energy; www.energy.gov.

6. EPA; Environmental Protection Agency; www.epa.gov.
7. FAA; Federal Aviation Administration; www.faa.gov.
8. FG; Federal Government Publications; www.gpo.gov.
9. GSA; General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
10. HUD; Department of Housing and Urban Development; www.hud.gov.
11. LBL; Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; <http://eetd.lbl.gov>.
12. OSHA; Occupational Safety & Health Administration; www.osha.gov.
13. SD; Department of State; www.state.gov.
14. TRB; Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; www.trb.org.
15. USDA; Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; www.ars.usda.gov.
16. USDA; Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; www.usda.gov.
17. USDJ; Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; www.ojp.usdoj.gov.
18. USP; U.S. Pharmacopeia; www.usp.org.
19. USPS; United States Postal Service; www.usps.com.

D. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. Names and Web sites are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. ADAAG; Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; www.access-board.gov.
2. CFR; Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; www.gpo.gov/fdsys.
3. DOD; Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
4. DSCC; Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
5. FED-STD; Federal Standard; (See FS).
6. FS; Federal Specification; Available from Department of Defense Single Stock Point; <http://dodssp.daps.dla.mil>.
 - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; www.dsp.dla.mil.
 - b. Available from General Services Administration; www.gsa.gov.
 - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; www.wbdg.org/ccb.
7. MILSPEC; Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
8. USAB; United States Access Board; www.access-board.gov.
9. USATBCB; U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).

E. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Names and Web site addresses are subject to change and are believed to be accurate and up-to-date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. BSC; California Building Standards Commission; www.bsc.ca.gov.
2. Cal/EPA; California Environmental Protection Agency; www.calepa.ca.gov.
3. Cal/OSHA; California Division of Occupational Safety and Health; www.dir.ca.gov/DOSH/dosh1.htm.
4. Cal/Tran; California Department of Transportation; www.dot.ca.gov.
5. CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic Appliance and Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; www.bearhfti.ca.gov.
6. CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; www.calregs.com.
7. CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
8. CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; www.cal-iaq.org.
9. CEC; California Energy Commission; www.energy.ca.gov.
10. CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; www.cpuc.ca.gov.
11. DGS; California Department of General Services; www.dgs.ca.gov.
12. DSA; California Division of State Architect; www.dsa.dgs.ca.gov.
13. OSF; California Office of the State Fire Marshal; www.osfm.fire.ca.gov.
14. OSHPD; California Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development; www.oshpd.ca.gov.
15. SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; www.aqmd.gov.
16. TFS; Texas Forest Service; Forest Resource Development and Sustainable Forestry; <http://txforests-service.tamu.edu>.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following administrative and procedural requirements: selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
 - 2. Section 01 42 00 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.
 - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting warranties for contract closeout.
 - 4. Divisions 03 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for warranties on products and installations specified to be warranted.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items purchased for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
 - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation, shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
 - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process, or where indicated as a product substitution, to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: Where a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis of design," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of other named manufacturers.
- C. Manufacturer's Warranty: Preprinted written warranty published by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
- D. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by or incorporated into the Contract Documents, either to extend time limit provided by manufacturer's warranty or to provide more rights for Owner.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, product selected shall be compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
 - 1. Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
 - 2. If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 - 4. Inspect products on delivery to ensure compliance with the Contract Documents and to ensure that products are undamaged and properly protected.
 - 5. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 - 6. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 - 7. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.

8. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
9. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
10. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
 1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution. Submit a draft for approval before final execution.
 1. Specified Form: Forms are included with the Specifications. Prepare a written document using appropriate form properly executed.
 2. Refer to Divisions 03 through 49 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Except for building equipment in service areas, no manufacturers' labels or name plates shall be visible on any component, unless required by local authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, that are undamaged, and unless otherwise indicated, that are new at time of installation.
 1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.

2. Standard Products: Unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide products of both quality and type that have been used successfully in similar situations on equal quality projects.
3. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "match sample," sample to be matched is Architect's.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish "salient characteristics" of products.

B. Product Selection Procedures: Procedures for product selection include the following:

1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
3. Basis-of-Design Products: Where Specification paragraphs or subparagraphs titled "Basis-of-Design Products" are included and also introduce or refer to a list of manufacturers' names, provide either the specified product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with provisions in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
4. Visual Selection Specification:
 - a. Standard Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard range" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that does not include premium items.
 - b. Full Range: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.3 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration:** Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.

2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Construction layout.
 - 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 - 3. Installation of the Work.
 - 4. Cutting and patching.
 - 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 - 6. Progress cleaning.
 - 7. Starting and adjusting.
 - 8. Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for procedures for coordinating field engineering with other construction activities.
 - 2. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
 - 3. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.
 - 4. Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by professional engineer certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by professional engineer.
- D. Final Property Survey: Submit 3 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
 - 1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural elements during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
 - 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
 - 3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Equipment supports.
 - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 - g. .
 - 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
 - 1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, use products for patching that comply with requirements in Section 01 81 13 "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
 - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of utilities, and other construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning work, investigate and verify the existence and location of mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
 - 1. Before construction, verify the location and points of connection of utility services.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
 - 1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
 - 2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
 - 3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - 1. Description of the Work.

2. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 3. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 4. Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for interpretation to Architect according to Section 01 26 13 "Request for Interpretation."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 2. Establish limits on use of Project site.
 3. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 4. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 5. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 6. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 7. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.

- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect .

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 - 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect . Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 - 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 - 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 - 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
 - 3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by professional engineer, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.

1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
 1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated. Where indicated to remain exposed, arrange overhead systems in an orderly manner.
 4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produces harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions
 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.

2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
-
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
 - J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.
 - K. Protect adjacent property and adjoining work, including sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of coatings, paints, sprayed fire-resistive material, and other spray-applied products. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces, including live plants and grass, if there is possibility of spray-applied products being deposited on surfaces.
 - L. Underfloor Air Cavity: Space beneath the access floor will be used as an air delivery plenum. Take necessary precautions when installing work so as not to impact the integrity of the plenum space specific to air leakage and cleanliness. Penetrations or holes in the underfloor plenum resulting from the work performed not intended for service utility distribution are required to be properly sealed to prevent air leakage.

3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.
- C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching according to requirements in Section 01 14 00 "Work Restrictions."

- F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent interruption to occupied areas.
- G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill. Avoid cutting steel reinforcement.
 - a. Locate steel reinforcement using Ground Penetrating Radar or Ferroskan prior to cutting or drilling reinforced concrete and masonry. If existing steel reinforcement is in proposed cut or hole location, contact Architect before proceeding with the Work.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- H. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or rehang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Ceramic Tile: Provide ceramic tile and grout to match existing. Remove and replace tile damaged as a result of Work of this Contract. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation" for installation method to match existing. Lay tile in grid pattern to match existing. Make joints between existing and new tile same width so patches are not apparent in finished work.
 6. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weathertight condition and ensures thermal and moisture integrity of building enclosure.
- I. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction forces.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction forces.
 1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
 2. Preinstallation Conferences: Include Owner's construction forces at preinstallation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend preinstallation conferences conducted by Owner's construction forces if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold materials more than 7 days during normal weather or 3 days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and other contractors are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Burying or burning waste materials on-site will not be permitted. Washing waste materials down sewers or into waterways will not be permitted. Comply with Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements."
- B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- C. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding. Adjust equipment for proper operation.
- D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: If a factory-authorized service representative is required to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, comply with qualification requirements in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
 - 1. Salvaging nonhazardous waste.
 - 2. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
 - 3. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition waste.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
- C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.
- E. Salvage: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent sale or reuse in another facility.
- F. Salvage and Reuse: Recovery of demolition or construction waste and subsequent incorporation into the Work.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Achieve end-of-Project rates for salvage/recycling of 75 percent by weight of total non-hazardous solid waste generated by the Work. Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators. Facilitate recycling and salvage of materials, including the following:
 - 1. Demolition Waste:
 - a. Asphalt paving.
 - b. Concrete.

- c. Concrete reinforcing steel.
- d. Brick.
- e. Concrete masonry units.
- f. Wood studs.
- g. Wood joists.
- h. Plywood and oriented strand board.
- i. Wood paneling.
- j. Wood trim.
- k. Structural and miscellaneous steel.
- l. Rough hardware.
- m. Roofing.
- n. Insulation.
- o. Doors and frames.
- p. Door hardware.
- q. Windows.
- r. Glazing.
- s. Metal studs.
- t. Gypsum board.
- u. Acoustical tile and panels.
- v. Carpet.
- w. Carpet pad.
- x. Demountable partitions.
- y. Equipment.
- z. Cabinets.
- aa. Plumbing fixtures.
- bb. Piping.
- cc. Supports and hangers.
- dd. Valves.
- ee. Sprinklers.
- ff. Mechanical equipment.
- gg. Refrigerants.
- hh. Electrical conduit.
- ii. Copper wiring.
- jj. Lighting fixtures.
- kk. Lamps.
- ll. Ballasts.
- mm. Electrical devices.
- nn. Switchgear and panelboards.
- oo. Transformers.

2. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.

- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging: Regardless of salvage/recycle goal indicated in "General" Paragraph above, salvage or recycle 100 percent of the following uncontaminated packaging materials:
 - 1) Paper.
 - 2) Cardboard.
 - 3) Boxes.
 - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
 - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
 - 6) Wood crates.
 - 7) Plastic pails.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Management Plan: Submit plan within 7 days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Waste Reduction Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit report. Use Form CWM-7 for construction waste and Form CWM-8 for demolition waste. Include the following information:
 - 1. Material category.
 - 2. Generation point of waste.
 - 3. Total quantity of waste in tons.
 - 4. Quantity of waste salvaged, both estimated and actual in tons.
 - 5. Quantity of waste recycled, both estimated and actual in tons.
 - 6. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) in tons.
 - 7. Total quantity of waste recovered (salvaged plus recycled) as a percentage of total waste.
- B. Waste Reduction Calculations: Before request for Substantial Completion, submit calculated end-of-Project rates for salvage, recycling, and disposal as a percentage of total waste generated by the Work.
- C. Records of Donations: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste donated to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- D. Records of Sales: Indicate receipt and acceptance of salvageable waste sold to individuals and organizations. Indicate whether organization is tax exempt.
- E. Recycling and Processing Facility Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of recyclable waste by recycling and processing facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

- F. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.
- G. LEED Submittal: LEED letter template for Credit MR 2, signed by Contractor, tabulating total waste material, quantities diverted and means by which it is diverted, and statement that requirements for the credit have been met.
- H. Qualification Data: For waste management coordinator and refrigerant recovery technician.
- I. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician responsible for recovering refrigerant, stating that all refrigerant that was present was recovered and that recovery was performed according to EPA regulations. Include name and address of technician and date refrigerant was recovered.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Waste Management Coordinator Qualifications: Experienced firm, with a record of successful waste management coordination of projects with similar requirements, that employs a LEED-Accredited Professional, certified by the USGBC, as waste management coordinator.
- B. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by EPA-approved certification program.
- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Waste Management Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to waste management including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Review and discuss waste management plan including responsibilities of waste management coordinator.
 - 2. Review requirements for documenting quantities of each type of waste and its disposition.
 - 3. Review and finalize procedures for materials separation and verify availability of containers and bins needed to avoid delays.
 - 4. Review procedures for periodic waste collection and transportation to recycling and disposal facilities.
 - 5. Review waste management requirements for each trade.

1.7 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN

- A. General: Develop a waste management plan according to ASTM E 1609 and requirements in this Section. Plan shall consist of waste identification, waste reduction work plan, and cost/revenue analysis. Distinguish between demolition and construction waste. Indicate quantities by weight or volume, but use same units of measure throughout waste management plan.
- B. Waste Identification: Indicate anticipated types and quantities of demolition site-clearing and construction waste generated by the Work. Use Form CWM-1 for construction waste and Form CWM-2 for demolition waste. Include estimated quantities and assumptions for estimates.
- C. Waste Reduction Work Plan: List each type of waste and whether it will be salvaged, recycled, or disposed of in landfill or incinerator. Use Form CWM-3 for construction waste and Form CWM-4 for demolition waste. Include points of waste generation, total quantity of each type of waste, quantity for each means of recovery, and handling and transportation procedures.
 - 1. Salvaged Materials for Reuse: For materials that will be salvaged and reused in this Project, describe methods for preparing salvaged materials before incorporation into the Work.
 - 2. Salvaged Materials for Sale: For materials that will be sold to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 - 3. Salvaged Materials for Donation: For materials that will be donated to individuals and organizations, include list of their names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 - 4. Recycled Materials: Include list of local receivers and processors and type of recycled materials each will accept. Include names, addresses, and telephone numbers.
 - 5. Disposed Materials: Indicate how and where materials will be disposed of. Include name, address, and telephone number of each landfill and incinerator facility.
 - 6. Handling and Transportation Procedures: Include method that will be used for separating recyclable waste including sizes of containers, container labeling, and designated location where materials separation will be performed.
- D. Cost/Revenue Analysis: Indicate total cost of waste disposal as if there was no waste management plan and net additional cost or net savings resulting from implementing waste management plan. Use Form CWM-5 for construction waste and Form CWM-6 for demolition waste. Include the following:
 - 1. Total quantity of waste.
 - 2. Estimated cost of disposal (cost per unit). Include hauling and tipping fees and cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
 - 3. Total cost of disposal (with no waste management).
 - 4. Revenue from salvaged materials.
 - 5. Revenue from recycled materials.
 - 6. Savings in hauling and tipping fees by donating materials.

7. Savings in hauling and tipping fees that are avoided.
8. Handling and transportation costs. Include cost of collection containers for each type of waste.
9. Net additional cost or net savings from waste management plan.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PLAN IMPLEMENTATION

- A. General: Implement approved waste management plan. Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.
- B. Waste Management Coordinator: Engage a waste management coordinator to be responsible for implementing, monitoring, and reporting status of waste management work plan.
- C. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
 1. Distribute waste management plan to everyone concerned within three days of submittal return.
 2. Distribute waste management plan to entities when they first begin work on-site. Review plan procedures and locations established for salvage, recycling, and disposal.
- D. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
 2. Comply with Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.
- E. Waste Management in Historic Zones or Areas: Hauling equipment and other materials shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within historic spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, by 12 inches or more.

3.2 SALVAGING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Salvaged Items for Reuse in the Work: Salvage items for reuse and handle as follows:
 1. Clean salvaged items.

2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
 3. Store items in a secure area until installation.
 4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
 5. Install salvaged items to comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make items functional for use indicated.
- B. Salvaged Items for Sale and Donation: Not permitted on Project site.
- C. Salvaged Items for Owner's Use: Salvage items for Owner's use and handle as follows:
1. Clean salvaged items.
 2. Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers with label indicating elements, date of removal, quantity, and location where removed.
 3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
 4. Transport items to Owner's storage area designated by Owner.
 5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- D. Doors and Hardware: Brace open end of door frames. Except for removing door closers, leave door hardware attached to doors.
- E. Equipment: Drain tanks, piping, and fixtures. Seal openings with caps or plugs. Protect equipment from exposure to weather.
- F. Plumbing Fixtures: Separate by type and size.
- G. Lighting Fixtures: Separate lamps by type and protect from breakage.
- H. Electrical Devices: Separate switches, receptacles, switchgear, transformers, meters, panelboards, circuit breakers, and other devices by type.
- 3.3 RECYCLING DEMOLITION AND CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL
- A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.
- B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall be shared equally by Owner and Contractor.
- C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.
- D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.

1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
 - a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

3.4 RECYCLING DEMOLITION WASTE

- A. Asphalt Paving: Grind asphalt to maximum 1-1/2-inch size.
 1. Crush asphaltic concrete paving and screen to comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
- B. Asphalt Paving: Break up and transport paving to asphalt-recycling facility.
- C. Masonry: Remove metal reinforcement, anchors, and ties from masonry and sort with other metals.
 1. Pulverize masonry to maximum 3/4-inch size.
 - a. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for use as general fill.
 - b. Crush masonry and screen to comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Plants" for use as mineral mulch.
- D. Wood Materials: Sort and stack members according to size, type, and length. Separate lumber, engineered wood products, panel products, and treated wood materials.
- E. Metals: Separate metals by type.
 1. Structural Steel: Stack members according to size, type of member, and length.
 2. Remove and dispose of bolts, nuts, washers, and other rough hardware.
- F. Asphalt Shingle Roofing: Separate organic and glass-fiber asphalt shingles and felts. Remove and dispose of nails, staples, and accessories.

- G. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location. Remove edge trim and sort with other metals. Remove and dispose of fasteners.
- H. Acoustical Ceiling Panels and Tile: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets and store in a dry location.
- I. Metal Suspension System: Separate metal members including trim, and other metals from acoustical panels and tile and sort with other metals.
- J. Carpet and Pad: Roll large pieces tightly after removing debris, trash, adhesive, and tack strips.
 - 1. Store clean, dry carpet and pad in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- K. Carpet Tile: Remove debris, trash, and adhesive.
 - 1. Stack tile on pallet and store clean, dry carpet in a closed container or trailer provided by Carpet Reclamation Agency or carpet recycler.
- L. Piping: Reduce piping to straight lengths and store by type and size. Separate supports, hangers, valves, sprinklers, and other components by type and size.
- M. Conduit: Reduce conduit to straight lengths and store by type and size.

3.5 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE

- A. Packaging:
 - 1. Cardboard and Boxes: Break down packaging into flat sheets. Bundle and store in a dry location.
 - 2. Polystyrene Packaging: Separate and bag materials.
 - 3. Pallets: As much as possible, require deliveries using pallets to remove pallets from Project site. For pallets that remain on-site, break down pallets into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
 - 4. Crates: Break down crates into component wood pieces and comply with requirements for recycling wood.
- B. Wood Materials:
 - 1. Clean Cut-Offs of Lumber: Grind or chip into small pieces.
 - 2. Clean Sawdust: Bag sawdust that does not contain painted or treated wood.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Plants" for use of clean sawdust as organic mulch.
- C. Gypsum Board: Stack large clean pieces on wood pallets or in container and store in a dry location.

1. Clean Gypsum Board: Grind scraps of clean gypsum board using small mobile chipper or hammer mill. Screen out paper after grinding.
 - a. Comply with requirements in Section 32 93 00 "Plants" for use of clean ground gypsum board as inorganic soil amendment.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.
- C. Burning: Burning of waste materials is permitted only at designated areas on Owner's property, provided required permits are obtained. Provide full-time monitoring for burning materials until fires are extinguished.
- D. Disposal: Remove waste materials and dispose of at designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- E. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For cleaning agents.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items (Punch List): Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Project Record Documents:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record product data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- D. Operation and maintenance manual(s).
- E. Warranties.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other Sections.

1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 5 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Prepare and submit a list of incomplete items (punch list), indicating the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, final certifications, and similar documents.
 3. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 4. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, and similar final record information.
 5. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Architect's signature for receipt of submittals.
 6. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
 7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- B. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request
1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions
 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training."
 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
 10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
 11. Obtain written review of closeout documents pertinent to LEED commissioning by the Commissioning Authority. The Commissioning Plan enumerates documents required at the time of Substantial Completion.

- C. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 - 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for Final Completion.

1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining date of Final Completion, complete the following:
 - 1. Submit a final Application for Payment.
 - 2. Submit copy of Contractor's original Substantial Completion inspection list with Architect's annotations of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Copy shall be certified by Contractor and state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance a minimum of 5 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
 - 1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Preparation: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
 - 1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
 - 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 - 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.

- c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
- B. Submit list of incomplete items in MS Excel electronic file and three paper copies. Architect will return annotated electronic file.

1.8 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. General: Do not use Project Record Documents for construction purposes. Protect Project Record Documents from deterioration and loss. Provide access to Project Record Documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
- B. Record Drawings: Maintain and submit one set of blue- or black-line white prints of Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to prepare the marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that cannot be readily identified and recorded later, and the locations of those items that need to be located for servicing.
 - b. Accurately record information in a readily understandable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - d. Mark record prints completely and accurately.
 - e. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - f. Note Change Order numbers, alternate numbers, and similar identification where applicable.
- C. Record Specifications: Submit one copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications. Clearly mark copy to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Drawings, and Product Data, where applicable.
- D. Record Product Data: Submit one copy of each Product Data submittal. Mark one set to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 3. Note related Change Orders, Record Drawings, where applicable.
- E. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections such as tests and inspections, and inspections by authorities having jurisdiction. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

1.9 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating the operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include operation and maintenance data required in individual Specification Sections and as follows:
1. Operation Data:
 - a. Emergency instructions and procedures.
 - b. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions, including operating standards.
 - c. Operating procedures, including startup, shutdown, seasonal, and weekend operations.
 - d. Description of controls and sequence of operations.
 - e. Piping diagrams.
 - f. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - g. Effective energy utilization.
 2. Maintenance Data:
 - a. Manufacturer's information, including list of spare parts.
 - b. Name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier.
 - c. Maintenance procedures.
 - d. Maintenance and service schedules for preventive and routine maintenance.
 - e. Maintenance record forms.
 - f. Sources of spare parts and maintenance materials.
 - g. Copies of maintenance service agreements.
 - h. Copies of warranties and bonds.
 - i. Cleaning.
 - j. Control sequence.
 - k. Fuels, lubricants, tool, and other related items.
 - l. Identification systems.

- B. Organize operation and maintenance manuals into suitable sets of manageable size. Bind and index data in heavy-duty, 3-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, with pocket inside the covers to receive folded oversized sheets. Identify each binder on front and spine with the printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project name, and subject matter of contents.

1.10 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
 - 1. Use cleaning products that comply with Green Seal's GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Provide final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
- a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including plenums, shafts, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not meant to be permanent.
 - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction.
 - p. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in lighting fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
 - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
 - 1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.
 - 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
 - b. Do not paint over labels for fire resistive joints.
 - 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 - 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
 - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
 - 2. Emergency manuals.
 - 3. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - 5. Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 2. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for verification and compilation of data into operation and maintenance manuals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
 - 1. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
 - 2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.

- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
 - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 - 2. Submit three paper copies. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect and Commissioning Authority will return copy with comments.
 - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's and Commissioning Authority's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
 - 1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 - 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
 - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.

- a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents, and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
 - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
 1. Title page.
 2. Table of contents.
 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
 1. Subject matter included in manual.
 2. Name and address of Project.
 3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.
 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.

9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."
- 1.7 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY MANUAL
- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. List items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include the following:
1. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
 2. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
 3. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- 1.8 EMERGENCY MANUALS
- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
1. Type of emergency.
 2. Emergency instructions.

3. Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
1. Fire.
 2. Flood.
 3. Gas leak.
 4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.
 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.
- D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Instructions on stopping.
 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- 1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS
- A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.
1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.

6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

1.10 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

- B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
 - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
 - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.

- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

1.11 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 - 1. Product name and model number.
 - 2. Manufacturer's name.
 - 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 - 4. Material and chemical composition.
 - 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
 - 1. Inspection procedures.
 - 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.

- 5. Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
 - 1. Record Drawings.
 - 2. Record Specifications.
 - 3. Record Product Data.
 - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for final property survey.
 - 2. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
 - 3. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal:
 - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
 - 2) Submit record digital data files and 0 set(s) of plots.
 - 3) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal:
 - 1) Submit one paper-copy set(s) of marked-up record prints.
 - 2) Submit record digital data files and three set(s) of record digital data file plots.

- 3) Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy of each submittal.
 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: See other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy of each submittal.

1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
 1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
 2. Format: DWG, Version in latest version, Microsoft Windows operating system.
 - a. See Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
- B. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect.
 - e. Name of Contractor.

1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
 - 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
 - 3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 - 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 - 5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file .

1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
- C. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file .
 - 1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file .
 - 1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
- B. Title 24, Parts 1 through 5 shall be kept on site for full duration of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
 - 1. Instruction in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
 - 1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
 - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name and address of videographer.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
 - f. Date of video recording.

2. Transcript: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
3. Transcript: Prepared in PDF electronic format. Include a cover sheet with same label information as the corresponding video recording and a table of contents with links to corresponding training components. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.
4. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use prepared in same PDF file format required for operation and maintenance manuals specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data have been reviewed and approved by Architect.

1.6 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
 - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
 - d. Product maintenance manuals.
 - e. Project Record Documents.
 - f. Identification systems.
 - g. Warranties and bonds.
 - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnostic instructions.
 - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:

- a. Inspection procedures.
- b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
- c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
- d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
- e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
- f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
- g. Instruction on use of special tools.

1.7 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

1.8 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
 1. Architect will furnish an instructor to describe basis of system design, operational requirements, criteria, and regulatory requirements.
 2. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
 3. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
- E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of performance-based test.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 81 19 - INDOOR AIR QUALITY (IAQ) MANAGEMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Special requirements for Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) management during construction operations.
 - a. Control of emissions during construction.
 - b. Moisture control during construction.
 - 2. Procedures for testing baseline IAQ. Baseline IAQ requirements specify maximum indoor pollutant concentrations for acceptance of the facility.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. Definitions: Definitions pertaining to sustainable development: As defined in ASTM E 2114.
 - 1. Adequate Ventilation: Ventilation, including air circulation and air changes, required to cure materials, dissipate humidity, and prevent accumulation of particulates, dust, fumes, vapors, or gases.
 - 2. Hazardous Materials: Any material that is regulated as a hazardous material in accordance with 49 CFR 173, requires a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1200, or which during end use, treatment, handling, storage, transportation or disposal meets or has components which meet or have the potential to meet the definition of a Hazardous Waste in accordance with 40 CFR 261.
 - a. Hazardous materials include: pesticides, biocides, and carcinogens as listed by recognized authorities, such as the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC).

3. **Indoor Air Quality (IAQ):** The composition and characteristics of the air in an enclosed space that affect the occupants of that space. The indoor air quality of a space refers to the relative quality of air in a building with respect to contaminants and hazards and is determined by the level of indoor air pollution and other characteristics of the air, including those that impact thermal comfort such as air temperature, relative humidity and air speed.
4. **Interior Final Finishes:** Materials and products that will be exposed at interior, occupied spaces; including flooring, wallcovering, finish carpentry, ceilings, and sealants.
5. **Packaged Dry Products:** Materials and products that are installed in dry form and are delivered to the site in manufacturer's packaging; including carpets, resilient flooring, ceiling tiles, and insulation.
6. **Wet Products:** Materials and products installed in wet form, including paints, sealants, adhesives, special coatings, and other materials which require curing.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **Preconstruction Conference:** After award of Contract and prior to the commencement of the Work, schedule and conduct meeting with Owner and Architect to discuss the proposed IAQ Management Plan and to develop mutual understanding relative to details of environmental protection.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. **Indoor Air Quality (IAQ) Management Plan:** Not less than 10 days before the preconstruction conference, prepare and submit an IAQ Management Plan including, but not limited to, the following:
 1. Procedures for control of emissions during construction.
 - a. Identify schedule for application of interior finishes.
 2. Procedures for moisture control during construction.
 - a. Identify porous materials and absorptive materials.
 - b. Identify schedule for inspection of stored and installed absorptive materials.
 3. Revise and resubmit Plan as required by Architect.
 - a. Approval of Contractor's Plan will not relieve the Contractor of responsibility for compliance with applicable environmental regulations.
- B. **Product Data:**
 1. Submit product data for filtration media used during construction and during operation. Include Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV).

2. Material Safety Data Sheets: Submit MSDSs for inclusion in Operation and Maintenance Manual for the following products.
 - a. Adhesives.
 - b. Floor and wall patching/leveling materials.
 - c. Caulking and sealants.
 - d. Insulating materials.
 - e. Fireproofing and firestopping.
 - f. Carpet.
 - g. Paint.
 - h. Clear finish for wood surfaces.
 - i. Lubricants.
 - j. Cleaning products.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Minimum of 5 years experience in performing the types of testing specified herein.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL ENVIRONMENTAL ISSUES

- A. Mold and Mildew: Materials that have evidence of growth of molds or mildew are not acceptable, including both stored and installed materials. Immediately remove from site and dispose of properly.
- B. Moisture Stains: Materials that have evidence of moisture damage, including stains, are not acceptable, including both stored and installed materials. Immediately remove from site and dispose of properly.

2.2 AIR FILTRATION MEDIA

- A. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) as determined by ASHRAE 52.2:
 1. MERV-13, for filtration media installed at the end of construction and prior to occupancy.

2.3 CLEANING PRODUCTS

- A. Use low-toxic and lowest-emitting spot removers and cleaning agents for surfaces, equipment, and workers' personal use.
- B. Use HEPA-filter equipped vacuum cleaners for the final cleaning.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 IAQ MANAGEMENT - EMISSIONS CONTROL

- A. LEED EQ Credit: During construction operations, meet or exceed all applicable control measures of the SMACNA "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings under Construction," 2nd Edition, ANSI/SMACNA 008-2008, Chapter 3.
- B. HVAC Protection:
 - 1. Seal return registers during construction operations.
 - 2. Provide temporary exhaust during construction operations
 - 3. To the greatest extent possible, isolate and/or shut down the return side of the HVAC system during construction. When ventilation system must be operational during construction activities, provide temporary filters.
- C. Source Control:
 - 1. Provide low and zero VOC materials as specified.
 - 2. Do not use products in combination with or in contact with other products that can be identified as combining to form toxic fumes or sustained odors.
- D. Pathway Interruption: Isolate areas of work as necessary to prevent contamination of clean or occupied spaces. Provide pressure differentials and/or physical barriers to protect clean or occupied spaces.
- E. Housekeeping: During construction, maintain project and building products and systems to prevent contamination of building spaces.
- F. Do not permit use of tobacco products inside the building, and within 25 feet (7.5 meters) of building entrance during construction.
- G. Temporary Ventilation: Provide an ACH (air changes per hour) of 1.5 or more and as follows:
 - 1. Provide minimum 48-hour pre-ventilation of packaged dry products prior to installation. Remove from packaging and ventilate in a secure, dry, well-ventilated space free from strong contaminant sources and residues. Provide a temperature range of 60 deg F minimum to 90 deg F maximum continuously during the ventilation period. Do not ventilate within limits of Work unless otherwise approved by Architect.
 - 2. Provide adequate ventilation during and after installation of interior wet products and interior final finishes.
 - 3. Provide filtration media with a Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value (MERV) of 8 as determined by ASHRAE 52.2 during construction . Coordinate with Work of Division 23, Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning (HVAC).

- a. Replace filters during construction as necessary to protect equipment and indoor air quality.
- H. Scheduling: Schedule construction operations involving wet products prior to packaged dry products to the greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Do not use solvents within interior areas that may penetrate and be retained in absorptive materials such as concrete, gypsum board, wood, cellulose products, fibrous material, and textiles.
- I. Inspect ductwork for refuse, contaminants, moisture, and other foreign contamination prior to commissioning by Owner. Notify Owner of satisfactory inspection prior to beginning of commissioning.
- J. Clean underfloor plenum at access flooring acting as supply air duct, prior to occupancy.

3.2 IAQ MANAGEMENT - MOISTURE CONTROL

- A. Housekeeping:
 - 1. Keep materials dry. Protect stored on-site and installed absorptive materials from moisture damage.
 - 2. Verify that installed materials and products are dry prior to sealing and weatherproofing the building envelope.
 - 3. Install interior absorptive materials only after building envelope is sealed and weatherproofed.
- B. Inspections: Document and report results of inspections; state whether or not inspections indicate satisfactory conditions.
 - 1. Examine materials for dampness as they arrive. If acceptable to Architect, dry damp materials completely prior to installation; otherwise, reject materials that arrive damp.
 - 2. Examine materials for mold as they arrive and reject materials that arrive contaminated with mold.
 - 3. Inspect stored and installed absorptive materials regularly for dampness and mold growth. Inspect weekly,.
 - a. Where stored on-site or installed absorptive materials become wet, notify Architect. Inspect for damage. If acceptable to Architect, dry completely prior to closing in assemblies; otherwise, remove and replace with new materials.
 - 4. Site Drainage: Verify that final grades of site work and landscaping drain surface water and ground water away from the building.
 - 5. Weatherproofing: Inspect moisture control materials as they are being installed. Include the following:

- a. Air Barrier: Verify air barrier is installed without punctures and/or other damage. Verify air barrier is sealed completely.
 - b. Flashing: Verify correct shingling of the flashing for roof, walls, windows, doors, and other penetrations.
 - c. Insulation Layer: Verify insulation is installed without voids.
 - d. Roofing: In accordance with ASTM D 7186.
6. Plumbing: Verify satisfactory pressure test of pipes and drains is performed before closing in and insulating lines.
 7. HVAC: Inspect HVAC system as specified in Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning." And, inspect HVAC to verify the following:
 - a. Condensate pans are sloped and plumbed correctly.
 - b. Access panels are installed to allow for inspection and cleaning of coils and ductwork downstream of coils.
 - c. Ductwork and return plenums are air sealed.
 - d. Duct insulation is installed and sealed.
 - e. Chilled water line and refrigerant line insulation are installed and sealed.

C. Schedule:

1. Schedule work such that absorptive materials, including but not limited to porous insulations, paper-faced gypsum board, ceiling tile, and finish flooring, are not installed until they can be protected from rain and construction-related water.
2. Weatherproof as quickly as possible. Schedule installation of moisture-control materials, including but not limited to air barriers, flashing, exterior sealants and roofing, at the earliest possible time.

D. Testing for Moisture Penetration:

1. Windows: Test as per ASTM E 1105 - Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of Installed Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform or Cyclic Static Air Pressure Difference; unless otherwise indicated, acceptable upper limits are no leakage for 15 minutes.
2. Horizontal Waterproofing (not roofing): Test as per ASTM D 5957 - Standard Guide for Flood Testing Horizontal Waterproofing Installations; acceptable upper limits are no leakage for 15 minutes.
3. Masonry: Test as per ASTM C 1601 - Standard Test Method for Field Determination of Water Penetration of Masonry Wall Surfaces; acceptable upper limits are no leakage for 15 minutes.
4. Exterior Walls:
 - a. Air Tightness of the Enclosure Test: ASTM E 779 - Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage Rate by Fan Pressurization or ASTM E 1827 - Standard Test Methods for Determining Air tightness of Buildings Using an Orifice Blower Door; acceptable upper limits are .
 - b. Water Leakage: Review as per ASTM E 2128 - Standard Guide for Evaluating Water Leakage of Building Walls.

- E. Testing for Support of Microbial Growth: Test and report in accordance with ASTM D 6329 - Standard Guide for Developing Methodology for Evaluating the Ability of Indoor Materials to Support Microbial Growth Using Static Environmental Chambers. Indicate susceptibility of product or material to colonization and amplification of microorganisms. Identify microorganisms and conditions of testing.
1. Normal Conditions: Perform testing at 35 deg C and 50 percent relative humidity.
 2. Extreme Conditions: Perform worst-case scenarios screening tests by providing an atmosphere where environmental conditions may be favorable for microbial growth.
 3. Perform testing for the following:
 - a. Fireproofing material on appropriate substrate.
 - b. Acoustical ceilings.
 - c. Wallcovering.
 - d.

3.3 BASELINE INDOOR AIR QUALITY TESTING

- A. After construction ends and prior to occupancy, conduct a baseline indoor air quality testing procedure that randomly selects sampling points for every 25,000 sq. ft., or for each contiguous floor area, whichever is larger, using testing protocols consistent with the EPA's "Compendium of Methods for the Determination of Air Pollutants in Indoor Air." "
- B. Demonstrate that the chemical contaminant maximum concentrations listed below are not exceeded:
1. Carbon Dioxide (CO₂): Maximum concentration of 530 parts per million per ASHRAE 62.
 - a. This measurement is required only if the building is regularly occupied during the testing. Measured differential between indoor and outdoor conditions is based on occupancy type as defined by ASHRAE 62. Maximum concentration differential in parts per million = 10,300/ventilation rate per occupant, in cubic feet per minute, assuming an occupancy of 7 persons per 1000 sq. ft. of floor space.
 2. Formaldehyde: 27 parts per billion.
 3. Particulates (PM₁₀): 50 micrograms per cubic meter per EPA National Ambient Air Quality Standard.
 4. Ozone: 0.075 ppm, according to ASTM D 5149.
- C. For each building area where the maximum concentration limits are exceeded, conduct a partial building flushout, for a maximum of two weeks, then retest the indoor air quality levels to indicate the requirements are achieved.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 81 23 - CALGREEN REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes general requirements and procedures for compliance with certain provisions of the California Green Building Standards Code, also known and hereinafter referred to as the "Code."
 - 1. Other prerequisites and credits needed to obtain Code compliance depend on material selections and may not be specifically identified as requirements for Code compliance. Compliance with requirements needed to obtain Code compliance may be used as one criterion to evaluate substitution requests and comparable product requests.
 - 2. Additional requirements needed to obtain Code compliance depend on Architect's design and other aspects of Project that are not part of the Work of the Contract.
 - 3. Sample compliance forms and worksheets are provided at the end of this Section, for information only. Provide required data in form acceptable to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Divisions 01 through 33 Sections for requirements for Code compliance specific to the work of each of these Sections.
 - 2. Section 01 91 13 "General Commissioning Requirements" for building commissioning.

1.2 REFERENCE

- A. ARB: California Air Resources Board.
- B.
- C. CCR: California Code of Regulations.
- D. SCAQMD: South Coast Air Quality Management District.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Building Commissioning: A systematic quality assurance process that spans the entire design and construction process, including verifying and documenting that building systems and components are planned, designed, installed, tested, operated and maintained to meet the owner's project requirements.

- B. Composite Wood Products: Composite wood products include hardwood plywood, particleboard and medium density fiberboard. "Composite wood products" does not include hardboard, structural plywood, structural panels, structural composite lumber, oriented strand board, glued laminated timber, prefabricated wood I-joists or finger-jointed lumber, all as specified in California Code of Regulations (CCR), Title 17, Section 93120.1(a).
- C. Recycled Content: The percentage by weight of constituents that have been recovered or otherwise diverted from the solid waste stream, either during the manufacturing process (pre-consumer), or after consumer use (post-consumer).
1. Spills and scraps from the original manufacturing process that are combined with other constituents after a minimal amount of reprocessing for use in further production of the same product are not recycled materials.
 2. Discarded materials from one manufacturing process that are used as constituents in another manufacturing process are pre-consumer recycled materials.
- D. Recycled Content Value: Material cost multiplied by postconsumer content plus 1/2 the preconsumer content, or $RCV = \$ X (\text{postconsumer content} + 1/2 \text{ preconsumer content})$:
1. "Post-consumer waste" is defined as waste material generated by consumers after it is used and which would otherwise be discarded.
 2. "Pre-consumer waste" is defined as material diverted from the waste stream during the manufacturing process, including scraps, damaged goods, and excess production that is used in another manufacturing process.
- E. Maximum Incremental Reactivity (MIR): The maximum change in weight of ozone formed by adding a compound to the "Base Reactive Organic Gas (ROG) Mixture" per weight of compound added, expressed to hundredths of a gram.
1. MIR values for individual compounds and hydrocarbons solvents are specified in CCR, Title 17, Section 94700 and Section 94701.
- F. Reactive Organic Compound (ROC): Any compound that has the potential, once emitted, to contribute to ozone formation in the troposphere.
- G. Product-Weight MIR (PWMIR): The sum of all weighted-MIR for all ingredients in a product subject to this article. The PWMIR is the total product reactivity expressed to hundredths of a gram of ozone formed per gram of product (excluding container and packaging).
1. PWMIR is calculated according to equations found in CCR, Title 17, Section 94521(a).
- H. VOC: A volatile organic compound (VOC) is broadly defined as a chemical compound based on carbon chains or rings with vapor pressures greater than 0.1 millimeters of mercury at room temperature. These compounds typically contain hydrogen and may contain oxygen, nitrogen and other elements. See CCR Title 17, Section 94508(a).

1. Note: Where specific regulations are cited from different agencies such as South Coast Air Quality Management District (SCAQMD), California Air Resources Board (ARB), etc., the VOC definition included in that specific regulation is the one that prevails for the specific measure in question.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Project Materials Cost Data: Provide statement indicating total cost for materials used for Project. Costs exclude labor, overhead, and profit. Include breakout of costs for the following categories of items:
 1. Plumbing.
 2. Mechanical.
 3. Electrical.
 4. Wood-based construction materials.
- B. Progress Reports: Concurrent with each Application for Payment, submit reports comparing actual construction and purchasing activities with Action Plans for the following:
 1. Recycled content.
- C. Documentation Submittals:
 1. Product data and certification letter indicating percentages by weight of post-consumer and pre-consumer recycled content for products having recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
 2. Construction Documentation: Six photographs at three different times during the construction period, along with a brief description of the approach employed, documenting protection of ducts and HVAC equipment.
 3. Product data for adhesives, sealants and caulks, indicating VOC content of each product used. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR Title 17 for aerosols.
 4. Product data for paints and coatings, indicating VOC content of each product used. Indicate VOC content in g/L calculated according to the Air Resource Board Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure and CCAR Title 17 for aerosols.
 5. Product data, manufacturer's certifications, chain of custody certifications, or other documentation acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction; for products containing composite wood or agrifiber products or wood glues. Indicate compliance with ARB Air Toxics Control Measure for Composite Wood.
 6. Product data for carbon dioxide (CO₂) sensors and controls.
 7. Product data for HVAC, refrigeration, and fire suppression equipment and systems, indicating no use of Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs) and Halons.
 8. Product data for irrigation systems components including but not necessarily limited to the following:

- a. Sprinkler heads: Indicate degree of head rotation and spray characteristics/
pattern.
 - b. Controllers and sensors.
- 9. Product data and schedules for plumbing fixtures and fittings. Include rated capacities and operating characteristics.
 - 10. Product data, including photometrics, for interior and exterior lighting fixtures. Include Testing Agency and Manufacturer's certified data.
 - 11. Qualifications data for HVAC system installers' certification. Include employee names, positions, dates of service, types of certification, certification program names, descriptions, dates of completion, and dates of expiration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ADHESIVES, SEALANTS AND CAULKS

- A. For field applications, use adhesives, sealants and caulks that comply with the indicated limits for VOC content when calculated according to SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR Title 17 for aerosols.
- B. Adhesive VOC Limits:
 - 1. Architectural Applications:
 - a. Indoor carpet adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - b. Carpet pad adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - c. Wood flooring adhesive: 100 g/L.
 - d. Rubber floor adhesives: 60 g/L.
 - e. Ceramic tile adhesives: 65 g/L.
 - f. VCT and asphalt tile adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - g. Drywall and panel adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - h. Cove base adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - i. Multipurpose construction adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - j. Structural glazing adhesives: 100 g/L.
 - k. Single-ply roof membrane adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - l. Other adhesive not specifically listed: 50 g/L.
 - 2. Specialty Applications:
 - a. PVC welding: 510 g/L.
 - 3. Substrate-Specific Applications:
 - a. Metal to metal: 30 g/L.
 - b. Plastic foams: 50 g/L.
 - c. Porous material: (except wood) 50 g/L.
 - d. Fiberglass: 80 g/L.

C. Sealant and Sealant Primer VOC Limits:

1. Sealants:
 - a. Architectural: 250 g/L.
 - b. Single-ply roof membrane: 450 g/L.
 - c. Other: 420 g/L.
2. Sealant Primers:
 - a. Architectural nonporous: 250 g/L.
 - b. Architectural porous: 775 g/L.

2.2 PAINTS AND COATINGS

- A. For field applications, use paints and coatings that comply with the indicated limits for VOC content when calculated according to CEPA Air Resources Board Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure and CCR Title 17 for aerosols. Additionally, comply with more stringent local limits where they occur.

1. Specialty Coatings:
 - a. Industrial maintenance coatings 100 g/L.
 - b. Clear shellacs: 730 g/L.
 - c. Opaque shellacs: 550 g/L.
 - d. Stains:
 - 1) General: 100 g/L.
 - 2) Interior Stains: 250 g/L.

- B. Coatings that do not meet the definitions for the specialty coatings categories indicated above shall be determined by classifying the coating as a Flat, Nonflat or Nonflat-High Gloss coating, based on its gloss, as defined in Subsections 4.21, 4.36 and 4.37 of the 2007 California Air Resources Board Suggested Control Measure.

1. Flat coatings: 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat coatings: 50 g/L.
3. Nonflat high gloss coatings: 50 g/L.

2.3 COMPOSITE WOOD

- A. Composite wood must comply with indicated limits for formaldehyde as derived from those specified by the ARB's, Air Toxics Control Measure (ATCN) for Composite Wood in accordance with ASTM E 1333-96 (2002), and as specified in CCR, Title 17, Sections 93120 through 93120.12.

1. Formaldehyde Limits: Maximum formaldehyde emissions:

- a. Hardwood Plywood Composite Core: 0.05 ppm.
- b. Medium Density Fiberboard: 0.11 ppm.

2.4 LIGHT POLLUTION

- A. All new lighting shall comply with the following in accordance with 5.106.8 and 10.106.8:
 - 1. Outdoor lighting systems, with the exception of emergency lighting, shall be designed and installed to comply with the following:
 - a. The minimum requirements in the California Energy Code for Lighting Zones 1-4 as defined in Chapter 10 of the California Administrative Code; and
 - b. Backlight, Uplight and Glare (BUG) ratings as defined in IES TM-15-11; and
 - c. Allowable BUG ratings not exceeding those shown in California Green Building Standards Code (CALgreen) Table 5.106.8.

2.5 PLUMBING

- A. New plumbing fixtures and fittings shall comply with CALgreen Section 5.303.3.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

- A. Comply with Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

3.2 BUILDING COMMISSIONING

- A. Comply with Section 01 19 13 "General Commissioning Requirements."

3.3 TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING

- A. Develop a written plan of procedures for testing and adjusting systems. Systems to be included for testing and adjusting shall include, as applicable to the project:
 - 1. HVAC systems and controls.
 - 2. Indoor and outdoor lighting and controls.
 - 3. Water heating systems.
 - 4. Renewable energy systems.
 - 5. Landscape irrigation systems.
 - 6. Water reuse systems.

- B. At the completion of testing, balancing and adjusting, provide to the Owner a final report, signed by the person responsible for its content, documenting procedures utilized, findings, corrective actions, and final results.
- C. Provide system operating and maintenance manuals to the Owner. See Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Owner's Project Requirements (OPR) and Basis of Design (BoD) documentation are included by reference for information only.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general requirements that apply to implementation of commissioning without regard to specific systems, assemblies, or components.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Specifications for specific areas of work requiring commissioning:
 - a. Division 22, Plumbing: Commissioning of Plumbing for commissioning process activities for plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.
 - b. Division 23, Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning (HVAC): Commissioning of HVAC for commissioning process activities for HVAC&R systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.
 - c. Division 25, Integrated Automation: Commissioning of Integrated Automation for commissioning process activities for integrated automation systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.
 - d. Division 26, Electrical: Commissioning of Electrical Systems for commissioning process activities for electrical systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.
 - e. Division 27, Communications: Commissioning of Communications Systems, for commissioning process activities for communications systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.
 - f. Division 28, Electronic Safety and Security: Commissioning of Electronic Safety and Security for commissioning process activities for electronic safety and security systems, assemblies, equipment, and components.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BoD: Basis of Design. A document that records concepts, calculations, decisions, and product selections used to meet the OPR and to satisfy applicable regulatory requirements, standards, and guidelines. The document includes both narrative descriptions and lists of individual items that support the design process.
- B. Commissioning Plan: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the commissioning process.

- C. CxA: Commissioning Authority.
- D. OPR: Owner's Project Requirements. A document that details the functional requirements of a Project and the expectations of how it will be used and operated. These include Project goals, measurable performance criteria, cost considerations, benchmarks, success criteria, and supporting information.
- E. Systems, Subsystems, Equipment, and Components: Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, subsystems, equipment, and components.

1.4 COMMISSIONING TEAM

- A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s): Individuals, each having the authority to act on behalf of the entity he or she represents, explicitly organized to implement the commissioning process through coordinated action. The commissioning team shall consist of, but not be limited to, representatives of Contractor whose work is to be commissioned, including Project superintendent and subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists deemed appropriate by the CxA.
- B. Members Appointed by Owner:
 - 1. CxA: The designated person, company, or entity that plans, schedules, and coordinates the commissioning team to implement the commissioning process. Owner will engage the CxA under a separate contract.
 - 2. Representatives of the facility user and operation and maintenance personnel.
 - 3. Architect and engineering design professionals.

1.5 OWNER'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Provide the OPR documentation to the CxA, the Architect, and Contractor for information and use.
- B. Assign operation and maintenance personnel and schedule them to participate in commissioning team activities.
- C. Provide the BoD documentation, prepared by the Architect and approved by Owner, to the CxA and Contractor for use in developing the commissioning plan, systems manual, and operation and maintenance training plan.

1.6 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Contractor shall assign representatives with expertise and authority to act on its behalf and shall schedule them to participate in and perform commissioning process activities including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Evaluate performance deficiencies identified in test reports and, in collaboration with entity responsible for system and equipment installation, recommend corrective action.
2. Cooperate with the CxA for resolution of issues recorded in the Issues Log.
3. Attend commissioning team meetings held in conjunction with the regularly scheduled construction meeting.
4. Integrate and coordinate commissioning process activities with construction schedule.
5. Review and accept construction checklists provided by the CxA.
6. Complete paper or electronic construction checklists as Work is completed and provide to the Commissioning Authority on a weekly basis.
7. Review and accept commissioning process test procedures provided by the Commissioning Authority.
8. Complete commissioning process test procedures.

1.7 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Organize and lead the commissioning team.
- B. Provide commissioning plan.
- C. Convene commissioning team meetings.
- D. Provide Project-specific construction checklists and commissioning process test procedures.
- E. Verify the execution of commissioning process activities using random sampling. The sampling rate may vary from 1 to 100 percent. Verification will include, but is not limited to, equipment submittals, construction checklists, training, operating and maintenance data, tests, and test reports to verify compliance with the OPR. When a random sample does not meet the requirement, the CxA will report the failure in the Issues Log.
- F. Prepare and maintain the Issues Log.
- G. Prepare and maintain completed construction checklist log.
- H. Witness systems, assemblies, equipment, and component startup.
- I. Compile test data, inspection reports, and certificates; include them in the systems manual and commissioning process report.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 GENERAL EXECUTION REQUIREMENTS - COMMISSIONING

- A. Schedule and coordinate commissioning with the Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Perform activities identified in construction checklists, including tests, and document results of actions as construction proceeds.
- C. Installing contractors' commissioning responsibilities include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Operating the equipment and systems they install during tests.
 - 2. In addition, installing contractors may be required to assist in tests of equipment and systems with which their work interfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 10 00 - CONCRETE FORMING AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Formwork for cast-in-place concrete, with shoring, bracing and anchorage.
- B. Openings for other work.
- C. Form accessories.
- D. Form stripping.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 20 00 - Concrete Reinforcing.
- B. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- C. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing: Placement of embedded steel anchors and plates in cast-in-place concrete.
- D. Section 05 31 00 - Steel Decking: Placement of steel anchors in composite decking.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ACI PRC-347 - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014 (Reapproved 2021).
- C. ACI SPEC-117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010 (Reapproved 2015).
- D. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- E. ASME A17.1 - Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators Includes Requirements for Elevators, Escalators, Dumbwaiters, Moving Walks, Material Lifts, and Dumbwaiters with Automatic Transfer Devices; 2022.
- F. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2023.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data on void form materials and installation requirements.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pertinent dimensions, materials, bracing, and arrangement of joints and ties.
- D. Formwork Shop Drawings for suspended slabs, suspended concrete elements, columns, and walls: Indicate the pertinent dimension, material, layout, supports locations, bracing, support reaction forces, and sequencing of reshoring if required. Coordinate and select formwork to be compatible with the proposed architectural finishes. The shop drawings shall be prepared and stamped by licensed Civil or Structural Engineers in the State in which the Project is located.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Designer Qualifications: Design formwork under direct supervision of a Professional Civil or Structural Engineer experienced in design of concrete formwork and licensed in the State in which the Project is located.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMWORK - GENERAL

- A. Provide concrete forms, accessories, shoring, and bracing as required to accomplish cast-in-place concrete work.
- B. Design and construct concrete that complies with design with respect to shape, lines, and dimensions.
- C. Chamfer outside corners of beams, joists, columns, and walls.
- D. Comply with applicable state and local codes with respect to design, fabrication, erection, and removal of formwork.

2.2 WOOD FORM MATERIALS

- A. Softwood Plywood: PS 1, B-B High Density Concrete Form Overlay, Class I.

- B. Lumber: Douglas Fir species; No. 2 grade or better; with grade stamp clearly visible.

2.3 FORMWORK ACCESSORIES

- A. Form Ties: Removable Snap-off type, galvanized metal, fixed length, leaving no metal with 1-1/2 inch of surface, free of defects that could leave holes larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in concrete surface.
- B. Form Release Agent: Capable of releasing forms from hardened concrete without staining or discoloring concrete or forming bugholes and other surface defects, compatible with concrete and form materials, and not requiring removal for satisfactory bonding of coatings to be applied. Colorless, nonstaining, free from oils, chemically active agent that will not strain concrete, impair natural bonding of concrete finished coatings, affect color characteristics of concrete finish coatings or affect bond of proposed architectural finishes..
- C. Dowel Sleeves: Plastic sleeve and nailable plastic base for smooth, round, steel load-transfer dowels.
- D. Filler Strips for Chamfered Corners: Rigid plastic type; 3/4x3/4 inch (____) size; maximum possible lengths.
- E. Polystyrene Void Forms: Polystyrene must have adequate stiffness to block out concrete during placing operations.
- F. Dovetail Anchor Slot: Galvanized steel, at least 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch (0.76 mm) thick, foam filled, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
- G. Flashing Reglets: Galvanized steel, at least 22 gauge, 0.0299 inch (0.76 mm) thick, longest possible lengths, with alignment splines for joints, foam filled, release tape sealed slots, anchors for securing to concrete formwork.
- H. Nails, Spikes, Lag Bolts, Through Bolts, Anchorages: Sized as required, of sufficient strength and character to maintain formwork in place while placing concrete.
- I. Embedded Anchor Shapes, Plates, Angles and Bars: As specified in Section 05 12 00.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify lines, levels and centers before proceeding with formwork. Ensure that dimensions agree with drawings.

3.2 EARTH FORMS

- A. Hand trim sides and bottom of earth forms. Remove loose soil prior to placing concrete.

3.3 ERECTION - FORMWORK

- A. Erect formwork, shoring and bracing to achieve design requirements, in accordance with requirements of ACI SPEC-301.
- B. Provide bracing to ensure stability of formwork. Shore or strengthen formwork subject to overstressing by construction loads.
- C. Arrange and assemble formwork to permit dismantling and stripping. Do not damage concrete during stripping. Permit removal of remaining principal shores.
- D. Align joints and make watertight. Keep form joints to a minimum.
- E. Obtain approval before framing openings in structural members that are not indicated on drawings.
- F. Provide fillet and chamfer strips on external corners of beams, joists, columns, and walls.
- G. Install void forms in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Protect forms from moisture or crushing.
- H. Coordinate this section with other sections of work that require attachment of components to formwork.
- I. If formwork is placed after reinforcement, resulting in insufficient concrete cover over reinforcement, request instructions from Owner's Representative before proceeding.

3.4 APPLICATION - FORM RELEASE AGENT

- A. Apply form release agent on formwork in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.

- B. Apply prior to placement of reinforcing steel, anchoring devices, and embedded items.
- C. Do not apply form release agent where concrete surfaces will receive special finishes or applied coverings that are affected by agent. Soak inside surfaces of untreated forms with clean water.

Keep surfaces coated prior to placement of concrete.

3.5 INSERTS, EMBEDDED PARTS, AND OPENINGS

- A. Provide formed openings where required for items to be embedded in passing through concrete work.
- B. Locate and set in place items that will be cast directly into concrete.
- C. Coordinate with work of other sections in forming and placing openings, slots, reglets, recesses, sleeves, bolts, anchors, other inserts, and components of other work.
- D. Position recessed anchor slots for brick veneer masonry anchors to spacing and intervals specified in Section 04 26 13.
- E. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, so they are straight, level, and plumb. Ensure items are not disturbed during concrete placement.
- F. Install waterstops in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, so they are continuous without displacing reinforcement. Heat seal joints so they are watertight.
- G. Provide temporary ports or openings in formwork where required to facilitate cleaning and inspection. Locate openings at bottom of forms to allow flushing water to drain.
- H. Close temporary openings with tight fitting panels, flush with inside face of forms, and neatly fitted so joints will not be apparent in exposed concrete surfaces.

3.6 FORM CLEANING

- A. Clean forms as erection proceeds, to remove foreign matter within forms.
- B. Clean formed cavities of debris prior to placing concrete.
 - 1. Flush with water or use compressed air to remove remaining foreign matter. Ensure that water and debris drain to exterior through clean-out ports.

3.7 FORMWORK TOLERANCES

- A. Construct formwork to maintain tolerances required by ACI SPEC-117, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Construct and align formwork for elevator hoistway in accordance with ASME A17.1.
- C. Camber slabs and beams in accordance with ACI SPEC-301.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Inspect erected formwork, shoring, and bracing to ensure that work is in accordance with formwork design, and to verify that supports, fastenings, wedges, ties, and items are secure.
- C. The Owner's Representative will approve the reuse of forms provided the wood formwork edges and surfaces are in good condition, and if it is straight, clean, free from nails, dirt, hardened concrete, and other harmful matter concrete surfaces to be exposed to view. Do not patch formwork.

3.9 FORM REMOVAL

- A. Do not remove forms or bracing until concrete has gained sufficient strength to carry its own weight and imposed loads.
- B. Loosen forms carefully. Do not wedge pry bars, hammers, or tools against finish concrete surfaces scheduled for exposure to view.
- C. Store removed forms to prevent damage to form materials or to fresh concrete. Discard damaged forms.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 20 00 - CONCRETE REINFORCING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Reinforcing steel for cast-in-place concrete.
- B. Supports and accessories for steel reinforcement.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 10 00 - Concrete Forming and Accessories.
- B. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- C. Section 03 37 13 - Shotcrete: Reinforcement for shotcrete.
- D. Section 04 20 00 - Unit Masonry: Reinforcement for masonry.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- B. ACI MNL-66 - ACI Detailing Manual; 2020.
- C. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- D. ASTM A184/A184M - Standard Specification for Welded Deformed Steel Bar Mats for Concrete Reinforcement; 2024.
- E. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2024.
- F. ASTM A706/A706M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Low-Alloy Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2024.
- G. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2024.
- H. AWS D1.4/D1.4M - Structural Welding Code - Steel Reinforcing Bars; 2018, with Amendment (2020).

- I. CRSI (DA4) - Manual of Standard Practice; 2024.
- J. CRSI (P1) - Placing Reinforcing Bars, 10th Edition; 2019.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings: Comply with requirements of ACI MNL-66 Include bar schedules, shapes of bent bars, spacing of bars, and location of splices.
 - 1. Shop drawings shall not be reproductions of the structural construction documents.
 - 2. If more than one submittal is required, shop drawings must be as complete as possible for first submittal. Indicate which sections of the shop drawings are not complete prior to submitting for review.
 - 3. Should more than one submittal be required, later submittals shall clearly identify material added or revised subsequent to previous submittal.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that reinforcing steel and accessories supplied for this project meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Reports: Submit certified copies of mill test report of reinforcement materials analysis.
- E. Embodied Carbon Footprint Submittals
 - 1. Plant specific Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) for concrete reinforcing proposed for the project where available.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI CODE-318, ACI MNL-66, ACI SPEC-301, ASTM A184/A184M, CRSI (P1), and CRSI (DA4).
 - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on project site.
- B. Welder Qualifications: Welding processes and welding operators qualified in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M and no more than 12 months before start of scheduled welding work.

1.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. The Owner's Testing Laboratory will:

1. Collect mill test reports (tensile and bend test) for reinforcement. Review the test data for tensile and bond tests of the reinforcement if mill certificates are not submitted. Tests shall be performed by the Contractor's testing agency. The number of tests shall be in accordance with the CRSI Manual of Standard Practice.
2. Review the test data on mechanical couplers to confirm that 160 percent of the specified yield strength is obtained and to confirm that a strain of 10 times the yield point strain is developed in the bars adjacent to the couplers. The contractor's independent testing laboratory shall perform the tests.
3. Review the Welding Procedure Specifications (WPS) and test data needed to qualify welding. Perform necessary tests of samples provided by a Contractor to qualify the welds.
4. Perform radiographic examinations on at least 25 percent of all shop-welded splices. For each weld found to be defective, 100 percent of all welds will be tested until five consecutive welds are found to have no defects.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi) (420 MPa).
 1. Plain Deformed billet-steel bars.
 2. Unfinished.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A706/A706M, deformed low-alloy steel bars.
 1. Unfinished.
- C. Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement (WWR): Galvanized, deformed type; ASTM A1064/A1064M.
 1. Form: Flat Sheets.

D. Reinforcement Accessories:

1. Tie Wire: Annealed, minimum 16 gauge, 0.0508 inch (1.29 mm).
2. Chairs, Bolsters, Bar Supports, Spacers: Sized and shaped for adequate support of reinforcement during concrete placement.
3. Provide stainless steel components for placement within 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of weathering surfaces.
4. Mechanical Couplers shall be capable of developing 160 percent of the specified yield strength of the bar and shall develop a minimum of 10 times the yield point strain in the connected reinforcing bars.

2.2 RE-BAR SPLICING:

- A. Coupler Systems: Mechanical devices for splicing reinforcing bars.
1. Comply with ACI CODE-318 steel reinforcing design strength requirements for splices in tension and compression.
- B. Dowel Bar Splicer with Dowel-Ins: Mechanical devices for splicing reinforcing bars.
1. Comply with ACI CODE-318 steel reinforcing design strength requirements for splices in tension and compression.
- C. Taper Tie Hole Plug: Mechanical device for plugging tie holes; anchors optional flush or recessed grout.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate concrete reinforcing in accordance with CRSI (DA4) - Manual of Standard Practice.
- B. Welding of reinforcement is permitted only with the specific approval of Ow. Perform welding in accordance with AWS D1.4/D1.4M.
- C. Locate reinforcing splices not indicated on drawings at point of minimum stress. Splice no more than 50 percent of the bars at any section. Show all splice locations on the shop drawings.
1. Review locations of splices with Owner's Representative.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PLACEMENT

- A. Place, support and secure reinforcement against displacement. Do not deviate from required position.
- B. Do not displace or damage vapor barrier.
- C. Accommodate placement of formed openings.
- D. Comply with applicable code for concrete cover over reinforcement, unless otherwise indicated as greater cover in the drawings.
- E. Location of rebar splice shall be staggered with minimum of 2 feet clear, unless otherwise noted in the drawings.
- F. Position of rebar splice shall comply with ACI 318 or as specified in construction drawings.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, will inspect installed reinforcement for compliance with contract documents before concrete placement.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete for composite floor construction.
- B. Elevated concrete slabs.
- C. Floors and slabs on grade.
- D. Concrete shear walls, elevator shaft walls, and foundation walls.
- E. Joint devices associated with concrete work.
- F. Miscellaneous concrete elements, including equipment pads, equipment pits, light pole bases, flagpole bases, thrust blocks, and manholes.
- G. Concrete curing.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 10 00 - Concrete Forming and Accessories: Forms and accessories for formwork.
- B. Section 03 20 00 - Concrete Reinforcing.
- C. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants: Products and installation for sealants and joint fillers for saw cut joints and isolation joints in slabs.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ACI 211.2 - Standard Practice for Selecting Proportions for Structural Lightweight Concrete; 1998 (Reapproved 2004).
- B. ACI CODE-318 - Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete and Commentary; 2019 (Reapproved 2022).
- C. ACI PRC-211.1 - Selecting Proportions for Normal-Density and High Density-Concrete - Guide; 2022.
- D. ACI PRC-302.1 - Guide to Concrete Floor and Slab Construction; 2015.

- E. ACI PRC-304 - Guide for Measuring, Mixing, Transporting, and Placing Concrete; 2000
(Reapproved 2009).
- F. ACI PRC-305 - Guide to Hot Weather Concreting; 2020.
- G. ACI PRC-306 - Guide to Cold Weather Concreting; 2016.
- H. ACI PRC-308 - Guide to External Curing of Concrete; 2016.
- I. ACI PRC-347 - Guide to Formwork for Concrete; 2014 (Reapproved 2021).
- J. ACI SPEC-117 - Specification for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials; 2010
(Reapproved 2015).
- K. ACI SPEC-301 - Specifications for Concrete Construction; 2020.
- L. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for
Concrete Reinforcement; 2024.
- M. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire
Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2024.
- N. ASTM C33/C33M - Standard Specification for Concrete Aggregates; 2024a.
- O. ASTM C39/C39M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete
Specimens; 2024.
- P. ASTM C94/C94M - Standard Specification for Ready-Mixed Concrete; 2025.
- Q. ASTM C109/C109M - Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Hydraulic Cement
Mortars (Using 50 mm [2 in.] Cube Specimens); 2024.
- R. ASTM C143/C143M - Standard Test Method for Slump of Hydraulic-Cement Concrete; 2020.
- S. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2024.
- T. ASTM C171 - Standard Specification for Sheet Materials for Curing Concrete; 2020.
- U. ASTM C173/C173M - Standard Test Method for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the
Volumetric Method; 2024a.

- V. ASTM C260/C260M - Standard Specification for Air-Entraining Admixtures for Concrete; 2024.
- W. ASTM C309 - Standard Specification for Liquid Membrane-Forming Compounds for Curing Concrete; 2019.
- X. ASTM C330/C330M - Standard Specification for Lightweight Aggregates for Structural Concrete; 2023.
- Y. ASTM C494/C494M - Standard Specification for Chemical Admixtures for Concrete; 2024.
- Z. ASTM C618 - Standard Specification for Coal Ash and Raw or Calcined Natural Pozzolan for Use in Concrete; 2025a.
- AA. ASTM C881/C881M - Standard Specification for Epoxy-Resin-Base Bonding Systems for Concrete; 2020a.
- BB. ASTM C1059/C1059M - Standard Specification for Latex Agents for Bonding Fresh to Hardened Concrete; 2024.
- CC. ASTM C1107/C1107M - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink); 2020.
- DD. ASTM C1240 - Standard Specification for Silica Fume Used in Cementitious Mixtures; 2020.
- EE. ASTM C1602/C1602M - Standard Specification for Mixing Water Used in the Production of Hydraulic Cement Concrete; 2022.
- FF. ASTM D994/D994M - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete (Bituminous Type); 2011 (Reapproved 2022).
- GG. ASTM D1751 - Standard Specification for Preformed Expansion Joint Filler for Concrete Paving and Structural Construction (Nonextruding and Resilient Asphalt Types); 2023.
- HH. ASTM E1155 - Standard Test Method for Determining FF Floor Flatness and FL Floor Levelness Numbers; 2020.

- II. ASTM E1643 - Standard Practice for Selection, Design, Installation, and Inspection of Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth or Granular Fill Under Concrete Slabs; 2024.
- JJ. ASTM E1745 - Standard Specification for Plastic Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Soil or Granular Fill under Concrete Slabs; 2017 (Reapproved 2023).
- KK. COE CRD-C 513 - Handbook for Concrete and Cement Corps of Engineers Specifications for Rubber Waterstops; 1974.
- LL. COE CRD-C 572 - Handbook for Concrete and Cement Corps of Engineers Specifications for Polyvinylchloride Waterstop; 1974.
- MM. ICRI 310.2R - Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings, Polymer Overlays, and Concrete Repair; 2013.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturers' data on manufactured products showing compliance with specified requirements and installation instructions.
 - 1. For curing compounds, provide data on method of removal in the event of incompatibility with floor covering adhesives.
- C. Mix Design: Submit proposed concrete mix design.
 - 1. Indicate proposed mix design complies with requirements of ACI CODE-318, Chapter 5 - Concrete Quality, Mixing and Placing.
- D. Samples: Submit samples of underslab vapor retarder to be used.
- E. Samples: Submit two, 12 inch (305 mm) long samples of waterstops and construction joint devices.
- F. Test Reports: Submit report for each test or series of tests specified.
- G. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: For concrete accessories, indicate installation procedures and interface required with adjacent construction.

- H. Project Record Documents: Accurately record actual locations of embedded utilities and components that will be concealed from view upon completion of concrete work.
- I. Concrete Slab-on-Grade and Elevated Concrete Slab Construction Joint Plans: Submit layout plans indicating the location of proposed construction joints.
- J. Embodied Carbon Footprint Submittals
 - 1. Plant specific Environmental Product Declaration (EPD) for each concrete mixture proposed for the project where available.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work of this section in accordance with ACI SPEC-301 and ACI CODE-318.
 - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- B. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-305 when concreting during hot weather.
- C. Follow recommendations of ACI PRC-306 when concreting during cold weather.

1.6 MOCK-UPS

- A. Construct and erect mock-up panel for architectural concrete surfaces indicated to receive special treatment or finish as result of formwork.
 - 1. Panel Size: Sufficient to illustrate full range of treatment.
- B. Accepted mock-up panel is considered basis of quality for the finished work. Keep mock-up exposed to view for duration of concrete work.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 FORMWORK

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 03 10 00.

2.2 REINFORCEMENT MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements of Section 03 20 00.

2.3 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type 1L - Low Sulfate Resistant Portland Limestone type.

1. Acquire cement for entire project from same source.
- B. Fine and Coarse Aggregates: ASTM C33/C33M.
 1. Acquire aggregates for entire project from same source.
- C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C330/C330M.
- D. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
- E. Calcined Natural Pozzolan: ASTM C618, Class N.
- F. Silica Fume: ASTM C1240, proportioned in accordance with ACI PRC-211.1.
- G. Water: ASTM C1602/C1602M; clean, potable, and not detrimental to concrete.

2.4 ADMIXTURES

- A. Do not use chemicals that will result in soluble chloride ions in excess of 0.1 percent by weight of cement.
- B. Air Entrainment Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- C. High Range Water Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type G.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- D. High Range Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type F.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- E. Water Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type D.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- F. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type B.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- G. Water Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M Type A.
 1. Provide products manufactured by Sika, Master Builders or W.R. Grace.
- H. Waterproofing Admixture: Admixture formulated to reduce permeability to liquid water, with no adverse effect on concrete properties.

1. Admixture Composition: Crystalline, functioning by growth of crystals in capillary pores.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Underslab Vapor Retarder:

1. Sheet Material: ASTM E1745, Class A; stated by manufacturer as suitable for installation in contact with soil or granular fill under concrete slabs. Single-ply polyethylene is prohibited.
2. Accessory Products: Vapor retarder manufacturer's recommended tape, adhesive, mastic, prefabricated boots, etc., for sealing seams and penetrations.
3. Installation: Comply with ASTM E1

B. Non-Shrink Cementitious Grout: Premixed compound consisting of nonmetallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength at 48 Hours, ASTM C109/C109M: 2,000 pounds per square inch (13.7 MPa).
2. Minimum Compressive Strength at 28 Days, ASTM C109/C109M: 7,000 pounds per square inch (48 MPa).

C. Sand fill: Sand fill under interior slabs on grade shall be clean sand free of contaminants that may be detrimental to concrete sand with 100 percent passing No. 20 sieve and 5 percent passing No. 200 sieve.

2.6 BONDING AND JOINTING PRODUCTS

A. Latex Bonding Agent: Non-redispersable acrylic latex, complying with ASTM C1059/C1059M, Type II.

B. Epoxy Bonding System:

1. Complying with ASTM C881/C881M and of Type required for specific application.

C. Slab Isolation Joint Filler: 1/2-inch (13 mm) thick, height equal to slab thickness, with removable top section forming 1/2-inch (13 mm) deep sealant pocket after removal.

- D. Joint Filler: Nonextruding resilient asphalt impregnated fiberboard or felt, complying with ASTM D 1751, 1/4 inch thickness as indicated on drawings and 4 inches deep; tongue and groove profile.
- E. Slab Construction Joint Devices: Combination keyed joint form and screed, galvanized steel, with rectangular or round knockout holes for conduit or rebar to pass through joint form at 6 inches (150 mm) on center; ribbed steel stakes for setting.
 - 1. Provide removable plastic cap strip that forms wedge-shaped joint for sealant installation.

2.7 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Curing Compound, Naturally Dissipating: Clear, water-based, liquid membrane-forming compound; complying with ASTM C309 Type 1-D.
 - 1. Curing compound used on exposed concrete surfaces shall be non-discoloring, fast drying, and shall be conclusively demonstrated not to darken or yellow with age.
 - 2. Curing compound for use on concrete floor surfaces to receive resilient tile or other adherent covering shall be specially formulated for such use and shall be certified by the manufacturer not to inhibit the bonding qualities of flooring adhesives.
 - 3. Provide product containing fugitive red dye.
- B. Curing Compound, Non-Dissipating: Liquid, membrane-forming, clear, nonyellowing acrylic; complying with ASTM C309 Type 1-D.
 - 1. Curing compound used on exposed concrete surfaces shall be non-discoloring, fast drying, and shall be conclusively demonstrated not to darken or yellow with age.
 - 2. Curing compound for use on concrete floor surfaces to receive resilient tile or other adherent covering shall be specially formulated for such use and shall be certified by the manufacturer not to inhibit the bonding qualities of flooring adhesives.
- C. Moisture-Retaining Sheet: ASTM C171.
 - 1. Curing paper, regular.

2. Polyethylene film, white opaque, minimum nominal thickness of 4 mil, 0.004 inch (0.102 mm).
3. White-burlap-polyethylene sheet, weighing not less than 3.8 ounces per square yard (1.71 kg/sq m).

2.8 CONCRETE MIX DESIGN

- A. Proportioning Normal Weight Concrete: Comply with ACI PRC-211.1 recommendations.
- B. Proportioning Structural Lightweight Concrete: Comply with ACI 211.2 recommendations.
- C. Concrete Strength: Establish required average strength for each type of concrete on the basis of field experience or trial mixtures, as specified in ACI SPEC-301.
 1. For trial mixtures method, employ independent testing agency acceptable to Owner's Representative for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs.
- D. Admixtures: Add acceptable admixtures as recommended in ACI PRC-211.1 and at rates recommended or required by manufacturer.
- E. Class A Concrete: For use in foundations, miscellaneous curbs, and house-keeping pads.
 1. Normal Weight Concrete: Dry unit weight not less than 144 pounds or more than 150 pounds per cubic foot.
 2. Compressive Strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM C39/C39M at 28 days: as indicated on drawings.
 3. Water-Cement Ratio: Maximum 57 percent by weight for non-air-entrained concrete and 48 percent by weight for air-entrained concrete.
 4. Air-Entrained Admixture: Shall produce a total air content: 4-1/2 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M.
 5. Maximum Slump: 4 inches (100 mm) at point of discharge from truck, or 8 inches for concrete containing a high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer).
 6. Maximum Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm).

7. Maximum Global Warming Potential (GWP): [____] kg of CO₂ equivalents per cubic meter.
- F. Class B Concrete: For use in slabs on grade.
1. Normal Weight Concrete: Dry unit weight not less than 144 pounds or more than 150 pounds per cubic foot.
 2. Compressive Strength, when tested in accordance with ASTM C39/C39M at 28 days: as indicated on drawings.
 3. Water-Cement Ratio: Maximum 57 percent by weight for non-air-entrained concrete and 48 percent by weight for air-entrained concrete.
 4. Air-Entrained Admixture: Shall produce a total air content: 4-1/2 percent, determined in accordance with ASTM C173/C173M.
 5. Maximum Slump: 4 inches (100 mm) at point of discharge from truck, or 8 inches for concrete containing a high-range water-reducing admixture (superplasticizer).
 6. Maximum Aggregate Size: [1] inch ([25] mm). 1-1/2 inch may be used at slabs on grade to achieve drying shrinkage limits.
 7. Maximum Coarse Aggregate Size at Congested Areas: 3/8 inch with a high-range water-reducing admixture when approved by the Owner's Representative.
 8. Drying Shrinkage: Limit drying shrinkage in slabs on grade to 0.050 percent after 20 days of drying.
 9. Maximum Global Warming Potential (GWP): [____] kg of CO₂ equivalents per cubic meter.
- G. The shrinkage limits for each class of concrete are for laboratory specimens prepared in accordance with ASTM C192 and tested in accordance with ASTM C157

2.9 MIXING

- A. Transit Mixers: Comply with ASTM C94/C94M.

- B. Adding Water: If concrete arrives on-site with slump less than suitable for placement, do not add water that exceeds the maximum water-cement ratio or exceeds the maximum permissible slump.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Comply with the requirements of Section 01410 - Quality Requirements
- B. Batch Plant: Periodic Inspections of the source batch plant shall occur for the duration of concrete placement. Inspections shall occur during the following times, on each day that the concrete is being mixed for this project.:
 - 1. At time of plant startup.
 - 2. During mixing of first five loads of concrete to be delivered to the site.
 - 3. At least once more before the end of the day, during the mixing of five loads of concrete to be delivered to the site.
- C. Aggregates: The Contractor shall supply the Owner's Testing Agency adequate samples of the aggregates to be used on the project. Sampling shall take place as discharged from the weight hopper or as close to the point of discharge into the mixer as possible. Sampling shall take place no more than two days prior to mixing concrete for the project. Sample and test at least once per 500 cubic yards of concrete placed.
- D. The Owner's Testing Agency shall check all aggregates for general suitability, compliance with the specifications, and ASTM C33.
 - 1. Sieve Analysis (ASTM C136)
 - 2. Specific Gravity (ASTM C127 and C128)
 - 3. Absorption (ASTM C127 and C128)
 - 4. Moisture Content of Fine Aggregate (ASTM C70)
 - 5. Cleanliness Value (California Test 227)
 - 6. Sand Equivalent (California Test 217)

- E. Cement: Contractor shall supply the Owner's Testing Agency a certification that the cement has been manufactured and tested in accordance with ASTM C150. Where certification is not available, one grab sample shall be taken and tested for each day's pour. Sampling and testing shall be in accordance with the requirements of ASTM C183.
- F. The Owner's Testing Agency will:
 - 1. Review mix designs and certificates of compliance for materials submitted by the Contractor for review.
 - 2. Inspect the batch plant to verify that the quality controls are adequate.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify lines, levels, and dimensions before proceeding with work of this section.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Formwork: Comply with requirements of ACI SPEC-301. Design and fabricate forms to support all applied loads until concrete is cured and for easy removal without damage to concrete.
- B. Verify that forms are clean and free of rust before applying release agent.
- C. Coordinate placement of embedded items with erection of concrete formwork and placement of form accessories.
- D. Where new concrete is to be bonded to previously placed concrete, prepare existing surface by cleaning and applying bonding agent in according to bonding agent manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Use epoxy bonding system for bonding to damp surfaces, for structural load-bearing applications, and where curing under humid conditions is required. Follow manufacturer's recommendations and requirements on the timing limitation of placing new concrete after the application of epoxy bonding.
 - 2. Use latex bonding agent only for non-load-bearing applications.

- E. Interior Slabs on Grade: Install vapor retarder under interior slabs on grade. Comply with ASTM E1643. Lap joints minimum 6 inches (150 mm). Seal joints, seams and penetrations watertight with manufacturer's recommended products and follow manufacturer's written instructions. Repair damaged vapor retarder before covering.
 - 1. Refer to project geotechnical investigation report for additional requirements on vapor barrier and subgrade preparation.
- F. Roughen concrete surfaces in contact with new or existing concrete to 1/4 inch amplitude and clear of laitance, foreign matter, and loose particles.

3.3 PLACING CONCRETE

- A. Place concrete in accordance with ACI PRC-304.
- B. Place concrete for floor slabs in accordance with ACI PRC-302.1.
- C. Notify Owner's Representative not less than 24 hours prior to commencement of placement operations.
- D. Maintain records of concrete placement. Record date, location, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- E. Ensure reinforcement, inserts, waterstops, embedded parts, and formed construction joint devices will not be disturbed during concrete placement.
- F. Place concrete continuously without construction (cold) joints wherever possible; where construction joints are necessary, before next placement prepare joint surface by removing laitance and exposing the sand and sound surface mortar, by sandblasting or high-pressure water jetting.
- G. Finish floors level and flat, unless otherwise indicated, within the tolerances specified below.

3.4 SLAB JOINTING

- A. Locate joints as indicated on drawings.
- B. Anchor joint fillers and devices to prevent movement during concrete placement.

- C. Isolation Joints: Use preformed joint filler with removable top section for joint sealant, total height equal to thickness of slab, set flush with top of slab.
- D. Saw Cut Contraction Joints: Saw cut joints before concrete begins to cool, within 4 to 12 hours after placing; use 3/16 inch (5 mm) thick blade and cut at least 1 inch (25 mm) deep but not less than one quarter (1/4) the depth of the slab.
- E. Repair underslab vapor retarder damaged during placement of concrete reinforcing. Repair with vapor retarder material; lap over damaged areas minimum 6 inches and seal watertight.
- F. Separate slabs on grade from vertical surfaces with joint filler unless otherwise indicated in the drawings.
- G. Place joint filler in floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- H. Install joint devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- I. Install construction joint devices in coordination with floor slab pattern placement sequence. Set top to required elevations. Secure to resist movement by wet concrete.
- J. Maintain records of concrete placement. Record date, location, quantity, air temperature, and test samples taken.
- K. Place concrete continuously between predetermined expansion, control, and construction joints.
- L. Do not interrupt successive placement; do not permit cold joints to occur.
- M. Place floor slabs in pour strips and checkerboard or saw cut pattern as indicated.
- N. Concrete fill over metal deck: Concrete fill thicknesses shown on the drawings are minimum thicknesses. No allowances have been shown for additional concrete fill required to compensate for steel beam or metal deck deflections to maintain surface tolerance specified.
 - 1. Adjust screeds during placement of concrete on metal deck to accommodate for deflections in metal decking and steel beams to assure the top of slab is at desired elevation.

2. Place screeds along girder lines supported on the steel columns to minimize the effects of deflections in the metal decking and steel beams.

3.5 SEPARATE FLOOR TOPPINGS

- A. Prior to placing floor topping, roughen substrate concrete surface and remove deleterious material. Broom and vacuum clean.
- B. Place required dividers, edge strips, reinforcing, and other items to be cast in.
- C. Apply bonding agent to substrate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.6 FLOOR FLATNESS AND LEVELNESS TOLERANCES

- A. An independent testing agency, as specified in Section 01 40 00, will inspect finished slabs for compliance with specified tolerances.
- B. Minimum F(F) Floor Flatness and F(L) Floor Levelness Values:
 1. Exposed to View and Foot Traffic: F(F) of 35; F(L) of 25.
 2. Under Thick-Bed Tile: F(F) of 25; F(L) of 20.
 3. Under Carpeting: F(F) of 25; F(L) of 20, on-grade only.
 4. Under Thin Resilient Flooring and Thinset Tile: F(F) of 35; F(L) of 25.
- C. Measure F(F) Floor Flatness and F(L) Floor Levelness in accordance with ASTM E1155, within 48 hours after slab installation; report both composite overall values and local values for each measured section.
- D. Correct the slab surface if composite overall value is less than specified and if local value is less than two-thirds of specified value or less than F(F) 13/F(L) 10.
- E. Provide plans to correct floor leveling defects, including methods and areas that requiring corrective works to owner's representative review and approval prior to proceeding the work.

3.7 CONCRETE FINISHING

- A. Repair surface defects, including tie holes, immediately after removing formwork.

- B. Unexposed Form Finish: Rub down or chip off fins or other raised areas 1/4 inch (6 mm) or more in height.
- C. General: Finish to requirements of ACI PRC-302.1 recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Other Surfaces to Be Left Exposed: Trowel as described in ACI PRC-302.1, minimizing burnish marks and other appearance defects.
- D. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screened and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in one direction.
 - 1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces receiving concrete floor topping, to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes, or as indicated.
- E. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until the surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
 - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish, to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing, built-up or membrane roofing, sand-bed terrazzo, or as indicated.
- F. Trowel Finish: Apply to all exposed interior floor slabs unless otherwise indicated. After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 1. Apply trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, pa, or another thin-film-finish coating system.

2. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding 10-ft (3.05 m) long straight edge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
- G. Broom Finish (C-8): Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, parking areas, vehicle traffic areas, and elsewhere as indicated.

3.8 CURING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with requirements of ACI PRC-308. Immediately after placement, protect concrete from premature drying, excessively hot or cold temperatures, and mechanical injury.
- B. Maintain concrete with minimal moisture loss at relatively constant temperature for period necessary for hydration of cement and hardening of concrete.
 1. Normal concrete: Not less than seven days.
 2. High early strength concrete: Not less than four days.
- C. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to uniformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 pounds per square foot times height before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull-floating or darbying concrete but before float finishing.
- D. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1 by one or a combination of the following methods:
 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days.
 2. Moisture-Retaining Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in wide, practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall

within three hours after initial applications. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

- a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer, unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

E. Formed Surfaces: Cure by moist curing with forms in place for full curing period.

F. Surfaces Not in Contact with Forms:

1. Initial Curing: Start as soon as free water has disappeared and before surface is dry. Keep continuously moist for not less than three days by water ponding, water-saturated sand, water-fog spray, or saturated burlap.
2. Slabs on Grade: Continuously moist-cure concrete slabs on grade for seven days minimum. Water fog sprays, ponding, saturated absorptive covers, or moisture-retaining covers may be used.
3. Final Curing: Begin after initial curing but before surface is dry.
 - a. Moisture-Retaining Sheet: Lap strips not less than 3 inches (75 mm) and seal with waterproof tape or adhesive; secure at edges.
 - b. Curing Compound: Apply in two coats at right angles, using application rate recommended by manufacturer.

3.9 CONCRETE REPAIR

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Owner's Representatives. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to the Owner's Representatives' approval.

3.10 MECHANICAL ANCHORS

- A. Expansion edge, drop-in, shell, and sleeve anchors shall conform with the requirements in the drawings.

3.11 ADHESIVE ANCHORS AND ADHESIVE DOWELS

- A. Adhesive anchors and dowels shall conform with the requirements in the drawings.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Comply with ACI 117 Specification for Tolerance for Concrete Construction and Materials.
- C. Provide free access to concrete operations at project site and cooperate with appointed firm.
- D. Submit proposed mix design of each class of concrete to inspection and testing firm for review prior to commencement of concrete operations. Mix designs must include slump and compression test reports, and shrinkage test reports as specified in concrete mix designs.
- E. Tests of concrete and concrete materials may be performed at any time to ensure compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Compressive Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M, for each test, mold and cure three concrete test cylinders. Obtain test samples for every 100 cubic yards (76 cu m) or less of each class of concrete placed.
- G. Take one additional test cylinder during cold weather concreting, cured on job site under same conditions as concrete it represents.
- H. Perform one slump test for each set of test cylinders taken, following procedures of ASTM C143/C143M.

3.13 DEFECTIVE CONCRETE

- A. Test Results: The testing agency shall report test results in writing to Owner's Representative and Contractor within 24 hours of test.

- B. Defective Concrete: Concrete not complying with required lines, details, dimensions, tolerances or specified requirements.
- C. Repair or replacement of defective concrete will be determined by the Owner's Representative.
The cost of additional testing shall be borne by Contractor when defective concrete is identified.
- D. Do not patch, fill, touch-up, repair, or replace exposed concrete except upon express direction of Owner's Representative for each individual area.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Structural steel framing members.
- B. Base plates, shear stud connectors and expansion joint plates.
- C. Grouting under base plates.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 05 31 00 - Steel Decking: Support framing for small openings in deck.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AISC (MAN) - Steel Construction Manual; 2023, with Errata (2025).
- B. AISC 207 - Standard for Certification Programs; 2023.
- C. AISC 303 - Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges; 2022, with Errata (2025).
- D. AISC 341 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings; 2022.
- E. AISC 358 - Prequalified Connections for Special and Intermediate Steel Moment for Seismic Applications; 2022.
- F. AISC 360 - Specification for Structural Steel Buildings; 2022, with Errata (2025).
- G. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2019.
- H. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2024.
- I. ASTM A108 - Standard Specification for Steel Bar, Carbon and Alloy, Cold-Finished; 2024.
- J. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2024.
- K. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2023.

- L. ASTM A242/A242M - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel; 2024.
- M. ASTM A307 - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Bolts, Studs, and Threaded Rod 60 000 PSI Tensile Strength; 2021.
- N. ASTM A449 - Standard Specification for Hex Cap Screws, Bolts and Studs, Steel, Heat Treated, 120/105/90 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, General Use; 2014 (Reapproved 2020).
- O. ASTM A500/A500M - Standard Specification for Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes; 2023.
- P. ASTM A501/A501M - Standard Specification for Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing; 2021.
- Q. ASTM A514/A514M - Standard Specification for High-Yield-Strength, Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel Plate, Suitable for Welding; 2022.
- R. ASTM A529/A529M - Standard Specification for High-Strength Carbon-Manganese Steel of Structural Quality; 2019.
- S. ASTM A563/A563M - Standard Specification for Carbon and Alloy Steel Nuts (Inch and Metric); 2021a.
- T. ASTM A572/A572M - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Columbium-Vanadium Structural Steel; 2021, with Editorial Revision.
- U. ASTM A588/A588M - Standard Specification for High-Strength Low-Alloy Structural Steel, up to 50 ksi [345 MPa] Minimum Yield Point, with Atmospheric Corrosion Resistance; 2024.
- V. ASTM A992/A992M - Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes; 2022.
- W. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2024.

- X. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2023.
- Y. ASTM C1107/C1107M - Standard Specification for Packaged Dry, Hydraulic-Cement Grout (Nonshrink); 2020.
- Z. ASTM E94/E94M - Standard Guide for Radiographic Examination Using Industrial Radiographic Film; 2017.
- AA. ASTM E165/E165M - Standard Practice for Liquid Penetrant Testing for General Industry; 2023.
- BB. ASTM E709 - Standard Guide for Magnetic Particle Testing; 2021.
- CC. ASTM F436/F436M - Standard Specification for Hardened Steel Washers Inch and Metric Dimensions; 2024.
- DD. ASTM F959/F959M - Standard Specification for Compressible-Washer-Type Direct Tension Indicators for Use with Structural Fasteners, Inch and Metric Series; 2017a.
- EE. ASTM F1554 - Standard Specification for Anchor Bolts, Steel, 36, 55, and 105-ksi Yield Strength; 2020.
- FF. ASTM F3125/F3125M - Standard Specification for High Strength Structural Bolts and Assemblies, Steel and Alloy Steel, Heat Treated, Inch Dimensions 120 ksi, 144 ksi, and 150 ksi Minimum Tensile Strength, and Metric Dimensions 830 MPa and 1040 MPa Minimum Tensile Strength; 2025.
- GG. AWS A2.4 - Standard Symbols for Welding, Brazing, and Nondestructive Examination; 2020.
- HH. AWS B2.1/B2.1M - Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification; 2021, with Errata (2023).
- II. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2025.
- JJ. AWS D1.8/D1.8M - Structural Welding Code - Seismic Supplement; 2025.

- KK. IAS AC172 - Accreditation Criteria for Fabricator Inspection Programs for Structural Steel
AC172; 2019, with Editorial Revision (2025).
- LL. ITS (DIR) - Directory of Listed Products; Current Edition.
- MM. RCSC (HSBOLT) - Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts; Research
Council on Structural Connections; 2020.
- NN. SSPC-Paint 15 - Steel Joist Shop Primer/Metal Building Primer; 2004.
- OO. SSPC-Paint 20 - Zinc-Rich Coating (Type I - Inorganic, and Type II - Organic); 2019.
- PP. SSPC-SP 1 - Solvent Cleaning; 2015, with Editorial Revision (2016).
- QQ. SSPC-SP 2 - Hand Tool Cleaning; 2024.
- RR. SSPC-SP 3 - Power Tool Cleaning; 2024.
- SS. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No.1 - White Metal Blast Cleaning; 2006.
- TT. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No.3 - Commercial Blast Cleaning; 2006.
- UU. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No.4 - Brush-Off Blast Cleaning; 2006.
- VV. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No.2 - Near-White Metal Wet Abrasive Blast Cleaning; 2006.
- WW. SSPC-SP 11 - Power-Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal; 2020.
- XX. SSPC-SP 13/NACE No.6 - Surface Preparation of Concrete; 2018.
- YY. UL (FRD) - Fire Resistance Directory; Current Edition.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Indicate profiles, sizes, spacing, locations of structural members, openings, attachments,
and fasteners.
 - 2. Connections.
 - 3. Indicate cambers and loads.
 - 4. Indicate welded connections with AWS A2.4 welding symbols. Indicate net weld lengths.

5. Shop drawings shall not be a reproduction of the structural drawings.
 6. If more than one submittal is required, shop and erection drawings must be as complete as possible for first submittal. Indicate which sections of the shop and erection drawings are not complete prior to submitting for review.
 7. Should more than one submittal be required, later submittals shall clearly identify material added or revised subsequent to previous submittal.
 8. Coordinate shop drawings with the trades performing the work of Division 15 and 16. All holes and openings in beams for passage of ducts and pipes shall be shown on shop drawings and shall be made in the shop.
 9. Coordinate locations of steel members with elevator shop drawings prior to submitting steel shop drawings for review.
- C. Manufacturer's Mill Certificate: Certify that products meet or exceed specified requirements.
- D. Mill Test Reports: Indicate structural strength, destructive test analysis and non-destructive test analysis. Mill Report shall show chemical content and mechanical properties of the material provided. Mill reports shall be traceable to individual pieces of steel used.
- E. Submit certificate of compliance of all welding consumables used on this project.
- F. Submit the weld filler metal manufacturer's technical data sheet for each electrode, include Charpy-V-Notch properties of electrodes for all welds part of lateral load resisting system, where denoted CVN and DCW on drawings.
- G. Submit fastener installation procedure and tightening of high-strength bolted connections in accordance with Section 8 of AISC Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts, indicating type of connection as defined by AISC.
- H. Welders' Qualification Statement: Welders' certificates in accordance with AWS B2.1/B2.1M and dated no more than 12 months before start of scheduled welding work.

- I. Submit proposed sequence of welding to obtain acceptance by the Owner's Representatives before commencing work. The weld sequences shall be planned to minimize residual stress due to weld shrinkage.
- J. Fabricator's Qualification Statement: Provide documentation showing steel fabricator is accredited under IAS AC172 and is an AISC Quality Certified Fabricator for Complex Steel Building Structures or an LADBS Certified Fabricator.
- K. Submit written welding procedures for all welds on the project to Owner's Representatives and Owner's Testing Agency for review. Parameters listed in the weld procedures shall match the technical data as prescribed in the submitted filler metal manufacturer's certificate of conformance.
- L. Contractor's Quality Control Plan for both shop fabrication and field erection. This document shall be prepared in accordance with AISC 341-16 and certified by third party testing agency.
- M. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Testing agency shall submit their written practices for monitoring and control of the agency's operation to Owner's Representatives. The written policy shall include the agency's procedures for selection and administration of inspection personnel, describing the training, experience, and examination requirements for qualification and certification of inspection personnel.
 - 2. Provide qualifications of management and Quality Assurance personnel designated for the project.
 - 3. Submit qualification records for inspectors and Non-Destructive Testing technicians designated for this project.
 - 4. Non-Destructive Testing procedures and equipment calibration records for Non-Destructive Testing to be performed and equipment to be used for this project.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricate structural steel members in accordance with AISC (MAN) "Steel Construction Manual."
- B. Structural steel members designated as architecturally-exposed structural steel (AESS) to also comply with Section 05 12 13.
- C. Maintain one copy of each document on site.
- D. Fabricator: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 10 years of documented experience.
- E. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop must be an AISC Quality Certified Fabricator for Complex Steel Building Structures or City of Los Angeles certified fabricators.
- F. Erector: Company specializing in performing the work of this section with minimum 10 years of documented experience.
- G. Qualification of Welds:
 - 1. All welding shall be performed by operators who are qualified for the types of welds used. Each operator shall have been qualified as prescribed by AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8. Welder qualification shall include passing the bend test.
 - 2. Require welders to retake qualification test if, as determined by the Owner's Representatives, there is reasonable doubt as to the proficiency of the welder. If the welder does not re-qualify, they shall not be employed on this Project.
 - 3. Contractor shall pay all costs associated with welder qualifications.
 - 4. Each welder working on the project shall be qualified for each process and position as a result of having performed a weld qualification test using the consumables and procedures to be used on this project.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Angles and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M.
- B. Steel W Shapes and Tees: ASTM A992/A992M.
- C. Rolled Steel Structural Shapes: ASTM A992/A992M.
- D. Steel Plates and Bars: ASTM A572/A572M, Grade 50 (345) high-strength, columbium-vanadium steel.
- E. Cold-Formed Structural Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B.
- F. Hot-Formed Structural Tubing: ASTM A501/A501M, seamless or welded.
- G. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Grade B, Finish black.
- H. Shear Stud Connectors: Made from ASTM A108 Grade 1015 bars.
- I. Suspension Cable: 7 wire rope.
- J. High-Strength Structural Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM F3125/F3125M, Type 1, with matching compatible ASTM A563/A563M nuts and ASTM F436/F436M washers.
- K. Tension Control Bolts: Twist-off type; ASTM F3125/F3125M.
- L. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554, Grade 55, plain, with matching ASTM A563/A563M nuts and ASTM F436/F436M Type 1 washers.
- M. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F1554 Grade 36, plain.
- N. Load Indicator Washers: Provide washers complying with ASTM F959/F959M at connections requiring high-strength bolts.
- O. Welding Materials: AWS D1.1/D1.1M; type required for materials being welded.
- P. Sliding Bearing Plates: Teflon coated.
- Q. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M; Non-shrink; premixed compound consisting of non-metallic aggregate, cement, water reducing and plasticizing agents.
 - 1. Minimum Compressive Strength at 48 Hours: 2,000 pounds per square inch (13.7 MPa).

2. Minimum Compressive Strength at 28 Days: 7,000 pounds per square inch (48 MPa).
- R. Shop and Touch-Up Primer: Fabricator's standard, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- S. Touch-Up Primer for Galvanized Surfaces: Fabricator's standard, complying with VOC limitations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Welding Electrodes:
 1. As a minimum, use E70 electrodes. Use E80 electrodes minimum at reinforcing steel.
 2. Use low hydrogen electrodes unless noted otherwise.
 3. For all welds where denoted CVN on drawings: Minimum Charpy-V-Notch toughness of 20 ft. lb. at 0 degrees Fahrenheit or as indicated in the drawings or as prescribed by AWS D1.8/1.8M using AWS A5 Standard.
 4. For all welds where denoted DCW on drawings: Minimum Charpy-V-Notch toughness of 20 ft. lb. at 0 degrees Fahrenheit and 40 ft. lb. at 70 degrees Fahrenheit or as indicated in the drawings or as prescribed by AWS D1.8/1.8M for demand critical welds.
 5. For all welds part of lateral force resisting system, designated as a demand critical, shall conform to requirements as specified in AISC 341 - Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings, Section A3.4b and Section I2.3.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. Shop fabricate to greatest extent possible.
- B. Space shear stud connectors at 12 inches (25 mm) on center.
- C. Continuously seal joined members by continuous welds. Grind exposed welds smooth.
- D. Fabricate connections for bolt, nut, and washer connectors.
- E. Fabrication and Erection to conform with the requirements of the current issue of the Specification for the Design, Fabrication, and Erection of Structural Steel Buildings, and

Commentary and Supplements, including Section 10 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel"

for structural steel that will remain exposed in the finished work.

- F. Wire brush and clean materials to remove loose mill scale and rust before fabricating steel.
- G. Punch or drill all holes 1-1/2 inches or less in diameter. Holes that must be larger than 1-1/2 inches in diameter may be burned if approved by the Owner's Representatives prior to fabrication.
- H. Develop required camber for members.
- I. Bolts, General:
 - 1. Machine bolts shall be brought to a snug tight condition so as to prevent excessive movement in the connection materials.
 - 2. High-strength bolts shall be installed in accordance with the latest edition of the Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A325 or A490 Bolts. Pretension all bolts by the turn-of-nut method. Alternative design bolts (twist-off type) or load indicating washers (LIW) may be used. The design bolts (twist-off type) shall only be used for connecting material with a total thickness of 1-1/2 inches or less.
 - 3. Complete flange welds in moment connections prior to final tightening of high-strength bolts.
 - 4. When fully tensioned high-strength bolts have been loosened, re-torque or replace F3125 bolts. Galvanized F3125 and ALL A490 bolts must be replaced if loosened after the initial tensioning.
 - 5. Bolts shall be of a length that will extend entirely through but not more than 1/4-inch beyond the nuts unless otherwise shown on the drawings or approved by the Owner's Representatives.
 - 6. Washers shall be used at all bolts. Use beveled washer where bolts bear on sloping surfaces.

7. Bolts shall be installed such that no threads occur in the shear plane.
 8. Manufacturer's symbol and grade marking shall appear on all bolts and nuts.
 9. Product containers must be marked so that correspondence with mill reports can be established.
 10. Use standard holes unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
 11. Provide weld washers as shown on the drawings at oversized holes in column base plates.
 12. If noted in the drawings as slotted holes, provide short slotted holes unless otherwise noted in the drawings.
 13. Deformed threads or weld nuts to anchor rods when nuts are embedded in concrete. Do not weld high-strength anchor bolts/rods, including but not limited to ASTM A325, A490, A354, A449, and A687.
 14. Bolt connections that are part of Seismic Force Resisting System shall comply with latest edition of AISC 360 - Specification for Structural Steel Buildings, Chapter J, and AISC 341- Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings, Section D.2
- J. Welding shall comply with latest edition of AWS D1.1 and additional AWS D1.8 for components of lateral force resisting system.
1. Contractor is responsible for selection of specific materials and procedures except as specifically noted in the Contract Documents.
 2. The need for preheat, control cooling, and other procedures is to be based on the actual chemistry and mechanical properties and not solely on the grade of which steel was certified.
 3. When selecting materials and procedures, as a minimum, considerations shall be given to the need for pre- and post-heating and control cooling.
 4. When selecting material and procedures, as a minimum, consider the actual restraints in the structure.

5. Weld variable shall be consistent with the Certificate of Conformance for the selected electrode.
6. All tack welds shall be incorporated into the welds specified on the drawings. Tack welds that cannot be in the final weld assembly shall be removed, and the areas to be ground smooth.
7. All groove or butt welds shall be full penetration unless noted otherwise on the drawings.
8. Use stringer beads only (NO WEAVING).
9. Do not weld into the flange to web intersection of weld flange members.
10. Where structural steel members are to remain exposed in the finished work, welds exposed to view shall be uniformly made and ground smooth.
11. Sequence the work as necessary for testing.
12. Remove run-off tabs and backup bars that extend beyond the edges of the connected parts of the joint. Cut off a contoured transition to within 1/8 inch of the connected parts of the joint. Grind surfaces as required to reach a maximum surface roughness of 500 micro-inches.
13. Remove weld splatter where it interferes with architectural treatment.
14. Splices of members in tension, members of moment frames, and or plates more than 2 inches thick shall be made in conformance with Specification Section J1.5 of AISC Steel Construction Manual and Section D2.5 of AISC 341 Seismic Provision for Steel Buildings.
15. Headed studs shall be installed in accordance with AWS D1.1

2.3 FINISH

- A. Prepare structural component surfaces in accordance with SSPC category as indicated in the construction drawings.
- B. For structural steel surface incorporated as part of slip-critical bolted connections, prepared surface in accordance with Class A requirements as defined by AISC, unless otherwise noted.

- C. Shop prime structural steel members. Do not prime surfaces that will be fireproofed, field welded, in contact with concrete, or high strength bolted.
- D. Galvanize structural steel members, as indicated in the drawings, to comply with ASTM A123/A123M. Provide minimum 1.7 oz/sq ft galvanized coating. (Provide minimum 530 g/sq m galvanized coating.)

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. As a minimum, provide all testing and inspection per the requirements of the latest edition of the California Building Code.
- B. All shop and field welding shall be inspected by a qualified and certified Inspector as defined by AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8. employed by the Owner's Testing Agency in accordance with AWS D1.1, AWS D1.8, and in accordance with the Special Inspection Requirements of the California Building Code. The Inspection personnel shall be qualified for nondestructive testing at Level II as specified in AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8, supervised by a Level III CWI. The Test Agency shall submit welding inspector qualifications and welding inspection checklist to Owner's Representatives.
- C. Inspection of shop and field welding operations as follows:
 - 1. As a minimum, provide all inspections per requirements of the California Building Code.
 - 2. Review all Welding Procedure Specifications (WPD) and Prequalification Records (PQR).
 - 3. Verify that AWS qualified procedures are used, including proper use of preheat and control cooling.
 - 4. Check material, equipment, procedures, fit, and tolerance.
 - 5. Verify qualification and certification of the welder performing the welding.
 - 6. Inspect every weld for quality and conformance. As a minimum, visually inspect all welds. Visual inspection of multi-pass welds shall be continuous inspection.
 - 7. Make record of all welds, including:
 - a. Location and type of weld.

- b. Identification marks of welders.
 - c. List of defective welds.
 - d. Manner of correction of defects.
- 8. Take samples of all welding consumables and store in sealed containers.
- 9. Non-Destructive Testing:
 - a. Ultrasonic Test (UT), performed in accordance with ASTM E164, 100% of complete joint penetration groove welds in material 5/16 inch thick or greater. Do not reduce testing frequency unless permission is obtained from Owner's Representatives. Weld acceptance will be based on AWS D1.1 Table 6.2.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, shall be performed on 25% of all beam-to-column complete joint penetration groove welds.
 - c. Ultrasonic Test (UT), performed in accordance with ASTM E164, 100% of partial-joint-penetration groove welds in column splices and column to base plate welds.
 - d. Base metal thicker than 1-1/2 inches, when subjected to through-thickness weld shrinkage strains, shall be Ultrasonically Tested (UT, performed in accordance with ASTM E164) for discontinuities directly behind such welds after joint completion. Any material discontinuities shall be accepted or rejected based on the basis of criteria of AWD D1.1, Table 6.2.
 - e. Provide Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, or Liquid Penetration Testing (LT), performed in accordance with ASTM E165/E165M, for thermally cut surface of beam copes and access holes for beam flange thickness greater than 1-1/2 inches for rolled shapes or web thickness exceeding 1-1/2 inches for built-up shapes.
 - f. Provide Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, on any weld or adjacent area of the reduced beam section (RBS) cut surface that has been repaired by welding or grinding.
 - g. Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, at end of welds where weld tabs have been removed
- D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Provide testing and verification of shop-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts," for each size and grade. Test each lot of bolts, nuts, and washers.
- E. Testing of End-Welded Studs:
 - 1. End-welded studs shall be randomly sampled and tested from stock furnished to each project. Tests shall meet the requirements in Table 7.3.1 of AWD D1.1. The minimum number of tests of each required property from number of Pieces to be used from Identified Package Number of Specimens shall be as follows:
 - a. # of Pieces # of tests
 - b. 150 and less 1

- | | | |
|----|-----------------|----|
| c. | 151 to 280 | 2 |
| d. | 281 to 500 | 3 |
| e. | 501 to 1,200 | 5 |
| f. | 1,201 to 3,200 | 8 |
| g. | 3,201 to 10,000 | 13 |
| h. | 10,1001 to over | 20 |
2. Qualify and test welded studs in accordance with AWD D1.1, Section 7.6, using the tension test method and Section 7.7.
- F. Mill Reports: Testing Agency shall review all mill reports for conformance with referenced standards.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that conditions are appropriate for erection of structural steel and that the work may properly proceed.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Erect structural steel in compliance with AISC 303.
- B. Allow for erection loads and provide sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure in safe condition, plumb, and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- C. Field weld components and shear studs indicated on shop drawings.
- D. Use carbon steel bolts only for temporary bracing during construction, unless otherwise specifically permitted on drawings. Install high-strength bolts in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts".
- E. Do not field cut or alter structural members without approval of Owner's Representative.
- F. After erection, prime welds, abrasions, and surfaces not shop primed, except surfaces to be in contact with concrete.
- G. Grout solidly between column plates and bearing surfaces, complying with manufacturer's instructions for nonshrink grout. Trowel grouted surfaces smooth, splaying neatly to 45 degrees.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Conform to the tolerances of AISC 303.
- B. Conform to the tolerances of the AISC 303, Section 10 (AECS) for architecturally exposed structural steel as indicated on the structural and architectural drawings.
- C. Braced frame connection tolerances:
 - 1. Verify that the 2t minimum, 4t maximum offset from the yield line to brace end is maintained at each end of the brace.
 - 2. Verify that the 2 inch minimum offset from the brace to the edge of the gusset plate is maintained and that the gusset plate edge slopes are the same slope as shown on Shop Drawings and Structural Drawings.
 - 3. Verify that the gusset plate yield lines are isolated from the concrete slabs as shown on the Structural Drawings. Verify that the gusset plate stiffeners do not extend beyond yield line.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements.
- B. As a minimum, provide all testing and inspection per the requirement of the latest edition of the California Building Code.
- C. Field quality control shall, as a minimum, conform to the requirements specified under Source Quality Assurance.
- D. All field welding shall be inspected by a qualified and certified Inspector as defined by AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8. employed by the Owner's Testing Agency in accordance with AWS D1.1, AWS D1.8, and in accordance with the Special Inspection Requirements of the California Building Code. The Inspection personnel shall be qualified for nondestructive testing at Level II as specified in AWS D1.1 and AWS D1.8, supervised by a Level III CWI. The Test Agency

shall submit welding inspector qualifications and welding inspection checklist to Owner's Representatives.

E. Inspection of field welding operations as follow:

1. As a minimum, provide all inspections per requirements of the California Building Code.
2. Review all Welding Procedure Specifications (WPD) and Prequalification Records (PQR).
3. Verify that AWS qualified procedures are used, including proper use of preheat and control cooling.
4. Check material, equipment, procedures, fit, and tolerance.
5. Verify qualification and certification of the welder performing the welding.
6. Inspect every weld for quality and conformance. As a minimum visually inspect all welds. Visual inspection of multi-pass welds shall be continuous inspection.
7. Make record of all welds, including:
 - a. Location and type of weld.
 - b. Identification marks of welders.
 - c. List of defective welds.
 - d. Manner of correction of defects.
8. Take samples of all welding consumables and store in sealed containers.
9. Non-Destructive Testing:
 - a. Ultrasonic Test (UT), performed in accordance with ASTM E164, 100% of complete joint penetration groove welds in material 5/16 inch thick or greater. Do not reduce testing frequency unless permission is obtained from Owner's Representatives. Weld acceptance will be based on AWS D1.1 Table 6.2.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, shall be performed on 25% of all beam-to-column complete joint penetration groove welds.
 - c. Ultrasonic Test (UT), performed in accordance with ASTM E164, 100% of partial-joint-penetration groove welds in column splices and column to base plate welds.
 - d. Base metal thicker than 1-1/2 inches, when subjected to through-thickness weld shrinkage strains, shall be Ultrasonically Tested (UT, performed in accordance with ASTM E164) for discontinuities directly behind such welds after joint completion. Any material discontinuities shall be accepted or rejected based on the basis of criteria of AWD D1.1, Table 6.2
 - e. Provide Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, or Liquid Penetration Testing (LT), performed in accordance with ASTM E165/E165M, for thermally cut surface of beam copes and access holes for beam

- flange thickness greater than 1-1/2 inches for rolled shapes or web thickness exceeding 1-1/2 inches for built-up shapes. Provide Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, on any weld or adjacent area of the reduced beam section (RBS) cut surface that has been repaired by welding or grinding. Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, at end of welds where weld tabs have been removed
- f. Provide Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, on any weld or adjacent area of the reduced beam section (RBS) cut surface that has been repaired by welding or grinding.
- g. Magnetic Particle Testing (MT), performed in accordance with ASTM E709, at end of welds where weld tabs have been removed.
- F. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: Provide testing and verification of field-bolted connections in accordance with RCSC (HSBOLT) "Specification for Structural Joints Using High-Strength Bolts" for each size and grade. Fully tensioned bolt that are identified as Slip Critical (SC) on the Contract Documents shall be tested and inspected as follows:
1. Ensure faying surface meets the specified preparation prior to bolting.
 2. Observe the bolt installation demonstration, testing, and the calibration procedures.
 3. Monitor the installation of bolts to verify that the selected installation procedure has been used to tighten all bolts to the minimum pretensioning specified in Table 4 of the RCSC (HSBOLT).
- G. Testing of End-Welded Studs:
1. End-welded studs shall be randomly sampled and tested from stock furnished to each project. Tests shall meet the requirements in Table 7.3.1 of AWD D1.1. The minimum number of tests of each required property from number of Pieces to be used from Identified Package Number of Specimens shall be as follows:

a.	# of Pieces	# of tests
b.	150 and less	1
c.	151 to 280	2
d.	281 to 500	3
e.	501 to 1,200	5
f.	1,201 to 3,200	8
g.	3,201 to 10,000	13
h.	10,1001 to over	20

2. Qualify and test welded studs in accordance with AWD D1.1, Section 7.6, using the tension test method and Section 7.7.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal fabrications and includes, but is not limited to, the following types of fabrications:

1. Supports for counter tops and vanities.
2. Aluminum framed entrance and storefront framing.
3. Vertically folding operable partition framing.
4. Tube framing for partial height walls.
5. Steel ladders.
6. Ladder safety cages.
7. Steel ship's ladders.
8. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
9. Miscellaneous framing and supports.
10. Bicycle racks.
11. Pipe bollards.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for the following:
1. Paint products.
 2. Grout.
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: Provide documentation for adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, adhesive primers, sealants, sealant primers and caulks, including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with local or regional air pollution control or air quality management district rules where applicable, or SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits as shown in CALgreen Tables 5.504.4.1 and 5.504.4.2.
 2. Section A5.405.4 Recycled Content: Use recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.

- a. Tier 1: The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
 - C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings detailing the fabrication and erection of each metal fabrication indicated. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
 - 1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data, for information only, signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 2. Include plans and elevations at not less than 1" to 1'-0" scale, and include details of sections and connections at not less than 3" to 1'-0" scale.
 - D. Samples: Submit samples of the following:
 - 1. Each type and finish of extruded nosing and tread.
 - 2. 12 inch long lengths of barrier cable.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Welding Certificates: Copies of certificates for welding procedures and personnel.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Fabricator/Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing metal fabrications similar to those indicated for this Project for a minimum of 5 years, with a record of successful in-service performance, with sufficient production capacity to produce required units without causing delay in the work.
 - B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of metal fabrications that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
 - C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
 - 4. Certify that each welder has satisfactorily passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and, if pertinent, has undergone recertification.
 - D. Sample Installation:
 - 1. Following review of samples, construct sample installation of the following:
 - a. Countertop and vanity.

2. The sample installation shall be complete with all anchors, jointing, plywood, finished countertop surfacing, lavatory bowls and supports, as shown in accordance with the final shop drawings. Sample installations shall be reviewed by the Architect for acceptance of workmanship only. Replace unsatisfactory work as directed for final acceptance. Maintain sample installations during construction as a standard for judging acceptability of countertop work. Properly finished and maintained sample installation may be retained as a portion of the completed Work.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store metal fabrications in a dry, well-ventilated, weathertight place. Deliver and handle so as to prevent any type of damage to the fabricated work.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Where metal fabrications are indicated to fit walls and other construction, verify dimensions by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions. Allow for trimming and fitting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance:
 1. Counter Tops and Vanities: Provide countertop and vanity framing capable of withstanding the following structural loads without exceeding the allowable design working stress of the materials involved, including anchors and connections, or of exhibiting excessive deflections in any of the components making up the countertops and vanities:
 - a. All deadloads.
 - b. 500 pound live load placed on the countertop and vanity.
 - c. Deflection at Midspan:
 - 1) Solid Surfacing: $L/360$ times span or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.
 2. Operable Partition Framing: Fabricate and install operable partition framing so that, when installed, it is capable of supporting all deadloads and withstanding the live loads imposed on it from the operation of the operable partition.

3. Tube Framing for Partial Height Walls: Provide tube framing for partial height walls capable of withstanding a deflection not to exceed $L/720$ of the wall height when subjected to a positive and negative pressure of 5 psf.
8. Ceiling-Hung Toilet Compartments and: Fabricate and install support framing capable of supporting all deadloads and withstanding live loads imposed from functioning operations.
10. Exterior Storefront Support Framing: Fabricate and install secondary support framing capable of supporting all deadloads and withstanding live loads imposed on it from the curtain wall primary framing with deflection limited to not more than $1/360$ of component span.
11. Other Overhead Anchored Fabrications: Fabricate and install framing as required to sustain imposed loads and to limit deflections to $L/720$ between hangers.
12. Support Framing for decorative items: Provide framing for partial height items, full height items, floor to ceiling anchored items, and other items within 48 inches of the floor should be capable of withstanding a deflection not to exceed $L/720$ of the height when subjected to a positive and negative pressure of 5 psf.

- B. Exterior Metal Fabrications: All exterior metal fabrications shall be fabricated and installed to prevent buckling, opening up of joints and overstressing of welds and fasteners under the following temperature conditions:
 1. Base fabrication on a temperature of +70 deg F at time of installation with allowance made for an exposed metal surface temperature range of -5 deg F to +180 deg F. Make all necessary adjustments and provisions for concealed expansion.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

2.3 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Cold Finished Steel Bars: ASTM A 108, grade as selected by fabricator.
- E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- F. Steel Tubing: Cold-formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 500/A 500M, or hot formed steel tubing complying with ASTM A 501/A 501M.

- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40) minimum, unless otherwise indicated or required to satisfy the performance requirements; finish as follows:
 - 1. Black finish, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.
 - H. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot and with flanged edges returned toward web complying with MFMA-4 and fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 1011/A 1011M. Width, depth, and metal thickness as required to suit performance requirements.
 - I. Gray-Iron Castings: ASTM A 48, Class 30, unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.
 - J. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchor channel type, with filler strips, manufactured from formed hot or cold rolled carbon steel channels with flange edges returned toward web, having a minimum of 2 stud, or I, anchors shop welded to the back of each channel, complying with ASTM A 1011. Provide channels, bolts, washers, and shims hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M. Width, depth, and metal thickness as required to suit performance requirements.
 - K. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
 - L. Steel Bars for Gratings: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 2.4 ALUMINUM
- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy 6063-T6.
 - B. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, alloy 6061-T6.
- 2.5 PAINT
- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Paints and coatings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 - B. Exposed Metal Finish: Refer to 09 96 00.13 for all exposed metal finishes and primers
 - C. Shop Primer for Ferrous Metal not exposed: Organic zinc-rich primer, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Carboline 621; Carboline Company.
 - b. Aquapon Zinc-Rich Primer 97-670; PPG Paints.
 - c. Tneme-Zinc 90-97; Tnemec Company, Inc.
- D. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.6 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
- D. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- E. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.3.
- F. Plain Washers: Round, carbon steel, ASME B18.22.1.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- 1. Interior Expansion Anchor Material: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Exterior Expansion Anchor Material: Alloy Group 1 or 2 stainless-steel bolts complying with ASTM F 593 and nuts complying with ASTM F 594.
- H. Toggle Bolts: FS FF-B-588, tumble-wing type, class and style as needed.

2.7 GROUT

- A. Non-shrink, Non-metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.8 CONCRETE FILL

- A. Concrete Materials and Properties: Composed of ASTM C 150 Type I Portland cement, ASTM C 33 sand and coarse aggregates and potable water to produce a low slump mix suitable for placement. Grade coarse aggregate from 1/8 inch with at least 95 percent passing a 3/8 inch sieve and not more than 10 percent passing a No. 8 sieve. Fill shall be proportioned to provide a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi.

2.9 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
 - 1. Welded connections may be used where bolted connections are shown.
- B. Shear and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs.
- C. Ease exposed edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Weld corners and seams continuously along entire line of contact to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- E. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Fabricate and space anchoring devices and fasteners to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water, or provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight sharp edges.
- I. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed traffic surfaces.

- J. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Use exposed fasteners of type indicated or, if not indicated, Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts. Locate joints where least conspicuous. Make up threaded connections tight so that threads are entirely concealed.
- K. Hot-dip galvanize all exterior ferrous metal fabrications embedded in concrete. Hot-dip galvanize all other items where specified or shown.
 - 1. Exterior ferrous metal fabrications are defined as those items which are indicated to be installed in areas exposed to conditions which are not controlled by the building heating and cooling systems.
 - 2. Interior ferrous metal fabrications are defined as those items which are indicated to be installed in areas exposed to conditions which are controlled by the building heating and cooling systems.

2.10 STEEL LADDERS

- A. General: Fabricate ladders for locations shown, with dimensions, spacings, details, and anchorages as indicated.
 - 1. Comply with ANSI A14.3, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1.
- B. Siderails: Continuous, 1/2 by 2-1/2 inch steel flat bars, with eased edges, spaced 18 inches apart.
- C. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8 by 2-1/2 inch steel flat bars, with eased edges, spaced 16 inches apart.
- D. Bar Rungs: 3/4 inch diameter steel bars, spaced 12 inches o.c.
- E. Fit rungs in centerline of side rails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
- F. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets. Size brackets to support design loads specified in ANSI A14.3.
- G. Provide non-slip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
- H. Provide non-slip surfaces on top of each rung by coating with abrasive material metallically bonded to rung by a proprietary process.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or equal:
 - a. Mebac; IKG Borden.
 - b. SLIP-NOT; W. S. Molnar Company.

- I. Galvanize exterior ladders; prime paint interior ladders.

2.11 LADDER SAFETY CAGES

- A. General: Fabricate ladder safety cages to comply with ANSI A14.3. Assemble by welding or riveting.
- B. Primary Hoops: 5/16 by 4 inch steel flat bar hoops. Provide at tops and bottoms of cages and spaced not more than 20 feet o.c.
- C. Secondary Intermediate Hoops: 5/16 by 2 inch steel flat bar hoops, spaced not more than 48 inches o.c. between primary hoops.
- D. Vertical Bars: 5/16 by 2 inch steel flat bars secured to each hoop, spaced approximately 9 inches o.c.
- E. Fasten assembled safety cage to ladder rails and adjacent construction by welding or riveting, unless otherwise indicated.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports indicated and as necessary to complete the Work and which are not a part of the structural framework, including but not limited to framing and supports for elevator hoistway beams, machine, sheave and dead hitch beams, elevator car and counterweight rail supports, support angles for elevator door sills, entrance and storefront frames, curtain wall secondary support framing, sliding doors, countertop and vanities, ceiling hung toilet compartments, tube framing for partial height walls,, .
- B. Fabricate units from structural-steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.
- C. Supports for Operable Partitions: Fabricate by providing continuous steel shapes with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as required to sustain imposed loads. Drill bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Framing for Ceiling Hung Toilet Compartments: Provide framing for ceiling hung toilet compartments, coordinated with the partitions and including provisions for partition anchorage as required to sustain imposed loads and to limit deflections to $L/360$ between hangers, fabricated from the following.
 1. Structural Steel Shapes, Plates and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

2. Modular Structural Framing System: Modular, structural quality steel pre-formed "U" channel framing system with continuous open slot prepared to receive attachment nuts, bolts, straps, threaded rods, beam clamps, hanger rods support brackets and other accessories. Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant finish.
 3. Provide steel rods, 1/2 inch diameter, spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. Thread rods to receive anchor and stop nuts. Fit hangers with wedge shape washers for full bearing on sloping flanges of support beam.
 4. Coordinate installation with toilet compartment manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations.
- E. Countertop and Vanity Framing: Custom fabricate countertop and vanity framing, using steel shapes and plates, and cold finished mild steel bars at exposed conditions, for support framing and plywood, to the thicknesses, sizes and shapes shown, and as required to produce work of adequate strength and durability, without objectionable deflections. Use proven details of fabrication, as required, to achieve proper assembly and alignment of the various components of the work.

2.13 BICYCLE RACKS

- A. Fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe, fully welded together, to lengths indicated.
- B. Fabricate with NPS 3 top rails and end posts, NPS 1-1/2 bottom rails and intermediate posts not more than 72 inches o.c., and vertical separators at approximately 8 inches o.c.
- C. Make top rails 36 inches above pavement/floor and bottom rails 4 inches above pavement/floor.
- D. Fabricate end posts and intermediate posts with 1/4 inch thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill end post baseplates at all four corners and intermediate-post baseplates at 2 opposite sides for 1/2 inch anchor bolts.
- E. Galvanize bicycle racks after fabrication.
- F. Prime bicycle racks with zinc-rich primer.

2.14 PIPE BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate pipe bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
- B. Fabricate pipe bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
 1. Cap bollards with 1/4 inch minimum steel plate.
- C. Fabricate bollards with 3/8 inch thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4 inch anchor bolts.

1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.
- D. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe with 1/4 inch thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve.
- E. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or 1/4 inch wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD 1/16 inch less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 1/2 inch steel machine bolt.
- F. Galvanize bollards after fabrication.

2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Exposed Metal Finish: Refer to 09 96 00.13 for all exposed metal finishes and primer
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces by removing oil, grease, and similar contaminants in accordance with SSPC-SP 1 "Solvent Cleaning," followed with the SSPC surface-preparation specifications listed below and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications. Surface preparation shall be done after fabrication and immediately prior to shop painting. Apply shop coat of paint within 4 hours after cleaning and before rust bloom occurs.
 1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B): SSPC-SP 6, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- D. Apply a minimum of one coat of shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be field welded, and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1," for shop painting.
 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 2. Dry Film Thickness of Primer: 2.5 to 3.0 mils, dry film thickness. Apply paint thoroughly and evenly to dry surfaces, free from holidays and pinholes, in accordance with manufacturer's directions.

2.16 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
- B. Bright, Directional Polish: No. 4 finish.

- C. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

2.17 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Exposed Metal Finish: Refer to 09 96 00.13 for all exposed metal finishes and primer
- C. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
- D. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 607.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- C. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- D. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Quality of Workmanship:
 - a. At concealed connections: No improvement from mill finish, except preparation necessary for priming is required. Welds are not required to be ground.

- b. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness, pits, mill marks, nicks, or scratches show after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface. Defects and distortions shall not be visible to the eye nor show through painted or polished surfaces.
- E. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings, if any.
- B. Operable Panel Partition Horizontal Framing: Anchor supports securely to and rigidly brace from building structure. Laser level horizontal framing.
- C. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
- D. Ceiling Hung Toilet Partitions: Anchor supports securely to, and rigidly brace from, overhead building structure.

3.3 INSTALLING PIPE GUARDS

- A. Install pipe guards at exposed vertical pipes in parking garage where not protected by curbs or other barriers. Install by bolting to floor and wall or column with drilled-in expansion anchors.

3.4 INSTALLING PIPE BOLLARDS

- A. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete. After bollards have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between bollard and sleeve solidly with non-shrink, non-metallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
- B. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch greater than OD of bollard. After bollards have been inserted into holes, fill annular space surrounding bollard solidly with non-shrink, non-metallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
- C. Anchor bollards in place with concrete footings. Support and brace bollards in position in footing excavations until concrete has been placed and cured.

- D. Anchor bollards to existing construction with post-installed anchors and bolts. Provide four 3/4 inch anchors at each bollard, unless otherwise indicated. Embed anchors at least 4 inches in existing concrete.
- E. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in concrete by inserting into pipe sleeves preset into concrete. After internal sleeves have been inserted, fill annular space between sleeves solidly with non-shrink, non-metallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward internal sleeve.
- F. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch greater than OD of sleeve. After sleeves have been inserted into holes, fill annular space surrounding sleeves solidly with non-shrink, non-metallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward sleeve.
- G. Anchor internal sleeves for removable bollards in place with concrete footings. Support and brace sleeves in position in footing excavations until concrete has been placed and cured.
 - 1. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 1/2 inch machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner will furnish padlocks.
- H. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface.
 - 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0 mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and Section 09 96 13 "High-Performance Coatings."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY**PART 1 GENERAL****1.1 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Structural dimension lumber framing.
- B. Exposed timber structural framing.
- C. Structural composite lumber framing.
- D. Nonstructural dimension lumber framing.
- E. Rough opening framing for doors, windows, and roof openings.
- F. Sheathing.
- G. Subflooring.
- H. Roof-mounted curbs.
- I. Roofing nailers.
- J. Roofing cant strips.
- K. Preservative treated wood materials.
- L. Miscellaneous framing and sheathing.
- M. Communications and electrical room mounting boards.
- N. Concealed wood blocking, nailers, and supports.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Setting anchors in concrete.
- B. Section 05 12 00 - Structural Steel Framing: Prefabricated beams and columns for support of wood framing.
- C. Section 06 17 33 - Wood I-Joists.
- D. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Sill flashings.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ANSI A208.1 - American National Standard for Particleboard; 2022.

- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2023.
- C. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2025.
- D. ASTM C1396/C1396M - Standard Specification for Gypsum Board; 2024.
- E. ASTM D5456 - Standard Specification for Evaluation of Structural Composite Lumber Products; 2021, with Editorial Revision.
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2024.
- G. AWC (WFCM) - Wood Frame Construction Manual for One- and Two-Family Dwellings; 2024, with Errata.
- H. AWPA U1 - Use Category System: User Specification for Treated Wood; 2025.
- I. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2023.
- J. PS 2 - Performance Standard for Wood Structural Panels; 2019.
- K. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard; 2025.
- L. RIS (GR) - Standard Specifications for Grades of California Redwood Lumber; 2019.
- M. SPIB (GR) - Standard Grading Rules; 2021.
- N. WCLIB (GR) - WCLB Standard Grading Rules for West Coast & Imported Softwood Lumber No.18; 2024.
- O. WWPA G-5 - Western Lumber Grading Rules; 2025.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide technical data on insulated sheathing, application instructions, and wood preservative materials.

- C. Structural Composite Lumber: Submit manufacturer's published structural data including span tables, marked to indicate which sizes and grades are being used; if structural composite lumber is being substituted for dimension lumber or timbers, submit grading agency structural tables marked for comparison.
- D. Samples: For rough carpentry members exposed to view, submit two samples, 2 feet by 2 feet inch (____ by ____ mm) in size illustrating wood grain, color, and general appearance.
- E. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that wood products supplied for rough carpentry meet or exceed specified requirements.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Comply with PS 20 and requirements of specified grading agencies.
 - 1. If no species is specified, provide species graded by the agency specified; if no grading agency is specified, provide lumber graded by grading agency meeting the specified requirements.
 - 2. Grading Agency: Grading agency whose rules are approved by the Board of Review, American Lumber Standard Committee at www.alsc.org, and who provides grading service for the species and grade specified; provide lumber stamped with grade mark unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Lumber fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.

2.2 DIMENSION LUMBER FOR CONCEALED APPLICATIONS

- A. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings, S4S.
- B. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.
- C. Stud Framing (2 by 2 through 2 by 6 (50 by 50 mm through 50 by 150 mm)):
 - 1. Grade: As indicated on drawings.

D. Joist, Rafter, and Small Beam Framing (2 by 6 through 4 by 16 (50 by 150 mm through 100 by 400 mm)):

1. Species and Grades: As indicated on drawings for various locations.

E. Miscellaneous Framing, Blocking, Nailers, Grounds, and Furring:

1. Lumber: S4S, No. 2 or Standard Grade.

2. Boards: As indicated on drawings.

2.3 EXPOSED DIMENSION LUMBER

A. Sizes: Nominal sizes as indicated on drawings.

B. Surfacing: S4S.

C. Moisture Content: S-dry or MC19.

2.4 EXPOSED TIMBERS

A. Submit manufacturer's certificate that products meet or exceed specified requirements, in lieu of grade stamping.

B. Moisture Content: Kiln-dry (20 percent maximum).

C. Surfacing: S4S.

D. Species: Redwood.

E. Grade: Clear Heart Structural.

2.5 STRUCTURAL COMPOSITE LUMBER

A. At Contractor's option, structural composite lumber may be substituted for concealed dimension lumber and timbers.

B. Structural Composite Lumber Materials: Factory-fabricated engineered wood products consisting of wood veneers, strands, or flakes pressed with moisture-resistant adhesive into blocks of material, evaluated in accordance with ASTM D5456.

1. Laminated Veneer Lumber (LVL): Engineered wood products consisting of thin wood veneer bonded together with adhesive with grain of veneers running parallel to long dimension.
 - a. Manufacturer's Published Modulus of Elasticity, E: 2,000,000 psi (13,790 MPa), minimum.
2. Parallel Strand Lumber (PSL): Engineered wood products consisting of long wood strands bonded together with adhesive with grain running parallel to long dimension.
 - a. Strand Length-to-Thickness Ratio: Approximately 300.
 - b. Manufacturer's Published Modulus of Elasticity, E: 1,800,000 psi (12,410 MPa), minimum.
3. Laminated Strand Lumber (LSL): Engineered wood products consisting of flaked wood strands bonded together with adhesive.
 - a. Strand Length-to-Thickness Ratio: Approximately 150.
 - b. Manufacturer's Published Modulus of Elasticity, E: 1,800,000 psi (12,410 MPa), minimum.
4. Oriented Strand Lumber (OSL): Engineered wood product consisting of flaked wood strands bonded together with adhesive.
 - a. Strand Length-to-Thickness Ratio: Approximately 75.
 - b. Manufacturer's Published Modulus of Elasticity, E: 1,800,000 psi (12,410 MPa), minimum.

2.6 CONSTRUCTION PANELS

- A. Roof Sheathing: PS 2 type, rated Structural I Sheathing.
 1. Bond Classification: Exterior.
 2. Span Rating: 60.
 3. Performance Category: 3/4 PERF CAT.
- B. Wall Sheathing: PS 2 type.
 1. Bond Classification: Exterior.
 2. Grade: Structural I Sheathing.
 3. Span Rating: 24.
 4. Performance Category: 5/16 PERF CAT.
 5. Edge Profile: Square edge.

- C. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: PS 1 A-D plywood, or medium density fiberboard; 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick; flame spread index of 25 or less, smoke developed index of 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Metal and Finish of Fasteners:
 - 1. Fire-Retardant-Treated Wood:
 - a. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations.
 - 2. Preservative-Treated Wood:
 - a. Nails, timber rivets, wood screws, and lag screws - general use: Hot-dip galvanized steel complying with ASTM A153/A153M Class D.
 - 3. Untreated Wood: Unfinished steel.
- B. Die-Stamped Connectors: Hot dipped galvanized steel, sized to suit framing conditions.
 - 1. For contact with preservative treated wood in exposed locations, provide minimum G185 (Z550) galvanizing complying with ASTM A653/A653M.
- C. Joist Hangers: Hot dipped galvanized steel, sized to suit framing conditions.
 - 1. For contact with preservative treated wood in exposed locations, provide minimum G185 (Z550) galvanizing complying with ASTM A653/A653M.
- D. Sill Gasket on Top of Foundation Wall: 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, closed-cell plastic foam.
 - 1. Width: 5-1/2 inches (140 mm).
 - 2. Ultraviolet (UV) and Weathering Resistance: Approved in writing by manufacturer for up to 30 days of weather exposure.
- E. Sill Flashing: See Section 07 62 00.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Install sill gasket under sill plate of framed walls bearing on foundations; puncture gasket cleanly to fit tightly around protruding anchor bolts.
- B. Coordinate installation of rough carpentry members specified in other sections.

3.2 INSTALLATION - GENERAL

- A. Select material sizes to minimize waste.
- B. Reuse scrap to the greatest extent possible; clearly separate scrap for use on site as accessory components, including: shims, bracing, and blocking.
- C. Where treated wood is used on interior, provide temporary ventilation during and immediately after installation sufficient to remove indoor air contaminants.

3.3 FRAMING INSTALLATION

- A. Set structural members level, plumb, and true to line. Discard pieces with defects that would lower required strength or result in unacceptable appearance of exposed members.
- B. Make provisions for temporary construction loads, and provide temporary bracing sufficient to maintain structure in true alignment and safe condition until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- C. Install structural members full length without splices unless otherwise specifically detailed.
- D. Comply with member sizes, spacing, and configurations indicated, and fastener size and spacing indicated, but not less than required by applicable codes and AWC (WFCM) Wood Frame Construction Manual.
- E. Install horizontal spanning members with crown edge up and not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of bearing at each end.
- F. Construct double joist headers at floor and ceiling openings and under wall stud partitions that are parallel to floor joists; use metal joist hangers unless otherwise detailed.
- G. Provide bridging at joists in excess of 8 feet (2.3 m) span as detailed. Fit solid blocking at ends of members.
- H. Frame wall openings with two or more studs at each jamb; support headers on cripple studs.

3.4 BLOCKING, NAILERS, AND SUPPORTS

- A. Provide framing and blocking members as indicated or as required to support finishes, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
- B. In walls, provide blocking attached to studs as backing and support for wall-mounted items, unless item can be securely fastened to two or more studs or other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- C. Where ceiling-mounting is indicated, provide blocking and supplementary supports above ceiling, unless other method of support is explicitly indicated.
- D. Provide nonstructural framing and blocking to support the following:
 - 1. Cabinets and shelf supports.
 - 2. Wall brackets.
 - 3. Handrails.
 - 4. Grab bars.
 - 5. Towel and bath accessories.
 - 6. Wall-mounted door stops.
 - 7. Chalkboards and marker boards.
 - 8. Wall paneling and trim.
 - 9. Joints of rigid wall coverings that occur between studs.
 - 10. Other wall- or ceiling-mounted items indicated on drawings.

3.5 ROOF-RELATED CARPENTRY

- A. Coordinate installation of roofing carpentry with deck construction, framing of roof openings, and roofing assembly installation.
- B. Provide wood curb at each roof opening except where prefabricated curbs are specified and where specifically indicated otherwise; form corners by alternating lapping side members.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONSTRUCTION PANELS

- A. Roof Sheathing: Secure panels with long dimension perpendicular to framing members, with ends staggered and over firm bearing.
 - 1. Nail panels to framing; staples are not permitted.
- B. Wall Sheathing: Secure with long dimension perpendicular to wall studs, with ends over firm bearing and staggered, using nails, screws, or staples.
- C. Communications and Electrical Room Mounting Boards: Secure with screws to studs with edges over firm bearing; space fasteners at maximum 24 inches (610 mm) on center on all edges and into studs in field of board.
 - 1. At fire-rated walls, install board over wall board indicated as part of the fire-rated assembly.
 - 2. Where boards are indicated as full floor-to-ceiling height, install with long edge of board parallel to studs.
 - 3. Install adjacent boards without gaps.

3.7 TOLERANCES

- A. Framing Members: 1/4 inch (6 mm) from true position, maximum.
- B. Surface Flatness of Floor: 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1 mm/m) maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet (7 mm in 10 m) maximum.
- C. Variation from Plane, Other than Floors: 1/4 inch in 10 feet (2 mm/m) maximum, and 1/4 inch in 30 feet (7 mm in 10 m) maximum.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Waste Disposal: See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal.
 - 1. Comply with applicable regulations.
 - 2. Do not burn scrap on project site.
 - 3. Do not burn scraps that have been pressure treated.

4. Do not send materials treated with pentachlorophenol, CCA, or ACA to co-generation facilities or “waste-to-energy” facilities.
- B. Do not leave wood, shavings, sawdust, etc. on the ground or buried in fill.
- C. Prevent sawdust and wood shavings from entering the storm drainage system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 10 53 - MISCELLANEOUS ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes miscellaneous carpentry.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each type of process and factory-fabricated product indicated.
1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that materials comply with requirements.
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: Provide documentation for adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, adhesive primers, sealants, sealant primers and caulks, including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with local or regional air pollution control or air quality management district rules where applicable, or SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits as shown in CALgreen Tables 5.504.4.1 and 5.504.4.2.
 2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
 3. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3: For architectural paints and coatings, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with Table 1 of the ARB, Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure, unless more stringent local limits apply.
 4. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3.1: Aerosol paints and coatings, provide documentation that products meet the PWMIR Limits for ROC in Section 94522 (a)(3) and other requirements, including prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds and ozone depleting substances, in Section 94522(c)(2 and (d)(2) of CCR Title 17.
 - 5.
 6. Product Certificate for Section 5.504.4.5: Provide documentation as required in CALgreen Section 5.504.4.5.3, for hardwood plywood, particleboard and medium density fiberboard composite wood products showing compliance with requirements for formaldehyde as specified in ARB's Air Toxics Control Measure (ATCM) for Composite Wood.
- a.

7. Product Certificates for Section A5.405.1: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. For the purposes of this requirement, "regional" is interpreted to mean within 500 miles of the project location or within the State of California.
8. (Tier 1) Product Certificates for Section A5.405.2.1: Provide documentation that products are in compliance with CALgreen Section A5.405.2.1 for "Certified Wood Products"
- 9.
10. Compliance with Section A5.405.3: Provide documentation of use of salvaged, refurbished, refinished or reused materials equal to or greater than five percent (5%) of the total project value, based on estimated cost of materials on the project.
11. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.
 - a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
 - b.
- 12.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; for lumber and plywood pressure treated with waterborne chemicals, place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Regional Materials: Dimension lumber, except treated materials, shall be manufactured within 500 miles of Project site from materials that have been extracted, harvested, or recovered, as well as manufactured, within 500 miles of Project site.
- B. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 "American Softwood Lumber Standard" and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Wood Panels:

1. Plywood: Comply with DOC PS 1 "Construction and Industrial Plywood" for plywood panels. Use exterior grade for panels in wet conditions.
 - a. Plywood shall comply with requirements for formaldehyde as specified in ARB's Air Toxics Control Measure (ATCM) for Composite Wood. Those materials not exempted under the ATCM must meet the specified emission limits, as shown in Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements."
 - 1) Use composite wood products approved by the ARB as no-added formaldehyde (NAF) based resins or ultra-low emitting formaldehyde (ULEF) resins.
2. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified but not less than thickness indicated.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide chemical fire retardant process tested and labeled by UL with flame spread and smoke developed ratings of 25 or less. Comply with performance requirements in AWP A U1, Use Category UCFA as a minimum for pressure treatment. Size wood before treatment so that minimum cutting will be required after treatment. Kiln dry lumber to a maximum 19 percent moisture content, kiln dry plywood to a maximum 15 percent moisture content, after treatment. Treat indicated items and the following:
 1. Wood members required to be treated by Building Code having jurisdiction at the site and wood members specified as fire-retardant-treated.
- B. Fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood shall comply with VOC content as shown in Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements."
- C. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL.

2.3 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Wood Preservatives shall comply with VOC content as shown in Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements."
- B. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWP A U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground.
 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.

2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

C. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including blocking, nailers, and similar members.
- B. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and the following species and grades:
 1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Western Woods; WCLIB or WWPA, No. 2 Grade.

2.5 PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Concealed Plywood for Countertop Underlayment:
 1. APA Exterior sheathing, manufactured with no added urea-formaldehyde, in thickness as indicated but not less than 3/4 inch.
 - a. Roseburg Forest Products; Oregon Plywood 2 softwood plywood sheathing.
 - b. Roy O. Martin Lumber Company, Limited Partnership (MARTCO), Plywood Division; exterior softwood plywood sheathing.
 - c. Potlatch Forest Products Corporation, Forest Products Div., exterior softwood plywood sheathing.
- B. Medium-Density Fiberboard (Moisture Resistant): A sustainable, moisture-resistant, medium density fiberboard (MDF) panel manufactured from minimum 92 percent preconsumer recycled wood fiber complying with ANSI A208.2, Grade 155, having a minimum 48 pcf density except that minimum for screw holding capacity on face shall be 325 pounds; an ASTM E 84 Class C flame spread rating, minimum 3/4 inch thick, edged and faced as specified, fabricated with binder containing no added urea formaldehyde.
 1. Roseburg Forest Products; NAUF FSC Certified Medex.
- C. Telephone, Data, Security, Mirror, and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels:

1. APA, Exposure 1, C-C Plugged, fire-retardant treated, manufactured with no added urea-formaldehyde, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4 inch thick.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, adhesive primers, sealants, sealant primers and caulks shall comply with local or regional regulations as shown in Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements."
- B. Aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, and sealant or caulking compounds shall comply with regulations as shown in Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements."

2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- C. Nails, Wire, Brads, and Staples: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each use.
 1. ASTM F 1667 for driven fasteners such as nails, spikes and staples.
 2. ASTM F 547 for nails used with wood and wood based products.
- D. Wood Screws: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each use. Comply with ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Securely attach carpentry work as indicated and according to applicable codes and recognized standards.
- C. Use fasteners of appropriate type and length. Predrill members when necessary to avoid splitting wood.

3.2 WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 PANEL PRODUCT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations contained in APA Form No. E30K, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial," and local utility requirements, if any, for plywood backing panels utilized as indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as indicated below:
 - 1. Countertop Underlayment: Bolt to miscellaneous steel framing.
 - 2. Plywood Backing Panels: Secure to wall using proper fastening devices for substrates encountered spaced 12 inches on center maximum at perimeter 1/2 inch from corners and three rows of 3 fasteners each in the backerboard field. Countersink fasteners flush with plywood surface. Butt adjacent panels without lapping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Wall sheathing.
 - 2. Parapet sheathing.
 - 3. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 07 27 26 "Fluid Applied Membrane Air Barrier" for water-resistive barrier applied over wall sheathing.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing requirements and installation, special details, transitions, mockups, air-leakage testing, protection, and work scheduling that covers air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.

3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5516.
 4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies.
1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
 2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
 3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.
1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution and for preconstruction testing.
1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly 86" x 86" as indicated on Drawings, incorporating backup wall construction, window, storefront, door frame and sill, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate crack and joint treatment and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier sheathing assembly.

- a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of sheathing before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, .
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups until mockups are approved.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified Wood: Provide an invoice including vendor's chain-of-custody number, product cost, and entity being invoiced.
- D. Vendor Qualifications: A vendor that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on field mockups.
- B. Mockup Testing: Air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assemblies shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports based on mockup testing by a qualified testing agency.
1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Mockups will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Certified Wood: The following wood products shall be certified as "FSC Pure" according to FSC STD-01-00 and FSC STD-40-004.
1. Plywood.

- B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.
- C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.2 WALL SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: , Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than indicated on structural drawing.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than indicated on structural drawings.

2.3 ROOF SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

2.4 PARAPET SHEATHING

- A. Plywood Sheathing: DOC PS 1, Exterior, Structural I sheathing.
 - 1. Span Rating: Not less than indicated on structural drawings.
 - 2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than indicated on structural drawings..

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. For parapet wall sheathing, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
 - 2. For parapet wall sheathing, provide fasteners with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.
- D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.
- E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

- F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.
 - 1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
 - 2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.
- G. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours according to ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
 - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
 - 3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall parapet sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 WOOD STRUCTURAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with applicable recommendations in APA Form No. E30, "Engineered Wood Construction Guide," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.
- B. Fastening Methods: Fasten panels as shown on structural drawings

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 17 33 - WOOD I-JOISTS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Wood I-joists for roof framing.
- B. Bridging, bracing, and anchorage.
- C. Framing for openings.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Installation requirements for miscellaneous framing.
- B. Section 06 10 00 - Rough Carpentry: Material requirements for blocking, plates, and miscellaneous framing.

1.3 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM D2559 - Standard Specification for Adhesives for Bonded Structural Wood Products for Use Under Exterior Exposure Conditions; 2012a (Reapproved 2024).
- B. ASTM D5055 - Standard Specification for Establishing and Monitoring Structural Capacities of Prefabricated Wood I-Joists; 2024.
- C. PS 1 - Structural Plywood; 2023.
- D. PS 2 - Performance Standard for Wood Structural Panels; 2019.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's literature describing materials, dimensions, allowable spans and spacings, bearing and anchor details, bridging and bracing requirements, and installation instructions; identify independent inspection agency.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate sizes and spacing of joists, bracing and bridging, bearing stiffeners, holes to be cut (if any), and framed openings between joists.

- D. Certificate: Certification by joist manufacturer that products delivered are of the same design and construction as those evaluated by the independent inspection agency.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site in manufacturer's original packaging with manufacturer's name and product identification intact and legible.
- B. Protect products from damage due to weather and breakage.
- C. Protect joists from warping or other distortion by stacking in upright position, braced to resist movement, with air circulation under coverings and around stacks.
- D. Handle individual joists in the upright position.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Wood I-Joists:
 - 1. RedBuilt LLC; Redbuilt I-Joist: www.redbuilt.com/#sle.
 - 2. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Wood I-Joists: Solid lumber top and bottom flanges and plywood webs bonded together with structural adhesive, with published span rating to meet project requirements.
 - 1. Span Rating: Established and monitored in accordance with ASTM D5055 by independent inspection agency.
 - 2. Plywood: Comply with PS 1.
 - 3. Adhesive: Tested for wet/exterior service in accordance with ASTM D2559.
 - 4. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - a. Flange Width: Plus/minus 1/32 inch (0.8 mm).
 - b. Flange Thickness: Minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
 - c. Joist Depth: Plus 0, minus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm).
 - 5. Marking: Mark each piece with depth, joist spacing, and allowable span for joist spacing.

- B. Wood-Based Components:
 - 1. Wood fabricated from old growth timber is not permitted.
- C. Joist Bridging: Type, size and spacing recommended by joist manufacturer.
- D. Fasteners: Electrogalvanized steel, type to suit application.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that supports and openings are ready to receive joists.

3.2 ERECTION

- A. Install joists in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Set structural members level and plumb, in correct position.
- C. Make provisions for erection loads and for sufficient temporary bracing to maintain structure plumb and in true alignment until completion of erection and installation of permanent bracing.
- D. Install permanent bridging and bracing.
- E. Install headers and supports to frame openings required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06 64 00 - PLASTIC PANELING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Plastic sheet paneling.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 3. Product Data: For sealants, indicating VOC content.
 - 4. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 5. Laboratory Test Reports: For wall materials, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Samples: For plastic paneling and trim accessories, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install plastic paneling until spaces are enclosed and weathertight and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plastic paneling and trim accessories from single manufacturer.

2.2 PLASTIC SHEET PANELING

- A. Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Plastic Paneling: Gelcoat-finished, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic panels complying with ASTM D 5319. Panels shall be USDA accepted for incidental food contact.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Composites, Inc.
 - b. Marlite.
 - c. Parkland Plastics, Inc.
 3. Wall materials shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As follows when tested by a qualified testing agency according to ASTM E 84. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
 5. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.075 inch.
 6. Surface Finish: Smooth.
 7. Color: White.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Trim Accessories: Manufacturer's standard one-piece vinyl extrusions designed to retain and cover edges of panels. Provide division bars, inside corners, outside corners, and caps as needed to conceal edges.
1. Color: Match panels .
- B. Exposed Fasteners: Nylon drive rivets recommended by panel manufacturer.

- C. Concealed Mounting Splines: Continuous, H-shaped aluminum extrusions designed to fit into grooves routed in edges of factory-laminated panels and to be fastened to substrate.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 - 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Sealant: Mildew-resistant, single-component, neutral-curing silicone sealant recommended by plastic paneling manufacturer and complying with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 - 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove wallpaper, vinyl wall covering, loose or soluble paint, and other materials that might interfere with adhesive bond.
- B. Prepare substrate by sanding high spots and filling low spots as needed to provide flat, even surface for panel installation.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair adhesive bond, including oil, grease, dirt, and dust.
- D. Condition panels by unpacking and placing in installation space before installation according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

- E. Lay out paneling before installing. Locate panel joints to provide equal panels at ends of walls not less than half the width of full panels.
 - 1. Mark plumb lines on substrate at panel joint locations for accurate installation.
 - 2. Locate panel joints to allow clearance at panel edges according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic paneling according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Install panels in a full spread of adhesive.
- C. Install panels with fasteners. Layout fastener locations and mark on face of panels so that fasteners are accurately aligned.
 - 1. Drill oversized fastener holes in panels and center fasteners in holes.
 - 2. Apply sealant to fastener holes before installing fasteners.
- D. Install factory-laminated panels using concealed mounting splines in panel joints.
- E. Install trim accessories with adhesive and nails or staples. Do not fasten through panels.
- F. Fill grooves in trim accessories with sealant before installing panels, and bed inside corner trim in a bead of sealant.
- G. Maintain uniform space between panels and wall fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- H. Maintain uniform space between adjacent panels and between panels and floors, ceilings, and fixtures. Fill space with sealant.
- I. Remove excess sealant and smears as paneling is installed. Clean with solvent recommended by sealant manufacturer and then wipe with clean dry cloths until no residue remains.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
3. Glass-fiber blanket.
4. Glass-fiber board.
5. Mineral-wool blanket.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for foam-plastic board sheathing installed directly over wood or steel framing.
2. Section 07 52 16 "Styrene-Butadiene-Styrene (SBS) Modified Bituminous Membrane Roofing" Section 07 54 19 "Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
3. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals: Refer to Division 01 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements."

C. CALgreen Submittals:

1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.
2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
3. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.

- a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
 - b. [(Tier 2) The RCV shall not be less than 15% of the total project.]
- 4. (Tier 1 and Tier 2) Compliance with Section A5.504.4.8: Provide documentation verifying that thermal insulation materials meet the following pollution emission limits:
 - a. Thermal insulation complies with Chapters 12-13 (Standards for Insulating Material), on Title 24, Part 12, the California Reference Standards Code.
- D. Low-emitting product certification.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing protocol required to achieve UL Classified rating. Identify products with appropriate markings of Underwriters Laboratories.
- B. Recycled Content: A minimum of 50 (or highest available) percent post-consumer recycled glass content, UL-validated.
- C. UL Environment Certified: Environmental Product Declaration (EPD).

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
 - 1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 - 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
 - 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD (XPS) (Horizontal Roof Installations)
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, product products by one of the following:
 - 1. DiversiFoam Products.
 - 2. Dow Chemical Company (The).
 - 3. Owens Corning.
 - B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type X< Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C 578, Type X, 15-psi minimum compressive strength; unfaced; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
 - 1. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
 - C. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type VI: ASTM C 578, Type VI, 40-psi minimum compressive strength; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- 2.2 MOLDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD (EPS)
- A. Molded Polystyrene Board, Type XIV< Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C 578, Type XIV, 40-psi minimum compressive strength.
- 2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET
- A. Recycled Content of Insulation: Postconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent (or highest available).
 - B. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
 - C. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Foil Faced: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.
- 2.4 THIN INSULATION BLANKET
- A. Insulating challenging transition conditions.

2.5 MINERAL-WOOL BOARD

- A. Recycled Content of Insulation: Postconsumer recycled content not less than [50 percent (or highest available)].
- B. Mineral-Wool Board, Types IA and IB, IVA and IVB, Unfaced< Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C 612, Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and zero, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq.ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
- C. Mineral-Wool Board, Types IA and IB and IVB, Faced< Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C 612, Types IA and IB; faced on one side with foil-scrim or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and zero, respectively, per ASTM E 84. Nominal density of 4 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
- D. Mineral-Wool Board, Type II, IVA and IVB, Unfaced< Insert drawing designation>: ASTM C 612, Type II; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and zero, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.16 deg F x h x sq.ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

2.6 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
 - 1. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch- thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches square.
 - 2. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
 - 1. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
 - a. <Insert location>.
- C. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.

- D. Insulated sheathing manufacturer's recommended polymer or other corrosion protective coated steel screw fasteners for anchoring sheathing to metal wall framing. Fastener length and size based on wall sheathing thickness.

2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
 - 2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF HORIZONTAL INSULATION

- A. On horizontal surfaces, loosely lay insulation units according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger end joints and tightly abut insulation units.

- B. Coordinate and install in accordance to roofing manufacturer requirements

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 - 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 - 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 - 4. Attics: Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
 - 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
 - 6. For wood-framed construction, install blankets according to ASTM C 1320 and as follows:
 - a. With faced blankets having stapling flanges, lap blanket flange over flange of adjacent blanket to maintain continuity of vapor retarder once finish material is installed over it.
- B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
 - 2. Glass Mineral Wool Blankets: Measured and cut to desired measurements so as to fill gap completely with contact on all sides of surrounding insulation and not compression to finished thickness of material.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 26 16 - UNDER-SLAB-ON-GRADE VAPOR RETARDER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes vapor retarder and installation accessories for installation under concrete slabs on grade.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site two weeks before start of installation of reinforced vapor retarders.
 - 1. Review vapor-retarder installation, protection, and coordination with other work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated including installation instructions.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificate signed by manufacturer.
- B. Summary of test results per paragraph 9.3 of ASTM E 1745.
- C. Manufacturer's installation instructions for placement, seaming and penetration repair instructions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Provide vapor retarder and accessories from a single source and single manufacturer. Provide accessories manufactured or approved by vapor retarder manufacturer for application indicated.
- B. All mandatory ASTM E 1745 testing must be performed on a single production roll per ASTM E 1745 Section 8.1.
- C. Coordination: Schedule work such that membrane will not be left exposed to weather for longer than that recommended by the manufacturer.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials in labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer's instructions. Protect from damage from weather, excessive temperature and construction operations. Remove and dispose of damaged material in accordance with applicable regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Vapor retarder shall have all of the following qualities:
 - 1. Maintain permeance of less than 0.01 Perms grains/(ft² · hr · inHg) as tested in accordance with mandatory conditioning tests per ASTM E 1745 Section 7.1 (7.1.1-7.1.5).
 - 2. Other Performance Criteria:
 - a. Strength: ASTM E 1745 Class A.
 - b. Thickness: 15 mils minimum.

2.2 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing, Inc.; Blackline 400.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; Florprufe 120.
 - c. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil Class A.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor Retarding Seam Tape:
 - 1. Water Vapor Transmission Rate: 0.3 perms or lower per ASTM E 96.
- B. Vapor Proofing Mastic:
 - 1. Water Vapor Transmission Rate: 0.3 perms or lower per ASTM E 96.
- C. Pipe Boots: . Construct pipe boots from vapor barrier material, pressure sensitive tape and/or mastic per manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Examine areas to receive vapor retarders. Notify Architect if areas are not acceptable. Do not begin installation until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- B. Ensure that subsoil is smooth, level and compacted with no sharp edges.
 - 1. Level and compact base material.
- C. Ensure that there is no moisture entrapment by vapor retarder due to rainfall or ground water intrusion.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install vapor retarder in accordance ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install vapor retarders continuously at locations under slab. Ensure there are no discontinuities in vapor retarder at seams or penetrations.
 - 2. Unroll vapor retarder with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete placement and face laps away from the expected direction of the placement whenever possible.
 - 3. Extend vapor retarder over footings and grade beams to a distance acceptable to the structural engineer or stop at impediments such as dowels and waterstops.
 - 4. Seal vapor retarder to foundation wall, grade beam, or slab at an elevation consistent with the top of the slab or terminate at impediments such as waterstops or dowels.
 - 5. Overlap joints 6 inches and seal with manufacturer's tape.
 - 6. Apply tape to a clean and dry vapor barrier.
 - 7. Seal all penetrations with manufactured or field-fabricated boots and with tape according to manufacturer's guidelines. Unsealed penetrations are not allowed.
 - 8. Immediately repair damaged areas by cutting patches of vapor retarder, overlapping damaged area 6 inches and taping all sides with tape.
- B. Bituminous Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair bituminous vapor retarder according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect vapor retarders from damage during installation of reinforcing steel and utilities and during placement of concrete slab.

END OF SECTION

Gensler
07.3945.000

April 10, 2026
Issue For Plan Check

Hangar 10 Reconstruction
Irvine, California

SECTION 07 27 26 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vapor-permeable, fluid-applied air barriers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for wall sheathings and wall sheathing joint-and-penetration treatments.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Air-Barrier Material: A primary element that provides a continuous barrier to the movement of air.
- B. Air-Barrier Accessory: A transitional component of the air barrier that provides continuity.
- C. Air-Barrier Assembly: The collection of air-barrier materials and accessories applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating each substrate; technical data; dry film thickness; and tested physical and performance properties of products.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier assemblies.

1. Show locations and extent of air-barrier materials, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer. Include list of ABAA-certified installers and supervisors employed by Installer, who work on Project.
- B. Product Certificates: From air-barrier manufacturer, certifying compatibility of air barriers and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
 1. Installer shall be licensed by ABAA according to ABAA's Quality Assurance Program and shall employ ABAA-certified installers and supervisors on Project.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Build integrated mockups of exterior wall assembly , 150 sq. ft., incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, storefront, door frame and sill, insulation, ties and other penetrations, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, application of air barriers, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air-barrier assembly.
 - a. Coordinate construction of mockups to permit inspection and testing of air barrier before external insulation and cladding are installed.
 - b. Include junction with roofing membrane, building corner condition, .
 - c. If Architect determines mockups do not comply with requirements, reconstruct mockups and apply air barrier until mockups are approved.
 2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove and replace liquid materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.
- B. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 - 1. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect air-barrier performance.
 - 2. Do not apply air barrier to a damp or wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier materials and air-barrier accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. VOC Content: 100 g/L or less.
- C. Low-Emitting Materials: Products shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Air-Barrier Performance: Air-barrier assembly and seals with adjacent construction shall be capable of performing as a continuous air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air-barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, penetrations, tie-ins to installed waterproofing, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Air-Barrier Assembly Air Leakage: Maximum 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57 lbf/sq. ft., when tested according to ASTM E 2357.

2.3 MEDIUM-BUILD AIR BARRIERS, VAPOR PERMEABLE

- A. Medium-Build, Vapor-Permeable Air Barrier: Synthetic polymer material with an installed dry film thickness, according to manufacturer's written instructions, of 17 to 30 mils over smooth, void-free substrates.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. DuPont Building Innovations: E. I. du Pont de Nemours and Company; DuPont Tyvek Fluid Applied WB.
 - b. TK Products; TK-Airmax 2104 Vapor Permeable.
 - c. W.R. Meadows, Inc; Air-Shield LMP.
 2. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Air Permeance: Maximum 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft. pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Vapor Permeance: Minimum 10 perms; ASTM E 96/E 96M, Desiccant Method, Procedure A.
 - c. Ultimate Elongation: Minimum 250 percent; ASTM D 412, Die C.
 - d. Adhesion to Substrate: Minimum 16 lbf/sq. in. when tested according to ASTM D 4541.
 - e. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
 - f. UV Resistance: Can be exposed to sunlight for 180 days according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Requirement: Provide primers, transition strips, termination strips, joint reinforcing fabric and strips, joint sealants, counterflashing strips, flashing sheets and metal termination bars, termination mastic, substrate patching materials, adhesives, tapes, foam sealants, lap sealants, and other accessory materials that are recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer to produce a complete air-barrier assembly and that are compatible with primary air-barrier material and adjacent construction to which they may seal.
- B. Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by air-barrier material manufacturer.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304, 0.0187 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
- D. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Manufacturer's standard system consisting of cured low-modulus silicone extrusion, sized to fit opening widths, with a single-component, neutral-curing, Class 100/50 (low-modulus) silicone sealant for bonding extrusions to substrates.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 123 Silicone Seal.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; Sil-Span.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem Simple Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 2. Verify that substrates have cured and aged for minimum time recommended in writing by air-barrier manufacturer.
 3. Verify that substrates are visibly dry and free of moisture.
 4. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. Clean, prepare, treat, fill, and seal substrate and joints and cracks in substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions and details. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air-barrier application.
- B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- C. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- D. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate-patching material.
- E. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- F. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- G. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

- H. Bridge isolation joints and discontinuous wall-to-wall, deck-to-wall, and deck-to-deck joints with air-barrier accessory material that accommodates joint movement according to manufacturer's written instructions and details.

3.3 ACCESSORIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessory materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details to form a seal with adjacent construction and ensure continuity of air and water barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install transition strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate.
 - 3. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 4. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
- B. Connect and seal exterior wall air-barrier material continuously to roofing-membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to-floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.
- C. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- D. Apply joint sealants forming part of air-barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- E. Wall Openings: Prime concealed, perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply preformed silicone extrusion so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over each substrate. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames, with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 - 1. Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
 - 2. Preformed Silicone Extrusion: Set in full bed of silicone sealant applied to walls, frame, and air-barrier material.
- F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air-barrier material with foam sealant.
- G. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.

- H. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch- wide, transition strip.
- I. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- J. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.4 PRIMARY AIR-BARRIER MATERIAL INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air-barrier material to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions and details. Apply air-barrier material within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
 - 1. Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow it to dry.
 - 2. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air-barrier material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 3. Where multiple prime coats are needed to achieve required bond, allow adequate drying time between coats.
- B. Medium-Build Air Barriers: Apply continuous unbroken air-barrier material to substrates according to the following thickness. Apply an increased thickness of air-barrier material in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable, Medium-Build Air Barrier: Total dry film thickness as recommended in writing by manufacturer to comply with performance requirements, applied in one or more equal coats. Apply additional material as needed to achieve void- and pinhole-free surface, but do not exceed thickness on which required vapor permeability is based.
- C. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.
- D. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air-barrier components.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. ABAA Quality Assurance Program: Perform examinations, preparation, installation, testing, and inspections under ABAA's Quality Assurance Program.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Inspections: Air-barrier materials, accessories, and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:

1. Continuity of air-barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 2. Air-barrier dry film thickness.
 3. Continuous structural support of air-barrier system has been provided.
 4. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean, and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 5. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 6. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 7. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 8. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 9. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 10. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 11. Compatible materials have been used.
 12. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 13. Connections between assemblies (air-barrier and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, surface preparation and priming, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 14. All penetrations have been sealed.
- D. Tests: As determined by testing agency from among the following tests:
1. Air-Leakage-Location Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E 1186, chamber pressurization or depressurization with smoke tracers.
 2. Air-Leakage-Volume Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for air-leakage rate according to ASTM E 783.
 3. Adhesion Testing: Air-barrier assemblies will be tested for required adhesion to substrate according to ASTM D 4541 for each 600 sq. ft. of installed air barrier or part thereof.
- E. Air barriers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
1. Apply additional air-barrier material, according to manufacturer's written instructions, where inspection results indicate insufficient thickness.
 2. Remove and replace deficient air-barrier components for retesting as specified above.
- F. Repair damage to air barriers caused by testing; follow manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air-barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as recommended in writing by manufacturer. If exposed to these conditions for longer than recommended, remove and replace air barrier or install additional, full-thickness, air-barrier application after repairing and preparing the overexposed materials according to air-barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with incompatible materials and sealants not approved by air-barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 42 13.13 - FORMED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exposed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 07 42 13.16 "Metal Plate Wall Panels" for solid metal plate wall panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 8. Review of procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
 - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

Retain first subparagraph below for large-scale mockup. Indicate portion of building represented by mockup on Drawings or draw mockup as separate element. Revise to suit Project or if larger mockup is needed for field performance testing.

- 1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly Full vertical wall intersection at column of top 5 feet, bottom 5 feet and 5 feet surround section, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.

- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft..
- E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 EXPOSED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- A. Provide factory-formed metal panels designed to be field assembled by lapping side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching panels to supports using exposed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Tapered-Rib-Profile, Exposed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels : Formed with raised, trapezoidal major ribs and a flat pan between major ribs.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
 - b. Metal Sales Manufacturing Corporation.
 - c. Metl-Span, an NCI Building Systems company (Basis of Design) .
 - 1) Tapered-Rib-Profile, Exposed Fastener Metal Panels: Structural metal panel consisting of formed metal sheet with trapezoidal ribs, installed by lapping edges of adjacent panels.
 - a) Basis of Design: Metl-Span, 7.2 Panel, <http://www.metlspan.com/products/single-skin-wall-panels/7-2-rib/>
 - b) Coverage Width: 36 inches
 - c) Continuous Rib Spacing: 7.2 inches on center
 - d) Rib Height: 1-1/2 inch
 - e) Nominal Coated Thickness: 22 gauge
 - f) Panel Surface: Smooth
 - g) Exterior Finish: Fluoropolymer two-coat system
 - h) Color: to match as scheduled

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

- a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
 - 1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
 - 2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 - 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 - 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 - 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 - 2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
 - 3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
 - 4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

- D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.
1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
 5. Flash and seal panels with weather closures at perimeter of all openings.
- E. Watertight Installation:
1. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
 2. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 3. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal wall panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- C. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 42 13.16 - METAL PLATE WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal plate wall panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
 - 2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
 - 5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
 - 6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
 - 7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
 - 8. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
 - 9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment assembly, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly Full vertical wall intersection at column of top 5 feet, bottom 5 feet and 5 feet surround section, including corner, soffits, supports, attachments, and accessories.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
 - 1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
 - 3. .
- B. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 METAL PLATE WALL PANELS

- A. Metal Plate Wall Panels: Provide factory-formed, metal plate wall panels fabricated from single sheets of metal formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment assembly components, panel stiffeners, and accessories required for weathertight system.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide
 - a. Metalwerks: <https://metalwerksusa.com/product/custom-enclosures/>, Omniplate 2510
 - b. or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1) Architectural Specialty Products, Inc.; .
 - 2) Firestone Metal Products, LLC; UNA-FAB .
 - 3) Protean Construction Products, Inc.; Panel.
- B. Formed metal panels: General: Provide sheet metal without pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, or other imperfections exposed to view on finished units.
 - 1. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209 or ASTM B209M, 5005-H32 minimum; alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for use and finish indicated
 - 2. Aluminum: 0.125 inch with strength and durability properties specified in ASTM B 209 for 3003H-14 or 5005-H32AQ alloys minimum
- C. Panel Depth: 2.25 inches.
- D. Aluminum Sheet: Tension-leveled, smooth aluminum sheet, ASTM B 209, 0.125 inch thick.
 - 1. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
 - a. Color: Match Architect's samples as indicated on drawing.
 - b. Refer to Section 09 96 00 for all finish requirements to match throughout exterior.
- E. Attachment Assembly: Flange attachment.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.
- B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.
- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer. Provide sealant types that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:
 1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
 2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
 3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
 6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:

1. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- D. Attachment Assembly, General: Install attachment assembly required to support metal plate wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
- E. Flange-Attachment Installation: Attach metal plate wall panels, formed with extended perimeter flanges, to supports at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
 1. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
 2. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with manufacturer's standard gaskets.
- F. Rainscreen-Principle Installation: Install using manufacturer's standard assembly with vertical channel that provides support and secondary drainage assembly, draining at base of wall. Notch vertical channel to receive support pins. Install vertical channels supported by channel brackets or adjuster angles and at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach metal plate wall panels by inserting horizontal support pins into notches in vertical channels and into flanges of panels. Leave horizontal and vertical joints with open reveal.
- G. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
 1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- H. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal plate wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated, and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform field tests and inspections.
- B. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

Gensler
07.3945.000

April 10, 2026
Issue For Plan Check

Hangar 10 Reconstruction
Irvine, California

SECTION 07 46 46 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fiber-cement siding.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, grounds, nailers, and blocking.
2. Section 07 27 26 "Fluid Applied Membrane Air Barrier" for weather-resistive barriers.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate siding installation with flashings and other adjoining construction to ensure proper sequencing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Fiber-cement siding.

- B. Product Data Submittals: For each type of fiber-cement siding. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For fiber-cement siding including related accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of fiber-cement siding, including related accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MOCKUPS

- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

Retain first subparagraph below for large-scale mockup. Indicate portion of building represented by mockup on Drawings or draw mockup as separate element. Revise to suit Project or if larger mockup is needed for field performance testing.

1. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with labels intact until time of use.
- B. Store materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including cracking and deforming.
 - b. Deterioration of materials beyond normal weathering.
 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

- A. Obtain products, including related accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. Fiber-Cement Siding: ASTM C1186, Type A, Grade II, fiber-cement board, noncombustible when tested in accordance with ASTM E136; with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. American Fiber Cement Corporation.
 - b. James Hardie Building Products, Inc. (Basis of Design)
 - c. Nichiha USA, Inc.
- B. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 5/16 inch.
- C. Horizontal Pattern: Board panel 24" tall and 4" tall, refer to drawings, utilizing 48" wide sheets dimensions in plain style.
 - 1. Texture: Smooth.
- D. Panel Texture: 96-inch- wide sheets with smooth texture.
- E. Factory Priming: Manufacturer's standard acrylic primer.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Siding Accessories, General: Provide starter strips, edge trim, outside and inside corner caps, and other items as recommended by siding manufacturer for building configuration.
 - 1. Provide accessories matching color and texture of adjacent siding unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Decorative Accessories: Provide the following fiber-cement decorative accessories as indicated:
 - 1. Moldings and trim.
 - 2. Reveals, Basis of Design Fry Reglet
 - a. Profile: V7, 1/2" custom finish to match adjacent panel
- C. Flashing: Provide aluminum flashing complying with Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" at window and door heads and where indicated.
 - 1. Finish for Aluminum Flashing: High-performance organic finish.
- D. Fasteners:
 - 1. For fastening to wood, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1 inch into substrate.
 - 2. For fastening to metal, use ribbed bugle-head screws of sufficient length to penetrate a minimum of 1/4 inch, or three screw-threads, into substrate.
- E. Insect Screening for Soffit Vents: PVC-coated, glass-fiber fabric, 18-by-14 or 18-by-16 mesh.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of fiber-cement siding and related accessories.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
 - 1. Do not install damaged components.
 - 2. Install fasteners no more than 24 inches o.c., and align with framing
- B. Install joint sealants as specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" and to produce a weathertight installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove damaged, improperly installed, or otherwise defective materials and replace with new materials complying with specified requirements.
- B. Clean finished surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions and maintain in a clean condition during construction.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 07 52 16 - STYRENE-BUTADIENE-STYRENE (SBS) MODIFIED BITUMINOUS
MEMBRANE ROOFING**

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Styrene-butadiene-styrene (SBS)-modified bituminous torch applied roofing, 2 ply membrane roofing.
2. Roof insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
3. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for premanufactured metal roof edge flashings and copings.
4. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology:** Definitions in ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" apply to Work of this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's technical representative, deck Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.

7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For roofing system. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including:
 1. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
 2. Tapered insulation, including slopes.
 3. Crickets, saddles, and tapered edge strips, including slopes.
 4. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:
 1. Cap sheet, of color required.
 2. Flashing sheet, of color required.
 3. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.
 4. 12x12 of roofing membrane assembly including coating

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by roofing manufacturer certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
- C. Research/Evaluation Reports: For components of membrane roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Statement of Application: In addition to other specified reports and certificates, submit a statement signed by Contractor and Roofing Subcontractor, stating that the primers, roofing, flashing, roof insulation comply with these Specifications, and that the examination, substrate preparation and installation methods complied with the manufacturer's printed instructions and were proper and adequate for the condition of installation and use.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed for membrane roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.
- C. Provide compatible accessory materials approved by roofing manufacturer.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain roofing membrane materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - 1. Do not apply roofing in rain, fog, or mist.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes membrane roofing, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, substrate board, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion, NDL.
- B. The roofing subcontractor shall guarantee the roof system for (2) years from the date of acceptance by the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Elevate, a Holcim Company (formerly Firestone Building Products).
 - 2. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - 3. Siplast, Inc. (Basis of Design)
 - a. Paradiene 20 TG
 - b. Paradiene 30 FR TG
 - 1) Color Stone Gray, or as selected from manufacturer full range.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roofing manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Roofing System Design: Tested by a qualified testing agency to resist the following uplift pressures:
 - 1. Perimeter Uplift Pressure: 45 lbf/sq. ft..
 - 2. Field-of-Roof Uplift Pressure: 45 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Energy Star Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- D. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.

2.3 ROOFING SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Roofing Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade S, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); smooth surfaced; suitable for application method specified.
- B. Granule-Surfaced Roofing Cap Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); granule surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Granule Color: As indicated on drawings, selected from manufacturer full range.

2.4 BASE FLASHING SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Granule-Surfaced Flashing Sheet: ASTM D 6163, Grade G, Type I or II, SBS-modified asphalt sheet (reinforced with glass fibers); granule surfaced; suitable for application method specified, and as follows:
 - 1. Granule Color: To match roofing.

2.5 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with roofing.
 - 1. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Asphalt Primer: ASTM D 41/D 41M.
- C. Roofing Granules: Ceramic-coated roofing granules, No. 11 screen size with 100 percent passing No. 8 sieve and 98 percent of mass retained on No. 40 sieve, color to match roofing.
- D. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide those recommended by roofing system manufacturer.

2.6 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate, , 1/2 inch thick.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Georgia Pacific Corporation; .

- b. USG Corporation; Securock Glass Mat Roof Board.

2.7 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by roofing manufacturer, selected from manufacturer's standard sizes suitable for application, of thicknesses indicated.
- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following as acceptable to manufacturer:
 - a. Carlisle SynTec Incorporated.
 - b. GAF Materials Corporation.
 - c. Johns Manville.
- C. Provide preformed saddles, crickets, tapered edge strips, and other insulation shapes where indicated for sloping to drain. Fabricate to slopes indicated.

2.8 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with roofing.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Global 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
 - 1. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 - 2. Full-spread spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work:
 - 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.

2. Verify that wood cants, blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking."
4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
6. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.
- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Substrate-Joint Penetrations: Prevent roofing asphalt and adhesives from penetrating substrate joints, entering building, or damaging roofing system components or adjacent building construction.

3.4 SUBSTRATE BOARD INSTALLATION

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, perpendicular to roof slopes with end joints staggered between rows. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 1. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.

3.5 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Install one lapped base-sheet course and mechanically fasten to substrate according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line, with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - 1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- C. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- D. Trim surface of insulation where necessary at roof drains so completed surface is flush and does not restrict flow of water.
- E. Install tapered edge strips at perimeter edges of roof that do not terminate at vertical surfaces.
- F. Adhered Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and adhere to substrate as follows:
 - 1. Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 2. Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- G. Mechanically Fastened and Adhered Insulation: Install first layer of insulation to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
 - 1. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - 2. Set each subsequent layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- H. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction. Loosely butt cover boards together. Tape joints if required by roofing system manufacturer.
 - 1. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

3.6 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and applicable recommendations in ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."

1. Install roofing system , according to roof assembly identification matrix and roof assembly layout illustrations in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" and to Section requirements.
- B. Start installation of roofing in presence of manufacturer's technical personnel.
- C. Where roof slope exceeds [1/2 inch per 12 inches] [3/4 inch per 12 inches] **<Insert slope>**, install roofing membrane sheets parallel with slope.
 1. Backnail roofing sheets to **[nailer strips]** **[substrate]** according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Coordinate installation of roofing system so insulation and other components of the roofing system not permanently exposed are not subjected to precipitation or left uncovered at the end of the workday or when rain is forecast.
 1. Provide tie-offs at end of each day's work to cover exposed roofing sheets and insulation with a course of coated felt set in roofing cement or hot roofing asphalt, with joints and edges sealed.
 2. Complete terminations and base flashings, and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system.
 3. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.

3.7 BASE-SHEET INSTALLATION

- A. Install lapped base-sheet course, extending sheet over and terminating beyond cants. Attach base sheet as follows:
 1. Adhere to substrate in a uniform coating of cold-applied adhesive.

3.8 SBS-MODIFIED BITUMINOUS MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install modified bituminous roofing sheet and cap sheet according to roofing manufacturer's written instructions, starting at low point of roofing system. Extend roofing membrane sheets over and terminate beyond cants, installing as follows:
 1. Torch apply to substrate.
 2. Unroll roofing sheets and allow them to relax for minimum time period required by manufacturer.
- B. Laps: Accurately align roofing sheets, without stretching, and maintain uniform side and end laps. Stagger end laps. Completely bond and seal laps, leaving no voids.
 1. Repair tears and voids in laps and lapped seams not completely sealed.
 2. Apply roofing granules to cover exuded bead at laps while bead is hot.
- C. Install roofing sheets so side and end laps shed water.

3.9 FLASHING AND STRIPPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install base flashing over cant strips and other sloped and vertical surfaces, at roof edges, and at penetrations through roof, and secure to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Prime substrates with asphalt primer if required by roofing system manufacturer.
 - 2. Backer-Sheet Application: Mechanically fasten backer sheet to walls or parapets. Adhere backer sheet over roofing membrane at cants in cold-applied adhesive.
 - 3. Backer-Sheet Application: Adhere backer sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive.
 - 4. Flashing-Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in cold-applied adhesive at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
 - 5. Flashing-Sheet Application: Adhere flashing sheet to substrate in asphalt roofing cement at rate required by roofing system manufacturer.
 - 6. Flashing-Sheet Application: Torch apply flashing sheet to substrate.
- B. Extend base flashing up walls or parapets a minimum of 8 inches above roofing membrane and 4 inches onto field of roofing membrane.
- C. Mechanically fasten top of base flashing securely at terminations and perimeter of roofing.
 - 1. Seal top termination of base flashing with a strip of glass-fiber fabric set in asphalt roofing cement.
- D. Install roofing cap-sheet stripping where metal flanges and edgings are set on roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 WALKWAY INSTALLATION

- A. Walkway Pads: Install walkway pads using units of size indicated or, if not indicated, of manufacturer's standard size, according to walkway pad manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Set walkway pads in cold-applied adhesive.
- B. Walkway Cap-Sheet Strips: Install walkway cap-sheet strips over roofing membrane, using same application method as used for roofing cap sheet.
- C. Install roof traffic pad in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.

1. Electric Field Vector Mapping (EFVM): Testing agency shall survey entire roof area for potential leaks using electric field vector mapping (EFVM).
- B. Test Cuts: Remove test specimens to evaluate problems observed during quality-assurance inspections of roofing membrane as follows:
 1. Determine approximate quantities of components within roofing membrane according to ASTM D 3617.
 2. Examine test specimens for interply voids according to ASTM D 3617 and to comply with criteria established in Appendix 3 of ARMA/NRCA's "Quality Control Guidelines for the Application of Polymer Modified Bitumen Roofing."
 3. Repair areas where test cuts were made according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion.
 1. Notify Architect and Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- D. Roofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 1. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.12 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.13 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
 1. Owner: Insert name of Owner.
 2. Address: Insert address.
 3. Building Name/Type: Insert information.

4. Address: Insert address.
 5. Area of Work: Insert information.
 6. Acceptance Date: _____.
 7. Warranty Period: Insert time.
 8. Expiration Date: _____.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period he will, at his own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. lightning;
 - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding Insert mph;
 - c. fire;
 - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
 3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
 4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.

5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 54 19 - POLYVINYL-CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered polyvinyl chloride (PVC) roofing system.
2. Mechanically fastened, polyvinyl chloride (PVC) roofing system.
3. Vapor retarder.
4. Roof insulation.
5. Walkways.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation" for insulation beneath the roof deck.
3. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
4. Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for roof hatches .
5. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to work of this Section.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Product Test Reports: For roof materials, documentation indicating that roof materials comply with Solar Reflectance Index requirements.
2. Product Data: For adhesives and sealants, indicating VOC content.
3. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

C. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:

1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
2. Base flashings and membrane terminations.
3. Flashing details at penetrations.
4. Tapered insulation thickness and slopes.
5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
7. Tie-in with air barrier.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Roof membrane and flashing, of color required.
2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

E. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer Certificates:
 - 1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.
 - 2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.
- C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, tests performed by independent qualified testing agency indicating compliance with specified requirements.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field Test Reports:
 - 1. Concrete internal relative humidity test reports.
 - 2. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is listed in FM Approvals' RoofNav for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
 - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, substrate board, roof pavers, and other components of roofing system.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 30 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- 1. Source Limitations: Obtain components including roof insulation fasteners for roofing system from same manufacturer as membrane roofing or manufacturer approved by membrane roofing manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings shall remain watertight.
 - 1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
 - 2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272/D4272M, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Solar Reflectance Index (SRI): Three-year-aged SRI not less than 64 or initial SRI not less than 82 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980, based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
- D. ENERGY STAR Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low -slope roof products.
- E. Energy Performance: Roofing system shall have an initial solar reflectance of not less than 0.70 and an emissivity of not less than 0.75 when tested according to CRRC-1.
- F. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- G. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.3 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) ROOFING

- A. PVC Sheet: ASTM D4434/D4434M, Type II, Grade 1, glass-fiber reinforced, 9 oz felt backed.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products to match requirements of the following basis of design:
 - a. Sika Sarnafil, Basis of Design, Sarnafil G410, by Sika Sarnafil.
 - b. GAF
 - c. Carlisle SynTec
 - 2. Thickness: 72 mils.
 - 3. Exposed Face Color: White.

- B. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.

2.4 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.
1. Adhesives and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Adhesives and sealants shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:
 - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - e. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - f. PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
 - g. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - h. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 - i. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 - j. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - k. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 3. Adhesives and sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard sheet flashing of same material, type, reinforcement, thickness, and color as PVC sheet.
- C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
- D. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.
1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.
- F. Water-Based, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roofing system manufacturer's standard water-based, cold-applied adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- G. Low-Rise, Urethane, Fabric-Backed Membrane Adhesive: Roof system manufacturer's standard spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive formulated for compatibility and use with fabric-backed membrane roofing.
- H. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's standard, of thickness required for application.

- I. Vented Base Sheet: ASTM D4897/D4897M, Type II; nonperforated, asphalt-impregnated fiberglass reinforced, with mineral granular patterned surfacing on bottom surface.
- J. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.
- K. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.
- L. Ballast Retaining Bar: Perimeter securement system consisting of a slotted extruded-aluminum retention bar with an integrated compression fastening strip.
 - 1. Fasteners: 1-1/2-inch stainless steel fasteners with neoprene washers.
- M. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- N. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.5 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

- A. Substrate Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum substrate or ASTM C1278/C1278M, fiber-reinforced gypsum board.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Thickness: 1/4 inch 1/2 inch for parapet wall conditions.
 - 3. Surface Finish: Unprimed.

2.6 VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D2178/D2178M, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

2.7 ROOF INSULATION

- A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by PVC roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assemblies.

- B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 1, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.
 - 1. Compressive Strength: 24 psi.
 - 2. Size: 48 by 96 inches.
 - 3. Thickness:
 - a. Base Layer: 1-1/2 inches.
 - 4. Tapered insulation: Provide factory tapered insulation boards fabricated to slope 1/4" per 12" unless otherwise indicated. For full tapered applications provide for an average of R-30, as noted on roof plan / drawings or slope as noted

2.8 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
 - 1. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
 - 2. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
 - 3. Adhesives and sealants shall comply with the following limits for VOC content:
 - a. Plastic Foam Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - b. Gypsum Board and Panel Adhesives: 50 g/L.
 - c. Multipurpose Construction Adhesives: 70 g/L.
 - d. Fiberglass Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - e. Contact Adhesives: 80 g/L.
 - f. PVC Welding Compounds: 510 g/L.
 - g. Other Adhesives: 250 g/L.
 - h. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 - i. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 - j. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - k. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 - 4. Adhesives and sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. Cover Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C1278/C1278M fiber-reinforced gypsum board.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
2. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
3. Surface Finish: Factory primed.

2.9 WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
 1. Size: Approximately 36 by 60 inches.
 2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
 2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
 3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking."
 4. Verify that minimum concrete drying period recommended by roofing system manufacturer has passed.
 5. Verify that concrete substrate is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by the plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263. .
 6. Verify that concrete-curing compounds that will impair adhesion of roofing components to roof deck have been removed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.
 - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.
- D. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition.
- D. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under Section 07 27 26 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF SUBSTRATE BOARD

- A. Install substrate board with long joints in continuous straight lines, with end joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - 1. At steel roof decks, install substrate board at right angle to flutes of deck.
 - a. Locate end joints over crests of steel roof deck.
 - 2. Tightly butt substrate boards together.
 - 3. Cut substrate board to fit tight around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.

4. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck according to recommendations in FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
5. Fasten substrate board to top flanges of steel deck to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof according to roofing system manufacturers' written instructions.
6. Loosely lay substrate board over roof deck.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDER

- A. Built-Up Vapor Retarder: Install two glass-fiber felt plies lapping each felt 19 inches over preceding felt.
 1. Extend vertically up parapet walls and projections to a minimum height equal to height of insulation and cover board.
 2. Embed each felt in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt.
 3. Glaze coat completed surface with hot roofing asphalt.
 4. Apply hot roofing asphalt within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
- B. Completely seal vapor retarder at terminations, obstructions, and penetrations to prevent air movement into roofing system.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Wood Panel Decking:
 1. Mechanically fasten slip sheet to roof deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening slip sheet to wood panel decks.
 - a. Fasten slip sheet according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
 - b. Fasten slip sheet to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
 2. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - a. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.

- b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - g. Loosely lay base layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - h. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation[and substrate board] using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to [wood] [wood panel] decks.
 - 1) Fasten insulation according to requirements in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity.
 - 2) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
3. Install upper layers of insulation[and tapered insulation] with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
- a. Staggered end joints within each layer not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows.
 - b. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
 - c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 - d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
 - e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
 - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.
 - f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
 - g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 - h. Loosely lay each layer of insulation units over substrate.
 - i. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
 - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.

- 2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- 3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
 1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
 2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
 - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
 3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
 4. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav listed roof assembly requirements for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:
 - a. Set cover board in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
 - b. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
- B. Install slip sheet over cover board and immediately beneath roof membrane.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF ADHERED ROOF MEMBRANE

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.

- F. Fabric-Backed Roof Membrane Adhesive: Apply to substrate at rate required by manufacturer, and install fabric-backed roof membrane.
- G. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.
- H. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- I. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roofing, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.
 - 1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
 - 2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
 - 3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- J. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.
- K. Flashing: Form and install PVC clad metal flashing as described in detail drawings. Fasten all metal flashing into approved substrates. When fastening into solid wood nailers attach the PVC clad metal with two rows of approved fasteners at 4" on center staggered. Install metal to provide adequate resistance to bending and allow for normal thermal expansion and contraction. Space sheets of PVC clad metal 1/4 inch apart. the the joints with 2 inch wide aluminum tape. Hot air weld 4 inch minimum wide strip of sarnafil flashing membrane over the joint. Install new clad metal fascia plate over each flashing membrane joint.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

- A. Flexible Walkways: Install walkway products according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:
 - a. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
 - b. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - c. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - d. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
 - e. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
 - f. Locations indicated on Drawings.
 - g. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.
 - 2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
 - 3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

3.12 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.13 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
1. Owner: Insert name of Owner.
 2. Address: Insert address.
 3. Building Name/Type: Insert information.
 4. Address: Insert address.
 5. Area of Work: Insert information.
 6. Acceptance Date: _____.
 7. Warranty Period: Insert time.
 8. Expiration Date: _____.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:
1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
 - a. lightning;
 - b. fire;
 - c. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
 - d. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
 - e. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
 - f. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
 2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.

3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Manufactured reglets.
2. Formed roof drainage system.
3. Formed low-slope roof flashing and trim.
4. Formed wall flashing and trim.
5. Formed equipment support flashing.
6. Insert items.

- B. Single Subcontract Responsibility: Refer to roofing sections for the requirements of single subcontract responsibilities for sheet metal flashing and trim.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. CALgreen Submittals:

1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.
2. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.

- a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.

- C. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans and elevations. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:

1. Identify material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
3. Details for fastening, joining, supporting, and anchoring sheet metal flashing and trim, including fasteners, clips, cleats, and attachments to adjoining work.

- 4. Details of expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
- D. Samples: Submit 8 inches x 8 inches (200 x 200 mm) square samples of sheet metal flashing, in the specified finish.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Subcontract the sheet metal flashing and trim work to a firm which is specialized in the fabrication and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim and who has successfully installed work similar in design and extent to that required for the project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 5 years. .
 - 1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Reference Standards: Comply with the industry standard sources below. Where sheet metal flashing and trim work details have not been specifically detailed on the drawings or specified the Contractor shall submit, for the Architect's approval, proposed sheet metal detailing. The primary source for proposed sheet metal detailing shall come from the industry standard sources below.
 - 1. SMACNA's Architectural Sheet Metal Manual.
 - 2. NRCA's Roofing and Waterproofing Manual.
 - 3. ANSI/SPRI ES-1 Wind Design Standard for Edge Systems Used with Low Slope Roof Systems except where the Performance Requirements are more stringent.
- C. Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Use sealant manufacturer's standard test methods to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
- D. Design Modifications: Submit design modifications necessary to meet the performance requirements and field coordination. Variations in details or materials which do not adversely affect the appearance, durability or strength of components shall be submitted to the Architect for review. Maintain the general design concept without altering size of members, profiles and alignment.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of sheet metal flashing and trim with interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish written warranty against water leakage resulting from defects of materials or workmanship. Upon notification of such defects, within the warranty period, make the necessary repairs and replacements at the convenience of, and no cost to, the Owner. This warranty shall be in addition to and not a limitation of other rights the Owner may have against the Contractor under the Contract Documents.

1. Warranty period shall be 5 years after the date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, and fastener disengagement.
- B. Fabricate and install exterior wall and roofing sheet metal flashing and trim capable of resisting the wind forces greater than or equal to those shown on Structural Drawings for components and cladding.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allow for thermal movements resulting from surface temperatures ranging from +10 degrees F. to +180 degrees F., without buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of sheet metal and trim thermal movements.
1. Dimensions shown on Drawings are based on an assumed design temperature of +70oF. Fabrication and installation procedures shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respective operations.
- D. Water Infiltration: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that do not allow water infiltration to building interior.

2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3004, 3105, or 5005, Temper suitable for forming and structural performance required, but not less than H14, finished as follows:
1. Factory Prime Coating: Factory-applied, baked-on epoxy primer coat.
2. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two -coat, thermocured system containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight; complying with AAMA 2604.

- a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240/A 240M, soft annealed, Type 304, No. 2D finish, except where harder temper is required for forming or performance.
- C. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; structural quality, mill phosphatized for field painting.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation.
- B. Underlayment: Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 0.76 mm thick, self adhering, self sealing, underlayment consisting of slip-resisting high density cross laminated polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl rubber based adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 116 deg C ; ASTM D 1970.
 - 2. Product Reference: Grace, W. R. & Co.; Ultra.
- C. Fasteners: Wood screws, same metal as flashing/sheet metal, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads.
- D. Solder for Stainless Steel: ASTM B 32, Grade Sn60, with acid flux of type recommended by stainless-steel sheet manufacturer, use a noncorrosive rosin flux over tinned surfaces.
- E. Sealing Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealing tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape.
- F. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920 and Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- G. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant, polyisobutylene plasticized, heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- H. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound.
- I. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied bituminous paint complying with ASTM D 1187, compounded for 15 mil dry film thickness per coat.

- J. Wood Nailer Strips: Provide wood nailer strips, fabricated to sizes indicated, from lumber complying with the requirements of Section 06 10 53 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" and fire retardant treated by pressure process using chemical solution which is non-hygroscopic and non-corrosive to sheet metal used.

2.4 REGLETS

- A. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile indicated, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated .
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Fry Reglet Corporation. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Keystone Flashing Company, Inc.
 - c. Sandell Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 2. Material: Galvanized steel, 0.0217 inch thick.
 3. Reglet Types:
 - a. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
 - b. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
 - c. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing lower edge.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with the referenced standards that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated. Shop fabricate items where practicable. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
- B. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
- C. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
1. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 2. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.

- D. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA recommendations.
- E. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions in the Work cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- F. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible on exposed-to-view sheet metal flashing and trim, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored. Cleats shall be 2 inches wide by nominal 3 inches long typically, minimum 0.0187 inch thick, punch for minimum 2 nail or screw holes. One end shall be locked into seams, or into folded edge of sheet metal sheets, the other end shall be secured with nails or screws and folded back over nail or screw heads.

2.6 ROOF DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Fabricate downspouts from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.024 inch thick.
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.
 - c. Galvanized Steel: 0.0217 inch thick.
- B. Parapet Scuppers: Fabricate scuppers of dimensions required with closure flange trim to exterior, 4 inch wide wall flanges to interior, and base extending 4 inches beyond cant or tapered strip into field of roof. Fasten gravel guard angles to base of scupper.
 - 1. Fabricate parapet scuppers from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.0320 inch thick.
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.
 - c. Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch thick.
- C. Conductor Heads: Fabricate conductor heads with flanged back and stiffened top edge and of dimensions and shape indicated complete with outlet tubes, exterior flange trim, and built-in overflows.
 - 1. Fabricate conductor heads from the following material:
 - a.
 - b. Aluminum: 0.0320 inch thick.
 - c. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.
 - d. Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch thick.

2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Caps: Fabricate in minimum 96 inch long, but not exceeding 10 foot long, sections. Furnish with 6 inch wide joint cover plates.
 - 1. Fabricate scuppers from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.
 - c. Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch thick.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96 inches long, but not exceeding 10 foot long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and drill elongated holes for fasteners on interior leg. Miter corners, seal, and solder watertight.
 - 1. Joint Style: Butt, with 6-inch- wide exposed cover plates.
 - 2. Fabricate copings from the following material:
 - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
 - b. Stainless Steel: 0.0250 inch thick.
 - c. Galvanized Steel: 0.0396 inch thick.
- C. Counterflashing and Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.
 - 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.0217 inch thick.
- D. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.
 - 2. Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch thick.
- E. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.

2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Openings Flashing in Frame Construction: Fabricate through wall head, sill, jamb, base course/foundation, and similar flashings to extend 2 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch- high end dams. Fabricate from the following material:
 - 1. Aluminum: 0.0320 inch thick.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.

3. Galvanized Steel: 0.0217 inch thick.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following material:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.0187 inch thick.
2. Galvanized Steel: 0.0276 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of work.
1. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
 2. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
1. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
- B. Nailer and Underlayment Installation for Copings:
1. Provide wood nailers shown to properly install the coping. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Set to required levels and lines. Allow approximately 1/8" between nailer ends and offset joints a minimum of 12" in multiple layers. Locate nailers to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
 2. Utilize mechanical fasteners that will have no detrimental effect on the components of the coping. Recess fasteners flush with surfaces. Fasten in accordance with FM 1-49 standards and the coping manufacturers recommendations.
 3. Underlayment Installation: Install a course of self adhering high temperature sheet underlayment directly over nailers in accordance with the underlayment manufacturers instructions to the extent indicated on the drawings. Lap ends of underlayment lengths a minimum of 4 inches.

- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by fabricator or manufacturers of dissimilar metals.
 - 1. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment.
 - 2. Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required for waterproof performance.
- D. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
- E. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, and butyl sealant.
- F. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 - 1. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
- G. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped or bayonet-type expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
- H. Fasteners: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate substrate not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
 - 1. Galvanized or Prepainted, Metallic-Coated Steel: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 2. Aluminum: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 3. Copper: Use copper or stainless-steel fasteners.
 - 4. Stainless Steel: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- I. Seal joints with butyl sealant as required for watertight construction.
 - 1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.

- J. Soldered Joints: Edges of sheets to be soldered shall be in close contact at every point along the joint before soldering. Edges of all sheets of sheet metal to be soldered shall be tinned with solder on both sides for a minimum width of 1-1/2 inches. Where specified, all seams shall be thoroughly soldered to produce watertight joints. All soldering shall be done slowly with well heated metal - to heat sheet thoroughly and to sweat solder completely through full width of seam. Ample solder shall be used and seam shall show at least one full inch of evenly flowed solder. Wherever possible all soldering shall be done in flat position. Remove every trace of flux residue from metal promptly after tinning. Comply with manufacturer's recommended methods for cleaning and neutralization. Clean exposed surfaces of sheet metal flashing and trim of every substance which is visible or might cause corrosion of metal surfaces. Use soldering irons (3 lb. Minimum each). Do not use abrasives in preparing the sheet metal surfaces for soldering. All exposed parts of finished soldered joints shall be smooth and free of smeared solder.

1. Do not solder prepainted, metallic-coated steel and aluminum sheet.

3.3 ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to the referenced standards and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
- B. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2 inch telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
- C. Parapet Scuppers: Install scuppers where indicated through parapet. Continuously support scupper, set to correct elevation, and seal flanges to interior wall face, over cants or tapered edge strips, and under roofing membrane.
- D. Conductor Heads: Anchor securely to wall with elevation of conductor head rim 1 inch below scupper discharge.

3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements and the referenced standards. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to ANSI/SPRI ES-1 to comply with the performance requirements.
- C. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49.

1. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleats anchored to substrate at 16 inch centers.
- D. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49.
1. Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleats anchored to substrate at 16 inch centers.
 2. Anchor interior leg of coping with screw fasteners and washers at 18 inch centers.
- E. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints a minimum of 4 inches in direction of water flow.
- F. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- G. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Secure in a waterproof manner. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with butyl sealant.
- H. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Install flashing as follows:
1. Turn lead flashing down inside vent piping, being careful not to block vent piping with flashing.
 2. Seal with butyl sealant and clamp flashing to pipes penetrating roof except for lead flashing on vent piping.

3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Openings Flashing in Frame Construction: Install continuous through wall head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.6 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATION INSTALLATION

- A. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drain line.

- B. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces for uniform oxidation and weather exposure; neutralize flux materials; clean off excess solder and sealants; and remove strippable films, if any.
- B. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces, including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, and pieces of flashing. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- C. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 72 00 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof curbs.
2. Roof hatches.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items.
- D. Engineered drawings showing compliance with design requirements based on installation condition. Show layout, profiles, and anchorage details demonstrating compliance.
- E. In-house Test Reports: Indicate anchor fabrication compliance with performance requirements.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Standards: Comply with the following:
1. SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" details for fabrication of units, including flanges and cap flashing to coordinate with type of roofing indicated.
 2. NRCA's "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" details for installing units.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firm having at least 10 years continuous experience in manufacturing fall safety equipment similar to systems specified and exhibiting records of successful in-service acceptability and performance. Firm must employ personnel dedicated to provide regularly scheduled Authorized and Competent Person Training courses as mandated by OSHA 1926 and 1910 for owners authorized safety personnel.
- C. OSHA Standards: Comply with Occupational Safety and Health Administration Standards for the Construction Industry 29 CFR § 1926.500 Subpart M (Fall Protection), and with applicable State Administrative Code safety standards for Fall Restraint and Fall Arrest.

- D. Source Limitations: Obtain all roof anchors through one source from a single manufacturer.

1.4 PRODUCTS

A. MATERIALS

B. Aluminum:

- 1. Sheet: ASTM B 209 for alclad alloy 3005H25 or alloy and temper required to suit forming operations, with mill finish, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M with G90; commercial steel, unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Structural Quality: Grade 40, where indicated or as required for strength.

D. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid glass-fiber board of thickness indicated.

E. Fasteners: Same metal as metals being fastened, or nonmagnetic stainless steel or other noncorrosive metal as recommended by manufacturer. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened.

- 1. Provide nonremovable fastener heads.

F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, or PVC; or flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.

G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type bituminous mastic, nominally free of sulfur and containing no asbestos fibers, compounded for 15 mil dry film thickness per coating.

H. Mastic Sealant: Polyisobutylene; nonhardening, nonskinning, nondrying, nonmigrating sealant.

I. Elastomeric Sealant: Recommended by unit manufacturer that is compatible with joint surfaces; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25.

J. Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, nonasbestos, fibrated asphalt cement designed for trowel application or other adhesive compatible with roofing system.

1.5 ROOF CURBS AND EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1. AES Industries, Inc.

2. Custom Curb, Inc.
 3. Metallic Products Corporation.
- B. General: Units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported. Coordinate dimensions with equipment to be supported.
1. Provide preservative-treated wood nailers at tops of units and formed flange at perimeter bottom for mounting to roof.
 2. On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
 3. Fabricate units to minimum height of 8 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Manufactured Roof Curbs:
1. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 0.0747 inch thick, structural-quality, hot-dip galvanized or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet; factory primed and prepared for painting with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints.
 2. Insulation: Manufacturer's standard rigid or semirigid insulation where indicated.
 3. Cants: Formed cants and base profile coordinated with roof insulation thickness.
- D. Equipment Supports: Capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction to be supported. Coordinate dimensions with equipment to be supported.
1. Fabrication: Unless otherwise indicated or required for strength, fabricate units from minimum 0.0747 inch thick, structural-quality, hot-dip galvanized or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet; factory primed and prepared for painting with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints.
 2. Pro-Bel Companies

1.6 ROOF HATCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Babcock-Davis Hatchways, Inc.
 2. Bilco Company. (Basis of Design)
 3. J. L. Industries, Inc.
 4. Nystrom Products Co.
- B. General: Frame with minimum 9 inch high, integral-curb, double-wall construction with 1-1/2 inch insulation, formed cants and cap flashing (roofing counterflashing), with welded or sealed mechanical corner joints. Provide double-wall cover (lid) construction with 1 inch thick insulation core. Provide gasketing and equip with corrosion-resistant or hot-dip galvanized hardware including pintle hinges, hold-open devices, interior padlock hasps, and both interior and exterior latch handles.

1. Fabricate units to withstand 40 lbf/sq. ft. external and 20 lbf/sq. ft. internal loading pressure.
- C. Single-Leaf Personnel Hatches:
1. Size: As indicated, minimum 36x36, Type E.
 2. Provide with Ladder Up Safety Post: Bil-Guard Ladder Up or equal
 3. Provide integrated Safety Hatch Railing System: Bil-Guard 2.0 or equal

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Coordinate installation of roof accessories with installation of roof deck, roof insulation, flashing, roofing membranes, penetrations, equipment, and other construction to ensure that combined elements are waterproof and weathertight. Anchor roof accessories securely to supporting structural substrates so they are capable of withstanding lateral and thermal stresses, and inward and outward loading pressures.
- B. Install roof accessory items according to construction details in NRCA's "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual," unless otherwise indicated,
- C. Separation: Separate metal from incompatible metal or corrosive substrates, including wood, by coating concealed surfaces, at locations of contact, with bituminous coating or providing other permanent separation.
- D. Flange Seals: Unless otherwise indicated, set flanges of accessory units in a thick bed of roofing cement to form seal.
- E. Cap Flashing: Where required as component of accessory, install cap flashing to provide waterproof overlap with roofing or roof flashing (as counterflashing). Seal overlap with thick bead of mastic sealant.
- F. Operational Units: Test-operate units with operable components. Clean and lubricate joints and hardware. Adjust for proper operation.
- G. Heat-and-Smoke Vents: Locate, install, and test according to NFPA 204M.
- H. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions. Touch up damaged metal coatings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes sealants for the following applications:

1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and nontraffic horizontal surfaces:
 - a. Joints in Portland cement plaster (stucco) systems.
 - b. Joints between metal panels.
 - c. Joints between glass for structural glazing.
 - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors and windows and louvers.
 - f. Other joints as indicated.
2. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
 - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - d. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows, and elevator entrances.
 - e. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - f. Joints between glass and glass to adjoining walls.
 - g. Other joints as indicated.

B. Single Subcontract Responsibilities: Refer to Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts," for requirements applicable to single subcontract responsibility.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each joint-sealant product indicated and the following:
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1: For Adhesives, adhesive bonding primers, adhesive primers, sealants, sealant primers and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.

2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
 - C. Samples: Submit samples of each type and color of exposed joint sealant required. Provide fully cured joint sealant samples in 3/4 inch wide joints 12 inches long formed between two strips of material to be sealed as they will appear on the Project.
- 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Warranties: Submit specified warranties.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Exposed sealant work including, but not limited to, sealants used for air and weatherseals which are external to curtain wall systems at their perimeter, metal panel to panel joints at their perimeter, architectural precast to precast joints, shall be performed by one firm specializing in the installation of sealants who has successfully produced work comparable to this Project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 10 years. Concealed sealant work (sealants which are internal to curtain wall systems, necessary for air and moisture penetration resistance under applied loads) shall be the responsibility of the subcontractor responsible for the final design, installation, and performance of the respective system.
 - B. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing (All Exterior Wall Sealants Only): Submit to joint sealant manufacturers, prior to full size building mockup(s), samples of materials that will contact or affect, by direct or indirect chemical or mechanical means, exterior wall joint sealants for compatibility and adhesion testing below.
 1. General: Test results confirming compatibility and adhesion are mandatory for all concealed and exposed sealant materials in contact with exterior glazing, exterior precast, other sealants, flashings, metal framing, and shims, prior to the construction of full sized mockup and testing.
 - a. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analysis of results to prevent delay in the progress of the work.
 - 1) It is anticipated that a minimum of 3 months will be required to complete preconstruction sealant compatibility and adhesion testing.

- b. Investigate materials that fail compatibility and adhesion testing and obtain sealant manufacturer's written recommendations for corrective measures, which may include the use of primers, cleaners, cleaning measures, curing time, temperature limitations (surface and air), humidity conditions, moisture content of substrate, etc.
 - c. Definitions:
 - 1) Compatibility: The capability of the sealant materials and substrates to be placed in direct contact with each other and maintain their required physical, chemical and visual qualities with the absence of softening, staining, oil exudation, discoloration or other detrimental, deleterious or degradative effects caused by chemical interactions.
 - 2) Adhesion: The mechanical or chemical ability of the sealant materials and substrates to adhere or bond together at their interface.
 - d. Specimen Sizes and Shapes: As required by the manufacturer's testing laboratory for the tests listed, unless otherwise specified.
2. Tests Required:
- a. Adhesion in Peel Testing:
 - 1) Test Methods:
 - a) Comply with ASTM C 794 "Adhesion and Peel of Elastomeric Joint Sealants," modified to include Project specific substrates and to report cohesive or adhesive failure mode. Samples of each exterior precast, other sealants, flashings, metal framing in contact with the concealed and exposed sealant materials are required to be tested.
 - b) Comply with ASTM C 1135 "Determining Tensile Adhesion Properties of Structural Sealants," modified to include Project specific substrates and the following. Sealant manufacturer's modified interpretations of ASTM C 1135 will not be permitted. Samples of each exterior structural glazing and metal framing in contact with the structural sealant materials are required to be tested. In addition to the testing being performed under the standard environmental conditioning required of ASTM C 1135; the Contractor shall prepare, and test, additional specimens for each Project-specific environmental condition under which the sealant will be applied and cured.
 - 2) All specimens shall be tested for primed and unprimed performance.
 - 3) Report:
 - a) Date(s) of testing.

- b) Project identification.
- c) Test method (as identified herein).
- d) Specimen substrate(s) tested.
- e) Sealant(s) tested.
- f) Substrate preparation (cleaning materials, methods and primers used).
- g) Test results for each specimen tested (type of failure - adhesive or cohesive - force measured at failure in pounds per lineal inch).
- h) Recommendations. Where testing shows equal or better performance without a primer, a primer will not be required.
- i) Additional remarks, if any (i.e., color change of substrate or sealant, voids in the body of the sealant when examined in cross section, blistering, bubbling, sealant softening, or evidence of improperly mixed or cured sealant).

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original unopened containers or bundles with labels indicating manufacturer, product name and designation, color, expiration date, pot life, curing time, and mixing instructions for multicomponent materials.
- B. Store and handle materials in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent their deterioration or damage due to moisture, high or low temperatures, contaminants, or other causes.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
- B. Joint-Width Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
- C. Joint-Substrate Conditions: Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants until contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion are removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Written warranty, signed by Installer agreeing to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealant work which has failed to provide a weathertight system within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranties: Written warranties (weatherseal and stain resistance), signed by elastomeric sealant manufacturer agreeing to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that fail to provide airtight and watertight joints, or fail in adhesion, cohesion, abrasion-resistance, stain-resistance, weather resistance, or general durability or appear to deteriorate in any other manner not clearly specified in the manufacturer's data as an inherent quality of the material within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Polyurethane Sealants: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Silicone Sealants: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as stated by sealant manufacturer's published data, and as substantiated by the manufacturer for each application through testing.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1. Architectural Sealants: Not more than 250 g/L.
 2. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 3. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 4. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: Not more than 250 g/L.
 5. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: Not more than 775 g/L.
- C. Low-Emitting Interior Sealants: Sealants and sealant primers used inside the weatherproofing system shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Colors: For fully concealed joints, provide manufacturer's standard color of sealant which has the best overall performance characteristics for the application shown. For exposed joints provide custom colors to match Architect's samples of the following:
1. Exterior window framing, each color.
 2. Metal panels, each color.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag):

1. Typical Exterior Wall Joints:

a. Properties:

- 1) Standards: Comply with ASTM C 920, Type M or S, Grade NS, Class 25 or 50; use NT, M, A and O.
- 2) Performance: Non-stain, non-bleed, non-streaking to sealed and adjacent substrates. The minimum peel adhesion value after 7 day immersion shall not be less than 13 pli when tested in strict accordance with ASTM C 794 Adhesion in Peel.
- 3) Cure System and Oil Content: Neutral-cure, low or medium modulus system specifically manufactured with controlled oil content to eliminate oil migration into sealed substrates and residue rundown over and onto adjacent substrates.

b. Products and Manufacturers: One of the following:

- 1) DOWSIL 756 SMS; Dow Chemical Company.
- 2) Spectrem 3 or Spectrem 4-TS (Use Spectrem 1 for metal to metal joints); Tremco, an RPM Co.
- 3) Silpruf NB SCS 9000 (use Silpruf SCS 2000 for metal to metal joints); Momenive.

2. Structural Glazing at Exterior Curtain Walls:

a. Structural and Weatherseal Beads for Unitized Four Side Shop Glazed Structural Silicone Curtain Wall Systems (Two-Part Silicone Sealants):

1) Properties:

- a) Standards: Comply with ASTM C 1184 and ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 12.5 or 25; use NT, G, and A.
- b) Performance: The minimum tensile adhesion strength shall be 120 psi with the sealant design tensile and shear stress calculated at 20 psi resulting in a minimum 6 to 1 safety factor. Provide laboratory testing and calculations indicating product working stress and safety factors, in addition provide insulating glass manufacturer's written concurrence, based on testing to actual job production run samples of glass and framing materials, the product is proper for the uses shown and specified.
- c) Cure System: Shelf storage stable, neutral-cure, high modulus, system which is compatible and adherent to the two part insulating glass edge seals, glazing accessories and metal window frame materials being provided for the Project.

- d) Color: Black.
- 2) Products and Manufacturers: One of the following:
 - a) DOWSIL 983 Structural Glazing and Curtainwall Adhesive/Sealant base x curing agent; Dow Chemical Company.
 - b) Proglaze II; Tremco, an RPM Co.
 - c) UltraGlaze SSG 4400; Momentive.
- b. Structural and Weatherseal Beads for 2-side Field Glazed Structural Curtainwall Joints:
 - 1) Properties:
 - a) Standards: Comply with ASTM C 1184 and ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25 or 50; use NT, G, and A.
 - b) Performance: The minimum tensile adhesion strength shall be 120 psi with the sealant design tensile and shear stress calculated at 20 psi resulting in a minimum 6 to 1 safety factor. Provide laboratory testing and calculations indicating product working stress and safety factors, in addition provide insulating glass manufacturer's written concurrence, based on testing to actual job production run samples of glass and framing materials, the product is proper for the uses shown and specified.
 - c) Cure System: Shelf storage stable, neutral-cure, high modulus, system which is compatible and adherent to the two part insulating glass edge seals, glazing accessories and metal window frame materials being provided for the Project.
 - d) Color: Black.
 - 2) Products and Manufacturers:
 - a) DOWSIL 995 Silicone Structural Adhesive; Dow Chemical Company.
 - b) Proglaze SSG; Tremco, and RPM Co.
 - c) UltraGlaze SSG 4000; Momentive.
- B. Two Part Polyurethane Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag):
 - 1. Typical Exterior Wall Joints (Two-Part Polyurethane Sealants):
 - a. Properties:
 - 1) Standards: Comply with ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 25 or Class 50; use NT, M, A and O.
 - 2) Performance: Non-stain, non-bleed, non-streaking to sealed and adjacent substrates. The minimum peel adhesion value after 7 day immersion shall not be less than 13 pli when tested in strict accordance with ASTM C 794 Adhesion in Peel.

- b. Products and Manufacturers: One of the following:
 - 1) BASF Master Builders; MasterSeal NP 2.
 - 2) Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
 - 3) Tremco an RPM Co.; 240FC.
- C. Mildew-Resistant Silicone Sealant (use for joints at toilet fixtures, toilet room countertops and vanities, and at janitor closet mop receptor to wall transition):
Complying with ASTM C 920, Type S (single component), Grade NS (non-sag), class 25, Use NT (non-traffic), Substrate uses G, A, and O; and containing a fungicide for mildew resistance; white color.
 - 1. Products: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company; 786 Silicone Sealant.
 - b. Mumentive; Sanitary SCS 1700.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 898 Silicone Sanitary Sealant.
 - d. Tremco, an RPM Co.; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.

2.3 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Latex Sealant: Non-elastomeric, one part, non-sag, paintable latex sealant that is recommended for exposed applications on the interior. Complying with ASTM C 834, Type OP (opaque sealants):
 - 1. Products: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 + Silicone.
 - b. DAP Products Inc.; Alex Plus Acrylic Latex Caulk Plus Silicone.
 - c. BASF; MasterSeal NP 520.
 - d. Tremco, an RPM Co.; Tremflex 834.

2.4 PREFORMED JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Provide one of the following.
 - 1. DOWSIL 123 Silicone Seal set in DOWSIL 791, or DOWSIL 795 Silicone Sealants; Dow Chemical Company.
 - 2. Sil-Span Preformed Silicone Profile set in 864-NST Silicone Sealant; Pecora Corporation.
 - 3. Silicone Extruded Sheet set in Spectrem 1 adhesive for bite in either side; Tremco, an RPM Co.
- B. Preformed Foam Sealants: Provide manufacturer's standard preformed, precompressed, impregnated, open-cell foam sealant manufactured from high-density urethane foam impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent; factory produced in precompressed sizes and in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; and complying with the following:

1. Properties: Permanently elastic, mildew resistant, nonmigratory, nonstaining, and compatible with joint substrates and other joint sealants.
2. Density: Manufacturer's recommended for conditions indicated.
3. Backing: Pressure-sensitive adhesive, factory applied to one side with protective wrapping.
4. Products: Provide one of the following:
 - a. Emseal 25V; Emseal Joint Systems, Ltd.
 - b. Polytite B; Dayton Superior.
 - c. Wilseal 600; WillSeal USA.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: One of the following preformed, compressible, resilient, nonstaining, nonwaxing, nonextruding backings of flexible plastic foam complying with ASTM C 1330, and of type indicated below. Select shape and density of cylindrical sealant backings in consultation with the manufacturer for proper performance in specific condition of use in each case.
 1. Type C: Closed-cell polyethylene foam material with a surface skin, which is nonabsorbent to liquid water and gas, non-outgassing in unruptured state; one of the following:
 - a. HBR Closed Cell Backer Rod; Nomaco, Inc.
 - b. MasterSeal 920; BASF Master Builders.
 - c. Mile High Foam; Backer Rod Mfg., Inc.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene, TFE fluorocarbon, or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.
- D. Weep and Vent Tubes: Clear plastic (PVC) tubing, minimum 1/4 inch inside diameter, and of length as required to extend between exterior face of sealant and open cavity behind.
 1. At window and curtain wall systems, where required by system designer, provide gutter termination of tube with preformed nipples suitable for sealing to gutter.
- E. Cork Joint Filler: Resilient and nonextruding, ASTM D 1752, Type II.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended, as verified through compatibility and adhesion testing, by joint sealant manufacturer for the substrates indicated to be sealed.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants with joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and which will not stain nor mar the finish of surfaces adjacent to joints to which it is applied.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Silicone Glazing Sealants: Refer to Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- B. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), existing joint sealants, existing backer rods, existing waterproofing materials, existing water repellent treatments, oil, grease, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean concrete, masonry, unglazed surfaces of tile, and similar porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining from above cleaning operations by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

4. Clean metal, glass, porcelain enamel, glazed surfaces of tile, and other nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants.
- C. Joint Priming (Elastomeric Sealants Only): Prime joint substrates with primers selected through the preconstruction compatibility and adhesion testing. Apply primer to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- D. Joint Priming (Elastomeric Sealants Only): Prime joint substrates where recommended in writing by joint sealant manufacturer, based on prior testing and experience. Apply primer to comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration beyond bond areas or onto adjoining surfaces.
- E. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant and primer smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
 1. Silicone Glazing Sealants: Refer to Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" for installation.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Installation of Sealant Backings: Install sealant backings to comply with the following requirements:
 1. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - a. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings. Trim for tight fit around obstructions or elements penetrating the joint.
 - b. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - c. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry sealant backings.
 2. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and back of joints.

3. Install weeps and vents into joints at the same time sealants are being installed. Unless otherwise shown on the drawings, or directed by the Architect, locate weeps and vents spaced as recommended by the sealant manufacturer and the window and curtain wall fabricator and erector. Do not install weeps and vents at outside building corners. Do not install vents at horizontal joints immediately below shelf angles, sills, and through wall flashings.
- D. Installation of Sealants: Install sealants by proven techniques that result in sealants directly contacting and fully wetting joint substrates, completely filling recesses provided for each joint configuration, and providing uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability. Install sealants at the same time sealant backings are installed.
1. Apply sealants in the depth shown or, if none is shown, apply in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the following general proportions and limitations:
 - a. Apply elastomeric sealants in sidewalk, pavement and similar horizontal joints to a depth equal to 75% of the joint width, but not less than 3/8 inch and not more than 3/4 inch.
 - b. Apply elastomeric sealants, in joints not subject to traffic or other abrasion, to a depth equal to 50% of the joint width, but not less than 1/4 inch and not more than 1/2 inch.
 - c. Apply non-elastomeric sealants to a depth approximately equal to the joint width.
 - d. Fill horizontal traffic bearing joints slightly recessed to avoid direct contact with wheel, and pedestrian traffic. Fill horizontal traffic bearing joints with slope grade polyurethane sealants to a depth approximately equal to the joint width.
 2. Pour self-leveling sealants to a depth approximately equal to the joint width.
- E. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants to form smooth, uniform, beads to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint. Remove excess sealants from surfaces adjacent to joint. Do not use tooling agents that discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to the profile shown, or if none is shown, tool slightly concave.
1. Use masking tape to protect adjacent surfaces of recessed tooled joints.
 2. Provide a slight wash on horizontal joints where horizontal and vertical surfaces meet.
 3. Against rough surfaces or in joints of uneven widths avoid the appearance of excess sealant or compound by locating the compound or sealant well back into joint wherever possible.
- F. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:
1. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.

2. Apply a bead of silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's printed schedule and covering a bonded area of not less than a 3/8 inch. Hold edge of sealant bead inside of masking tape by 1/4 inch.
 3. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
 4. Complete installation of horizontal joints before installing vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At end of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.
- G. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping, taking care not to pull or stretch material, to produce seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures where expansion of sealant requires acceleration to produce seal, apply heat to sealant to comply with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field-test exterior wall joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each type of exposed exterior wall sealant and joint substrate.
 2. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
- B. Field adhesion testing of sealants shall take place in the presence of a qualified technical representative of the sealant manufacturer.
1. Test Method: Test joint sealants by hand-pull method described below:
 - a. Make knife cuts from one side of joint to the other, followed by two cuts approximately 3 inches long at sides of joint and meeting cross cut at one end. Place a mark 1 inch from cross-cut end of 3 inch piece.
 - b. Use fingers to grasp 3 inch piece of sealant between cross-cut end and 1 inch mark; pull firmly at a 90-degree angle to the joint in the direction of side cuts and hold the sealant in this position for 10 seconds; following the 10 second time duration pull sealant at a 180 degree angle parallel to the joint and hold the sealant in this position for 10 seconds. Pull sealant away from joint to the distance recommended by sealant manufacturer for testing adhesion.
 - c. For joints with dissimilar substrates, check adhesion to each substrate separately. Do this by extending cut along one side, checking adhesion to opposite side, and then repeating this procedure for opposite side.
 2. The sealant manufacturer's qualified technical representative shall record test results, and observations of joint and sealant conditions, in a field adhesion test log.

3. Repair joint sealants pulled from test area as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
 4. The sealant manufacturer shall provide written documentation of changes in product and/or application method required to address sealant failure, observe and document retesting as required by the Architect, and provide a written statement of compliance with applicable warranties.
- C. Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealants or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from the original work.

3.7 JOINT SEALANT SCHEDULE

- A. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and nontraffic horizontal surfaces:
1. Perimeter joints between storefronts, balcony door, aluminum window, metal framing and adjacent materials: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
 2. Control and expansion joints in cast-in-place concrete: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
 3. Control and expansion joints in face brick: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
 4. Joints in Portland cement plaster (stucco) systems: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
 5. Joints between metal panels: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
 6. Joints between glass for structural glazing: Structural Glazing at Exterior Curtain Walls.
 7. Joints between different materials listed above: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.

8. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors and windows and louvers: Silicone Sealants for Vertical Applications (Non-Sag), Typical Exterior Wall Joints.
- B. Exterior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
1. Joints between different materials listed above: Two-Part Polyurethane Sealant for Paving Applications.
- C. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
1. Control and Expansion Joints on Exposed Interior Surfaces of Exterior Walls: Latex sealant.
 2. Perimeter Joints of Exterior Openings Where Indicated: Latex sealant.
 3. Vertical Control and Expansion Joints in Stone and Tile Surfaces: Latex sealant.
 4. Horizontal Control and Expansion Joints in Stone and Tile Flooring Surfaces: Two-Part Polyurethane Sealant for Paving Applications.
 5. Vertical Control Joints on Exposed Surfaces of Interior Unit Masonry and Concrete Walls and Partitions: Latex sealant.
 6. Perimeter Joints between Interior Wall Surfaces and Frames of Interior Doors, Windows, and Elevator Entrances: Latex sealant.
 7. Perimeter Joints between Scalloped, Bent, or Warped Interior Wallboard Surfaces and Straight Trim: Latex Sealant.
 8. Joints between Plumbing Fixtures and Adjoining Walls, Floors, and Counters: Mildew resistant silicone sealant.
 9. Joints between Glass, and between Glass and Adjacent Substrates: Butt glazing sealant.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes

1. Hollow metal doors and frames.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each product indicated. Include material descriptions, core descriptions, label compliance, sound and fire-resistance ratings, and finishes for each type of door and frame specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit door and frame schedule using same reference designations indicated on Drawings. Include opening size(s), handing of doors, frame throat dimensions, details of each frame type, elevations of door design types, details of construction, location and installation requirements of door hardware and reinforcements, hardware group numbers, details of joints and connections, fire label requirements including fire rating time duration, maximum temperature rise requirements, and smoke label requirements.
1. Indicate routing of electrical conduit and dimensions and locations of cutouts in doors and frames to accept electric hardware devices.
 2. Show direction of satin stainless steel finish.
- C. Construction Samples: Submit approximately 18 by 24 inches, representing the required construction of doors and frames for Project.
1. Doors: Show vertical-edge, top, and bottom construction; insulation; face stiffeners; and hinge and other applied hardware reinforcement. Include louver section and glazing stops if applicable.
 2. Welded Frames: Show profile, welded corner joint, welded hinge reinforcement, dust-cover boxes, floor and wall anchors, stops, and silencers. Include panel and louver sections and glazing stops if applicable.
 3. Knock-Down Frames: Show profile, corner joint, welded hinge reinforcement, wall anchors, stops, and silencers.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Research/Evaluation Reports: Submit research/evaluation reports from the State of Florida that indicate that the selected hollow metal door and frame assemblies complies with the performance requirements and is approved for use in the required Wind Zone of the Florida Building Code.

1. The report shall clearly indicate the Notice of Acceptance (NOA) as published by Miami-Dade County, Florida or Florida Product Approval Number as published by current Florida Building Code for each selected exterior hollow metal door and frame assembly being installed for the Project.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Hollow Metal Door and Frame Standard: Comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following publications by Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association (HMMA) Div. of National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM), unless more stringent requirements are indicated in the Contract Documents:
 1. HMMA "Hollow Metal Manual."
 2. HMMA 861 "Guide Specifications for Commercial Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."
 3. HMMA 866 "Guide Specifications for Stainless Steel Hollow Metal Doors and Frames."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver doors and frames palletted, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage.
- B. Inspect doors and frames, on delivery, for damage. Tool marks, rust, blemishes, and other damage on exposed surfaces will not be acceptable. Remove and replace damaged items as directed by Architect. Store doors and frames at building site in a dry location, off the ground, and in such a manner as to prevent deterioration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Design, fabricate and install exterior door assemblies with the assembly U-factor maximum to comply with ASHRAE 90.1 and the IECC for the project specific geographic location of the building project when tested according to NFRC 100 (ASTM C 518).

2.2 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide doors and frames by one of the following:
 1. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames:

- a. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group Company.
- b. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group Company.
- c. Steelcraft; an Allegion PLC Company.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheets: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, CS (commercial steel), Type B, free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- B. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheets: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, CS (commercial steel), Type B; free from scale, pitting, coil breaks, surface blemishes, buckles, waves, or other defects, exposed (matte) dull finish, suitable for exposed applications.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheets: ASTM A 653/A 653M, CS (commercial steel), Type B; with G60 zinc (galvanized) or A60 zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Galvanized or cadmium plated steel.
 1. Expansion Bolts and Shields: FS FF-S-325, Group III, Type 1 or 2.
 2. Machine Screws: FS FF-S-92, carbon steel, Type III cross recessed, design I or II recess, style 2C flat head.
- E. Filler: Sound deadening and heat retarding mineral fiber insulating material.
- F. Glass and Glazing: Refer to Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- G. Hardware: Refer to Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

2.4 DOORS

- A. General: Provide flush-design doors, 1-3/4 inches thick, of seamless hollow construction, unless otherwise indicated. Construct doors with sheets joined at their vertical edges by continuous welding the full height of the door, or joined at vertical edges by 1 inch spot welds 6 inches on center, or intermittently welded seams. Voids between spot and intermediate welds shall be epoxy edge filled. Grind and finish all welds and edge fills flush to result in invisible seams on the door faces or vertical door edges.
 1. Visible joints or seams around glazed or louvered panel inserts are permitted.
 2. For single-acting swing doors, bevel both vertical edges 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
 3. For double-acting swing doors, round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch radius.
- B. Exterior Door Core Construction: Subject to compliance with performance requirements, provide either polystyrene or polyurethane cores.

- C. Fire Door Cores: A continuous mineral fiberboard core permanently bonded to the inside face of the outer face sheet unless otherwise required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
- D. Astragals: As required by NFPA 80 to provide fire ratings indicated.
- E. Top and Bottom Channels: Spot weld metal channel not less than thickness of face sheet to face sheets not more than 6 inches o.c.
 - 1. Reinforce tops and bottoms of doors with inverted horizontal channels of same material as face sheet so flanges of channels are even with bottom and top edges of face sheets.
 - 2. For exterior doors, close top edge with metallic-coated steel closing channel of same material, so webs of channels are flush with top door edges. Weld inverted steel channels to both face sheets or form integrally with edge construction of door.
- F. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcing from the same material as door to comply with the following. Offset reinforcement so that faces of mortised hardware items are flush with door surfaces.
 - 1. Hinges and Pivots: 7 gauge thick by 1-1/2 inches wide by 9 inches.
 - 2. Lock Front, Strike, and Flushbolt Reinforcements: 12 gauge thick by size as required by hardware manufacturer.
 - 3. Closer Reinforcements: 12 gauge thick one-piece channel by size as required by hardware manufacturer.
 - 4. Other Hardware Reinforcements: As required for adequate strength and anchorage.
 - 5. In lieu of reinforcement specified, hardware manufacturer's recommended reinforcing units may be used.
 - 6. Exit Device Reinforcements: 12 gauge thick by 10 inches high by 4 inches wide centered on exit device case body, unless otherwise recommended by exit device manufacturer.
- G. Exterior Hollow Metal Doors: Flush design with 14 gauge thick metallic-coated stretcher leveled steel face sheets, unless heavier gage is required to comply with the performance requirements, and other metal components from metallic coated steel sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of doors to permit entrapped moisture to escape.

2.5 PANELS

- A. Provide panels of same materials, construction, and finish as specified for doors.

2.6 WELDED FRAMES

- A. Fabricate hollow metal frames, formed to profiles indicated, with full 5/8 inch stops, and of the following minimum thicknesses.

1. For exterior use, form frames from 14 gauge thick, metallic-coated steel sheets.
 2. For interior use, form frames from cold- rolled steel sheet of the following thicknesses:
 - a. Openings up to and Including 48 Inches Wide: 16 gauge.
 - b. Openings More Than 48 Inches Wide: 14 gauge.
 3. Frame heads at all masonry openings shall be formed to extend to the lowest CMU horizontal mortar joint.
 4. Form stainless-steel door frames from 16 gauge thick, stainless-steel sheets.
- B. Provide frames either saw mitered and full (continuously) profile welded, or machine mitered and full profile welded, on back side at frame corners and stops with edges straight and true. Grind welds smooth and flush on exposed surfaces.
1. At stainless steel door frames provide a machined mitered, faces only welded on back side of frame face, combined with interlocked tab construction with edges straight and true to eliminate weld bleed through at the exposed rabbet and stops. Grind welds smooth and flush on exposed surfaces.
- C. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate reinforcements from same material as frame to comply with the following. Offset reinforcement so that faces of mortised hardware items are flush with surface of the frame.
1. Hinges and Pivots: 7 gauge thick by 1-1/4 inches wide by 10 inches.
 2. Strike, Surface Mounted Hold Open Arms, and Flushbolt Reinforcements: 12 gauge thick by size as required by hardware manufacturer.
 3. Closer Reinforcements: 12 gauge thick one piece channel by size as required by hardware manufacturer.
 4. Other Hardware Reinforcements: As required for adequate strength and anchorage.
- D. Electrical Requirements: Make provisions for installation of electrical items specified elsewhere; arrange so wiring can be readily removed and replaced.
1. Provide all cutouts and reinforcements required for steel frames to accept security system components.
 2. Frames with Electric Hinges and Pivots: Provide welded on UL listed back boxes with metal conduit or raceway to permit wiring from electric hinge or pivot to other electric door hardware.
 - a. Hinge Location: Center for doors less than 90 inches tall or second hinge from door bottom for doors greater than 90 inches; top or bottom electric hinge locations shall not be permitted.
- E. Mullions and Transom Bars for Sidelights, Transoms, and Borrowed Light Frames: Provide closed or tubular mullions and transom bars where indicated. Fasten mullions and transom bars at crossings and to jambs by butt welding. Reinforce joints between frame members with concealed clip angles or sleeves of same metal and thickness as frame.

- F. Jamb Anchors: Locate jamb anchors above hinges and directly opposite on strike jamb as required to secure frames to adjacent construction. At metal stud partitions locate the additional jamb anchor below the top hinge.
1. Metal-Stud Partitions: Metal channel stud zee anchor sized to match stud width, welded to back of frames, formed of same material and gauge thickness as frame. Unless closer spacing is required to meet the performance requirements provide at least the number of anchors for each jamb according to the following heights:
- a. Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches in height.
 - b. Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches in height.
 - c. Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches in height.
 - d. One additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof more than 96 inches in height.
- G. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, formed of same material as frame, 12 gauge thick, and punched with two holes to receive two 0.375 inch fasteners. Where floor fill or setting beds occur support frame by adjustable floor anchors bolted to the structural substrate. Terminate bottom of frames at finish floor surface. Weld floor anchors to frames with at least 4 spot welds per anchor.
- H. Head Strut Supports: Provide 3/8-by-2-inch vertical steel struts extending from top of frame at each jamb to supporting construction above. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction above by bolting, welding, or other suitable anchorage. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members to permit height adjustment during installation. Adapt jamb anchors at struts to permit adjustment.
- I. Head Reinforcement: For frames more than 48 inches wide in masonry wall openings, provide continuous steel channel or angle stiffener, 12 gauge thick for full width of opening, welded to back of frame at head. Head reinforcements shall not be used as a lintel or load-bearing member for masonry.
- J. Spreader Bars: Provide removable spreader bar across bottom of frames to serve as bracing during shipment and handling and to hold frames in proper position do not tack weld bars to frames.
- K. Door Silencer Holes: Drill strike jamb stop to receive three silencers on single door frames and for two silencers on double door frames. Insert plastic plugs in holes to keep holes clear during installation.
- L. Plaster, Mortar and Grout Guards and Removable Access Plates: Provide minimum 26 gauge thick guards or dust-cover boxes of same material as frame, welded to frame at back of hardware cutouts to close off interior of openings and prevent mortar or other materials from obstructing hardware and hardware fastener installation and hardware operation. Provide removable access plates in the heads of frames to receive overhead concealed door closers.

2.7 LOUVERS

- A. Door Louvers: Fabricate louvers and mount flush into doors without overlapping moldings on surface of door face sheets. Provide internal support as recommended by louver manufacturer. Prime paint steel louvers after fabrication.
 - 1. Interior Louvers: Sightproof, stationary type, constructed of inverted V or Y-shaped blades formed of same material as door.
 - a. Steel: 18 gauge thick.
- B. Louvered Panels: Provide for installation in frames where indicated.
 - 1. Interior Louvers: 18 gauge thick steel sheet. Fabricate units with stationary, sightproof, inverted V-shaped blades and U-shaped frames; not less than 1-3/8 inches thick. Space louver blades not more than 3 inches o.c. Assemble units by welding.

2.8 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Provide continuous stops and moldings around solid, glazed, and louvered panels where indicated.
- B. Form fixed stops and moldings integral with frame, on the exterior (non-secured) side of the frame.
- C. Provide removable stops and moldings formed of 20 gauge thick steel sheets matching hollow metal frames. Secure with countersunk oval head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 12 inches o.c. Form corners with butted or mitered hairline joints.
- D. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glass or panel and type of installation indicated.

2.9 METALLIC-COATED STEEL FINISHES

- A. General: Clean, treat and prime surfaces of fabricated steel door and frame work, inside and out, whether exposed or concealed in the construction.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with non-petroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.
 - 1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.

- C. Factory Priming for Field-Painted Finish: Apply shop primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Apply a sufficient number of coats, baked on, to obtain uniformly smooth exposed surfaces. Touch up surfaces having runs, smears, or bare spots.
 - 1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, primer complying with ANSI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for zinc-coated steel; compatible with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install doors and frames according to the referenced standards, the Architect reviewed shop drawings, and manufacturer's written recommendations and installation instructions.
 - 1. Exterior Hollow Metal Doors Assemblies: Install in accordance with the applicable provisions of acceptance indicated under the door and frame manufacturer's Notice of Approval (NOA) as published by Miami-Dade County, Florida or Florida Product Approval as published by current Florida Building Code.
- B. Frames: Install frames where indicated. Extend frame anchorages below fills and finishes. Coordinate the installation of built-in anchors for wall and partition construction as required with other work.
 - 1. Knock-Down Frames: Install knock-down frames in locations shown, in perfect alignment and elevation, plumb, level, straight and true, and free from rack.
 - 2. Welded Frames:
 - a. Set masonry anchorage devices where required for securing frames to in-place concrete or masonry construction.
 - 1) Set anchorage devices opposite each anchor location as specified and anchorage device manufacturer's written instructions. Leave drilled holes rough, not reamed, and free of dust and debris.
 - b. Placing Frames: Remove temporary spreader bars prior to installation of the frames. Set frames accurately in position; plumb; align, and brace securely until permanent anchors are set.
 - 1) At concrete or masonry construction, set frames and secure in place with machine screws and masonry anchorage devices. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.

- 2) Anchor bottom of frames to floors through floor anchors with threaded fasteners.
- 3) Field splice only at approved locations indicated on the shop drawings. Weld, grind, and finish as required to conceal evidence of splicing on exposed faces.
- 4) Remove spreader bars only after frames are properly set and secured.

C. Doors:

1. Non-Fire Rated Doors: Fit non-fire-rated doors accurately in their respective frames, with the following clearances:
 - a. Jambs and Head: 3/32 inch.
 - b. Meeting Edges, Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch.
 - c. Bottom: 3/8 inch, if no threshold or carpet.
 - d. Bottom: 1/8 inch, at threshold or carpet.
2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install with clearances as specified in NFPA 80.
3. Smoke Control Doors: Install according to NFPA 105.

D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Secure stops with countersunk flat or oval head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches² inches

E. Apply hardware in accordance with hardware manufacturer's instructions and Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware." Drill and tap for machine screws as required. Do not use self tapping sheet metal screws. Adjust door installation to provide uniform clearance at head and jambs, and to contact stops uniformly. Adjust hardware items just prior to final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition.

1. Exterior Hollow Metal Door Assemblies: Install hardware in accordance with the applicable provisions of acceptance indicated under the door and frame manufacturer's Notice of Approval (NOA) as published by Miami-Dade County, Florida or Florida Product Approval as published by current Florida Building Code.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items just before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including doors or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying primer.
 1. Finish Painting: Refer to Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting."

- C. Stainless-Steel Touchup: Immediately after erection, smooth abraded areas of stainless steel and polish and clean to match undamaged finish.
- D. Remove and replace defective work, including doors or frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise defective.
- E. Institute protective measures required throughout the remainder of the construction period to ensure that the hollow metal doors and frames will be without damage or deterioration, at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Access doors and frames.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection and temperature-rise limit ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Flush Access Doors with Exposed Flanges :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACUDOR Products, Inc.
 - b. Babcock-Davis.
 - c. Nystrom.
2. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
3. Optional Features: Piano hinges.
4. Locations: Wall and ceiling.
5. Door Size: As indicated on drawings.
6. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet for Door: Nominal 0.064 inch, 16 gage, factory primed.
7. Frame Material: Same material, thickness, and finish as door.

8. Latch and Lock: Cam latch, screwdriver operated.
 - a. Milcor; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.
- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish mounting holes, attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access doors to types of supports indicated.
 1. For concealed flanges with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum panels securely attached to perimeter of frames.
 2. For concealed flanges with plaster bead for full-bed plaster applications, provide zinc-coated expanded-metal lath and exposed casing bead welded to perimeter of frames.
- D. Recessed Access Doors: Form face of panel to provide recess for application of applied finish. Reinforce panel as required to prevent buckling. Provide access sleeves for each latch operator and install in holes cut through finish.
 1. For recessed doors with plaster infill, provide self-furring expanded-metal lath attached to door panel.
- E. Latch and Lock Hardware:
 1. Quantity: Furnish number of latches and locks required to hold doors tightly closed.
 2. Keys: Furnish two keys per lock and key all locks alike.
- F. Aluminum: After fabrication, apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum that will come in contact with concrete.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
 - 1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection Agency: Engage a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.
- B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware, after installation, for proper operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 36 13 - SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes electrically operated sectional doors .
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel supports.
 - 2. Section 09 96 00.13 for finish painting of factory-primed doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Include points of attachment and their corresponding static and dynamic loads imposed on structure.
 - 4. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied finishes.
 - 1. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Failure of components or operators before reaching required number of operation cycles.
 - c. Faulty operation of hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
 - e. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS, GENERAL

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer specializing in manufacturing products with minimum five years documented experience.
 2. Installer Qualification: Authorized representative of the manufacturer with minimum five years documented experience and or a factory trained and authorized installation company..

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Sectional doors shall comply with performance requirements specified without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction and without requiring temporary installation of reinforcing components.
- B. Structural Performance, Exterior Doors: Capable of withstanding the design wind loads.
 - 1. Design Wind Load: Uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft., acting inward and outward.
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components.
 - a. Deflection of door sections in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/300 of the door width.
 - b. Deflection of horizontal track assembly shall not exceed 1/240 of the door height.
 - 3. Operability under Wind Load: Design overhead coiling doors to remain operable under uniform pressure (velocity pressure) of 20 lbf/sq. ft. wind load, acting inward and outward.
- C. Seismic Performance: Sectional doors shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.3 DOOR ASSEMBLY

- A. Full-Vision Sectional Door: Sectional door formed with hinged sections and fabricated for weather tightness unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following or equal to the basis of design:
 - a. Crown Doors, LLC (Basis of Design)
 - b. Renlita Doors North America
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Crown SST II Hydraulic Bi-Fold System or equal:
 - a. Crown Doors, LLC
135 McLeod Avenue South
Plato, MN 55370
Tel: 320-238-2616

- B. Two hinged stacking overhead door: Two horizontal panels hinged together, weather lapped at horizontal joint; rising vertically on roller and track system fixed to building structure to stack in a folded position under soffit
- C. Framework: Welded construction fabricated from rolled hollow section steel members with minimum wall thickness of 0.125 inch. Support structure shall be designed for maximum dead load deflection of 1/300 part of the span
- D. Operating channels fabricated from carbon steel hot rolled sheet to comply with ASTM A-36
- E. Bi-Fold System shall be operated by hydraulic Cylinder that are mechanically fastened to the panel frame. Cylinders are to be located on top half of door only. Cylinders are to be designed to carry the required loads during operation, open position and closed position. Internal stops are to be installed so as to not allow over extension of the cylinders, therefore restricting the system from opening or closing beyond its limit. System shall be locked closed by means of the hydraulic cylinders providing a minimum of 1000 lbs of closing force.
- F. Counterbalancing: If required Counterweight system with enclosed counterweights suspended by 7/19 flexible multi-strand steel cables with minimum safety factor of 6:1. Cable shall be guided in steel sheaves with minimum sheave to cable diameter of 19:1. Sheaves shall be capable of carrying design loads.
- G. Mechanical pin lock fail safe device that prevents door movement automatically in the event of a counterbalance or lifting device failure. Safety brake shall automatically reset once repairs are completed and be capable of repeated engagement. without replacement of brake or components
- H. Steel door sections are to be constructed from carbon steel hot rolled tube complying with ASTM A-500 Grade B and ASTM 36. Finish of all frames to match architect's sample of adjacent mullion color.
- I. Counterweight covers: Counterweights shall be protected and covered with a removable pressed sheet of steel. Finish to match mullion color.
- J. Power Requirements: 220-240 Volt AC, Single phase, 6 Amps
- K. Operation: Motorized manufacturer standard as required
 - 1. Size: Motor is to be minimum 1HP AC motor with 39:1 gear ratio gearbox direct mounted to 1" door drive shaft. Motor is provided with control panel and is controlled by a touch screen control station, photo eye, and hardware necessary for installation of motor and control panel.
 - a. Primary speed reduction: Worm gear in oil bath reducer. Gear ratio is 39:1 with shaft speed of 34 RPM
 - b. Motor Travel: Motor up and down travel is set digitally in the control panel and door position is established by integrated shaft position encoder

- c. Control Station: Touch screen control station provided as standard with mounting to single gang electrical box. Minimum box size 3" x 2" x 2-1/2". Location of control station is to be adjacent to door tucked away from view. Coordinate final location in field with architect.
- d. Primary Entrapment Device: NEMA 4 monitored Photo sensor mounted 6 inches above the finished floor at each side of door opening interior

L. Accessories

- 1. Secondary entrapment device: Photoelectric or lead edge pressure sensor that stops and reverse the downward movement of the door. Sensitivity shall be set by qualified installer during initial commissioning.
- 2. External weather resistant "open-close" control wired for constant hold.

M. Track Configuration: Standard track by manufacturer.

N. Weatherseals: Fitted to bottom and top of door. Provide combination bottom weatherseal and sensor edge.

O. Windows: Approximately equal spaced apart the approximate distance as indicated on Drawings; in row(s) at height indicated on Drawings; installed with glazing of the following type:

- 1. Insulated Glazing Unit, dual 1" dual pane, to match as exterior glazing, refer to specification 08 80 00 for specified insulated glazing. .

P. Electric Door Operator:

- 1. Usage Classification: Light duty, up to 10 cycles per hour.
- 2. Operator Type: Manufacturer's standard for door requirements .
- 3. Safety: Listed according to UL 325 by a qualified testing agency for commercial or industrial use; moving parts of operator enclosed or guarded if exposed and mounted at 8 feet or lower.
- 4. Emergency Manual Operation: Push-up type.

Q. Door Finish and Exposed finished:

- 1. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Color and gloss matching Architect's sample of mullion finish.

2.4 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.5 TRACKS, SUPPORTS, AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Tracks: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel track system of configuration indicated, sized for door size and weight, designed for lift type indicated and clearances indicated on Drawings, Provide complete system including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement to ensure rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides for required door type, size, weight, and loading.
 - 1. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M, minimum G60 zinc coating.
 - 2. Slope tracks at an angle from vertical or design tracks to ensure tight closure at jambs when door unit is closed.
 - 3. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Galvanized-steel members to support track without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors. Slot vertical sections of track spaced 2 inches apart for door-drop safety device.
 - a. For Vertical Track: Continuous reinforcing angle attached to track and attached to wall with jamb brackets.
 - b. For Horizontal Track: Continuous reinforcing angle from curve in track to end of track, attached to track and supported at points by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.
- B. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom and top of sectional door unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 HARDWARE

- A. General: Heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
- B. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch- nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, according to manufacturer's written recommendations for door size. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is impossible. Provide double-end hinges where required, for doors more than 16 feet wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer.
- C. Rollers: Manufacturer standard: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball-bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted with varying projections to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. .

2.7 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS

- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and "operation cycles" requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-prewired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the same as that of the door manufacturer:
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.
- B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than 10 cycles per hour for each door.
- C. Door-Operator Type: Unit consisting of electric motor, gears, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls needed to operate door and meet required usage classification.
- D. Motors: Reversible-type motor with controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
 - 1. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Phase: Single phase.
 - b. Volts: 220 V.
 - 2. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. and not more than 12 in./sec., without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
 - 3. Operating Controls, Controllers (Disconnect Switches), Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
 - 5. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
- E. Control Station: Digital station or minimum Three-button control station in fixed location with momentary-contact push-button controls labeled "Open" and "Stop" and sustained- or constant-pressure, push-button control labeled "Close."
 - 1. Interior-Mounted Units: Full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.

- F. Emergency Manual Operation: Equip electrically powered door with capability for emergency manual operation. Design manual mechanism so required force for door operation does not exceed 25 lbf.
- G. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM/NOMMA's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products (AMP 500-06)" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Tracks:
 - 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
 - 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safety devices. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weather-resistant fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 41 13 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 1. Security system components may be incorporated into the door and frame openings of all aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts at the Owner's option. Cooperate with the Owner's security system contractors if the Owner chooses to incorporate security system components during the course of the Work.
- B. Section includes aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. The aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work includes the following:
 - 1. Aluminum swing entrance doors and framing, including hardware, stripping and thresholds.
 - 2. Aluminum sliding entrance doors, and framing, including hardware, stripping and thresholds.
 - 3. Aluminum trim, flashings, and similar items in conjunction with aluminum-framed entrance and storefronts.
 - 4. Painting and coating in conjunction with the above aluminum items.
 - 5. Internal steel and aluminum reinforcements for aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 6. Internal and perimeter sealing, joint fillers, weeps, vents and gasketing systems for aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 7. Anchors, shims, fasteners, inserts, expansion devices, accessories, support brackets and attachments for aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 8. Glass and glazing for aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts.
 - 9. Security system components may be incorporated into the door and frame openings of all aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work at the Owner's option. Cooperate with the Owner's security system contractors if the Owner chooses to incorporate security system components during the course of the Work.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront product specified.
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.

2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3: For architectural paints and coatings, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with Table 1 of the ARB, Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure, unless more stringent local limits apply.
 3. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.
 - a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
- C. Deferred Submittal Documentation (Delegated Design): For all storefronts, submit copies of structural calculations indicating complete compliance with the specified performance requirements and design criteria. Include calculations to show that maximum deflections do not exceed specified performance requirements under full design loading, calculations for frames, connections, and glass computer analyses showing that probability of breakage at the design wind pressure, and under the specified service temperature range, will not exceed the specified probability of breakage for each type, size, and thickness of glass. Calculations shall be prepared, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the State of California. The Engineer shall be experienced in providing engineering services on a minimum of 10 years for the type of all glass entrances and storefronts work indicated. The engineer shall provide evidence of their design methodology, analysis, including all assumptions.
1. Project Structural Engineer of Record's review of the Deferred Submittal Shop Drawings and calculations is limited to confirmation that the building structure is adequate to accommodate the loads and forces imposed on it by the work described in them.
- D. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing scaled elevations, plans, and sections of the aluminum entrance and storefront work. Full-scale sections shall be prepared and submitted for details of the assemblies that cannot be shown in the elevations or sections. Include with shop drawings metal thickness of all metal components, glass thicknesses, metal finishes, location and installation requirements of door hardware and reinforcements, and all other pertinent information as necessary or requested by the Architect to indicate compliance with the Contract Documents. Details of field connections, anchorage, and their relationship to the work of others shall be clearly indicated for the coordination of the work by other building trades. Details of fastening and sealing methods and product joinery shall be shown to ensure proper performance of the field installation. No work shall be fabricated until shop drawings for that work have been approved by Architect for fabrication.
1. Hardware Schedule: Organize schedule into sets based on hardware specified. Include name of item and manufacturer, and complete designation of every item required for each entrance door.
 2. Indicate routing of electrical conduit and dimensions and locations of cutouts in doors and frames to accept electric hardware devices.
 3. Show direction of coil coating applied to metal panel faces.
- E. Samples: Submit samples of the following before any work is fabricated:

1. Three paired sets of samples for each exposed metal finish required. Sample finishes shall be on the specified alloy, temper, and thickness of metal required for the work. Where finishes involve color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected. Furnish samples in either 12 inch lengths of patch fittings, rails, or 12 inch squares of sheet.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Structural Calculations: Submit, for information only, copies of structural calculations indicating complete compliance with the specified performance requirements. Calculations shall be prepared, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the state wherein the work is to be erected.
- B. Product Test Reports: Submit certified product test reports based on tests performed by an AAMA Accredited Laboratory clearly describing in written form, and in shop drawing form, compliance of each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront assembly (each swinging and sliding door) with requirements indicated based on comprehensive testing.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Instructions: Submit copies of an assembled and bound maintenance manual, describing the devices and procedures to be followed in cleaning, adjusting, and maintaining the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work. Include information for maintaining operable doors, operating hardware, and replacing weather stripping.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: The drawings and specifications are based on Arcadia, Inc; Product AFG601T, 2" x6" offset system. Award the fabrication of glazed aluminum curtain wall components to a single firm specializing in the fabrication of glazed aluminum curtain wall components who has successfully produced work similar in design and extent to that required for the project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 5 years. The fabricator shall have sufficient production capacity, have organized quality control and testing procedures, and published written and illustrated installation manuals, to produce and properly install the glazed aluminum curtain wall assemblies required without causing delay in progress of the Work
 1. The manufacturer and installer may be one and the same entity.
 2. Implement a clear, project specific, system to track information flow and to check that the work is being engineered, and fabricated, to the most up to date revisions of the Contract Documents.

3. Quality Control Plan: Submit a project specific quality control plan demonstrating how quality management will be implemented from award to final completion.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Subcontract the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work to a firm which is specialized in the erection of entrances and storefronts and who has successfully installed work similar in design and extent to that required for the Project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 10 years.
- C. Field Testing: Test the curtain wall, and punched opening window, sample installations erected to the opaque portions of the exterior wall cladding in accordance with the specified field test methods. Conduct tests of each specified sample installation under the direction of the testing laboratory in the presence of the Owner, Architect, the Contractor, various component manufacturers and fabricators and the installer for each specified system incorporated in the sample installations.

Retain either above or below for all exterior wall projects. Above will yield quantitative results while below is more qualitative. Each will take about the same time but above requires more preparatory work prior to testing (e.g. building of a field chamber and test racks). If retaining subparagraph above, verify with qualified testing agencies that Project conditions will allow satisfactory static-pressure field testing. A system's installed performance is generally less than its laboratory performance. Coordinate static-pressure field-test performance requirements with specified static-pressure laboratory-test performance requirements. Indicate test locations on Drawings.

1. Field Test for Water Leakage (Hose Stream Testing):
 - a. Water Spray Test without Static Air Pressure Difference: AAMA 501.2.
 - b. Correct all deficiencies observed as a result of this test and retest. For each unsuccessful field test, another similar sample installation area shall be selected and tested. Any repairs or remediation conducted to pass a test, if they constitute a change to the design (e.g., sealing of a joint that was previously open, or adding a weep hole) must be implemented throughout the work. Any remedial repairs which increase the maintenance requirements of the system (i.e., face sealing of a drained system), will not be accepted.

The following is an example of air leakage field testing. Field testing of curtain walls is very difficult as there are many penetrations to seal to effectively measure leakage therefore it is rarely specified.

- c. Field Test for Air Leakage: This test shall only be conducted on the punched opening sample installation.
 - 1) Air Infiltration: ASTM E 783 and AAMA 503 conducted at a Uniform Static Test Pressure of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

- D. Correct all deficiencies observed as a result of this test and retest. For each unsuccessful field test, another similar sample installation area shall be selected and tested. Any repairs or remediation conducted to pass a test, if they constitute a change to the design (e.g., sealing of a joint that was previously open, or adding a weep hole) must be implemented throughout the work. Any remedial repairs which increase the maintenance requirements of the system (i.e., face sealing of a drained system) will not be accepted.
- E. Pre-construction Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Test results confirming compatibility and adhesion are mandatory for all concealed and exposed sealant materials in contact with exterior glazing, stone, precast, other sealants, flashings, metal framing, and shims prior to full size sample installation construction. Refer to Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for specific testing requirements, and anticipated lead time necessary to perform testing.
- F. Standards: Comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following standards below, where standards conflict the more stringent shall apply:
1. Aluminum Association (AA):
 - a. No. 1 "Aluminum Standards and Data."
 - b. "The Aluminum Design Manual."
 2. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
 - a. AAMA "Aluminum Curtain Wall Design Guide Manual," Volumes 1-9.
 - b. AAMA "Aluminum Store Front and Entrance Design Guide Manual."
 - c. AAMA 501.2, "Specification for Field Check of Metal Curtain Walls for Water Leakage."
 - d. AAMA 611, "Anodized Architectural Aluminum."
 - e. AAMA 2603, "Voluntary Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings on Extruded Aluminum."
 - f. AAMA 2605, "Specification for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels."
 - g. AAMA TIR-A8, "Structural Performance Poured and Debridged Framing Systems."
 - h. AAMA TIR-A9-2014, "Design Guide for Metal Cladding Fasteners."
 - i. AAMA QAG-1, "Quality Assurance Processing & Monitoring Guide for Poured and Debridged Polyurethane Thermal Barriers."
 - j. AAMA QAG-2, "Quality Assurance Processing & Monitoring Guide for Polyamide Thermal Barriers."
 3. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), "Steel Construction Manual," Current Edition.
 4. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - a. ASTM C 1401, "Standard Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing."
 - b. ASTM E 283, "Test Method for Rate of Air Leakage Through Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors under Specified Pressure Differences Across the Specimen."

- c. ASTM E 330, "Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, and Doors by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference."
 - d. ASTM E 331, "Test Method for Water Penetration of Exterior Windows, Skylights, Doors, and Curtain Walls by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference."
 - e. ASTM E 1300, "Standard Practice for Determining Load Resistance of Glass in Buildings."
 - f. ASTM E 1886, "Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Storm Shutters Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials."
 - g. ASTM E 1996, "Standard for Performance of Exterior Windows, Glazed Curtain Walls, Doors and Storm Shutters Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes."
- 5. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM), "Metal Finishes Manual."
 - 6. Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC): "Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 2, Systems and Specifications."
 - 7. ANSI Z97.1 and Federal Standard 16 CFR 1201, Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC): "Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials," as published in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR). Comply with the applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction, wherever requirements conflict the more stringent shall be required. Obtain approvals from all such authorities. As a minimum provide safety glazing complying with ANSI Z97.1 for Category A performance and 16 CFR Part 1201 for Category II performance.
 - 8. Welding Standards: Welding shall be performed by skilled and qualified mechanics. Welding shall be performed in accordance with the applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel" and AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 - 9. Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association (BHMA):
 - a. ANSI/BHMA A156.10, "Power Operated Pedestrian Doors."
 - b. ANSI/BHMA A156.19, "Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors."
 - c. ANSI/BHMA A156.27, "Power and Manual Operated Revolving Pedestrian Doors."
 - 10. Underwriters Laboratories (UL): Provide power door operators that comply with UL 325.
 - 11. National Fenestration Rating Council (NFRC):
 - a. NFRC 100, "Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product U-Factors."
 - b. NFRC 200, "Procedure for Determining Fenestration Product Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance at Normal Incidence."
 - c. NFRC 300, "Test Method for Determining the Solar Optical Properties of Glazing Materials and Systems."

- G. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Prior to the start of the aluminum-frame entrance and storefront work, and at the Contractor's direction, meet at the site and review the installation procedures and coordination with other work. Meeting shall include Contractor, Owner, Architect, aluminum-framed entrance and storefront installer, sealant installer, as well as any other subcontractors or material technical service representatives whose work, or products, must be coordinated with the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work.

1.6 IDENTIFICATION, DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Comply with the applicable provisions of AAMA "Curtain Wall Manual #10" for the care and handling of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work from shop to site.
- B. All components of the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work shall be identified after fabrication by marks clearly indicating their location in the building. Packaging of components shall be so selected to protect the components from damage during shipping and handling.
- C. Storage on Site:
1. Store aluminum-framed entrance and storefront components in a location and in a manner to avoid damage to the components. Stacking shall be done in a way which will prevent bending, excessive pressure, abrasion or other permanent damage of the component and its finished surfaces.
 2. Store aluminum-framed entrance and storefront components and materials in a clean, dry location, away from uncured concrete, masonry work, sprayed on fireproofing work, and other construction activities. Cover with non-staining waterproof paper, tarpaulin, or polyethylene sheeting in a manner that will permit circulation of air inside the covering.
- D. Keep handling on site to a minimum. Exercise particular care to avoid damage to finishes of metals.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of supporting structure by field measurements before fabrication so that the entrance and storefront work will be accurately designed, fabricated and fitted to the structure. Indicate measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work. Use Contractor's lines and benchmarks as a basis for measurements.
1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating entrance and storefront work without field measurements. Coordinate supporting structure construction to ensure actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

- B. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to, power supplies, fire alarm system and detection devices, access control system, security system, building control system.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Submit a 2 year written warranty, beginning from date of substantial completion, and executed by the Contractor, manufacturer and the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront installer agreeing to repair or replace components of entrance and storefront systems that develop defects in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Defects include, structural failures, sealant failures, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering, failure of operating components to function properly, uncontrolled water leakage, uncontrolled air leakage, and any other evidence of failure or deterioration of the aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work to meet performance requirements.
- B. Warranty; Anodized Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 3 years, warranting that the anodized aluminum will not develop excessive fading or excessive non-uniformity of color or shade, and will not crack, peel, pit, or corrode; all within the limits defined as follows:
 - 1. "Excessive Fading" means a change in appearance which is perceptible and objectionable as determined by the Architect when viewed visually in comparison with the original color range samples.
 - 2. "Excessive Non-Uniformity" means non-uniform fading during the period of the warranty to the extent that adjacent panels have a color difference greater than the original acceptable range of color.
 - 3. "Will Not Pit or Otherwise Corrode" means there shall be no pitting or other type of corrosion discernable from a distance of 10 feet, resulting from the natural elements in the atmosphere at the Project site.
- C. Warranty, High Performance Organic Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 20 years, warranting the integrity of film and permanence of color of the high performance organic coatings for the following:
 - 1. Color fade not to exceed 5 delta E units (Hunter) as calculated in accordance with ASTM D 2244 on exposed surfaces cleaned with clean water and a soft cloth.
 - 2. Degree of chalking not to exceed rating No. 8 when measured in accordance with ASTM D 4214 on exposed unwashed surfaces.
 - 3. Will not crack, check or peel.
- D. Warranty, Thermosetting Acrylic Enamel Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 5 years, warranting the integrity of film against cracking, chipping, flaking, peeling and blistering of the thermosetting acrylic enamel coatings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** The drawings and specifications are based on Arcadia, Inc; Product AFG601T, 2" x6" offset system systems. . Award the fabrication of aluminum framed entrances and storefront components to a single firm specializing in the fabrication of aluminum framed entrances and storefront components who has successfully produced work similar in design and extent to that required for the project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 5 years. The fabricator shall have sufficient production capacity, have organized quality control and testing procedures, and published written and illustrated installation manuals, to produce and properly install the aluminum framed entrances and storefront assemblies required without causing delay in progress of the Work. Other manufacturers capable of producing aluminum framed entrances and storefront systems meeting the performance requirements include the following:
1. EFCO Corporation division of Pella.
 2. Moduline Division of Oldcastle Building Envelope.
 3. TRACO div. of Kawneer Company, Inc.
 4. Wausau Window and Window Wall Systems.
 5. YKK AP America Inc.
 6. Graham Architectural Products Corp.
- B. **Source Limitations:** Obtain aluminum framed entrances and storefronts from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. **Substitutions** shall include all costs for redesign with consequential changes by other contractor trades along with architect fees and related approvals by governing agencies including approvals.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **General:** Provide aluminum-framed entrance and storefront systems meeting or exceeding the following performance requirements:
1. **Structural Properties:**
 - a. **Wind Loads:** The aluminum-framed entrance and storefront work, including glass, shall be designed, fabricated and installed to withstand the maximum inward and outward wind pressures as indicated on Drawings.
 - b. **Seismic Loads:** As indicated on Drawings.
 - c. **Deflection Limitations:**

- 1) Deflections: Base calculations for the following deflections upon the combination of maximum direct wind loads, building deflections, thermal stresses, and erection tolerances.
 - a) The deflection of any framing member in a direction normal to the plane of the wall when subjected to the full code required wind loads specified above shall not exceed 1/175 of the glass edge length when measured in accordance with ASTM E 330, or 3/4 inch whichever is less..
 - b) Glass, sealants and interior finishes shall not be included to contribute to framing member strength, stiffness or lateral stability.
 - 2) Do not permit any permanent deformation (set) in the metal framing work. Permanent deformation, fastener, weld, or gasket failure, component breakage or disengagement shall not occur under wind loading equal to 1.5 times the wind loads (positive or negative). Permanent deformation shall be taken as deflection without recovery exceeding 1/1000 times span.
- d. Dead Loads:
- 1) Maximum full deadload deflections, parallel (in-plane) to wall plane, of framing members shall not reduce glass bite or glass coverage, to less than 75 percent of the design dimension, and shall not reduce edge clearance to less than 25 percent of design dimension or 1/8 inch whichever is greater or 1/16 inch for horizontal members.
 - 2) Limit deflections of metal members spanning door openings to 1/300. The clearance between the member and an operable door shall be no less than 1/16 inch .
 - 3) Twisting (rotation) of the horizontals due to the weight of the glass shall not exceed 1 degree, measured between ends and center of each span.
- e. Uniform Structural Loads: Satisfactory uniform wind loading tests of each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront assembly (each storefront, swinging and sliding entrance door) shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 330. Each assembly shall be subjected to inward and outward acting uniform loads equal to 1.5 times the inward and outward acting design wind loads specified above under paragraph "wind loads." Satisfactory performance at these loads shall mean no glass or other component breakage, component disengagement, and no permanent deformation of main framing members in excess of the permanent deformation criteria specified above.

B. Air Leakage:

1. Typical Conditions: Air leakage through each entrance and storefront assembly shall not have exceeded 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. Swinging Doors: Air leakage through each swinging entrance door shall not have exceeded 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

C. Water Penetration:

1. Water penetration in this specification is defined as the appearance of uncontrolled water, other than condensation, on any indoor face of any part of the wall.
2. Provision shall be made to drain to the exterior face of the wall any water entering the system.
3. No uncontrolled water penetration shall have occurred when each storefront assembly (each fixed storefront wall) was tested in accordance with the ASTM E 331 for one 15 minute cycle at a static pressure difference of 8 lbf/sq. ft. minimum.

D. Thermal Movements: Fabricate the entrance and storefront work to accommodate for such expansion and contraction of component materials, and supporting elements, as will be caused by surface temperatures ranging from -5 to +180 deg F, without causing buckling, glass breakage, failure of joint sealants, undue stress on metal members and fasteners, failure of doors or other operating units to function properly, reduction of performance, and other detrimental effects.

1. Dimensions shown on Drawings are based on an assumed design temperature of +70 deg F. Fabrication and erection procedures shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respective operations.

E. Building Frame Movement: Design, fabricate and install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to withstand building movements including thermal movements, loading deflections, shrinkage, creep and similar movements. Thermal movements shall be as specified above. Building frame deflections, shrinkage, creep and other movements are available from the structural engineer.

F. Condensation Resistance: Design, fabricate and install the aluminum framed entrance and storefront systems to prevent excessive condensation on the indoor exposure of the wall with the mechanical system functioning under normal operating conditions. A computer generated thermal analysis for each primary entrance and storefront system showing temperature gradients through each component of the glazed aluminum entrance and storefront and the location of the dewpoint shall be submitted with the shop drawing package. Excessive condensation is defined as the accumulation of uncontrolled condensate flowing from the entrance and storefront at any location, or visible ice, frost, or water on more than 5 percent of the area of any module of the exterior wall.

1. Outdoor: Ambient temperature of -5 deg F, 15 mph wind.
2. Indoor: Ambient temperature of +70 deg F, relative humidity of 30 percent.

- G. Thermal Transmittance: Design, fabricate and install the aluminum framed entrance and storefront assemblies with the assembly U-factor maximum to comply with ASHRAE 90.1 and the IECC for the project specific geographic location of the building project when tested according to NFRC 100. When tested in accordance with AAMA 1503.1 the following results should be attained: U-Maximum .63/CRF - minimum of 59. .
- H. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient: Unless otherwise indicated in the glass schedules, provide glass for aluminum framed entrance and storefront assemblies with a assembly SHGC maximum to comply with ASHRAE 90.1 and the IECC for the project specific geographic location of the building project as determined according to NFRC 200 procedures.
- I. Glass Statistical Factor: Glass thicknesses when shown on the Drawings, or specified, are for convenience of detailing only and are to be confirmed by the Contractor and/or glass manufacturer. All glass for the size openings shown will be provided in thicknesses such that the probability of breakage at the design "Wind Load" will not exceed 8 lights per 1000 lights (S.F. 2.5) based on a 3 second gust wind load duration, and reflectance and shading indicated. The glass manufacturer shall provide, on request, substantiating glass breakage data if such data is not otherwise available as manufacturer's published data.
- J. Design Modifications:
 - 1. Submit design modifications necessary to meet the performance requirements and field coordination.
 - 2. Variations in details or materials shall not adversely affect the appearance, durability or strength of components.
 - 3. Maintain the general design concept without altering size of members, profiles and alignment.

2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Conform to the requirements published in AA "Aluminum Standards and Data," referenced ASTM standards and the following. All aluminum extrusions shall be manufactured to dimensional tolerances so as to eliminate any edge projection or misalignment at joints. Unless otherwise specified, provide alloy and temper as required to suit performance requirements and finish(es) indicated. Provide concealed extruded bars, rods, shapes and tubes in alloys as recommended by the fabricator to join or reinforce assembly of exposed aluminum components.
 - 1. Alloys:
 - a. Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes, and Tubes: Alloy 6063-T6 and ASTM B 221, "Anodizing Quality."
 - b. Bars, Rods, and Wire: ASTM B 211.
 - 2. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10.

- B. Glass and Glazing Materials: As specified in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."
- C. Anchors and Fasteners:
 - 1. Material:
 - a. Screws, fastening devices, and internal components: Aluminum, stainless steel, or zinc-plated steel in accordance with ASTM.A-164. Perimeter anchors shall be aluminum or steel, providing the steel is properly isolated from aluminum
 - b. Wet Zones: Series 300 stainless steel.
 - 2. Anchor and Fastener Metal Alloy Types, Designations and Standards: Alloys as selected by fabricator to prevent corrosion resistance with the components fastened. Do not use self-drilling, self-tapping type fasteners.
 - 3. Do not use exposed anchors and fasteners, except for hardware application. For hardware application, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws finished to match framing members or hardware being fastened, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turn out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self-locking devices.
- D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153 requirements.
- E. Glazing Gasket
 - 1. Compression-type design, replaceable, molded or extruded, or ethylene propylene diene monomer (EPDM)
 - 2. Shall be of type that locks securely into the glazing reglet to prevent glazing gaskets from disengaging
- F. Weather Stripping:
 - 1. Compressible Weatherstripping: Compressible weatherstripping gaskets fabricated from extruded multi-fingered PVC, silicone or neoprene, replaceable, held in adjustable depth extruded metal strips to be mortised into edge of door panels for minimum exposure, metal finish to match finish of door.
 - 2. Sliding Weather Stripping: Wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing complying with AAMA 701 requirements, replaceable, held in adjustable depth extruded metal strips to be mortised into edge of door panels for minimum exposure.

2.4 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide hardware indicated and as scheduled. Finish exposed parts to match butt or pivot finish, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Closers, General: Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for closer size, depending on door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use.
 - 1. Closing Cycle: Comply with requirements of 2019 CBC or the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," whichever are more stringent.
 - 2. Opening Force: Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements for locations indicated:
 - a. Exterior Doors: 15 lbf.
- C. Cylinders and Hardware: As specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."
- D. Lockset Faceplates: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum faceplate for lock type indicated that lays flush with door stile.
 - 1. Provide radiused faceplate with weather sweep extending full length of lock at meeting stiles of pairs of doors.
- E. Exit Devices: Provide hardware indicated and as scheduled. Finish exposed parts to match butt or pivot finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Removable Mullions: Manufacturer's standard aluminum or aluminum-clad-steel removable mullion with mullion stabilizers located below latch strikes.
- G. Thresholds: Provide manufacturer's standard double bevel saddle threshold at each door opening with mitered returns and with cutouts coordinated for operating hardware, with anchors, and not more than 1/2 inch high, with beveled edges providing a floor level change with a slope of not more than 1:2, and in the following material:
 - 1. Material: Aluminum, mill finish.
- H. Finger Guards: Collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb of center-pivoted doors.

2.5 SEALING MATERIALS

- A. Concealed Sealing Materials: All sealing materials concealed within the entrances and storefronts (i.e. glass pockets, end dams, fastener heads, and internal gutters) shall be silicone, compatible with and adherent to each material it will be in contact with, as recommended by the manufacturer to fulfill performance requirements.
- B. Exposed Sealing Materials: All sealing materials exposed at entrance and storefront perimeter joints in contact with adjacent cladding materials: Silicone, refer to Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate the entrances and storefronts to the designs, shapes, and sizes shown using the materials specified and shown to produce assemblies that meet or exceed the performance requirements. To the greatest extent possible, complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware applications and other work before shipment to Project site.
 - 1. Metal Wall Thickness: Provide shapes as shown and as required to suit the performance requirements but with wall thickness of not less than 1/8 inch.
 - 2. Door Stile and Rail Dimensions:
 - a. Bottomrails: Provide minimum 10 inch high one piece bottomrail unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings.
 - b. Stiles and Top Rail Dimensions: Medium stile; 3-1/2 inch nominal width, manufacturer standard.
 - c. Door Thickness: 1-3/4 inch.
 - d. Fabricate all doors and frames to accommodate the swing direction shown.
- B. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Provide continuous interior glazing stops with concealed fasteners for all doors and frames. Provide stops with hairline joints at corners. Provide stops with beveled, not square, shouldered profile unless otherwise shown.
- C. Glass Components: Provide holes and cutouts in glass to receive hardware and accessories before tempering glass. Drill, countersink, and chamfer holes using tooling, materials and methods which are selected and applied to prevent spalling of the cut glass surfaces at holes and cutouts. The internal surface of holes and cutouts shall be smooth with minimal roughness from drilling operations. Do not cut, drill, or make other alterations to glass after tempering.
 - 1. Fully temper glass using horizontal (roller-hearth) process and fabricate so, when installed, roll-wave distortion is parallel with bottom edge of door or lite.
- D. Metal Components: Doors and frames shall be cut, reinforced, drilled and tapped in strict accordance with the printed door hardware manufacturer's templates and instructions. Provide solid stainless steel hardware reinforcements, securely fastened to doors and frames where door hardware is to be attached.
 - 1. Security system components may be incorporated into the door and frame openings of all entrance doors and frames. Provide all cutouts required by the Owner's security system vendor and all prewiring for vendor provided security system devices. Wherever storefront and entrance framing components are to receive wiring provide unobstructed clear paths free of burrs and sharp objects with pull strings to facilitate wiring.

- E. Joints in Metal Work: All exposed work shall be carefully fitted and matched to produce continuity of line and design, with all joints, being accurately fitted for hairline contact and rigidly secured. Where additional rigidity or strength is required to satisfy the performance requirements reinforce entrance components with aluminum or carbon steel shapes, bars, and plates.
- F. Shop Assembly: As far as practicable, all fitting and assembly work shall be done in a fabrication shop.
 - 1. For exterior entrances, provide weepholes and internal water passages in the glazing framing recesses as recommended by the respective glass and framing manufacturers to conduct infiltrating water to the exterior. Provide weep baffles secured to inside of frame behind weepholes.
- G. Exposed Fasteners: Not permitted.
- H. Protection of Metals: Wherever dissimilar metals are in contact, except in the case of aluminum in contact with galvanized steel, zinc, separate such surfaces with a coating of zinc rich primer, bituminous paint, or separation gaskets as the condition requires. Wherever aluminum comes in contact with concrete surfaces separate such surfaces with a coating of zinc rich primer, bituminous paint, or separation gaskets as the condition requires.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations relative to applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish Application:
 - 1. Apply high performance organic coatings to all exposed exterior surfaces of storefront and entrance components. Apply thermosetting acrylic enamel coatings to all exposed interior surfaces of storefront and entrance components.
 - 2. Apply anodized coatings to all exposed surfaces of storefront and entrance components.
 - 3. Extent of Coating Types:
 - a. Anodic Coatings: Except for exposed surfaces of exterior (weathering side) snap on exterior caps, metal panels, column covers, and the exposed interior surfaces of the main entry lobby ground floor storefront, apply anodized coatings to all exposed interior surfaces of storefront and entrance components.
 - b. High Performance Organic Coating: Apply high performance organic coatings to all exposed surfaces of exterior (weathering side) snap on exterior caps, metal panels, column covers, and the exposed interior surfaces of the main entry lobby ground floor storefront.

- C. Appearance of Finished Work: During production, maintain large size color range samples for use in comparing against production material. Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable.
- D. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: AA-C12C42R1x and the following:
 - 1. Polyvinylidene fluoride finish coating containing not less than 70 percent of "Kynar 500" or "Hylar 5000" fluorocarbon resin specially formulated for spray application to extrusions and preformed aluminum metal shapes. Remove die markings, scratches, abrasions, dents and other blemishes before applying finish. Coating films shall be uniform and visibly free from flow lines, streaks, blisters, sags or other surface imperfections in the dry-film state on all surfaces.
 - a. Metal Preparation and Pretreatment: Pretreatment of aluminum surface and application of the finish shall be performed under specifications issued by the licensed formulator to approved applicator and the following as a minimum:
 - 1) The products used to form the chemical conversion coating on aluminum extrusions shall conform to ASTM D 1730, Type B, Method 5 (Amorphous Chromium Phosphate Treatment) or Method 7 (Amorphous Chromate Treatment), or Trivalent Chrome Treatment.
 - 2) The coating weight of the chemical conversion coating shall be a minimum of 40 mg. per sq. ft. on exposed surfaces as specified in ASTM B 449, Section 6, Class I. Processing shall conform to that specified in ASTM B 449, Section 5.
 - b. Thickness:
 - 1) Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating System: Minimum 1.2 mil total dry film thickness (0.25 mil primer +/- 0.05 mil and 1.0 mil topcoat).
 - c. Coating Performance Criteria: Meets or exceeding AAMA 2605.
 - d. Color: One custom color to be determined by Architect, as identified on drawings to match all painted steel.
 - e. Manufacturer, Coating System:
 - 1) Two Coat, Mica Flake System; one of the following:
 - a) PPG Paints; Duranar Sunstorm.
 - b) Sherwin-Williams (formally Valspar, Inc.); Fluoropon Classic II.

2.8 COATINGS FOR CONCEALED METAL SURFACES

- A. General: The following protective coatings shall be applied to surfaces of metals which are to be concealed in the construction:

1. Coating for Carbon Steel: Hot dip galvanized, complying with ASTM A 123.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate entrance and storefront work with the work of other Sections and provide items to be placed during the installation of other work at the proper time to avoid delays in the work.
- B. Templates and Diagrams: Furnish templates, diagrams, and other data to fabricators and installers of related work, as necessary for coordinating entrance and storefront installation.
- C. Place such items, including concealed overhead framing, accurately in relation to the final location of entrance and storefront components.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the substrates, adjoining construction, and conditions under which the Work is to be installed. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Before beginning installation of the entrance and storefront work examine all parts of the existing building structural frame and the existing building cladding indicated to support the entrance and storefront work. Ensure that the existing swing door thresholds, existing swing doors, swing door framing and subframes have been completely removed with all projecting anchors cut off flush. Notify Contractor in writing, of any dimensions, or conditions, found which will prevent the proper execution of the entrance and storefront work, including specified tolerances. Use Contractor's offset lines and bench marks as basis of measurements.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protecting, handling, and installing entrance and storefront systems. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight. Clean excess joint sealants from finished surfaces.

1. Cut and trim component parts of the entrance and storefront work during erection only with the approval of the manufacturer or fabricator, and in accordance with his recommendations. Restore finish completely to protect material and remove all evidence of cutting and trimming. Remove and replace members where cutting and trimming has impaired strength or appearance, as directed by Architect.
 2. Set components within the erection tolerances with uniform joints. Place components on shims and fasten to supporting substrates using bolts and similar fasteners. Use stainless steel shims at structural connections only. U shaped shims at structural connections are not permitted. Use aluminum, stainless steel, or high impact non-combustible polystyrene shims at other connections.
 3. Do not erect components that are warped, deformed, bowed, dented, defaced or otherwise damaged as to impair its strength or appearance. Remove and replace members damaged in the process of erection.
 4. Coat concealed surfaces of dissimilar materials, and any ferrous metal components, with a heavy coating of bituminous paint, zinc rich primer or other separation in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Where aluminum components will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
 5. No holes or slots shall be burned, cut into, or field drilled in any building framing member without the written acceptance of the structural engineer.
 6. Install subsills in single piece lengths. Joints, where required, shall be placed at the maximum spacing allowed by the system manufacturer and sealed to result in a splice joint that is compliant with the manufacturers subsill splicing details. Fill anchor leg receptors at the splice joints as required by the system manufacturer. Spot heads of all fasteners with sealant.
 7. Attach and seal end dams at the ends of all subsills.
- B. Entrance and Storefront Framing: Install framing components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members.
- C. Entrance Doors: Doors shall be securely anchored in place to a straight, plumb and level condition, without distortion. Adjust doors to provide a tight fit at contact points for weathertight closure and to operate smoothly, without binding, with hardware functioning properly. Weatherstripping contact, and hardware movement, shall be field tested and final adjustment, and lubrication, made for proper operation and performance of doors.
1. Door Hardware: Refer to Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."
 2. Install surface-mounted hardware according to manufacturer's written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 3. Set, seal, and grout floor closer cases as required to suit hardware and substrate indicated.
 4. Set sill members in a bed of polyurethane sealant to provide weathertight construction. Comply with requirements of Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- D. Install glazing to comply with requirements of Section 08 80 00 "Glazing," unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Install perimeter sealant to comply with requirements of Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Concealed Sealing Components: Apply sealant and gasket components that are integral to the entrance and storefront systems in strict accordance with the each component manufacturer's printed instructions. Before applying components remove all mortar, dust, dirt, moisture, and other foreign matter that will be deleterious to the intended performance of the component. Mask adjoining exposed surfaces to avoid spilling, dripping, dropping or other unintended contact of the sealing components onto adjacent exposed surfaces.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. The entrance and storefront systems shall be fabricated and erected to accommodate the dimensional tolerances of the structural frame and surrounding cladding while providing the following as installed tolerances.
 - 1. Variation from theoretical calculated position as located in plan or elevation in relation to established floors lines, column lines and other fixed elements of the structure, including variations from plumb, level, straight and member size: +/- 1/4 inch max in any 20'-0" run, column-to-column bay, or floor-to-floor height.
 - 2. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line, and where they meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.
 - 3. Variation from angle, or plumb, shown: +/- 1/8 inch max in any 10'-0" run or story height, non-cumulative.
 - 4. Variation from slope, or level, shown: +/- 1/8 inch max in any 20'-0" run or column-to-column bay, non-cumulative.

3.5 ANCHORAGE

- A. Anchorage of the entrance and storefront work to the structure and surrounding cladding shall be in accordance with the accepted shop drawings.

3.6 WELDING

- A. Weld with electrodes and by methods recommended by manufacturer of material being welded, and in accordance with AWS D1.1 for concealed steel members.
- B. Welds and adjacent metal areas shall be thoroughly cleaned and coated with a single coat of bituminous paint.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water Spray Without Air Pressure Difference Test: After completing the installation of test areas indicated, but before the installation of interior finishes has begun, test fixed portions of the storefront system for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 requirements.
- B. Repair or remove and replace Work that does not meet requirements or that is damaged by testing; replace to conform to specified requirements.

3.8 REMOVAL OF DEBRIS

- A. All debris caused by, or incidental to, the erection of the entrance and storefront work shall be removed from the site and disposed of legally.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Clean metal surfaces promptly after installation, exercising care to avoid damage to factory finished exposed surfaces.
- B. Wash glass on both faces not more than 4 days prior to date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- C. Immediately remove any deleterious material from surfaces of aluminum.

3.10 PROTECTION

- A. Institute protective measures required throughout the remainder of the construction period to ensure that entrance and storefront work will be without damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 41 26 - ALL-GLASS ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes all-glass entrance and storefront systems. The all glass entrance and storefront work includes the following:
1. All glass swing entrance doors and framing, including hardware, stripping and thresholds.
 2. All glass side lights.
 3. Metal trim, flashings, and similar items in conjunction with all glass entrance and storefronts.
 4. Sealants, joint fillers, and gasketing systems for all glass entrances and storefronts.
 5. Anchors, shims, fasteners, inserts, expansion devices, accessories, support brackets, and attachments and grout for all glass entrances and storefronts.
 6. Glass and glazing for all glass entrances and storefronts.
 7. Security system components may be incorporated into the door and frame openings of all glass entrance and storefront work at the Owner's option. Cooperate with the Owner's security system contractors if the Owner chooses to incorporate security system components during the course of the Work.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Standards: Comply with the applicable provisions and recommendations of the following standards below, where standards conflict the more stringent shall apply:
1. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
 - a. AAMA CWM-19, "Curtain Wall Manual."
 - b. AAMA SFM-1, "Aluminum Store Front and Entrance Design Guide Manual."
 - c. AAMA 611 "Anodized Architectural Aluminum."
 - d. AAMA 2603, "Voluntary Performance Requirements and Test Procedures for Pigmented Organic Coatings on Extruded Aluminum."
 - e. AAMA 2605, "Specification for Superior Performing Organic Coatings on Architectural Extrusions and Panels."
 - f. AAMA TIR-A9-2014, "Design Guide for Metal Cladding Fasteners."
 2. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC), "Steel Construction Manual," Current Edition.
 3. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE), ASCE 7 Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.
 4. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM), "Metal Finishes Manual."

5. Association for Materials Protection and Performance (AMPP) (formally Steel Structures Painting Council (SSPC): "Steel Structures Painting Manual, Vol. 2, Systems and Specifications."
6. ANSI Z97.1 and Federal Standard 16 CFR 1201, Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC): "Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials," as published in the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR). Comply with the applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction, wherever requirements conflict the more stringent shall be required. Obtain approvals from all such authorities. As a minimum provide safety glazing complying with ANSI Z97.1 for Category A performance and 16 CFR Part 1201 for Category II performance.
7. Welding Standards: Welding shall be performed by skilled and qualified mechanics. Welding shall be performed in accordance with the applicable provisions of AWS D1.1 "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
8. Glass Association of North America (GANA): "Fully Tempered Heavy Glass Door and Entrance Systems Design Guide."

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Prior to the start of the all glass entrance and storefront work, and at the Contractor's direction, meet at the site and review the installation procedures and coordination with other work. Meeting shall include Contractor, Owner, all glass entrance and storefront installer, sealant installer, as well as any other subcontractors or material technical service representatives whose work, or products, must be coordinated with the all glass entrance and storefront work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's specifications and installation instructions for each all glass entrance and storefront product specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings showing scaled elevations, plans, and sections of the all glass entrance and storefront work. Full scale sections shall be prepared and submitted for details of the assemblies that cannot be shown in the elevations or sections. Include with shop drawings metal thickness of all metal components, glass thicknesses, location and details of distraction markings, metal finishes, details of fittings, and all other pertinent information as necessary or requested by the Architect to indicate compliance with the Contract Documents. Details of field connections, anchorage, concealed pivot blocking, and their relationship to the work of others shall be clearly indicated for the coordination of the work by other building trades. Details of fastening and sealing methods and product joinery shall be shown to ensure proper performance of the field installation. No work shall be fabricated until shop drawings for that work have been approved by Architect for fabrication.
 1. Show direction of satin finish for each component receiving a directional finish.
 2. Highlight the general requirement for torqueing of bolts in the Shop Drawings and clearly state tightening torque values.

- C. Samples: Submit samples of the following before any work is fabricated:
1. Three paired sets of samples for each exposed metal finish required. Sample finishes shall be on the specified alloy, temper, and thickness of metal required for the work. Where finishes involve color and texture variations, include sample sets showing the full range of variations expected. Furnish samples in either 12 inchlengths of patch fittings, rails, or 12 inch squares of sheet.
 2. Glass: 12 inches square, showing exposed-edge finish.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Embodied Carbon Submittals: Refer to Section 01 81 33 "Sustainable Design Requirements - Embodied Carbon."
- B. Structural Calculations: Submit, for information only, copies of structural calculations indicating complete compliance with the specified performance requirements. Calculations shall be prepared, signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer registered in the state wherein the work is to be erected. Clearly indicate loads that will be transferred to adjacent supporting cladding and framing elements.
- C. Product Test Reports: Submit certified product test reports based on tests performed by an AAMA Accredited Laboratory clearly describing in written form, and in shop drawing form, compliance of each all glass entrance and storefront assembly (each swinging and sliding door) with requirements indicated based on comprehensive testing.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: Submit research/evaluation reports from the State of Florida that the selected all-glass entrance and storefront assemblies complies with the performance requirements of the Florida Building Code.
1. The report shall clearly indicate the Notice of Acceptance (NOA) or Florida Product Approval (FL) for each selected all-glass entrances and storefronts assembly being installed in the Project.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Instructions: Submit an electronic copy of an assembled maintenance manual, describing the devices and procedures to be followed in cleaning, adjusting, and maintaining the all glass entrance and storefront work. Include information for maintaining operable doors, operating hardware, and replacing weather stripping.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Refer to Section 08 44 13 "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."
- B. Testing laboratories shall be specifically qualified to conduct laboratory and field performance tests required by these Specifications and acceptable to the Architect.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. General: Refer to Section 08 44 13 "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."
- B. General: Comply with the applicable provisions of AAMA "Curtain Wall Manual #10" for the care and handling of all glass entrance and storefront work from shop to site.
- C. Packaging of components shall be so selected to protect the components from damage during shipping and handling.
- D. Storage on Site:
 - 1. Store all glass entrance and storefront components in a location and in a manner to avoid damage to the components. Stacking shall be done in a way which will prevent bending, excessive pressure, abrasion or other permanent damage of the component and its finished surfaces.
 - 2. Store all glass entrance and storefront components and materials in a clean, dry location, away from uncured concrete and other construction activities. Cover with non-staining waterproof paper, tarpaulin, or polyethylene sheeting in a manner that will permit circulation of air inside the covering.
- E. Keep handling on site to a minimum. Exercise particular care to avoid damage to finishes of metals.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of supporting structure by field measurements before fabrication so that the entrance and storefront work will be accurately designed, fabricated and fitted to the structure. Indicate measurements on shop drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work. Use Contractor's lines and benchmarks as a basis for measurements.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating entrance and storefront work without field measurements. Coordinate supporting structure construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Submit a 2 year written warranty, beginning from date of substantial completion, and executed by the Contractor, manufacturer and the all glass entrance and storefront installer agreeing to repair or replace components of entrance and storefront systems that develop defects in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Defects include, structural failures, sealant failures, deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering, failure of operating components to function properly, uncontrolled water leakage, uncontrolled air leakage, and any other evidence of failure or deterioration of the all glass entrance and storefront work to meet performance requirements.
- B. Warranty; Anodized Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 3 years, beginning from date of substantial completion, warranting that the anodized aluminum will not develop excessive fading or excessive non-uniformity of color or shade, and will not crack, peel, pit, or corrode; all within the limits defined as follows:
 - 1. "Excessive Fading" means a change in appearance which is perceptible and objectionable as determined by the Architect when viewed visually in comparison with the original color range samples.
 - 2. "Excessive Non-Uniformity" means non-uniform fading during the period of the warranty to the extent that adjacent panels have a color difference greater than the original acceptable range of color.
 - 3. "Will Not Pit or Otherwise Corrode" means there shall be no pitting or other type of corrosion discernable from a distance of 10 feet resulting from the natural elements in the atmosphere at the project site.
- C. Warranty, High Performance Organic Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 20 years, beginning from date of substantial completion, warranting the integrity of film and permanence of color of the high performance organic coatings for the following:
 - 1. Color fade not to exceed 5 delta E units (Hunter) as calculated in accordance with ASTM D 2244 on exposed surfaces cleaned with clean water and a soft cloth.
 - 2. Degree of chalking not to exceed rating No. 8 when measured in accordance with ASTM D 4214 on exposed unwashed surfaces.
 - 3. Will not crack, check or peel.
- D. Warranty, Thermosetting Acrylic Enamel Coatings: Submit a warranty for a period of 5 years, beginning from date of substantial completion, warranting the integrity of film against cracking, chipping, flaking, peeling and blistering of the thermosetting acrylic enamel coatings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: The all glass entrance and storefront drawings and specifications are based on the CRL system. Award the fabrication of all glass entrance and storefront door and frame components to a single firm specializing in the fabrication of all glass entrance and storefront components who has successfully produced work similar in design and extent to that required for the project, in not less than three projects of similar scope to the satisfaction of the Architect, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance for a period of 5 years. The fabricator shall have sufficient production capacity, have organized quality control and testing procedures, and published written and illustrated installation manuals, to produce and properly install the entrance assemblies required without causing delay in progress of the Work.

1. Manufacturers: Known manufacturer capable of complying with requirements includes Faour Glass Technologies.

2.2 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. General: Provide all glass entrance and storefront systems meeting or exceeding the following performance requirements:
1. Structural Properties:
 - a. Wind (Lateral) Loads:
 - 1) Exterior Doors: The all glass entrance and storefront work, including glass, shall be designed, fabricated and installed to withstand the maximum inward and outward wind pressures As indicated on Drawings.
 - a) Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Seismic Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 1) Provide miscellaneous steel framing not shown on drawings which is required to satisfy seismic criteria.
 - c. Deflection Limitations:
 - 1) Deflections: Base calculations for the following deflections upon the combination of maximum direct wind loads, building deflections, thermal stresses, and erection tolerances.

- a) The deflection of any framing member in a direction normal to the plane of the wall when subjected to the full code required wind loads specified above shall not exceed 1/175 of the glass edge length or 3/4 inch whichever is less, except limit deflection of glass to 1 inch.
 - b) Glass, sealants and interior finishes shall not be included to contribute to framing member strength, stiffness or lateral stability.
 - d. Dead Loads:
 - 1) Limit deflections of metal members spanning door openings to 1/300. The clearance between the member and an operable door shall be no less than 1/16 inch.
 - 2) Twisting (rotation) of the horizontals due to the weight of the glass shall not exceed 1 degree, measured between ends and center of each span.
 - e. Uniform Structural Loads: Satisfactory uniform wind loading tests of each all glass entrance and storefront assembly (each swinging and sliding door) shall have been conducted in accordance with the requirements of ASTM E 330 and the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction. Each assembly shall have been subjected to inward and outward acting uniform loads equal to 1.5 times the inward and outward acting design wind loads specified above under paragraph 'wind loads'. Satisfactory performance at these loads shall mean no glass or other component breakage, and no component disengagement.
- B. Air Leakage:
- 1. Typical Conditions: Air leakage through each all glass entrance and storefront assembly shall not have exceeded 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. Swinging Doors: Air leakage through each swinging entrance door shall not have exceeded 1.0 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area when tested in accordance with ASTM E 283 at a static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
- C. Water Penetration:
- 1. Water penetration in this specification is defined as the appearance of uncontrolled water, other than condensation, on any indoor face of any part of the wall.
 - 2. Provision shall be made to drain to the exterior face of the wall any water entering the system.
 - 3. No uncontrolled water penetration shall have occurred when each entrance and storefront assembly (each entrance and storefront wall) was tested in accordance with the ASTM E 331 for one 15 minute cycle at a static pressure difference of 12 lbf/sq. ft. minimum.

- D. Thermal Movements: Fabricate the entrance and storefront work to accommodate for such expansion and contraction of component materials, and supporting elements, as will be caused by surface temperatures ranging from -5 to +180 deg F, without causing buckling, glass breakage, failure of joint sealants, undue stress on metal members and fasteners, failure of doors or other operating units to function properly, reduction of performance, and other detrimental effects.
1. Dimensions shown on Drawings are based on an assumed design temperature of +70 deg F. Fabrication and erection procedures shall take into account the ambient temperature range at the time of the respective operations.
- E. Building Frame Movement: Design, fabricate and install all glass entrances and storefronts to withstand building movements including thermal movements, loading deflections, shrinkage, creep and similar movements. Thermal movements shall be as specified above. Building frame deflections, shrinkage, creep and other movements are available from the structural engineer.
- F. Glass Statistical Factor: Glass thicknesses when shown on the Drawings, or specified, are for convenience of detailing only and are to be confirmed by the Contractor and/or glass manufacturer. All glass for the size openings shown will be provided in thicknesses such that the probability of breakage at the design "Wind Load" will not exceed 8 lights per 1000 lights (S.F. 2.5) based on a 3 second gust wind load duration, and reflectance and shading indicated. The glass manufacturer shall provide, on request, substantiating glass breakage data if such data is not otherwise available as manufacturer's published data.
- G. Distraction Markings: Comply with the applicable requirements of the local code having jurisdiction applicable to distraction markings for glass at glass doors and sidelights. Where separation bars, muntin bars, door pull or push bars, or equivalent are not indicated provide and locate markings of each glass lite required to be marked in accordance with the requirements of the local codes having jurisdiction and as accepted through sample submissions and shop drawings. Where no specific distraction marking design is provided utilize the standardized distraction marking details provided by the Architect.
- H. Design Modifications:
1. Submit design modifications necessary to meet the performance requirements and field coordination.
2. Variations in details or materials shall not adversely affect the appearance, durability or strength of components.
3. Maintain the general design concept without altering size of members, profiles and alignment.

A. Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated surfaces), Type I (transparent), tested for surface and edge compression per ASTM C 1048 and for impact strength per 16 CFR 1201 for Category II performance and for ANSI Z97.1 Category A performance. After tempering, heat soak 100 percent of all fabricated glass units to European Union Standard EN14179 to reduce the potential for inclusion related glass breakage. Statistical heat soaking shall not be permitted.

Overall Summary								
Section A			Section B			Section C		
Item 1	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
Item 2	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
Item 3	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
Item 4	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3
	Sub A1	Sub A2	Sub B1	Sub B2	Sub B3	Sub C1	Sub C2	Sub C3

- a. Surface Texture and Color: Use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes, including, but not limited to, pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness. Do not use materials which have stains and discolorations which do not match the Architect's sample in color and grain characteristics.
 - b. Surface Flatness and Edges: Provide materials which have been cold-rolled, cold-finished, cold-drawn, stretcher leveled, machine cut and otherwise produced to the highest commercial standard for flatness with edges and corners sharp and true to angle, as required.
- C. Stainless-Steel: ASTM A 666, for plate and flat bar and ASTM A 276, for bars and shapes; Type 304 for interiors work, Type 316L for exterior work .
- 1. Surface Texture and Color: Use only materials which are smooth and free of surface blemishes, including, but not limited to, pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names and roughness. Do not use materials which have stains and discolorations which do not match the Architect's sample in color and grain characteristics.
 - 2. Surface Flatness and Edges: Provide materials which have been cold-rolled, cold-finished, cold-drawn, stretcher leveled, machine cut and otherwise produced to the highest commercial standard for flatness with edges and corners sharp and true to angle, as required.

2.4 COMPONENTS

- A. Glass Entrances: Provide an extruded aluminum retained, glass and metal frame and door system fabricated and finished to suit the conditions indicated and specified. System shall be complete with all aluminum framing members, fasteners, anchors, gaskets, washers, glass and glazing components. All aluminum members shall be clad with metal cladding as specified under paragraph 2.3 and finished as specified under Article 2.7. Glass and metal sidelight framing system shall be similar to the following:
- 1. Manufacturers and Systems: One of the following:
 - a. Blumcraft 1301 Entrance System; CR. Laurence.
 - b. Type P Door Series; Clover Architectural Products, Palos Heights, IL.
 - c. Dorma-Glas Entrance Systems; Dorma-Glas, Inc.
 - d. Door Type P; Glass Door Solutions, an Assa-Abloy Company.

2. Top Patch Fittings, Bottom Patch Fitting: Fabricate of one-piece cast aluminum top patch fittings and one piece extruded aluminum rails, retaining glass panels unless otherwise shown. All bottom rails less than 10 inches tall shall be tapered 60 degrees minimum from horizontal. Provide recessed aluminum headers for door head opening support. Adhesively laminate or mechanically clad top patch fittings and rail base metal members, returning cladding around extrusions to eliminate exposed edges. Fabricate top patch fittings and rails with continuous bosses, or serrated edges, to receive dry gaskets to secure the glass in the top patch fittings and rails in lieu of wet glazing materials. Provide end caps to close off top patch fitting and rail ends fabricated from aluminum and finished to match rails.
 - B. Anchors, Fastenings, Stiffener End Cap Pins and Plugs, Friction Coupling Assemblies:
 1. Material: Series 300 Stainless steel.
 - C. Weather Stripping: Sweep type.
 - D. Spacers, Setting Blocks, Gaskets: Permanent, nonmigrating types of material and in hardness recommended by all glass storefront and entrance manufacturer and complying with the performance requirements.
 - E. Slip and Separator Gaskets:
 1. Bolted Slip-Joints: Non-metallic, low friction material bearing temperature and moisture resistances and low abrasion properties as required to suit performance criteria.
 - F. Adhesives and Epoxies: As required for laminating cladding to base components.
 - G. Copolymer Strips: A clear and continuous copolymer strip designed to reduce deflection between two-side supported glass units, with pre-applied clear high bond strength tape on both faces. Overall thickness of gap not to exceed 0.082 inch.
 1. C.R. Laurence: EZCC12 180 Degree Clear Partition Strips for 1/2 inch thick glass.
 - H. Vinyl Wiper Blade Strips: A translucent and continuous V-shaped vinyl strip with one 5/16 inch wide rigid leg having a one side pre-applied clear high bond strength tape and a second 5/16 inch wide soft leg. Overall thickness of gap not to exceed 5/16 inch.
 1. C.R. Laurence; SDTNL2 Translucent Vinyl Edge L Seals.
- 2.5 HARDWARE
- A. General: Refer to Section 08 71 00, "Door Hardware".

- B. General: Heavy-duty hardware units in sizes, quantities, and types recommended by manufacturer for all-glass entrances indicated. For exposed parts, match fitting metal and finish.
1. Provide entrance door hardware components identical to those required to meet the applicable provisions of acceptance indicated under the entrance and storefront manufacturer's Notice of Acceptance (NOA) or Florida Product Approval (FL).
- C. Concealed Floor Closers and Top Pivots: Provide one concealed floor closer and one pivot set per door leaf. Closers and pivots shall comply with BHMA A156.4, Grade 1. Properly detail closers to meet application and installation requirements as indicated. Comply with manufacturers recommendations for size of door closer depending on size and weight of door, stack pressure conditions, and anticipated frequency of use. Provide manufacturers standard cover (dress) plate finished to match cladding. Provide each pivot set with extended spindles.
1. Swing:
 - a. Single acting center hung. 28 Series with special machined fully concealed arm; Norton Rixson (RIX).
 - b. Single acting offset hung. 27 Series with special machined fully concealed arm; Norton Rixson (RIX).
 - c. Double acting center hung. 40 Series with special machined fully concealed arm; Norton Rixson (RIX).
 2. Maximum Opening Force:
 - a. Exterior Doors: Per the local authorities having jurisdiction or the ADA whichever is more stringent.
- D. Push-Pull Set: **<Insert description>**.
- E. Cylinders: 6-pin cylinder, BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.
- F. Ornamental Exit Devices and Exterior Pulls for Interior Doors: UL 305 listed devices that have been panic load tested for use on all-glass entrance doors, and comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 or ANSI/BHMA A156.44. Provide glass door panic devices fabricated principally from 1-1/4 inch diameter satin finished stainless steel tubing. Operation: The top latch bolt of the panic device shall be retracted by pushing the interior "L" shaped crash bar. In addition a built-in dogging device shall be provided which keeps the latch bolt in the retracted position and the crash bar becomes fixed. An exterior key cylinder for entry shall also be provided with each device.
1. PA100F Panic Device x Full Height F-Handle on Exterior; Blumcraft Div. of C. R. Laurence.
 2. PDU8000-3 Glass Door Panic Device with Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior; Rockwood.
 3. GP1000 Series with Top Latching Bolt and Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior; Dorma Kaba.

- G. Ornamental Exit Devices and Exterior Pulls for Exterior Doors: UL 305 listed devices that have been panic load tested for use on all-glass entrance doors, and comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 or ANSI/BHMA A156.44. Provide glass door panic devices fabricated principally from 1-1/4 inch diameter satin finished stainless steel tubing. Operation: The top latch bolt of the panic device shall be retracted by pushing the interior "L" shaped crash bar. In addition a built-in dogging device shall be provided which keeps the latch bolt in the retracted position and the crash bar becomes fixed. An exterior key cylinder for entry shall also be provided with each device.
1. PA100F Panic Device x Full Height F-Handle on Exterior; Blumcraft Div. of C. R. Laurence.
 2. PDU8000-3 Glass Door Panic Device with Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior: Rockwood.
 3. GP1000 Series with Top Latching Bolt and Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior; Dorma Kaba.
- H. Overhead Angle Stops for Single Acting Doors: Provide one overhead angle stop per door opening. Special angle stop, fabricated from brass or bronze, for single or pairs of doors without stops and having a minimum of 2 rubber silencers per stop, minimum 2 inches wide by 3 inches long base for mortising into the head of door frame, 1 inch maximum stop face projection.
- I. Threshold: Provide manufacturer's standard double bevel saddle threshold with mitered returns and with cutouts coordinated for operating hardware, with anchors, and not more than 1/2 inch high, with beveled edges providing a floor level change with a slope of not more than 1:2, and in the following material:
1. Material: Aluminum, mill finish.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate the all-glass entrances and storefronts to the designs, shapes, and sizes shown using the materials, and components, specified and shown to produce assemblies which meet or exceed the performance criteria. To the greatest extent possible complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware applications and other work before shipment to Project site.
- B. Before tempering glass, cut cutouts and holes in glass to receive fittings, rails, hardware, and accessories. Drill, countersink, and chamfer holes using tooling, materials and methods which are selected and applied to prevent spalling of the cut glass surfaces at holes and cutouts. The internal surface of holes and cutouts shall be smooth with minimal roughness from drilling operations. Do not drill, alter edges or cut tempered glass.

1. Etching: Clean glass surfaces of all oil, grease, and any other deleterious substances that might affect the work. Adhere to glass surface acid resistant stencil sheeting or other suitable acid resistant glass screening materials. Lay out artwork pattern template on sheeting or screening. Cut out artwork pattern into sheeting or screening and remove cut out portion of sheeting or screening to expose glass. Lightly acid etch for patterns to appear light white in a density and color as acceptable to the Architect. After etching remove sheeting or screening and either brush or wash glass so that residue from sheeting adhesives, or screening, and etching is completely removed. Seal acid etched glass surfaces with glass sealer (Skyline Etch Sealer; Skyline Design, Chicago, IL).
 - a. Architect will furnish artwork pattern on suitable electronic media for the creation of the template by Contractor.
- C. Fabricate all entrances to accommodate the swing direction shown.
- D. Metal components of all-glass entrances and storefronts shall be cut, reinforced, drilled and tapped in strict accordance with the printed door hardware manufacturer's templates and instructions. Provide solid stainless steel or bronze hardware reinforcements, securely fastened to doors and frames where door hardware is to be attached. Provide fixed pivot arm blocking for all doors hung on pivots do not use adjustable slide track type blocking.
- E. Joints in Metal Work: All exposed metal work shall be carefully fitted and matched to produce continuity of line and design, with all joints, being accurately fitted for hairline contact and rigidly secured. Where additional rigidity or strength is required to satisfy the performance requirements reinforce entrance components with aluminum or carbon steel shapes, bars, and plates.
- F. Shop Assembly: As far as practicable, all fitting and assembly work shall be done in a fabrication shop.
 1. For exterior entrances, provide weepholes and internal water passages in the glazing framing recesses as recommended by the respective glass and framing manufacturers to conduct infiltrating water to the exterior. Provide weep baffles secured to inside of frame behind weepholes.
- G. Exposed Fasteners: Not permitted.
- H. Protection of Metals: Wherever dissimilar metals are in contact, except in the case of aluminum in contact with galvanized steel, zinc, separate such surfaces with a coating of zinc rich primer, bituminous paint, or separation gaskets as the condition requires. Wherever aluminum comes in contact with concrete surfaces separate such surfaces with a coating of zinc rich primer, bituminous paint, or separation gaskets as the condition requires.

2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- C. High-Performance Organic Coating Finish: AA-C12C42R1x and the following:
 - 1. Polyvinylidene fluoride finish coating containing not less than 70% of "Kynar 500" or "Hylar 5000" fluorocarbon resin specially formulated for spray application to extrusions and preformed aluminum metal shapes. Remove die markings, scratches, abrasions, dents and other blemishes before applying finish. Coating films shall be uniform and visibly free from flow lines, streaks, blisters, sags or other surface imperfections in the dry-film state on all surfaces.
 - a. Metal Preparation and Pretreatment: Pretreatment of aluminum surface and application of the finish shall be performed under specifications issued by the licensed formulator to approved applicator and the following as a minimum:
 - 1) The products used to form the chemical conversion coating on aluminum extrusions shall conform with ASTM D 1730, Type B, Method 5 (Amorphous Chromium Phosphate Treatment) or Method 7 (Amorphous Chromate Treatment), or Trivalent Chrome Treatment.
 - 2) The coating weight of the chemical conversion coating shall be a minimum of 40 mg per sq. ft. on exposed surfaces as specified in ASTM B 449, Section 6, Class I. Processing shall conform with that specified in ASTM B 449, Section 5.
 - b. Thickness:
 - 1) Fluoropolymer 2-Coat Coating System: Minimum 1.2 mil total dry film thickness (0.25 mil primer +/- 0.05 mil and 1.0 mil topcoat).
 - 2) Fluoropolymer 3-Coat Coating System: Minimum 1.6 mil total dry film thickness (0.25 mil primer +/- 0.05 mil and 1.35 mil topcoat).
 - c. Coating Performance Criteria: Meets or exceeding AAMA 2605.
 - d. Color: One custom color to be determined by Architect.
 - e. Manufacturer, Coating System:
 - 1) Two Coat, Opaque System; one of the following:
 - a) PPG Paints; Duranar.
 - b) Sherwin-Williams (formally Valspar, Inc.); Fluoropon Standard.

- 2) Two Coat, Mica Flake System; one of the following:
 - a) PPG Paints; Duranar Sunstorm.
 - b) Sherwin-Williams (formally Valspar, Inc.); Fluropon Classic II.
- 3) Three Coat, Opaque System; one of the following:
 - a) PPG Paints; Duranar XL.
 - b) Sherwin-Williams (formally Valspar, Inc.); Fluropon Classic.
- 4) Three Coat, Metal Flake System; one of the following:
 - a) PPG Paints; Duranar XL.
 - b) Sherwin-Williams (formally Valspar, Inc.); Fluropon Classic.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Before beginning installation of the all-glass entrance and storefront work examine all parts of the existing building structural frame and the existing building cladding indicated to support the all glass entrance and storefront work. Ensure that the existing swing door thresholds, existing swing doors, swing door framing and subframes have been completely removed with all projecting anchors cut off flush. Notify Contractor in writing, of any dimensions, or conditions, found which will prevent the proper execution of the all glass entrance and storefront work, including specified tolerances. Use Contractor's offset lines and bench marks as basis of measurements.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate all-glass entrance and storefront entrance and storefront work with the work of other Sections and provide items to be placed during the installation of other work at the proper time to avoid delays in the work.
- B. Templates and Diagrams: Furnish templates, diagrams, and other data to fabricators and installers of related work, as necessary for coordinating all-glass entrance and storefront entrance and storefront installation.
- C. Place such items, including concealed overhead framing, accurately in relation to the final location of all-glass entrance and storefront entrance and storefront components.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for protecting, handling, and installing all-glass entrance and storefront systems. Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.
1. Cut and trim component parts of the all-glass entrance and storefront work during erection only with the approval of the manufacturer or fabricator, and in accordance with its recommendations. Restore finish completely to protect material and remove all evidence of cutting and trimming. Remove and replace members where cutting and trimming has impaired strength or appearance, as directed by Architect.
 2. Set components within the erection tolerances with uniform joints where shown. Place components on aluminum or stainless steel shims and fasten to supporting substrates using bolts and similar fasteners.
 3. Do not erect components which are warped, deformed, bowed, defaced or otherwise damaged as to impair strength. Remove and replace members damaged in the process of erection.
 4. No holes or slots shall be burned, cut into, or field drilled in any building framing member without the written acceptance of the structural engineer.
 5. Coat concealed surfaces of dissimilar materials, and any ferrous metal components, with a heavy coating of bituminous paint, zinc rich primer or other separation in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Where aluminum components, if any, will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- B. Entrance Doors : Doors shall be securely anchored in place to a straight, plumb and level condition, without distortion. Adjust doors to provide a tight fit at contact points for weathertight closure and to operate smoothly, without binding, with hardware functioning properly. Weatherstripping contact, and hardware movement, shall be field tested and final adjustment, and lubrication, made for proper operation and performance of doors.
1. Door Hardware: Refer to Section 08 71 00, "Door Hardware".
- C. Entrance Door : Doors shall be securely anchored in place to a straight, plumb and level condition, without distortion. Adjust doors to operate smoothly, without binding, with hardware functioning properly. Weatherstripping contact, and hardware movement, shall be field tested and final adjustment, and lubrication, made for proper operation and performance of doors.
1. Door Hardware: Refer to Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."
 2. Install surface-mounted hardware according to manufacturer's written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
 3. Set, seal, and grout floor closer cases as required to suit hardware and substrate indicated.
 4. Set sill members in a bed of polyurethane sealant to provide weathertight construction. Comply with requirements of Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

- D. Install adjacent glass units with uniform clearances.
- E. Install silicone glazing sealant to comply with requirements of Section 08 80 00 "Glazing," unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Install copolymer strips, in one continuous length, at each glass to glass panel vertical joint.
- G. Install vinyl wiper blade strips, in one continuous length, at each glass to glass panel vertical joint.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. The all-glass entrance and storefront systems shall be fabricated and erected to accommodate the dimensional tolerances of the structural frame and surrounding cladding, while providing the following as installed tolerances.
 - 1. Variation from theoretical calculated position as located in plan or elevation in relation to established floors lines, column lines and other fixed elements of the structure, including variations from plumb, level, straight and member size: $\pm 1/4$ inch max. in any 20 foot run, column-to-column bay, or floor-to-floor height.
 - 2. Alignment: Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to $1/16$ inch. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to $1/16$ inch.
 - 3. Variation from angle, or plumb, shown: $\pm 1/8$ inch max. in any 10 foot run or story height, non-cumulative.
 - 4. Variation from slope, or level, shown: $\pm 1/8$ inch max. in any 10 foot run or column-to-column bay, non-cumulative.

3.5 ANCHORAGE

- A. Anchorage of the all-glass entrance and storefront work to the structure and surrounding cladding shall be in accordance with the accepted shop drawings.

3.6 WELDING

- A. Weld with electrodes and by methods recommended by manufacturer of material being welded, and in accordance with AWS D1.1 for concealed steel members. Use only methods which will avoid distortion, and discoloration, of exposed faces.
- B. Welds and adjacent metal areas shall be thoroughly cleaned and coated with a single coat of bituminous paint.

3.7 REMOVAL OF DEBRIS

- A. All debris caused by, or incidental to, the erection of the all-glass entrance and storefront work shall be removed from the site and disposed of legally.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean metal surfaces promptly after installation, exercising care to avoid damage to factory finished exposed surfaces.
- B. Wash glass on both faces not more than 4 days prior to date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances.
- C. Immediately remove any deleterious material from surfaces of aluminum.

3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Institute protective measures required throughout the remainder of the construction period to ensure that all-glass entrance and storefront work will be without damage or deterioration, other than normal weathering, at time of acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes door hardware.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Provide hardware items complying with the applicable provisions for accessibility and usability by the disabled and handicapped in compliance with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," California Code of Regulations, Title 24, Part 2 and California State Reference Code, and local regulations.
 - 2. NFPA 101: Comply with applicable provisions for means of egress doors.
 - 3. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. or by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, as suitable for the purpose indicated.

1.3 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Keying Conference: Conduct a keying conference to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Amend the final keying schedule in accordance with decisions made during the conference.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct a preinstallation conference to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct a preinstallation conference to comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to electrified door hardware including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
 - 2. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
 - 3. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 4. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each hardware item being provided.
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit shop drawings with details of electrified door hardware, indicating the following:
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:
 - a. System schematic.
 - b. Point-to-point wiring diagram.
 - c. Riser diagram.
 - d. Elevation of each door controlled by electrified hardware.
 - 2. Detail interface between electrified door hardware and fire alarm, access control, security, and building control system.
- C. Samples: Submit samples of exposed door hardware for each type indicated below, in each specified finish.
- D. Door Hardware Schedule: Submit door hardware schedule prepared by or under the supervision of door hardware supplier and signed by either a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant or an Door and Hardware Consultant (DHC). The final Door Hardware Schedule shall be coordinated with door frames and doors to provide the proper thickness, hand, function, size, and door hardware finish. The Architect's review of schedule shall neither be construed as a complete check nor shall it relieve the Contractor of responsibility for errors, deviations, or omissions from the specified requirements to provide complete door hardware for the project.
 - 1. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening.
 - a. Organize door hardware sets in same order as in the Door Hardware Schedule.
 - 2. Door Hardware Schedule Content:
 - a. Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
 - b. Manufacturer of each item.
 - c. Exposed hardware fastenings.
 - d. Hardware set locations, referenced to drawings both on the door and frame schedule and floor plans.
 - e. Explanation of codes, symbols, and abbreviations contained in schedule.

- f. Door hardware mounting locations. Supply templates to door and frame manufacturer(s) to enable proper and accurate sizing and locations of cutouts for hardware. Detail conditions requiring custom extended lip strikes, or other special or custom conditions.
 - g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - h. Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, interface with building control systems, and sequence of operation.
 - 1) Sequence of Operation: Include description of component functions that occur in the following situations: authorized person wants to enter; authorized person wants to exit; unauthorized person wants to enter; unauthorized person wants to exit.
- E. Keying Schedule: Submit keying schedule prepared by or under the supervision of the door hardware supplier, incorporating the Owner's final keying requirements. Provide a schematic index and keying diagram for each key set.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Embodied Carbon Submittals: Refer to Section 01 81 33 "Sustainable Design Requirements - Embodied Carbon."
- B. Manufacturer Certificate: Submit certification from the proximity card access control system manufacturer that the installer has been factory trained and certified to install its proximity card reader/locksets.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: Submit maintenance data for each type of hardware. Include final hardware and keying schedule.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assembly Testing: Submit a written record of each fire door assembly to the Owner to be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) for future building inspections.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

1. All proximity card reader/locksets shall be installed by a factory authorized installer who has installed proximity card access control system reader/locksets for at least three projects of similar size over the last five years which were similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance. The installer's forces shall have been certified by the proximity card access control system manufacturer to install the proximity card/reader locksets.
 2. All proximity card reader/lockset door batteries shall be replaced at the time of Substantial Completion.
 3. All cipher lockset door batteries shall be replaced at the time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Supplier Qualifications: Door hardware supplier, who has completed a minimum of three (3) projects over the last 5 years which were similar in material, design and extent to that indicated for the Project - as determined by the Architect - and which have resulted in construction with a record of successful in service performance, and who is or employs a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant, available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
1. Electrified Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: An experienced door hardware supplier who has completed projects with electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance, and who is acceptable to manufacturer of primary materials.
 2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
- C. Source Limitations: Where several manufacturers are specified for one type of hardware, use only the products of one manufacturer.
- 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Package and label each item of hardware separately. Tag each item in accordance with the final hardware schedule. Each package shall contain appropriate fastenings, instructions and installation templates.
 - B. Protect all hardware items from loss or damage.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate installation and layout of recessed pivots and closers with floor construction. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

- B. Templates: Furnish templates and door hardware schedules, coordinated for the application of door hardware items with door and frame details, to door opening fabricators and trades performing door opening work to permit the preparation of doors and frames to receive the specified door hardware. Where the door hardware item scheduled is not adaptable to the finished size of door opening members requiring door hardware, submit an item having a similar operation and quality to the Architect for review. Each door hardware item shall be fabricated to templates.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer, agreeing to replace or repair door hardware components that fail in workmanship or materials within the specified warranty period. Failures include, but aren't limited to the following:
 - 1. Failures in the operation of the door hardware item(s).
 - 2. Metal finish deterioration caused by normal use and normal weathering.
- B. Electromagnetic Lock Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manual Closer Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Concealed Floor Closer Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- E. Exit Device Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- F. Other Hardware Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- G. Mortised Mechanical Lock and Latchset Warranty Period: Ten years from date of Substantial Completion.
- H. Heavy Duty Cylindrical Mechanical Lock and Latchset Warranty Period: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion.
- I. Automatic Door Operator Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door hardware for assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL10C or NFPA 252. Provide only door hardware items that are identical to items tested by UL for the types and sizes of doors required. In case of conflict between type of hardware specified and type required for accessibility or fire protection, furnish type required by UL and NFPA. Doors indicated in fire rated partitions and walls shall be positive latching and self-closing, with smoke gaskets where required by applicable codes.
1. Wherever exit device hardware is required on doors, comply with UL 305. Furnish hardware to door manufacturer for installation at factory. Provide supplementary label, "Fire Exit Hardware," on each exit device to certify that panic hardware has been panic load tested with door.

2.2 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in this Section, door hardware sets are keyed to each scheduled door in the door and frame schedule, and the Door Hardware Schedule.
1. Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturer's products.
 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
 3. The hardware supplier shall review each hardware set and compare it with the door types, details, and sizes as shown and verify each hardware item for function, hand, backset, and method of fastening through shop drawing submittals.

2.3 HINGES AND PIVOTS

- A. Butt Hinge Products and Manufacturers:
1. Standard Weight, Plain Bearing, 5 Knuckle, Steel: Complying with BHMA A156.1 A8133, one of the following:
 - a. 1279; Hager Companies (HAG).
 - b. T2714; McKinney Products Company (MCK).
 - c. F179; Best division of Dormakaba (BE).
 - d. 5PB1; Ives (IVS).

2. Heavy Weight, Ball Bearing, 5 Knuckle, Stainless Steel: Complying with BHMA A156.1 A5111, one of the following:
 - a. BB1199; Hager Companies (HAG).
 - b. T4B3386-32D; McKinney Products Company (MCK).
 - c. FBB199 (US32D); Best division of Dormakaba (BE).
 - d. 5BB1HW Stainless Steel; Ives (IVS).

B. Pivot and Pivot Hinge Products and Manufacturers:

1. Center Pivots: Mortised mounted, non-handed, center pivot set with sealed bearings for protection against weather and debris and composed of a head mounted top pivot and floor mounted bottom pivot. Furnish with extended spindles. Complying with BHMA A156.4 C07032.
 - a. Model 370 Center Hung Pivot Set; Norton Rixson (RIX).
 - b. 7255 Pivot Set; Ives (IVS).
 - c. 0370 Center Hung Pivot Set; Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc. (ABH).
 - d. Model 370 Center Hung Pivot less standard top pivot x 345 Top Pivot; Norton Rixson (RIX).

C. Butt Hinge and Offset Pivot Hinge Quantity: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Three Hinges: For doors with heights of greater than 60 inches to and including 90 inches
2. Four Hinges: For doors with heights greater than 90 inches to and including 120 inches

2.4 LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Mortise Lock and Latch Sets: Heavy duty, commercial, mortise bodies complying with BHMA A156.13 Series 1000, Grade 1, with throughbolted lever trim. Furnish mortise type, field reversible without disassembly, field multifunctional without opening lock cases, lock and latch sets with 1 or 2 piece anti-friction deadlocking stainless steel latchbolts having a minimum 3/4 inch throw, 2-3/4 inches backset, and UL listed for 3 hour doors. All lock and latch sets, to be furnished complete with heavy 0.109 inch (12 gage) wrought steel zinc dichromate or chrome plated case, trim, adjustable beveled square cornered armored fronts, cold forged steel or stainless steel hubs, and 6 pin cylinders. Conceal fastenings, washers and bushings. Provide wrought, or black plastic, box strikes for each lock and latch set. Provide brass, bronze or stainless steel strikes with curved lips of sufficient length to protect frames. Provide solid forged or cast levers with wrought roses. Where lock functions are scheduled provide non-handed guard bolt and stainless steel deadbolt with a minimum 1 inch throw. Where electro-mechanical locksets are scheduled provide transformers properly sized for conversion of power supply to the power characteristics of the electromechanical locksets. Where electro-mechanical locksets are scheduled provide request to exit (REX) monitoring feature.

1. Sargent 8200 Series, LNJ Design x 130 KB Turnlever; Sargent Manufacturing Company (SGT). Provide handed ANSI 4-7/8 inch curved lip strikes die punched to match bolts provided with latchset functions only, provide non-handed standard curve lip strikes 82-0110 for all other functions. Where electro-mechanical locksets are scheduled provide 8270 Series with trim matching mechanical locksets.
 2. Corbin-Russwin ML2000 Series, Lustra LSA Design x 519F10 Thumbturn Lever; Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware (CR). Provide handed ANSI 4-7/8" curved lip strikes die punched to match bolts provided with latchset functions only 340L62 (RH) and 340L63 (LH), provide handed standard curve lip strikes for all other functions 340L60 (RH) and 340L61 (LH). Where electro-mechanical locksets are scheduled provide ML20900ECL Series with trim matching mechanical locksets.
 3. Schlage L9000 Series (Basis of Design), 03 Design x A Rose x 09-509 Turnlever; Schlage Lock Company (SCH). Provide handed ANSI 4-7/8 inch curved lip strikes die punched to match bolts provided with latchset functions only (Part No. XL11-820/XL11-821), provide non-handed standard curve lip strikes for all other functions 10-072. Where electro-mechanical locksets are scheduled provide L9090EL Series with trim matching mechanical locksets.
- B. Narrow Stile Mortised Deadlocks: Heavy duty, commercial, deadlock complying with BHMA A156.36, Grade 1. Furnish deadlocks less thumb turn and key cylinders. Where thumb turn, or key, cylinders are scheduled, furnish types as specified for mortise locks fitted with proper cams.
1. MS1850S Series x 4001 Box Strike; Adams-Rite Manufacturing Co. (ARM).

2.5 EXIT DEVICES

- A. Exit Devices: Exit devices and exit device accessories shall conform to BHMA A156.3, Grade 1. Trim shall be wrought construction and commercial plain design with straight, beveled or smoothly rounded sides, corners and edges. Keyed devices shall be furnished less cylinders. Cylinders shall be as herein specified keyed to building system.
- B. Ornamental Exit Devices and Exterior Pulls for Exterior Doors: UL 305 listed devices that have been panic load tested for use on all-glass entrance doors, and comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 or ANSI/BHMA A156.44. Provide glass door panic devices fabricated principally from 1-1/4 inch diameter satin finished stainless steel tubing. Operation: The top latch bolt of the panic device shall be retracted by pushing the interior "L" shaped crash bar. In addition a built-in dogging device shall be provided which keeps the latch bolt in the retracted position and the crash bar becomes fixed. An exterior key cylinder for entry shall also be provided with each device.
1. PA100F Panic Device x Full Height F-Handle on Exterior; Blumcraft Div. of C. R. Laurence.
 2. PDU8000-3 Glass Door Panic Device with Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior: Rockwood.

3. GP1000 Series with Top Latching Bolt and Full Height Straight Pull on Exterior; Dorma Kaba.

- C. Panic Exit Devices: Listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

2.6 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

- A. Cores for Bored Cylindrical Locksets: Provide key-in lever 6 pin cores for all bored cylindrical locksets, keyed into building system, as manufactured by the bored lockset manufacturer.
- B. Cylinders: Full faced cylinders with square shouldered (not tapered) compression rings, 6 pin cylinders, standard threaded, keyed into building system, with cams to suit lock functions. Provide cylinders for installation into all locks.
 1. 1100 Series Flexible Head Mortise Cylinder; Corbin Russwin Architectural Hardware (CR).
 2. Series 40 Adjustable Front Cylinder; Sargent Manufacturing Company (SGT).
 3. 30-001 full-faced mortised cylinder with 36-083 compression rings; Schlage Lock Company (SCH)..
 4. 1E Series with Straight Rings; Best division of Dormakaba (BE).
- C. Keying System: Final keying to determine lock cylinders, keyed alike sets, level of keying, master key groups, grandmaster keying system shall be as directed by the Owner. Supplier and Contractor shall meet with the Owner and obtain final instructions in writing. Provide two nickel silver keys for each lock, and six keys for each grandmaster and masterkey system. Provide two blank keys for each lock for the Owner's convenience in making additional keys.
 1. Construction Keyed Cylinders: Provide construction keyed cylinders in locks during construction and as may be necessary for security or as may be requested by the Owner. Upon completion of the construction phase, construction keyed cylinders shall be voided mechanically without the removal of the cylinders from the locks. All construction keyed cylinders shall be individually keyed as required and subject to a single master key.
- D. Key Control System: Furnish a key control system of the type specified. Furnish complete accessories including key gathering envelopes, labels, reserve pattern key tags with self-locking key clips, key receipt forms, key receipt holders, 3-way visible card index, temporary key markers and permanent key markers.

2.7 STRIKES

- A. Strikes for Locks and Latches: All strikes for locks and latches shall be provided by the lock and latch manufacturer unless otherwise specified or scheduled, refer to Article 'Locks and Latches.'

- B. Dustproof Floor Strikes: Complying with BHMA A156.16, Type L04251, L04021 or L14021, one of the following:

1. No. 80; Door Controls International.
2. DP2; Ives.
3. 3910; Trimco Hardware (TBM).
4. 570; Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

2.8 CLOSERS

- A. Surface-Mounted Closers with Track Arms: Closers shall be certified by ETL laboratories and the manufacturer to a minimum of 8,000,000 cycles and meet BHMA A156.4, Grade 1. Closers used in conjunction with overhead stops and holders shall be templated and coordinated to function properly. Properly detail closers to meet application requirements by providing drop plates, brackets, etc. to meet application and installation requirements as indicated. Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for size of door closer with respect to stack pressure conditions, weather exposure, door size, and frequency of use. Closers shall [be non-handed,] have adjustable spring power, full rack and pinion, independent closing speed and latch regulating V-slotted valves, all-weather fluid, fully hydraulic with a high strength cast iron cylinder and solid forged steel arms, bore diameter of 1-1/2 inches, pinion shaft diameter of 5/8 inches, adjustable back check, cushion and built-in stop feature where scheduled, hold open arms where scheduled, delayed action where scheduled, arm finish to match closer cover finish scheduled. Provide metal covers of clean line design with plated or primed for paint finish as scheduled and that require removal in order to make adjustments to closer.

1. 4040XPT; LCN Closers (LCN).
2. 281 with Track Arm; Sargent Manufacturing Company (SGT).
3. 9500-M-ST; Norton (NO).

- B. Floor Closers: Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for size of door closer with respect to stack pressure conditions, weather exposure, door size, and frequency of use with special details as follows:

1. Special Details:
 - a. Closer Cover Pan: Where stone or ceramic tile flooring is indicated at door thresholds and a special dress plate is not indicated or scheduled, furnish metal pan specially constructed and designed to be installed below and to support removable sections of finished flooring.
 - b. Extended Spindles: Furnish extended spindles.
 - c. Thresholds: Furnish thresholds, modified to suit details where shown or scheduled in conjunction with floor closers. Provide thresholds factory drilled immediately above valve port locations to receive adjustment valve caps specially machined to eliminate open factory drill holes at final installation.
 - d. All floor closers shall be manufactured with separate independent valves for closing adjustment, latching adjustment, and backchecking adjustment.

- e. All floor closers shall be provided with a built-in positive deadstop to prevent doors from swinging beyond the desired opening degree.
- 2. Center Hung, Double Acting, Heavy Duty: 40 Series; with special machined fully concealed arm, non-hold open (NHO), physically handicapped (PH), delayed action (DA), sealed units (SC), cold weather protection (CWF), as scheduled; Norton Rixson (RIX).

2.9 PROTECTIVE TRIM UNITS

- A. Kick and Armor Plates: Fabricate protection plates from minimum 0.050 inch thick stainless steel, beveled top and 2 sides (B3E), square corners, complying with BHMA A156.6, and fastened with oval head Phillips fasteners countersunk into plate surface.
 - 1. Series 8400; Ives (IVS).
 - 2. K1050 Doorplate Series; Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).
 - 3. KA050-2 Armor Plate and KOO50 for Kickplates; Trimco Hardware (TBM).
- B. Size: Furnish kick and armor plates sized 2 inches less than door width when located on push side of door and 1 inch less than door width when indicated on the pull side of door. Furnish kickplates 12 inches high, furnish armor plates 48 inches high unless otherwise indicated. Provide protective plates with cutouts for locks, louvers and windows to the extent indicated. Mount protective plates flush with bottom of door.

2.10 STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Angle Stops: Special angle stop, fabricated from brass or bronze, for single or pairs of doors without stops and having either a single continuous formed sponge silencer or a minimum of two rubber silencers per stop, minimum 1-1/2 inches wide by 3 inches long base for mortising into the head of door frame, minimum 3/4 inch maximum stop face projection; finish as scheduled.
 - 1. AS18 Angle Stop; Ives (IVS).
 - 2. 489; Rockwood Manufacturing Company, Inc. (RM).
 - 3. 1801 Angle Stop; Architectural Builders Hardware Mfg., Inc. (ABH).
- B. Floor Stops: Cast half dome design with rubber bumper, finish as scheduled. Provide manufacturer's standard riser heights as required for carpeted areas in conjunction with the floor bumpers scheduled. Unless otherwise scheduled, provide floor stops at each door leaf where partition construction does not allow the door to swing greater than 90 degrees.
 - 1. For Doors with Standard 3/8 inch Clearance: Comply with BHMA 156.16 Type L12161, L02141 or L12141.
 - a. 3310X; Door Controls International (DCI).
 - b. FS436; Ives (IVS).
 - c. 1211; Trimco Hardware (TBM).
 - d. 441; Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

- C. Silencers for Metal Door Frames: BHMA A156.16, Type L03011; grey rubber, minimum diameter 1/2 inch; fabricated for drilled-in application to frame, specifically designed to form an air pocket to absorb shock and reduce noise of door closing. Provide two silencers for each pair of doors, three silencers for each single door.

1. 8S; Door Controls International (DCI).
2. SR64; Ives (IVS).
3. 1229A; Trimco Hardware (TBM).
4. 608; Rockwood Manufacturing Company (RM).

2.11 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Type 6: Provide the following on the scheduled paired exterior door openings:
1. Head and Jamb Gaskets: Self adhesive flexible silicone type, continuous gaskets for installation at all heads and jambs of each door leaf in the door opening.
 - a. 5050W; National Guard Products, Inc. (NGP).
 - b. S88W; Pemko Manufacturing Co., Inc. (PEM).
 - c. 188SWH; Zero International, Inc. (ZRO).

2.12 FABRICATION

- A. Manufacturer's Nameplate: Provide each door hardware item without exposed manufacturers' labels, names, or designs.
- B. Fasteners: Furnish each hardware item with appropriate length and type of fastener suitable for permanent anchorage for conditions indicated. Furnish hardware with countersunk Phillips type oval head screws where concealed fastening is not possible. The finish or color of the screw head shall match that of the hardware item being fastened. Machine screws and expansion shields shall be used for attaching hardware to concrete and masonry. Use throughbolts for renovation work only where existing door blocking and reinforcements are unknown.
1. Concealed Fasteners: All new doors and door frames have been specified with adequate blocking and reinforcement provisions to eliminate exposed throughbolting of hardware items. Doors installed with exposed throughbolts will be rejected and replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner. Provide sleeves where through bolts are needed to mount hardware items on existing hollow door and frame construction.

2.13 FINISHES

- A. Standard: Comply with BHMA A156.18.

- B. Finished Hardware Item Appearance: Finishes of the same designation, that come from two or more sources, shall match when the items are viewed at arm's length and approximately 24 inches apart. Unless otherwise scheduled, match each hardware item in a single hardware set with the scheduled latch or lock set finish. Painting of BHMA 600 (USP) surfaces is required and is specified under Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
- C. Designations: The abbreviations used to schedule hardware finishes are generally BHMA (Federal Standards where indicated in parenthesis) designations. Comply with base material and finish requirements indicated by the following:
 - 1. BHMA 626 (US26D): Satin chromium plated.
 - 2. BHMA 629 (US32): Bright stainless steel.
 - 3. BHMA 630 (US32D): Satin stainless steel.
 - 4. BHMA 719 (US27): Mill finish aluminum.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Hardware for fire door assemblies shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 80. Hardware for smoke and draft control door assemblies shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 105. Install hardware for non-labeled and non-smoke and draft door assemblies in accordance with BHMA A156.115 for steel doors and frames, and BHMA A156.115-W series for wood doors, and hardware manufacturer's installation instructions for doors and frames fabricated from other than steel or wood.
 - 1. All modifications to fire doors and frame for electric and mortised hardware shall be made by the respective door and frame manufacturers.
- B. Smoke Seals at S Labeled Door Assemblies: Provide and install smoke seals at S labeled doors in accordance with door manufacturer's instructions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at the following heights, unless specifically indicated on the Drawings or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - 1. Locks and Latches: 38 inches to center of lever from finish floor.
 - 2. Door Pulls: 44 inches from finish floor to center of grip. Pull bases centered on door stiles, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Door Pulls: Pull bases centered on top and bottom door rails, and spaced from lock edge of door stile as indicated, or recommended, by the pull manufacturer.
 - 4. Push Plates: 44 inches from finish floor to center of plate. Coordinate with pull location.

5. Horizontal Push/Pull Bar: 42 inches from finish floor to center of pull/pull. Push/Pull bases centered on door stiles, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Butt Hinges: 10 inches to bottom of lowest hinge from finish floor; 5 inches to top of upper hinge from top of door; space intermediate hinges equally between lower and upper hinges.
 7. Deadbolts: Not more than 44 inches from finish floor to operating trim.
 8. Flush Bolt Operating Mechanisms: Top bolt 66 to 72 inches from finish floor, bottom bolt 12 inches from finish floor.
 9. Exit Devices: 40 inches from finish floor to center of touch bar. 38 inches from finish floor to center of cross bar.
 10. Door Viewers: Not more than 60 inches from finished floor to center of viewer at each non-ADA accessible hotel room suite entry door. Not more than 60 inches and not more than 43 inches from finished floor to center of viewers at each ADA accessible hotel room suite entry door.
- B. Comply with the door hardware manufactures printed instructions for the installation of each hardware item. Install overhead surface closers for maximum degree of opening obtainable. Place on room side of corridor doors, stair side of stair doors, secondary corridor side of doors between corridors. Fit door hardware items in their respective doors and frames before field finishing of the door or frame is completed. Remove, store and reinstall hardware items after door and frame field finishes are complete.
1. All wall stops shall be installed with reinforced blocking in wallboard construction. Drywall anchors are not an acceptable means of reinforcement/blocking. Provide intermediate steel plates or channel reinforcement backing at wall stops mounted in wallboard construction.
- C. Do not install permanent key cylinders in locks until the time of preliminary acceptance by the Owner. At the time of preliminary acceptance, and in the presence of the Owner's representative, permanent key all lock cylinders. Record and file all keys in the key control system specified, and turn system over to Owner for sole possession and control.
- D. Key control storage system shall be installed where directed by the Owner.
- E. Thresholds: Thresholds shall be secured with a minimum of 3 fasteners per single door width and 6 fasteners per double door width with a maximum spacing of 12 inches. Minimum screw size shall be No. 10 length, dependent on job conditions, with a minimum of 3/4 inch thread engagement into the floor or anchoring device used. Screw heads to be countersunk and flush with face of threshold. Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant of type as specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants." Once installed thresholds shall not rock or cause noise when walked on.
- 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. General: A qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant shall be engaged by the Owner to execute the inspection of each door opening provided under this Contract and to prepare reports of each to the extent that they comply, or are at deviance, with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every hardware component. Check, test, and adjust moving parts to ensure free, non-binding, and smooth operation. After Substantial Completion, adjust the hardware to compensate for air movement, stack pressure, and other conditions, so that the all door openings operate properly and in compliance with the Contract Documents.
 - 1. Test each electrical hardware item to determine if devices are properly functioning. Wiring shall be tested for correct voltage, current carrying capacity, and proper grounding. Stray voltages in wiring shall be eliminated.
 - 2. Coordinate with electrical installation for interface and connection with life safety and security systems.
 - 3. All proximity card reader/lockset door batteries shall be replaced at the time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assembly Testing: Upon completion of the installation, test each fire door assembly in the project to confirm proper operation of its closing device and that it meets all criteria of a fire door assembly as per NFPA 80. The inspection of the fire doors is to be performed by individuals with knowledge and understanding of the operation components of the type of door being subjected to testing and who are either credentialed as an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC), an Door and Hardware Consultant (DHC), or as a Certified Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (CFDAI). A written record shall be maintained and transmitted to the Owner to be made available to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). The record shall list each fire door assembly throughout the project, and include each door number, an itemized list of hardware set components at each door opening, and each door location in the facility.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean door hardware items in accordance with the written instructions of the door hardware item manufacturer. Protect cleaned items from damage until Substantial Completion.

3.6 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. Refer to drawings

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:

1. Windows.
2. Doors.
3. Glazed storefront walls.
4. Glazed entrances.
5. Storefront framing.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Refer to Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts," for requirements applicable to single subcontract responsibility for glazing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit product data for each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Samples: Label samples to indicate product, characteristics, and locations in the Work. Furnish samples of the following:
1. Except for clear glass, submit samples of each glass type specified, in the form of 12 inch square Samples.
 2. Submit samples of each glass type specified where production run variations and defects are expected.
 3. Furnish 12 inch square glass samples with break-out window indicators applied thereon.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit a letter from glass manufacturer certifying that he has reviewed the glazing details proposed for the Project, including the use of gaskets and sealants, and that each product to be furnished is recommended for the application shown.
- B. Design Data: Submit the following from the glass manufacturer:

1. Thermal Stress Analysis: For each exterior glass unit type, each building elevation. The analysis shall clearly indicate all the expected service temperature ranges and the effects of partial and full shading on the glass. Append to the thermal stress analysis a statement from the glass manufacturer that based upon this analysis that the resulting thermal stresses will not reduce the specified "statistical probability of breakage."
 2. Wind Load Analysis: For each glass unit type, each building elevation. The analysis shall clearly indicate that the statistical probability of breakage at the design wind pressure will not exceed the specified statistical probability of breakage.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of glass and glazing products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
1. Material Certificates: Submit glass treatment certificates signed by manufacturer of the heat-soaked glass products certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Product Test Reports: Submit product test reports for each type of glazing sealant and gasket indicated.
- E. Warranties: Submit special warranties specified in this Section.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Deliver in manufacturer's containers suitable for storing, clearly labeled as to type, size, and thickness. Include manufacturer's instructions for care and storage of glass. Store on the premises where directed.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed glazing similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations for Glass and Glazing Accessories: Obtain glass and glazing accessories from one source for each product indicated below:
1. Primary glass.
 2. Coated glass.
 3. Heat-treated glass, including heat-strengthened, tempered, and heat-soaked glass.
 4. Insulating glass.
 5. Laminated glass.
 6. Glazing gaskets.
 7. Formed or "slumped" glass.

- C. Safety Glass: Comply with the applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction. Wherever requirements conflict, the more stringent shall be required. Obtain approvals from all such authorities. As a minimum, provide Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 (Consumer Product Safety Commission "Safety Standard for Architectural Glazing Materials," as published in the Code of Federal Regulations) and ANSI Z97.1 for Category A performance.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, permanently mark safety glass with certification label of Safety Glazing Certification Council or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Locate permanent markings in one corner, and in the same location, of each glass lite in accordance with the requirements of the SGCC labeling guidelines. Markings shall have a nominal size of no greater than 1-inch in diameter, and be located with glass edge clearances, at the corner, by not more than 3/4-inch up and 3/4-inch over.
- D. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. GANA Publications: GANA's "Glazing Manual" and "Laminated Glass Design Guide."
 - 2. IGMA Publications: IGMA TM-3000, "Vertical Glazing Guidelines."
- E. Mockups: Refer to Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts," for requirements applicable to mockups.
- F. Quality Control (Production) Testing: As a minimum, provide the following quality control (production) testing for the exterior glass units:
 - 1. Bow and Warp Distortion (Flatness) Tolerance Testing:
 - a. During the production of the heat-treated glass lites, measure for bow and warp in accordance with ASTM C 1048. Measure the lites on a vertical plane with an aluminum straight edge or fishing line.
 - 1) Measure the monolithic glass lites for compliance with the bow and warp tolerances under Article "Heat-Treated Float Glass," Paragraph "Flatness Tolerances," unless otherwise accepted by the Owner and Architect at the preconstruction glass mockup.
 - b. During glass production, and once an hour, randomly select a single heat-treated glass lite and measure it. Document and record results. Tag each glass lite that falls outside of the maximum bow and warp limits and certify that these non-conforming glass lites were not incorporated into the Work.

- c. Provide written documentation of the bow and warp readings in fractions of an inch or millimeters for each tested glass lite to the Owner and Architect, if requested. Provide additional written documentation as requested by the Owner and Architect.
2. Roll Ripple Distortion (Flatness) Tolerance Testing:
 - a. During the production of the heat-treated glass lites, measure each low emissivity coated, unfritted, monolithic glass lite having a 1/4-inch-thickness or greater using a LiteSentry or Osprey Series type optical scanning measurement device complying with ASTM C 1652 for digital grid scanning glass devices.
 - 1) Measure the monolithic glass lites for compliance with the flatness tolerances under Article "Heat-Treated Float Glass," Paragraph "Flatness Tolerances," unless otherwise accepted by the Owner and Architect at the preconstruction glass mockup.
 - b. Document and record results for each glass lite. Tag each glass lite that falls outside of the maximum flatness limits and certify that these non-conforming glass lites were not incorporated into the Work.
 - 1) Provide written documentation of the flatness readings in fractions of an inch, in millimeters, and in millidiopters, for each glass lite to the Owner and Architect, if requested. Provide additional written documentation as requested by the Owner and Architect.
3. Color Tolerance Testing: During production, test monolithic coated and coated insulating glass units for color compliance as follows:
 - a. Establish a color target selected from the accepted pre-construction glass mockup unit(s) and perform quality control color control checks using either an off-line, or on-line, spectrophotometer. Examples of acceptable off-line devices include Minolta 2500d/2600d; examples of acceptable on-line devices include Benchmodel Spectrophotometers. Color measurement shall be taken from the uncoated side.
 - b. Frequency: Test a minimum of one unit every hour.
 - c. Document and record results for each glass unit. Tag each unit of glass that falls outside of the color variation limits and certify that these non-conforming glass units will not be incorporated into the Work.
4. Insulating Glass Unit Testing Requirements: During production, test insulating glass units as follows:
 - a. Butterfly Unit Adhesion Pull Testing:
 - 1) Adhesion Criteria: Comply with the pass/fail requirements of the sealant manufacturer's published guidelines and/or sealant manufacturer's certification audit requirements/recommendations. Minimum pull back to 30 degrees from horizontal with no adhesive failure.

- 2) Frequency: Test one minimum 4-by-6-inch- size unit each eight-hour shift and after each sealant drum change.
 - 3) Test units shall be fabricated on the same production line and processing equipment and with the same spacers and sealant used in the production of the insulating glass units fabricated for the Project.
- b. Desiccant Temperature Rise Testing:
- 1) Test Criteria: Comply with the desiccant manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 2) Frequency: Test a minimum of once every eight-hour shift and after each drum change.
- c. Bow/Warp and Air Space Measurement Concave/Convex Testing:
- 1) Measure and record bow and warp once every hour on a vertical plane with an aluminum straight edge or with a laser.
 - 2) Measure and record unit center air space a minimum of once an hour with a checking gage (FDR Designs, or equal) and visually inspect all units.
- d. Skips and voids in the primary or secondary seals are prohibited and maximum gap at primary/secondary seal interface shall be 1 inch in length and 3/32 inch in width.
- e. Document and record results. Provide additional documentation upon request by the Owner or Architect.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. For insulating-glass units that will be exposed to substantial altitude changes, comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting (using either breather or capillary tubes) and sealing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Ceramic Frit-Coated-Glass Products: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by coated-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for those coated-glass units whose coatings flake, peel, or crack within the specified warranty period indicated below. Upon notification of such deterioration within the warranty period, furnish replacement glass units for those glass units whose coatings have flaked, peeled or cracked at the convenience of the Owner.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by laminated-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for laminated-glass units that develop edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those specified within the warranty period indicated below. Upon notification of such deterioration within the warranty period, furnish replacement glass units for those glass units having edge separation, delamination, and blemishes at the convenience of the Owner.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Written warranty, made out to Owner and signed by insulating-glass manufacturer agreeing to furnish replacements for insulating-glass units whose hermetic seal has failed within specified warranty period indicated below. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass. Upon notification of such deterioration within the warranty period, furnish replacement glass units for failed glass units at the convenience of the Owner.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- D. Heat-Soaked Tempered Glass Special Warranty: Executed by the Contractor, manufacturer and the glass installer agreeing to replace glass units that spontaneously break as a result of Nickel Sulfide (NiS) inclusions within the specified warranty period without material or labor charges to the Owner.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS AND MANUFACTURERS

- A. Refer to Finish Schedule on the Drawings for the extent of glass types and locations. Glass types indicated on the Drawings are keyed to the Part 3 Glass Schedule Articles at the end of this Section. The Contractor shall confirm the levels of heat-treatment required for each glass type scheduled as contained in "Performance Requirements" and "Quality Assurance" Articles.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide and install watertight and airtight glazing systems capable of withstanding thermal movement and wind and impact loads without failure of any kind, including loss or breakage of glass, failure of seal or gaskets, exudation of glazing sealants, and excessive deterioration of glazing materials.
- B. Glass Design: Glass thicknesses and heat treatments indicated are minimum requirements. Glazing details shown are for convenience of detailing only and are to be confirmed by the Contractor relative to cited standards and final framing details. Confirm glass thicknesses and heat treatments, verified by analysis, as required to meet the performance and testing requirements specified in Section 08 41 13 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts,"
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide insulating glass with performance properties specified based on manufacturer's published test data, as determined according to procedures indicated below:
 - 1. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick and a nominal 1/2 inch wide interspace.
 - 2. Center-of-Glass U-Values: NFRC 100 methodology using LBL WINDOW 6.3 computer program, expressed as Btu/ sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 - 3. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL WINDOW 6.3 computer program.
 - 4. Visible Reflectance (Solar Optical) Properties: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.3 PRIMARY FLOAT GLASS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat), Quality q3 (glazing select); Class 1, ultra clear low iron with visible light transmission of not less than 91 percent as indicated in schedules.
 - 1. Ultra Clear, Low Iron Glass: Where indicated in the schedules clear, low iron glass shall mean low iron products as follows:
 - a. Guardian Industries Corp.; UltraWhite.
 - b. Pilkington North America; Optiwhite.
 - c. Vitro S.A.B. de C.V. "Starphire." (Basis of Design)
 - 2. Float Glass Quality Imperfection Limitations: In addition to the limitations included under ASTM C 1036, all glass shall be supplied meeting the following quality standards:
 - a. Point blemishes - seeds/stones with distortion, stain spots, dirt, surface damage - shall be limited to 0.060 inch maximum separated by 12 inches minimum.

- b. Glass scratch/rubs shall be rejected if detectable at 10 feet.
- c. Water blow-off stains, tag residue, and handprints will not be permitted.

2.4 HEAT-TREATED FLOAT GLASS

- A. General: Heat-treat glass where the need is determined by thermal stress analyses, by wind load analyses, and where required to meet safety glazing requirements.
- B. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of installed glass unit.
- C. Fabrication Process: By vertical (tong-held) or horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of installed glass unit if roller hearth process selected, except provide horizontal process where indicated as tongless or free of tong marks.
- D. Sizes and Cutting: Prior to heat treatment, cut glass to required sizes as determined by accurate measurement of openings to be glazed, making allowance for required edge clearances. Cut and process edges in accordance with glass manufacturer's recommendations. Do not cut or treat edges in the field. Make all cuts for hardware, access, or glass-mounted trim or accessories before heat treating.
- E. Heat-Strengthened Glass: Provide glass complying with ASTM C 1048 Kind HS. Surface compression range shall be between 4,000 psi and 7,000 psi for 1/4 inch thick glass.
 - 1. Heat-Strengthened Glass Quality Imperfection Limitations: In addition to the limitations included under ASTM C 1048, all glass shall be supplied meeting the following quality standards:
 - a. Chill cracks, roller marks, and picture framing shall not be permitted.
 - b. Tracking/cloud and heat dimples shall be rejected if detectable at 10 feet.
- F. Fully Tempered Glass: Provide glass complying with ASTM C 1048 Kind FT and meeting the requirements of ANSI Z97.1 for Category A performance and 16 CFR 1201 for Category II performance. Surface compression shall be equal to or greater than 10,000 psi. After tempering, heat-soak 100 percent of all fabricated glass units to European Union Standard EN14179 to reduce the potential for inclusion related glass breakage. Statistical heat soaking shall not be permitted.
 - 1. The appearance of anisotropy, also known as 'leopard spots' • and 'quench patterns', is known to be associated with toughened (tempered) glass under certain polarized lighting conditions. This will not be considered a fault unless it is visible in a range of reasonably typical naturally occurring conditions. The Architect will determine the acceptable range(s) of anisotropy from glass sample submittals. Coatings applied to tempered glass products shall not exacerbate anisotropy to an unacceptable range(s).
 - 2. Tempered Glass Quality Imperfection Limitations: In addition to the limitations included under ASTM C 1048, all glass shall be supplied meeting the following quality standards:

- a. Chill cracks, roller marks, and picture framing shall not be permitted.
 - b. Tracking/cloud and heat dimples shall be rejected if detectable at 10 feet.
- G. Flatness Tolerances: All heat-treated glass shall be fabricated to the following flatness tolerances. Verification of compliance for overall bow and warp shall be in accordance with ASTM C 1048. Verification of compliance for flatness shall be via an optical scanning device such as LiteSentry or Osprey Series.
 - 1. Overall Bow and Warp: Not greater than the maximum bow and warp tolerances in any direction as listed in ASTM C 1048 Table 2. Localized warp limited to 1/32 inch in 12 inches.
- H. Millidiopter Criteria: Maximum +/- 120 millidiopters overall or the highest overall measurement from the approved visual mockup that is less than +/- 120 millidiopter overall whichever is less when viewed outdoors.

2.5 CERAMIC-COATED GLASS

- A. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: Float glass with ceramic coating applied by silk-screened process and complying with ASTM C 1048, Condition C (other coated glass), Type I (transparent glass, flat), Quality q3 (glazing select); and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31, "Specification for Decorative Architectural Flat Glass" in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual"; and with other requirements indicated in glass schedules.
 - 1. Provide ceramic coated vision glass at units indicated to receive breakout indicators and where scheduled or shown..
- B. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Condition B (spandrel glass, one-surface ceramic coated), Type I (transparent glass, flat), Quality q3 (glazing select), and complying with other requirements indicated in glass schedules.
 - 1. Factory apply opacifier of polyester film laminated to glass with solvent-based adhesive to coated second surface of lites, with resulting products complying with Specification No. 89-1-6 in GANA's "Engineering Standards Manual."

2.6 LAMINATED GLASS

- A. Laminated Glass: Comply with ASTM C 1172 for kinds of laminated glass indicated and other requirements specified, including those in the Glass Schedule.
- B. Interlayer: Unless indicated otherwise, provide 0.060 inch thick polyvinyl butyral (PVB) sheet or ionoplast sheet interlayer material with a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after laminating glass lites and installation.
 - 1. All interlayer furnished for the Project shall have been manufactured by one of the following:

- a. Eastman Chemical Company.
 - b. Kuraray.
- C. Laminating Process: Prior to laminating, cut glass to required sizes and profiles as determined by accurate measurement of openings to be glazed, making allowance for required edge clearances. Cut and process edges in accordance with glass manufacturer's recommendations. Do not cut or treat edges in the field. Fabricate laminated glass to produce glass free of scuff vinyl markings, handprints, tag residue, and foreign substances such as lint, hair, vinyl shavings in the central glass area and the outer 20 percent area when viewed from a distance of 39 inches and 10 feet, respectively. Handprints, tag residue, scuff vinyl markings, and foreign substances must be separated by more than 12 inches if not detectable at less than the viewing distances. Delaminations, blow-ins, short interlayers, and air or gas pockets shall not be permitted in the central glass area. In the outer 20 percent area, delamination will not be permitted; blow-ins, air or gas pockets, and short interlayers shall be limited to a maximum dimension of 3/32 inch in diameter, 3/32 inch in diameter, and 1/16 inch long, respectively. Laminate units as follows:
 1. Laminate lites with interlayer in autoclave with heat plus pressure.

2.7 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Preassembled units, with dehydrated entrapped air, consisting of sheets of glass hermetically sealed at all edges with a black polyisobutylene primary and a black silicone secondary elastomeric sealant. The black silicone secondary elastomeric sealant sightlines (width) shall be uniform for each insulating glass unit and, where exposed in 2, 3, and 4 sided wet glazing assemblies, sized for the highest wind pressure in the facade. The lites of glass shall be separated by desiccant containing black colored aluminum spacers. All insulating glass units shall be IGCC certified to comply with ASTM E 2190 and with requirements specified in this Article and in the Glass Schedule.
 1. Provide Kind HS (heat-strengthened) float glass where needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Provide Kind FT (fully tempered) where safety glass is indicated.
 2. Basis of Design
 - a. Solarban 60 on Starphire 6mm (2), Air Gap 1/2", Starphire 6mm
- B. Overall Unit Thickness and Thickness of Each Lite: Dimensions indicated in the Glass Schedule are nominal and the overall thicknesses of units are measured perpendicularly from outer surfaces of glass lites at unit's edge.
- C. Provide the following minimum physical property performance values for the insulating glass unit(s) scheduled:
 1. Visible Light Transmittance: 74.
 2. Winter Nighttime U-Value: 0.29.
 3. Summer Daytime U-Value: 0.27.

4. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.41.
5. Outdoor Visible Reflectance: 11.

2.8 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General: Provide products of type indicated, complying with the following requirements:
 1. VOC Content: For architectural sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Gasket, Blocking, and Spacer Wet Glazing Materials: Silicone, compatible with and adherent to each material it will be in contact with, as recommended by the manufacturer to fulfill performance requirements.
- C. Structural and Butt Glazing Sealants: Refer to Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants," Article "Elastomeric Joint Sealants," subparagraph "Structural Glazing."

2.9 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tape: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.

2.10 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Lock-Strip Gaskets: Neoprene extrusions in size and shape indicated, fabricated into frames with molded corner units and zipper lock strips, complying with ASTM C 542, black.
- B. Soft Compression Gaskets: Continuous extruded expanded foam with, cross sectional profile, physical properties, and tolerances as recommended by the window and curtain wall manufacturer, and as required, to comply with the performance requirements specified and shown all in compliance with the applicable provisions of ASTM C 509, Option II, Type II; provide the following:
 1. Neoprene.
 2. EPDM.
 3. Silicone.
 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber.
 5. Any material indicated above.

- C. Continuous Structural Gaskets/Spacers: Continuous extruded silicone or silicone compatible rubber, with cross sectional profile, physical properties, and tolerances as recommended by the window and curtain wall manufacturer, and as required, to comply with the performance requirements specified and shown. Gaskets/spacers shall be tested for compatibility with silicone sealants and shall be subject to the acceptance of the sealant manufacturer.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces, and wet glazing materials, contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: EPDM complying with ASTM C 864 (Option II), blocks, 85 +/- 5 Shore A durometer hardness, 1/16 inch less than the channel width, and length based on the face area of the glass unit to be supported in accordance with GANA standards and glass manufacturer recommendations, but not less than 4 inches.
- D. Setting Blocks: Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115 (Type C), blocks, 85 +/- 5 Shore A durometer hardness, 1/16 inch less than the channel width, and length based on the face area of the glass unit to be supported in accordance with GANA standards and glass manufacturer recommendations, but not less than 4 inches.
- E. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions with a Shore A durometer hardness of 40 to 60.
- F. Edge Blocks: Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115 (Type C), blocks, 65 +/- 5 Shore A durometer hardness, minimum 4 inches long and sized to allow 1/8 inch clearance between edge of glass and block.
- G. Edge Blocks: EPDM complying with ASTM C 864 (Option II), blocks, 65 +/- 5 Shore A durometer hardness, minimum 4 inches long and sized to allow 1/8 inch clearance between edge of glass and block.
- H. Breakout (Smoke Removal) Window Indicators: Provide indicators as required by Code at tempered glass window units from the second floor to the roof level. Indicators shall be acceptable to the Architect and local authorities having jurisdiction. Apply indicators using methods as recommended by the indicator manufacturer at location(s), in color(s), and in pattern(s), at each window unit as directed by Architect and the local authorities having jurisdiction. All indicators shall be applied to insulating glass units on the No. 2 surface.

2.12 FABRICATION OF GLASS AND OTHER GLAZING PRODUCTS

- A. Fabricate glass and other glazing products in sizes required to glaze openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing standard, to comply with system performance requirements.
 - 1. Edge and Surface Conditions: Comply with the recommendations of AAMA "Structural Properties of Glass" for "clean-cut" edges, except comply with manufacturer's recommendations when they are at variance therewith.
 - 2. Exposed Glass Edges and Surface Condition: All edges shall be flat with an arrissed edge profile (small bevel of uniform width not exceeding 1/16 inch at an angle of approximately 45 degrees to the surface of the glass) with a polished (surface is reflective in appearance similar to the major surface of the glass) surface.
- B. Cutting: Do not nip glass edges. Edges may be wheel cut or sawed and seamed at manufacturer's option. For glass to be cut at site, provide glass 2 inches larger than required in both dimensions, so as to facilitate cutting of clean cut edges without the necessity of seaming or nipping. Do not cut, seam, nip or abrade heat-treated glass.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine glass framing, with glazier and glass framing erector present, for compliance with the following:
 - 1. Compliance with the specified manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 - 2. Presence and functioning of weep system.
 - 3. Minimum required face or edge clearances.
 - 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing stops, glazing channels, and rabbets which will be in contact with the glazing materials immediately before glazing. Loose particles present or resulting from fabrication and cleaning shall be removed by blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air, or by vacuuming joints. Remove protective coatings, oils from cutting and drilling operations, and residue on metallic surfaces with solvents that leave no residue. Do not allow solvent to air dry without wiping. Use only lint-free towels for wiping of surfaces. Wipe metal surfaces with IPA (isopropyl alcohol) unless otherwise required by compatibility and adhesion testing results.

1. Prime surfaces to receive glazing compounds. When priming, comply with wet glazing manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Inspect each glass unit immediately before installation. Do not install any units which are improperly sized or have damaged edges, scratches or abrasion or other evidence of damage. Remove labels from glass immediately after installation.
- C. Seal vent (breather or capillary) tubes in insulating glass units in accordance with the insulating glass manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
 1. All glass units shall be installed in accordance with the glass manufacturer's recommendations.
 - a. Unitized Shop-Glazed Structural Silicone Window and Curtain Wall Systems: Comply with the recommendations of the structural silicone and curtain wall framing manufacturers; where conflicts arise, the most stringent shall apply.
 - 1) Structurally seal glass unit to mullions with specified two-part structural silicone sealant. Place and tool structural silicone beads to remove air pockets and bubbles; remove excess structural silicone from glass and metal substrates. Insert and shape weatherseal joint backer rods, or gaskets, into void between glass units and between glass units and framing to the proper depth to receive silicone weatherseal sealant. Place silicone weatherseal sealant into void and tool flush with adjacent exterior glass lite faces; remove excess sealant from glass and metal substrates.

- b. Field Glazed Structural Silicone Window and Curtain Wall Units: Set full height continuous structural gaskets/spacers to vertical mullions. Set glass units with void between edge of units and head/sill channel, but with units fully within head/sill rebate so as to provide a proper bite. Align glass unit edges over vertical mullion continuous structural gasket/spacers and secure with manufacturer's recommended temporary cleats. Structurally seal glass unit to vertical mullions with specified one-part structural silicone sealant. Tool structural silicone flush in alignment to mullion face and perpendicular to face of interior glass lite; remove excess structural silicone from glass and metal substrates. After full cure of structural silicone sealant, remove temporary cleats. Any holes left in the vertical mullions which were caused by the temporary cleats shall be sealed immediately. Insert and shape weatherseal joint backer rods, or gaskets, into vertical void between glass units and at a proper depth to receive silicone weatherseal sealant. Place silicone weatherseal sealant into void and tool flush with adjacent exterior glass lite faces; remove excess sealant from glass and metal substrates.
- B. Glazing channel dimensions, as indicated on Drawings, provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, with reasonable tolerances. Adjust as required by Project conditions during installation.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to surfaces indicated to receive glazing materials. Use primers as determined by preconstruction compatibility and adhesion testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless more stringent requirements are recommended by glass manufacturer. Place blocks to allow water passage to weep holes. Set blocks in thin course of silicone sealant.
 - 1. For Glass Units Less Than 72 inches: Locate setting blocks at sill one-quarter of the width in from each end of the glass, unless otherwise recommended by the glass manufacturer.
 - 2. For Glass Units 72 inches or Greater: Locate setting blocks at sill one-eighth of the width in from each end of the glass, but not less than 6 inches, unless otherwise recommended by the glass manufacturer.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where the length plus width is larger than 50 inches as follows:

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 2. Provide 1/8 inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, sized and located to comply with the glass manufacturer's recommendations and the requirements in referenced glazing publications.
1. Edge blocking will not be required at structural glazed window and curtain walls unless specifically required by the glass manufacturer for the conditions shown.
- I. Set glass lites with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics, producing the greatest possible degree of uniformity in appearance on the entire exterior wall elevation.
1. Set glass units with void between edge of units and glazing channel.
 2. Shadow Box Enclosure Glazing: Remove any dirt, window and curtain wall debris, and construction debris, from interior portion of shadowbox enclosures. Where lubricants are recommended for the installation of glazing gaskets, use types which will not release volatiles, or leave visible deposits or residues, on inside of spandrel glass units or metal back panels.
 3. Orient and install insulating glass units made up with one lite of low emissivity coated glass with the uncoated glass lite on the inboard (building) side.
 4. Orient and install insulating glass units made up with one lite of tinted glass with the untinted glass lite on the inboard (building) side.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Miter cut gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away and join with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer which will provide an airtight and watertight seal at the joint.
- 3.4 TAPE GLAZING
- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
 - B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
 - C. Where framing joints are vertical, cover these joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Where framing joints are horizontal, cover these joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.

- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until just before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 LOCK-STRIP GASKET GLAZING

- A. Comply with ASTM C 716 and gasket manufacturer's written instructions. Use special tool to install and remove filler strips; lubricate in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Provide supplementary wet seal and weep system, unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels, and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove them immediately as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for build-up of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged in any way and from any source, including natural causes, accidents, and vandalism.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended by glass manufacturer.

3.7 GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Exterior Glazing Units, Double-Glazed Sputter-Coated Insulating Glass Units for storefronts and doors:

1. Conformance: ASTM E 2190.
2. Outboard Lite: Sputter-coated Vitro Solarban 60 on Starphire clear float glass.
 - a. Annealed Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality q3.
 - b. Vacuum Deposition Sputtered Coating: ASTM C 1376.
 - c. Coating on Surface No. 2: SunGuard SNX 62/27.
 - d. Glass Thickness: 6 mm (1/4 inch).

Specifier Notes: Specify the method of heat treatment. Guardian recommends substituting heat-strengthened float glass material for tempered fabrication, unless required by code or wind load.

- e. Heat Treatment: Tempered; ASTM C 1048, Kind FT; CPSC 16CFR-1201; ANSI Z 97.1.
3. Air Space: 12 mm (1/2 inch) wide, hermetically sealed, dehydrated air space.
4. Inboard Lite: Starphire 6mm clear float glass.
 - a. Annealed Clear Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, Quality q3.
 - b. Glass Thickness: 6 mm (1/4 inch).

Specifier Notes: Specify the method of heat treatment. Guardian recommends substituting heat-strengthened float glass material for tempered fabrication, unless required by code or wind load.

- c. Heat-Treatment: Tempered; ASTM C 1048, Kind FT; CPSC 16CFR-1201; ANSI Z 97.1.
5. Glass Unit Performance Characteristics:
 - a. Visible Light Transmittance: 74 percent
 - b. Visible Light Reflectance Outdoors: 11 percent
 - c. Direct Solar Energy Transmittance: 24 percent
 - d. Winter U-Value Nighttime: 0.29
 - e. Summer U-Value Daytime: 0.27
 - f. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.41
6. Edge Seals: ASTM E 2188, with aluminum spacers, dual-sealed with a primary seal of polyisobutylene and a secondary seal of silicone sealant for glass-to-spacer seals.
7. Sealant: Approved by glass manufacturer

B. All Glass front doors Glazing

1. Doors: 5/8" Clear Tempered

END OF SECTION

SECTION 08 83 00 - MIRRORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes mirrored glass.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each product indicated.
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.
 - 2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
 - 3. Product Certificates for Section A5.405.1: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, provide certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. For the purposes of this requirement, "regional" is interpreted to mean within 500 miles of the project location or within the State of California.
 - 4. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.
 - a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other Work.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Glazier Certification Program as Level 2 (Senior Glaziers) or Level 3 (Master Glaziers).
- B. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations in GANA's "Glazing Manual," unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Safety Glass: Category II materials complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. For silvered mirrored glass, comply with mirrored glass manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrored glass as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors, protected from moisture including condensation.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrored glass units that deteriorate f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Deterioration of Silvered Mirrored Glass: Defects developed from normal use not caused by maintaining and cleaning mirrored glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MATERIALS - GENERAL

- A. Select building materials or products for permanent installation on the project that have been manufactured in California or within 500 miles of the project site. Refer to Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements," additional criteria.
- B. Use materials, with recycled content equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Refer to Section 01 81 23 "CALgreen Requirements," for content minimums.

2.3 FLOAT GLASS

- A. Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I (transparent glass, flat).
 - 1. Clear: Class 1 (clear), Quality q2 (mirror).
 - a. Thickness: 6 mm.

2.4 MIRRORING GLASS

- A. Silvered Mirrored Glass:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. American Mirror Company, Inc.
 - b. Carolina Mirror Company.
 - c. Virginia Mirror Co., Inc.
 - d. Walker Glass Co., Ltd.
 - 2. Annealed Float Glass: Clear.
 - 3. Silvering: Successive layers of chemically deposited silver, electrically or chemically deposited copper, and manufacturer's standard organic protective coating applied to second glass surface to produce coating system complying with FS DD-M-411.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Edge Sealer: Coating compatible with glass coating and approved by mirrored glass manufacturer for use in protecting against silver deterioration at mirrored glass edges.
- B. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, asbestos-free, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the Basis-of-Design or a comparable product by one of the following:

- a. Franklin International.
 - b. Laurence, C. R. Co., Inc.
 - c. Liquid Nails Adhesive.
 - d. Royal Adhesives & Sealants, LLC.
 - e.
- 2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
- C. Stainless Steel Top and Bottom Trim: J-channels with return that produces glazing channel to accommodate mirrored glass thickness indicated.
 - 1. Bottom and Top Trim: J-channels formed with front leg and back leg not less than 5/16 and 7/8 inch in height, respectively.
 - a. Product:
 - 1) C. R. Laurence Co., Inc.; CRL Stainless Steel "J" Channel, No. SS960.
- D. Fasteners: Fabricated of same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal.
- E. Anchors and Inserts: Provide devices as required for mirror hardware installation. Provide toothed or lead-shield expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Provide galvanized anchors and inserts for applications on inside face of exterior walls and where indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
- B. Install mirrored glass units to comply with written instructions of mirrored glass manufacturer and with referenced GANA and NAAMM publications. Mount mirrored glass accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
- C. Provide space for air circulation between back of mirrored glass units and face of mounting surface.
- D. Mastic Spot Installation System:
 - 1. Apply barrier coat to mirrored glass backing where approved in writing by manufacturers of mirrored glass and backing material.
 - 2. Apply mastic in spots to comply with mastic manufacturer's written instructions for coverage and to allow air circulation between back of mirrored glass units and face of mounting surface.

3. After mastic is applied, align mirrored glass units and press into place while maintaining a minimum air space of 1/8 inch between back of mirrored glass and mounting surface.
- E. For wall-mounted mirrored glass units, install permanent means of support at bottom and top edges with bottom support designed to withstand mirrored glass weight and top support designed to prevent mirrored glass from coming away from wall along top edges.
1. Attach mirror hardware securely to mounting surfaces with mechanical fasteners installed with anchors or inserts as applicable. Install fasteners so heads do not impose point loads on backs of mirrored glass units.
 2. For continuous bottom supports, provide setting blocks 1/8 inch thick by 4 inches long at quarter points. For channels or other continuous supports in which water could be trapped, provide, between setting blocks, two slotted weeps not less than 1/4 inch wide by 3/8 inch long.
 3. Where indicated, install bottom and top trim. Fabricate trim in single lengths to fit and cover top and bottom edges of mirrored glass units.
- F. Protect mirrored glass from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
1. Do not permit edges of silvered mirrored glass to be exposed to standing water.
 2. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent silvered mirrored glass from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 24 00 - CEMENT PLASTERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior vertical plasterwork (stucco).
2. Exterior horizontal and nonvertical plasterwork (stucco).

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 53 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for wood framing and furring included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
2. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for sheathing and water-resistant barriers included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
3. Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation" for thermal insulations and vapor retarders included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
4. Section 07 27 26 "Fluid Applied Membrane Air Barrier" for waterproofing exterior assemblies.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. CALgreen Submittals:

1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.
2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
3. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3: For architectural paints and coatings, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with Table 1 of the ARB, Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure, unless more stringent local limits apply.

4. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3.1: Aerosol paints and coatings, provide documentation that products meet the PWMIR Limits for ROC in Section 94522 (a)(3) and other requirements, including prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds and ozone depleting substances, in Section 94522(c)(2 and (d)(2) of CCR Title 17.
 - 5.
 6. Product Certificates for Section A5.405.1: For products and materials required to comply with requirements for regional materials, provide certificates indicating location of material manufacturer and point of extraction, harvest, or recovery for each raw material. For the purposes of this requirement, "regional" is interpreted to mean within 500 miles of the project location or within the State of California.
 7. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.
 - a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.
 8. **(Tier 1 and Tier 2) Compliance with Section A5.504.4.8: Provide documentation verifying that thermal insulation materials meet the following pollution emission limits:**
 - a. (Tier 2) Thermal Insulation does not contain any added formaldehyde.
 9. **Section A5.405.5.1 Cement: Provide documentation that cement complies with one of the following standards:**
 - a. **Portland cement shall meet ASTM C 150.**
 - 10.
 - C. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
 - D. Samples: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat and for each color and texture specified.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store materials inside under cover, and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, moisture, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.
- 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Comply with ASTM C 926 requirements.
 - B. Exterior Plasterwork:

1. Apply and cure plaster to prevent plaster drying out during curing period. Use procedures required by climatic conditions, including moist curing, providing coverings, and providing barriers to deflect sunlight and wind.
 2. Apply plaster when ambient temperature is greater than 40 deg F.
 3. Protect plaster coats from freezing for not less than 48 hours after set of plaster coat has occurred.
 4. Protect contiguous work from damage by plastering operations. Do not allow runoff water from plaster to drain over glass or metal surfaces. Cover all window and door frames, sills, ledges, and pavement before starting plastering operations.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL LATH

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847, cold-rolled carbon-steel sheet with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
 - b. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
 - c. Marino\WARE.
- B. Paper Backing: FS UU-B-790a, Type I, Grade D, Style 2 vapor-permeable paper.
1. Provide paper-backing as isolation layer to fluid applied membrane air barrier..

2.2 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1063, and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required.
- B. Metal Accessories:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
 - b. ClarkDietrich Building Systems.
 - c. Marino\WARE.
 2. External- (Outside-) Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from metal lath with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized-zinc coating.

3. Control Joints: Fabricated from zinc; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing and Finishing Plaster: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, not less than 0.0475-inch diameter unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 PLASTER MATERIALS

- A. Ready-Mixed Finish-Coat Plaster: Mill-mixed portland cement, aggregates, coloring agents, and proprietary ingredients.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. LaHabra Stucco Solutions; Parex USA.
 - b. Omega Products International, Inc.
 - c. Parex USA Inc, 4125 E. La Palma Ave, Suite 250, Anaheim CA 92807
(Basis of Design: Parex 210 Armourwall Stucco Base Concentrate and Finish coat for finish 533 Sand Smooth Light base to a total thickness of 7/8 inch
 2. Color: As indicated on drawings to match selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that surfaces are protected from direct sun, drying winds (real or artificial) and that substrates conform to ASTM C 926.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.
- B. Prepare smooth, solid substrates for plaster according to ASTM C 926.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.
- B. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: Where required, install blankets before installing lath unless blankets are readily installed after lath has been installed on one side.

3.4 INSTALLING METAL LATH

- A. Metal Lath: Install according to ASTM C 1063.
 - 1. Partition Framing and Vertical Furring: Install flat-diamond-mesh lath.
 - 2. Flat-Ceiling and Horizontal Framing: Install flat-diamond-mesh lath.

3.5 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- A. Install according to ASTM C 1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Reinforcement for External (Outside) Corners:
 - 1. Install lath-type, external-corner reinforcement at exterior locations.
 - 2. Install cornerbead at interior locations.
- C. Control Joints: Locate as approved by Architect for visual effect and as follows:
 - 1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
 - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft..
 - b. Horizontal and Other Nonvertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft..
 - 2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
 - 3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
 - 4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.
 - 5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

3.6 PLASTER APPLICATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926.
 - 1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in 10 feet from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces when measured by a 10-foot straightedge placed on surface.
 - 2. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground unless otherwise indicated. Where casing bead does not terminate plaster at metal frame, cut base coat free from metal frame before plaster sets and groove finish coat at junctures with metal.
 - 3. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.
- B. Walls; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork with 3/4-inch total thickness, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
- C. Ceilings; Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: For scratch and brown coats, for three-coat plasterwork and having 1/2-inch total thickness, as follows:
 - 1. Portland cement mixes.
 - 2. Masonry cement mixes.
 - 3. Portland and masonry cement mixes.
- D. Plaster Finish Coats: Apply to provide Finish as identified on drawings finish to match Architect's sample.
- E. Acrylic-Based Finish Coatings: Apply coating system, including primers, finish coats, and sealing topcoats, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Concealed Exterior Plasterwork: Where plaster application is used as a base for adhered finishes, omit finish coat.

3.7 PLASTER REPAIRS

- A. Repair or replace work to eliminate cracks, dents, blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work after plastering is complete. Promptly remove plaster from door frames, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

Gensler
07.3945.000

April 10, 2026
Issue For Plan Check

Hangar 10 Reconstruction
Irvine, California

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Tile backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 30 13 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Gypsum wallboard.
2. Flexible gypsum board.
3. Gypsum ceiling board.
4. Abuse-resistant gypsum board.
5. Cementitious backer units.
6. Interior trim.
7. Aluminum trim.
8. Joint treatment materials.
9. Laminating adhesive.
10. Sound-attenuation blankets.
11. Acoustical sealant.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Environmental Product Declaration (EPD): For each product.
2. Product Data: For adhesives and sealants, indicating VOC content.
3. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives and sealants, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
4. Laboratory Test Reports: For ceiling and wall materials, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Ceiling and wall materials shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. General: For fire rated assemblies, provide materials, including accessories and fasteners produced by one manufacturer, or, when products of more than one manufacturer are used in a rated system, they shall be acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. USG Corporation.
- 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 3. Long Edges: .

B. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
- 2. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
- 3. Long Edges: Tapered.

C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
- 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
- 3. Long Edges: Tapered.

D. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.

- c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
 - 3. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds requirements.
 - 4. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 3 requirements.
 - 5. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M, meets or exceeds Level 3 requirements.
 - 6. Long Edges: Tapered.
 - 7. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
 - E. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Core: 1/2 inch, regular type.
- 2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS
- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Saint-Gobain North America.
 - b. National Gypsum Company.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
 - 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES
- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.
 - 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 - 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (control) joint.

- B. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 - b. Pittcon Industries.
 - 2. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5.
 - 3. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.
- B. Joint Tape:
 - 1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 - 2. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
 - 1. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

2. Recycled Content: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 50 percent.
- D. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 07 92 00 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."
1. Sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less.
 2. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING OF PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- K. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
 - 1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 - 3. Flexible Type: Apply in double layer at curved assemblies.
 - 4. Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
 - 5. Abuse-Resistant Type: In major public circulation path conditions.
 - 6. Mold-Resistant Type: In Restrooms and wet areas above tile conditions.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
 - 1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.

2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

E. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch- long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches o.c.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.

- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 - 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
 - 5. Level 5: At all locations to receive graphics or speciality covering.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
- E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
- B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Porcelain tile.
2. Thresholds.
3. Tile backing panels.
4. Waterproof membranes.
5. Crack isolation membranes.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
1. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 3. Laboratory Test Reports: For sealers, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
- C. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- D. Samples for Verification:
1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.

2. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. Make samples at least 36 inches square, but not fewer than four tiles. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed Work.
3. Thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
4. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
 - a. .
 2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
 1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.
 2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
 3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.

- B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
- D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

- A. Ceramic Porcelain Tile Type TLXX: Glazed.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crossville, Inc.
 - b. Daltile. (s of Design)
 - c. Spec Ceramics (Basis of Design)
 - d. Emser. (Basis of Design)
 - 2. Face Size: As indicated on drawings.
 - 3. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
 - 4. Face: Plain with square edges.
 - 5. Tile Color, Glaze, and Pattern: As indicated by manufacturer's designations Insert color, glaze, and pattern.
 - 6. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Insert color.
 - 7. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:

- a. Wainscot Cap: Square thin profile, aligning with face of finish of tile.
- b. Square thin profile, aligning with face of finish of tile
- c. Internal Corners: Field-butt square corners.

2.3 THRESHOLDS

- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 - 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C1325, Type A, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products.
 - b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
 - c. USG Corporation.
 - 2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.

2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Waterproof Membrane, Fluid-Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.

2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for high performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Crack Isolation Membrane, Fluid-Applied: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.

2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
 - 1. Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.
 - 2. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches by 0.062-inch diameter; comply with ASTM A185/A185M and ASTM A82/A82M, except for minimum wire size.
 - 3. Expanded Metal Lath: Diamond-mesh lath complying with ASTM C847.
 - a. Base Metal and Finish for Interior Applications: Uncoated or zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, with uncoated steel sheet painted after fabrication into lath.
 - b. Weight: 2.5 lb/sq. yd..
 - 4. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.15.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.
 - 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.

3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with liquid-latex additive at Project site.
4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.

C. Water-Cleanable, Tile-Setting Epoxy: ANSI A118.3.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.
2. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.
3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
4. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3, with a VOC content of 65 g/L or less.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products. (Basis of Design)
 - b. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - c. MAPEI Corporation.
2. Provide product capable of withstanding continuous and intermittent exposure to temperatures of up to 140 and 212 deg F, respectively, and certified by manufacturer for intended use.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.

- C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring and wall applications; stainless steel, ASTM A276/A276M or ASTM A666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Blanke Corporation.
 - b. Schluter Systems L.P. (Basis of Design)
- D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- E. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.

- b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Exterior tile floors.
 - b. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - c. Tile swimming pool decks.
 - d. Tile floors in laundries.
 - e. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - f. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
 - 1. Glazed Wall Tile: 1/8 inch.
 - 2. Porcelain Tile: 1/8 inch.
- H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- J. Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in improved modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
 - 2. Do not extend waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.

- K. Metal Edge Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile does not abut other materials, or flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- L. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

- A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.

2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.9 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 1. TCNA F121 and ANSI A108.1A: Cement mortar bed (thickset) on waterproof membrane.
 - a. Basis of Design: Custom Building Products CF121
 - b. Ceramic Tile Type: TLXX, as indicated on drawings, glazed body match .
 - c. Grout: High-performance unsanded grout.
 - d. Megaflex Crack Prevention Mortar
 - e. Mortar Bed 1-4" Minimum with reinforcing
 - f. Redgar Waterproofing Crack Prevention Membrane
- B. Interior Wall Installations, Wood or Metal Studs or Furring:
 1. TCNA W244C or TCNA W244F : Thinset mortar on cementitious backer units or fiber-cement backer board over vapor-retarder membrane.
 - a. Basis of Design: Custom Building Products CF121
 - b. Ceramic Tile Type: TLXX.
 - c. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - d. MegaLite Crack Prevention Mortar
 - e. Redgard Waterproofing Crack Prevention Membrane
 - f. Cementitious Backer Board

3.10 ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

A. Ceramic Tile Flooring:

1. Ceramic tile flooring shall be stable, firm and slip resistant. **CBC Section 11B-302.1**

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 72 00 - WALL COVERINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Microvented vinyl wall covering.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data on physical characteristics, durability, fade resistance, and fire-test-response characteristics.

B. CALgreen Submittals:

1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.1: For sealants, adhesives and caulks, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with SCAQMD Rule 1168 VOC limits and CCR (California Code of Regulations) Title 17 for aerosols.
2. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.1.2: Provide documentation for aerosol adhesives, and smaller unit sizes of adhesives, sealant, and caulking compounds (in units of product, less packaging, which do not weigh more than one (1) pound and do not consist of more than sixteen (16) fluid ounces) comply with statewide VOC standards and prohibitions on use of certain toxic compounds, of CCR Title 17, commencing with Section 94507.
3. Compliance with Section A5.405.4: Provide documentation of use of recycled content materials, equivalent in performance to virgin materials. Provide cost documentation showing value of recycled content using A5.405.4.2.
 - a. (Tier 1) The RCV shall not be less than 10% of the total project.

- C. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of each wall-covering type. Indicate pattern placement, seams and termination points.

- D. Samples: For each type of wall covering and for each color, pattern, texture, and finish specified, full width by 36-inch- long in size.

1. Wall-Covering Sample: From same production run to be used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat.

- E. Product Schedule: For wall coverings. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's written application instructions for all products used in installation.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Wall-Covering Materials: For each type, color, texture, and finish, full width by length to equal to 5 percent of amount installed.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install wall coverings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at levels intended for occupants after Project completion during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Lighting: Do not install wall covering until lighting that matches conditions intended for occupants after Project completion is provided on the surfaces to receive wall covering.
- C. Ventilation: Provide continuous ventilation during installation and for not less than the time recommended by wall-covering manufacturer for full drying or curing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wall materials shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical wall coverings applied with identical adhesives to substrates according to test method indicated below by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

2.2 MICROVENTED VINYL WALL COVERING (WC##)

- A. Product(s): As indicated in Finish Schedule on Drawings.
- B. Width: 52.
- C. Backing: X-Protect Wall a Nonwoven fabric.
- D. Repeat: Random.
- E. Colors, Textures, and Patterns: Match Architect's samples as indicated on drawing.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Adhesive Systems for Microvented Wall Coverings:
 1. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable formaldehyde-free adhesive, for use with microvented vinyl wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- B. Adhesive: Mildew-resistant, nonstaining, strippable adhesive, for use with specific wall covering and substrate application indicated and as recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less.
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Primer/Sealer: Mildew resistant, complying with requirements in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and recommended in writing by primer/sealer and wall-covering manufacturers for intended substrate.
- D. Seam Tape: As recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for levelness, wall plumbness, maximum moisture content, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation.
- B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of wall covering, including dirt, oil, grease, mold, mildew, and incompatible primers.
- C. Prepare substrates to achieve a smooth, dry, clean, structurally sound surface free of flaking, unsound coatings, cracks, and defects.
 - 1. Moisture Content: Maximum of 5 percent on new plaster, concrete, and concrete masonry units when tested with an electronic moisture meter.
 - 2. Plaster: Allow new plaster to cure. Neutralize areas of high alkalinity. Prime with primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 3. Metals: If not factory primed, clean and apply primer recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 4. Gypsum Board: Prime with primer as recommended in writing by primer/sealer manufacturer and wall-covering manufacturer.
 - 5. Painted Surfaces: Treat areas susceptible to pigment bleeding.
- D. Check painted surfaces for pigment bleeding. Sand gloss, semigloss, and eggshell finish with fine sandpaper.
- E. Remove hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.
- F. Acclimatize wall-covering materials by removing them from packaging in the installation areas not less than 24 hours before installation.

3.3 WALL LINER INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall liner, without gaps or overlaps. Form smooth wrinkle-free surface for finished installation. Do not begin wall-covering installation until wall liner has dried.

3.4 WALL-COVERING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with wall-covering manufacturers' written installation instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. All new walls receiving wallcovering should be primed to promote adhesion.
- C. All walls receiving microvented wall covering should be primed with a primer specially formulated for permeability.
- D. Cut wall-covering strips in roll number sequence. Change the roll numbers at partition breaks and corners.
- E. Install strips in same order as cut from roll.
 - 1. For solid-color, even-texture, or random-match wall coverings, reverse every other strip.
- F. Install wall covering without lifted or curling edges and without visible shrinkage.
- G. Match pattern 72 inches above the finish floor.
- H. Install seams vertical and plumb at least 6 inches from outside corners and 3 inches from inside corners unless a change of pattern or color exists at corner. Horizontal seams are not permitted.
- I. Trim edges and seams for color uniformity, pattern match, and tight closure. Butt seams without overlaps or gaps between strips.
- J. Fully bond wall covering to substrate. Remove air bubbles, wrinkles, blisters, and other defects.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Remove excess adhesive at seams, perimeter edges, and adjacent surfaces.
- B. Use cleaning methods recommended in writing by wall-covering manufacturer.
- C. Replace strips that cannot be cleaned.
- D. Reinstall hardware and hardware accessories, electrical plates and covers, light fixture trims, and similar items.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following exterior substrates:
 - 1. Galvanized metal.
 - 2. Fiber Cement Siding
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Sections 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" and 09 91 23.16 "Interior Latex Painting" for surface preparation and the application of paint systems on interior substrates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: The following terms apply to this Section. Gloss level shall be determined according to ASTM D 523.
 - 1. Gloss Level 3 (Eggshell): 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees.
 - 2. Gloss Level 5 (Semigloss): 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
- B. CALgreen Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Section 5.504.4.3: For architectural paints and coatings, provide documentation including printed statement of VOC content showing compliance with Table 1 of the ARB, Architectural Coatings Suggested Control Measure, unless more stringent local limits apply.
 - 2.
 - 3.
 - 4.
 - a.
 - b.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat, with texture to simulate actual conditions.

1. Provide stepped Samples, defining each separate coat, including primers. Use representative colors when preparing Samples for review. Resubmit until required gloss, color, and texture are achieved.
2. Provide a list of materials and applications for each coat of each Sample. Label each Sample for location and application.
3. Submit paint samples on hardboard, 12 inches square, of each color and texture required.
4. Submit paint samples on zebra board, 12 inches square, to demonstrate hiding.
5. Submit paint samples on actual substrate to be painted, 12 inches square, of each color and texture required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Embodied Carbon Submittals: Refer to Section 01 81 33 "Sustainable Design Requirements - Embodied Carbon."

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Paint: 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed painting system applications similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
 1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

- B. Do not apply paints in [snow,] rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co. (Benjamin Moore)
 - 2. PPG Industries, Inc. (PPG)
 - 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (SW) (Basis of Design)

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. VOC Content: For field applications, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
 - 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
 - 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: VOC content of not more than 100 g/L.
 - 3. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content not more than 100 g/L.
 - 4. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: VOC content not more than .
 - 5. Pre-Treatment Wash Primers: VOC content not more than 420 g/L.
- C. Colors and Gloss: As indicated in Finish Schedule on Drawings. Reference to a particular manufacturer's number or color name is used only as a convenience for the Architect in order to establish the Project color and gloss requirements. These references are not intended to describe the required generic paint systems. For generic paint system requirements, refer to the "Exterior Paint Schedule" at the end of Part 3, as applicable to the respective conditions of use.
 - 1. The selection of paint colors and gloss are indicated by manufacturer and color type;

2.3 WATER-BASED PAINTS

- A. Light Industrial Coating Exterior, Water Based (Gloss Level 3):

1. Benjamin Moore; Ultra Spec EXT - Satin (N448).
2. PPG; Pitt-Tech Plus DTM Enamel (90-1110).
3. SW; Pro Industrial High Performance Acrylic Eg-Shel (B66-600 Series).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- C. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Manual."
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
 - 4. Paint entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
 - 5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 6. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat, but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
 - b. Metal piping.
 - c. Plastic piping.
 - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - e. Metal conduit.
 - f. Plastic conduit.
 - g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

- 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System:
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized metal, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on galvanized-metal substrates with topcoat indicated.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (gloss as indicated on Drawings).

B. Fiber Cement Panels

- 1. Water-Based Exterior Coating System
 - a. Prime Coat: Primer, as recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use on fiber cement substrates.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior, water based, matching topcoat.

Indicate color and gloss level on Drawings.

- c. Topcoat: Exterior, water based (gloss as indicated on Drawings).
- d.
- e.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Primers.
 - 2. Water-based finish coatings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 - 2. Indicate VOC content.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For paints and coatings, indicating VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports: For paints and coatings, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
 - 3. Sourcing of Raw Materials: Corporate sustainability report for each manufacturer.
 - 4. Manufacturer Inventory: For each product, provide manufacturer's manifest of ingredients.
- C. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.
- D. Product Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Interior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures of less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 2. PPG Paints.
 3. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)

2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. VOC Content: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, paints and coatings shall comply with VOC content limits of authorities having jurisdiction and the following VOC content limits:
 1. Flat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
 2. Nonflat Paints and Coatings: 50 g/L.
 3. Dry-Fog Coatings: 150 g/L.
 4. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
 5. Rust-Preventive Coatings: 100 g/L.
 6. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: 100 g/L.
 7. Pretreatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
 8. Shellacs, Clear: 730 g/L.
 9. Shellacs, Pigmented: 550 g/L.

- C. Low-Emitting Materials: For field applications that are inside the weatherproofing system, 90 percent of paints and coatings shall comply with the requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- D. VOC Emissions: For field applications inside the building, wall paints shall contain no more than half of the chronic REL of VOCs when tested according to the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers." The building concentration of formaldehyde shall not exceed half of the indoor recommended exposure limit or 33 mcg/cu. m and that of acetaldehyde shall not exceed 9 mcg/cu. m.
- E. Colors: Match Architect's samples, as indicated in drawings.

2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Interior, Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Primer Sealer: Water-based primer sealer with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter for use on new interior plaster, concrete, and gypsum wallboard surfaces that are subsequently to be painted with latex finish coats.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)
- B. Water-Based Rust-Inhibitive Primer: Corrosion-resistant, water-based-emulsion primer formulated for resistance to flash rusting when applied to cleaned, interior ferrous metals subject to mildly corrosive environments.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)

2.4 WATER-BASED FINISH COATS

- A. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Flat: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)
 2. Gloss and Sheen Level: Maximum gloss of 5 units at 60 degrees and maximum sheen of 10 units at 85 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
- B. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Satin: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)
 2. Gloss and Sheen Level: Gloss of 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and minimum sheen of 35 units at 85 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
- C. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Semigloss: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.
 - c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)
 2. Gloss Level: Gloss of 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
- D. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low-Odor/VOC, Gloss: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - b. PPG Paints.

- c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The). (Basis of Design)
- 2. Gloss Level: Gloss of 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
 - 2. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 3. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.

- D. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2.
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3.
 - 3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
 - 4. SSPC-SP 11.
- E. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 - 4. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 - 5. Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- E. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
 - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms and do not have factory finish:
 - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.

- b. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.
- 2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry-Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry-film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry-film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry-film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
 - 1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
 - 2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
 - 4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Gypsum Board Substrates:
 - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System :
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, flat semigloss or gloss, refer to finish schedule on drawings.
- 2. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System :
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior, institutional low-odor/VOC primer sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior, latex, institutional low odor/VOC, flat satin semigloss or gloss, refer to finish schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09 96 00.13 - EXTERIOR HIGH PERFORMANCE COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of high-performance coating systems on interior and exterior substrates. The substrates include:
 - 1. Substrates:
 - a. Uncoated aluminum.
 - b. Architecturally exposed structural steel.
 - c. Galvanized steel.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Factory- or shop-applied primers applied as Work of other Sections must be coordinated with field-applied finish coats. Review other Sections for factory- or shop-primed products and reference this Section for product requirements:
 - 2. Section 05 12 00 " Structural Steel Framing."
 - 3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
 - 4. Section 08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
 - 5. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for general field painting.
 - 6. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for general field painting.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Definitions of gloss levels below are from "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" (hereafter, "MPI Manual").
 - 1. Gloss Level 1, Matte or Flat finish: 0 to 5 units at 60 degrees and maximum 10 units at 85 degrees.
 - 2. Gloss Level 2, Velvet finish: Maximum 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees.
 - 3. Gloss Level 3, Eggshell finish: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees.
 - 4. Gloss Level 4, Satin finish: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and minimum 35 units at 85 degrees.
 - 5. Gloss Level 5, Semi-Gloss finish: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees.
 - 6. Gloss Level 6, Gloss finish: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees.
 - 7. Gloss Level 7, High-Gloss finish: More than 85 units at 60 degrees.
- B. Blocking: Two painted surfaces sticking together such as a painted door sticking to a painted jamb.

- C. ASTM: ASTM International develops international standards for materials, products, systems and services used in construction, manufacturing and transportation: www.astm.org.
- D. Bio-Pruf™: Anti-microbial additive that inhibits the growth of odor and stain causing mold and mildew on the paint film. "Antimicrobial" is defined as any means or mode of restricting growth or spread of microbes.
- E. CRGI: Coatings Research Group Inc. is an international association of paint and coatings manufacturers dedicated to the benefits of shared research and development: crgiconnect.com.
- F. DTM: Direct to metal. A coating that can be applied directly to a metal surface; refer to manufacturer's product information for surface preparation and application instructions.
- G. EG: Ethylene Glycol. Ethylene glycol is listed as a hazardous air pollutant (HAP) by the U.S. EPA: www.epa.gov.
- H. EPR: Environmental Performance Rating. Master Painters Institute's formula that relates VOC, Performance of Category, Gloss and Appropriate specified use. Higher values equate to greater eco- efficiency.
- I. HAP: Hazardous Air Pollutant: According to the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Hazardous air pollutants, also known as toxic air pollutants or air toxics, are those pollutants that cause or may cause cancer or other serious health effects, such as reproductive effects or birth defects, or adverse environmental and ecological effects: www.epa.gov.
- J. MPI: Master Painters Institute. An organization that establishes architectural paint standards and quality assurance programs in North America: www.paintinfo.com.
- K. NACE: National Association of Corrosion Engineers www.nace.org.
- L. PDCA: Painting & Decorating Contractors of America: www.pdca.org.
- M. RAVOC: Reactivity adjusted VOC. 'Reactivity' means the ability of a VOC to promote ozone formation.
- N. SCAQMD: South Coast Air Quality Management District is defined as most of Los Angeles, Orange, Riverside, and San Bernardino counties in California.
- O. OTC: Refers to the Ozone Transmission Commission.
- P. SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings. Surface preparation standards and specifications. www.sspc.org.
- Q. ICRI: International Concrete Repair Institute. www.icri.org.
- R. Environments

1. Severe Environments: Highly corrosive industrial atmospheres. Sustained exposure to high humidity and condensation and with frequent cleaning using strong chemicals. Environments with heavy concentrations of strong chemical fumes and frequent splashing and spilling of harsh chemical products are severe environments.
2. Moderate Environments: Corrosive industrial atmospheres with intermittent exposure to high humidity and condensation, occasional mold and mildew development, and regular cleaning with strong chemicals. Environments with exposure to heavy concentrations of chemical fumes and occasional splashing and spilling of chemical products are moderate environments.
3. Mild Environment: industrial atmospheres with normal exposure to moderate humidity and condensation, occasional mold and mildew development, and infrequent cleaning with strong chemicals. Environments with low levels of mild chemical fumes and occasional splashing and spilling of chemical products are mild environments. Normal outdoor weathering is also considered a mild environment.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include technical data for each type of coating system, label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each material specified. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
 1. Product List: Cross reference to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in Finish Schedules. Include manufacturer's recommended spreading rate (DFT) and VOC content limits for each separate coat for each type of substrate indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product.
- C. Samples for Verification: Submit three samples for each type of coating system and each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
 1. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.
 2. Label each coat of each Sample with the following:
 - a. Paint color name and number.
 - b. Paint brand name.
 - c. "P" number if applicable, and application area.
- D. Product List: For each product indicated. Cross-reference products to coating system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations and VOC content.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Manufacturer's Information: Manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material.

- B. Preparation instructions and recommendations

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor shall provide verification of conformance with this specification, referenced standards and related documents. This verification to be performed by a Third Party, minimum NACE Level 1 Certified Coatings Inspector.

1. Provide documentation verifying inspector's certification is both valid and current.

- B. Qualifications:

1. Applicator: Use applicator experienced in the application of the specified high-performance coating for a minimum of 2 years on projects of similar size and complexity. Provide a list of completed projects including project name and location, name of Architect, name of coating manufacturer, and approximate quantity of coating applied.
2. Applicator's Supervisor: Employ a supervisor during all phases of the work that has successfully completed manufacturer's contractor training program.
3. Applicator's Personnel: Employ persons trained for the application of high-performance coating.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with environmental regulations.

1. Air Quality Standards: Comply with the IBC and local jurisdiction for air quality regulations and chemical and heavy metal components.
2. Performance and Durability:
 - a. Reflectometry.
 - b. ASTM D 4828 Standard Test Method for Practical Washability of Organic Coatings.

- D. Pre-Application Meeting:

1. Convene a pre-application meeting two weeks before the start of application of the high-performance coating.
2. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this Section, including the Contractor, subcontractor, Architect, Building Envelope Consultant, applicator and manufacturer's representative.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and acceptable ranges published in their PDS/TDS and SDS sheets.

1. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

2. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
3. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply coatings only when temperature of surfaces to be coated and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
 1. Allow wet surfaces to dry thoroughly and attain temperature and conditions specified before proceeding with or continuing coating operations.
 2. Work may continue during inclement weather if areas and surfaces to be coated are enclosed and temperature within the area can be maintained within limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.
- C. Do not apply over substrates that are frozen or contain frost.
- D. All bare/exposed steel shall be coated within 8 hours of surface preparation.
- E. Painting contractor should follow proper painting practices in accordance with SSPC-PA1 and ensure environmental conditions are within range of acceptability as documented in manufacturers Product Data Sheets/Technical Data Sheet (PDS/TDS).
- F. Should NACE Certified Coatings Inspection be part of this contract; field conditions shall be verified at the beginning of shift, and three additional times throughout the shift.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra paint materials from the same production run as the materials applied and in the quantities described below. Package with protective covering for storage and identify with labels describing contents. Deliver extra materials to Owner.
- B. Quantity: Furnish Owner with an additional three percent, but not less than 1 gal (3.8 l) or 1 case, as appropriate, of each material and color applied.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide a 5 year material warranty and 1 year labor warranty.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility: Systems could fail if paints used for individual coats are incompatible. Paint systems match primers and topcoats and take compatibility into consideration.
1. Provide materials for use, within each paint system, that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing.
 2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. VOC Content: Paints and coatings to be applied at Project Site shall comply with applicable VOC limits of the U.S. EPA National Emissions Standards for Architectural Coatings, exclusive of colorants added to tint bases, as calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59 Subpart D (EPA Method 24), as follows:.
1. Nonflat - High Gloss Coatings (default Nonflat): 380 g/L.
- C. VOC Content: Paints and coatings to be applied at Project Site shall comply with applicable VOC limits of the South Coast Air Quality Management District Rule 1113: Architectural Coatings, exclusive of colorants added to tint bases, as calculated in accordance with 40 CFR 59 Subpart D (EPA Method 24), as follows:
1. Flat Coatings: 50 g/L.
 2. Nonflat Coatings: 50 g/L.
 3. Nonflat - High Gloss Coatings (default Nonflat): 50 g/L.
 4. Floor Coatings: 50 g/L.
 5. Industrial Maintenance (IM) Coatings: 100 g/L.
 6. Pre-Treatment Wash Primers: 420 g/L.
 7. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: 100 g/L.
 8. Rust Preventative Coatings: 100 g/L.
 9. Waterproofing Concrete/Masonry Sealers: 100 g/L.
 10. Zinc-Rich IM Primers 100 g/L.
 11. All Shop-Primed Metal to be coated in accordance with applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
- D. Colorants: The use of colorants containing hazardous chemicals, such as ethylene glycol, and shall comply with the applicable VOC limits of Rule 1113, as follows:
1. Colorants for Architectural Coatings, excluding IM Coatings: 50 g/L.
 2. Colorants for Waterborne Industrial Maintenance Coatings: 50 g/L.
- E. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule to match architects sample.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Coating Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
1. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
 2. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying coatings if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying coating materials from Project site, pay for testing, and recoat surfaces coated with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously coated surfaces if, on recoating with complying materials, the two coatings are incompatible.

2.3 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
1. Carboline Company.
 2. PPG Protective and Marine Coatings (PPG). (Basis of Design)
 - a. Address: 400 Bertha Lamme Dr.; Cranberry Township, PA 16066; Toll Free Tel: 888-PPG-IDEA.
 - b. Local Contact: Susan L Giampietro 949 410-2452 (giampietro@ppg.com)
 3. Sherwin Williams Company Protective and Marine Coatings, (SW).
 4. Tnemec Company, Inc.

2.4 ALUMINUM (NOT ANODIZED OR OTHERWISE COATED)

- A. Pigmented Polyurethane System: SSPC-SP 16
1. Primer: Epoxy for metal zinc phosphate pigmented <340 g/L.
 - a. Carboline; Carboguard 893 SG 3.0-6.0 mils (76-152 microns) DFT.
 - b. PPG;
 - 1) PPG Paints. 4020 PF Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Waterborne Acrylic Primer Finish. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 2.2 mils min
 - c. SW; DTM Wash Primer, 0.7-1.3 mils DFT.
 2. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss <250 g/L.
 - a. Carboline; Carbothane 134 VOC 2.0-3.0 mils (50-76 microns) DFT.
 - b. PPG; (Two Coats over primer)

- 1) Exterior Flat Acrylic Paint Finish: PPG Paints. 6-610XI Series Speedhide Exterior House Paint Flat Latex. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 1.3 mils min
 - 2) Exterior Semi-Gloss Acrylic Enamel Finish: PPG Paints. 6-900XI Series Speedhide Exterior House and Trim Semi-Gloss Acrylic Latex Paint. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 1.5 mils min
- c. SW; Acrolon Ultra High Performance Polyurethane, B65-820, 2.0-3.0 mils DFT.

2.5 ARCHITECTURALLY EXPOSED STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Pigmented Polyurethane over Organic Zinc-Rich Primer System:

1. Primer:
 - a. Carboline; Carbozinc 859 VOC, or Cabozinc 859, 3-5 mils, (75-125 microns) DFT.
 - b. PPG; PMC Amercoat 68 HS Zinc Rich Epoxy, 2.0-5.0 mils (50-125 microns) DFT.
 - c. SW; Zinc-Clad III HS, 100, B69A1110-15, 3.0-5.0 mils (75-125 microns) DFT.
 - d. Tnemec; Series 90-97 Tneme-Zinc, 2.5-3.5 mils.

2.6 GALVANIZED STEEL (ZINC COATED METAL)

A. Pigmented Polyurethane System:

1. Primer: Epoxy for galvanized steel.
 - a. Carboline: Rustbond 1.0-2.0 (25-50 microns) DFT.
 - b. PPG;
 - 1) PPG Paints. 4020 PF Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior Waterborne Acrylic Primer Finish. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 2.2 mils min.
2. Topcoat: Polyurethane, two-component, pigmented, gloss (Gloss Level 6)
 - a. Carboline; Carbothane 134MC Urethane Gloss Finish, 2.0-2.5 mils (50-62 microns) DFT
 - b. PPG; Enamel Finish: PPG Paints. 4216 HP Series Pitt-Tech Plus Interior/Exterior high performance waterborne Semi-Gloss DTM Enamel. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 1.5 mils min

2.7 HIGH PERFORMANCE COATING SYSTEMS (ALL STRUCTURE AND METALS)

- A. High Performance System-Provide finish systems over exterior ferrous-metal surfaces and non-ferrous metal, see TDS for proper prep
 - 1. Epoxy with Poly-siloxane Finish, Satin: One finish coat over an epoxy primer (Basis of Design)
 - a. Primer: PPG Paints. AK2V-3 Series Amerlock 2 VOC Fast Dry, High Solids Semi-Gloss Epoxy Coating. Applied Dry Film Thickness: 4.0 mils min
 - b. Finish Coat (Refer to drawings for location):
 - 1) Satin: PPG Paints. PSX 805 Satin Polysiloxane Applied Dry Film Thickness: 4.0-8.0 mils min
 - 2) Gloss: PPG Paints. PSX 700 Gloss Polysiloxane Applied Dry Film Thickness: 4.0-8.0 mils min
 - 2. Interior and Exterior Finish 2 Coating System over Primer:
 - a. Surface Preparation: SSPC-SP6 Commercial Blast Cleaning. Anchor profile shall be angular with a 1.5 to 2.0 mils as per ASTM D 4417, Method C or NACE Standard RP0287.
 - b. Coating System:
 - 1) Primer: Tnemec; Series 90G-1K97 Tneme-Zinc applied at 2.5 to 3.5 dry mils.
 - 2) First Coat: Tnemec; Series 66HS Hi-Build Epoxoline applied at 4.0 to 6.0 dry mils.
 - 3) Second Coat: Tnemec; Series 290 CRU applied at 2.0 to 3.0 dry mils.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
 - 1. Confirm shop applied primer is not a temporary protective primer intended for shipping purposes.

2. Confirm primer is suitable for anticipated service conditions.
 3. Confirm primer's ability for being top coated with specified materials.
- C. Verify environmental conditions are within coating manufacturer's specified range. Environmental conditions shall be monitored at 4 points throughout each shift. Once at beginning, once at end, and two additional times in between. Recording must be taken at area where work is being performed.
- D. Dust levels remaining on surface shall be verified in accordance with ISO 8502-3. A dust level 3 or cleaner shall be deemed as acceptable.
- E. Surface profile shall be verified in accordance with ASTM D 4417. Surface profile ranges must be within ranges listed in manufacturers published data.
- F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Commencement of coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.
1. Verify compatibility with, and suitability of, substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
 2. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
 3. Coating application indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates indicated. Recommendations shall be verified to meet site conditions during the preconstruction conference.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place and not to be coated. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and coating.
1. After completing coating operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of coatings, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
- D. Remove incompatible fillers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply the coat as required to produce coating systems indicated.
- E. Steel Substrates:
1. All oil, grease, dirt, dust and other foreign materials must be removed prior to surface preparation commencement.
 2. Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer, but not less than the following:

- a. Prepare surface per SSPC SP10 minimum. Surface profile shall be 1.0 to 1.5 mils.
- b. Prior to coating, solvent wipe substrate to remove dust and residual contamination.
- c. Touch up bare areas and shop-applied prime coats that have been damaged. Wire brush, solvent clean, and touch up with same primer as the shop coat

F. Non Ferrous Metals

1. Clean nonferrous and galvanized surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions for the type of service, metal substrate, and application required.
 - a. Remove pretreatment from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates:

1. Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas with the same material used for shop priming and comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
2. Acceptable methods of cleaning shall be in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Blast clean according to SSPC/NACE standard specified.
 - a.
 - b.
 - c. SSPC-SP7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."
 - d.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates

1. Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied coatings.
2. Blast clean new galvanized metal substrate to receive field-applied fluoropolymer coating to SSPC-SP7/NACE NO. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning," to surface profile of 1.0 to 2.0 mils. Remove all passivator residue.
3. Clean weathered galvanized metal substrate to receive field-applied fluoropolymer coating to:
 - a. SSPC-SP3/NACE No. 4. "Power Tool Cleaning,"
 - b.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation with a surface solution approved by the coating manufacturer.

1. Aluminum: Solvent clean the surface with PPG Aluma-Prep 33, per SSPC SP-1, to remove any contamination that may be present.

2. Abrade substrate to obtain a surface profile of at least 1 mil to allow for a mechanical bond. Depending on the alloy, and substrate softness, prepare surface using hand sanding. Scotch-Brite pads, or hand tool cleaning per SSPC SP-2.
- J. Material Preparation: Carefully mix and prepare coating materials according to manufacturer written instructions.
1. Maintain containers used in mixing and applying coatings in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Stir materials before applying to produce a mixture of uniform density. Stir as required during application. Do not stir surface film into the material. Remove film and, if necessary, strain coating material before using.
 3. Use only the type of thinners approved by manufacturer and only within recommended limits.
 4. Tinting: Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to simplify identification of each coat when multiple coats of same material are applied. Tint undercoats to match the color of the finish coat, but provide sufficient differences in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply high-performance coatings according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use applicators and techniques suited for coating and substrate indicated.
 2. Do not apply high-performance coatings over dirt, rust, scale, grease, moisture, scuffed surfaces, or conditions detrimental to forming a durable coating film.
 3. Coating surface treatments, and finishes are indicated in the coating system descriptions.
 4. Provide finish coats compatible with primers used
 5. Coat surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, coat surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 6. Coat backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
 7. Do not apply coatings over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
 8. The term "exposed surfaces" includes areas visible when permanent or built-in fixtures, convactor covers, grilles, covers for finned-tube radiation, and similar components are in place. Extend coatings in these areas, as required, to maintain system integrity and provide desired protection
- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of the same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of finish coat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.
- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through final coat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform coating finish, color, and appearance.

- D. Apply coatings to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Produce sharp glass lines and color breaks.
- E. Application: Apply first coat to surfaces that have been cleaned, pretreated, or prepared for coating as soon as practicable after preparation and before subsequent surface deterioration.
 - 1. The number of coats and film thickness required is the same regardless of application method.
 - 2. Minimum Coating Thickness: Apply each material no thinner than manufacturer recommended spread rate. Provide total dry film thickness of system recommended by manufacturer.
 - a. DFT ranges per coat must fall within manufacturer's recommended ranges. Measurements shall be taken in accordance with SSPC-PA2 "method for evaluating DFT."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: The Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedures at any time and as often as the Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied.
 - 1. Engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to the site will be taken, identified, sealed and certified in presence of Contractor.
 - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of paint materials with product requirements.
 - 3. The Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from the site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.
- B. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test coatings for dry film thickness.
 - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore coated surfaces damaged by testing.
 - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied coating does not comply with coating manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with coating manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing coating application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered coatings by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from coating operation. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and recoating, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. Provide "Wet Paint" signs to protect newly painted finishes. After completing painting operations, remove temporary protective wrappings provided by others to protect their work.
- E. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced coated surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 14 16 - PLAQUES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal plaques.
2. Room and space identification.
3. Building identification.
4. Accessible building entry and accessible path.
5. Gender symbols.
6. Exit path identification.
7. Building evacuation map.
8. California Proposition 65 warning.
9. Other miscellaneous identification signs as indicated on Drawings

Retain s

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For plaques / Signage / Room Identification.
1. Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
 2. Show plaque mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
 3. Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each plaque at least half size.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of plaque showing all components and with the required finish(es), in manufacturer's standard size unless otherwise indicated and as follows:
1. Plaques / Signage / Room Identification: Full-size Sample.
 2. Exposed Accessories: Full-size Sample of each accessory type.
 3. Full-size Samples, if approved, will be returned to Contractor for use in the Project.

- D. Product Schedule: For plaques. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of plaques that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
 - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
 - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and California Building Code (CBC).

2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Signs : Signs with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
 - b. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
 - c. ASI Sign Systems.
 - 2. Types: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard method for substrates indicated.

4. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille matching Architect's sample and District Standard; content as scheduled Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.3 METAL PLAQUES

- A. Etched Plaque : Chemically etched or photochemically engraved metal sheet or plate with texture, border, and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ACE Sign Systems, Inc.
 - b. Nelson-Harkins Industries.
 - c. Southwell Company (The).
 2. Plaque Material: Sheet or plate aluminum.
 3. Plaque Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 4. Finishes:
 - a. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, to match the blue of the project.
 5. Mounting: Concealed studs.
 6. Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille . Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B26/B26M, alloy and temper recommended by plaque manufacturer for casting process used and for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: ASTM B209, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- C. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated.
- D. Acrylic Sheet: ASTM D 4802, category as standard with manufacturer for each sign, Type UVF (UV filtering).
- E. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive; die cut to form characters or images as indicated on Drawings and suitable for exterior applications.

- F. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of plaques, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:
1. Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.
 2. For exterior exposure, furnish stainless steel devices unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Exposed Metal-Fastener Components, General:
 - a. Fastener Heads: For nonstructural connections, use oval countersunk screws and bolts with tamper-resistant Allen-head slots unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Plaque Mounting Fasteners:
 - a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of plaque, screwed into back of plaque, or screwed into tapped lugs cast integrally into back of plaque unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Adhesive: As recommended by plaque manufacturer.
1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
 2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard plaques according to requirements indicated.
1. Preassemble plaques in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble plaques only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
 2. Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.

3. Comply with AWS for recommended practices in welding and brazing. Provide welds and brazes behind finished surfaces without distorting or discoloring exposed side. Clean exposed welded and brazed connections of flux, and dress exposed and contact surfaces.
 4. Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
 5. Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match plaque finish.
 6. Castings: Fabricate castings free of warp, cracks, blowholes, pits, scale, sand holes, and other defects that impair appearance or strength. Grind, wire brush, sandblast, and buff castings to remove seams, gate marks, casting flash, and other casting marks before finishing.
- B. Surface-Engraved Graphics: Machine-engrave characters and other graphic devices into indicated plaque surface to produce precisely formed copy, incised to uniform depth.
1. Engraved Metal: Fill engraved graphics with manufacturer's standard baked enamel.
- C. Brackets: Fabricate brackets, fittings, and hardware for bracket-mounted plaques to suit plaque construction and mounting conditions indicated. Modify manufacturer's standard brackets as required.
1. Aluminum Brackets: Factory finish brackets with baked-enamel or powder-coat finish to match plaque-background color unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Stainless Steel Brackets: Factory finish brackets with No. 4 finish unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Directional Finishes: Run grain with long dimension of each piece and perpendicular to long dimension of finished trim or border surface unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Organic, Anodic, and Chemically Produced Finishes: Apply to formed metal after fabrication but before applying contrasting polished finishes on raised features unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.9 STAINLESS STEEL FINISHES

- A. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 1. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
 - 2. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.

2.10

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Verify that plaque-support surfaces are within tolerances to accommodate plaques without gaps or irregularities between backs of plaques and support surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL PLAQUES

- A. General: Install plaques using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Install plaques level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with plaque surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
 - 2. Install plaques so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
 - 3. Before installation, verify that plaque surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
 - 4. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of exterior aluminum in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
- B. Plaques Used for Room Identification and Other Accessible Plaques: Install in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and compliant with authority.

- C. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installer by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- D. Mounting Methods:
1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of plaque. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
 - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place plaque in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support plaque in position until adhesive fully sets.
 - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place plaque in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
 2. Brackets: Remove loose debris from substrate surface and install bracket supports in position, so that plaque is correctly located and aligned.
 3. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of plaque and of suitable quantity to support weight of plaque after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as plaque is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at plaque edges. Place plaque in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support plaque in position until adhesive fully sets.
 4. Shim-Plate Mounting: Provide 1/8-inch- thick, concealed aluminum shim plates with predrilled and countersunk holes, at locations indicated, and where other direct mounting methods are impractical. Attach plate with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate. Attach plaques to plate using method specified above.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed plaques and plaques that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace plaques with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as plaques are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of plaques according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain plaques in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 21 13.13 - METAL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Painted steel toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures entrance screens
urinal screens.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 10 28 00 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data: For recycled content, indicating postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content and cost.
- C. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 3. Show locations of reinforcements for compartment-mounted grab bars and locations of blocking for surface-mounted toilet accessories.
 - 4. Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
 - 5. Show locations of floor drains.
 - 6. Show ceiling grid, ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.

- D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6-inch- square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recycled Content of Steel Products: Postconsumer recycled content plus one-half of preconsumer recycled content not less than 25 percent.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

2.2 PAINTED STEEL TOILET COMPARTMENTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. All American Metal Corp.
 - 2. Bradley Corporation.
 - 3. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
- B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor mounted and Ceiling anchored.
- C. Entrance-Screen Style: Floor and ceiling anchored.
- D. Urinal-Screen Style: wall mounted.

- E. Door, Panel, and Pilaster Construction: Seamless, metal facing sheets pressure laminated to core material; with continuous, interlocking molding strip or lapped-and-formed edge closures; corners secured by welding or clips and exposed welds ground smooth. Provide with no-sightline system. Exposed surfaces shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, telegraphing of core material, or other imperfections.
 - 1. Core Material: Manufacturer's standard sound-deadening honeycomb of resin-impregnated kraft paper in thickness required to provide finished thickness of 1 inch for doors and panels and 1-1/4 inches for pilasters.
 - 2. Grab-Bar Reinforcement: Provide concealed internal reinforcement for grab bars mounted on units of size and material adequate for panel to withstand applied downward load on grab bar of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F446, without deformation of panel.
 - 3. Tapping Reinforcement: Provide concealed reinforcement for tapping (threading) at locations where machine screws are used for attaching items to units.
- F. Facing Sheets and Closures: Electrolytically coated steel sheet with nominal base-metal (uncoated) thicknesses as follows:
 - 1. Pilasters, Braced at Both Ends: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.036 inch.
 - 2. Pilasters, Unbraced at One End: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.048 inch.
 - 3. Panels: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.030 inch.
 - 4. Doors: Manufacturer's standard thickness, but not less than 0.030 inch.
- G. Pilaster Shoes Sleeves (Caps): Stainless steel sheet, not less than 0.031-inch nominal thickness and 3 inches high, finished to match hardware.
- H. Urinal-Screen Post: Manufacturer's standard post design of material matching the thickness and construction of pilasters ; with shoe and sleeve (cap) matching that on the pilaster.
- I. Brackets (Fittings):
 - 1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.
- J. Steel Sheet Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard baked-on finish, including thermosetting, electrostatically applied, and powder coatings. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking.
 - 1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories.

1. Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch- thick, stainless steel continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through-bolts.
 2. Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, surface-mounted, cast stainless steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
 3. Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, combination cast stainless steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.
 4. Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty, rubber-tipped, cast stainless steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
 5. Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast stainless steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- B. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.
- C. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless steel, hot-dip galvanized steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: Commercial steel sheet for exposed applications; mill phosphatized and selected for smoothness.
1. Electrolytically Zinc Coated: ASTM A879/A879M, 01Z.
- B. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.
- C. Stainless Steel Castings: ASTM A743/A743M.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories, and solid blocking within panel where required for attachment of toilet accessories.

- B. Ceiling-Hung Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- C. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- D. Urinal-Screen Posts: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment at tops and bottoms of posts. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at posts to conceal anchorage.
- E. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch- wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch- wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch- wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible and 34" minimum clear width at side opening doors at partitions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- C. Coordinate layout and installation of supports, inserts, and anchors built into other units of work for toilet compartment anchorage.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position indicated with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
 - 1. Maximum Clearances:
 - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
 - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
 - 2. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.

- a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
 - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Ceiling-Hung Units: Secure pilasters to supporting structure and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so bottoms of doors are level with bottoms of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- C. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Secure pilasters to supporting construction and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so doors are level and aligned with panels when doors are in closed position.
- D. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors and doors in entrance screens to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 28 00 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories.
2. Toilet-compartment occupancy-indicator systems.
3. Childcare accessories.
4. Underlavatory guards.
5. Custodial accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 08 83 00 "Mirrors" for frameless mirrors.

1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
3. Include electrical characteristics.

B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
2. Identify accessories using designations indicated.

1.4 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Toilet-Compartment Occupancy-Indicator Systems: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace toilet-compartment occupancy-indicator systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point.

2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Toilet Tissue Dispenser:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-3588
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
- C. Combo Paper Towel Dispenser Trash:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-36903

- c. Bradley Corporation.
- 2. Lockset: Tumbler type.
- D. Waste Receptacle ACC27:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. ULINE, Basis of Design H-3687BL
 - c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - d. Bradley Corporation.
- E. Soap Dispenser:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.,
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, In, Basis of Design B-822
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - d. Sloan Valve Company.
 - 2. Mounting: Deck mounted on vanity.
 - 3. Capacity: 1L.
 - 4. Materials: Brushed Stainless.
- F. Grab Bar:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-6806 Series
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
 - 3. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- G. Sanitary-Napkin and Tampon Vendor:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. AJW Architectural Products.
 - b. American Specialties, Inc.

- c. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-47064
 - 2. Mounting: Surface mounted.
 - 3. Exposed Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
- H. Sanitary-Napkin Disposal Unit:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bradley Corporation.
- I. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-35139Seat-Cover Dispenser:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-221
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
- J. Mirror Unit:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-165 Series Sizes Custom
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
 - 2. Frame: Stainless steel channel.
 - 3. Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2.3 CHILDCARE ACCESSORIES
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain childcare accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Diaper-Changing Station :
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Koala Kare Products; a Division of Bobrick (Basis of Design, KB-310-SSWM).
 - c. SafeStrap Company, Inc. (SSC, Inc.).

2. Description: Vertical unit that opens by folding down from stored position and with child-protection strap.
 - a. Engineered to support minimum of 250-lb static load when opened.
3. Mounting: Semirecessed, with unit projecting not more than 1 inch from wall when closed.
4. Operation: By pneumatic shock-absorbing mechanism.
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin), exterior shell with rounded plastic corners; HDPE interior in manufacturer's standard color.
6. Liner Dispenser: Provide built-in dispenser for disposable sanitary liners.

2.4 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

A. Underlavatory Guard :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Buckaroos, Inc.
 - b. Plumberex Specialty Products, Inc.
 - c. Truebro by IPS Corporation.
2. Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
3. Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

2.5 CUSTODIAL ACCESSORIES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain custodial accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Provide for items listed in each Janitorial room on the project

C. Custodial Utility Shelf ACC32:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following Equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-298
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
2. Description: With exposed edges turned down not less than 1/2 inch and supported by two triangular brackets welded to shelf underside.

3. Material and Finish: Not less than nominal 0.05-inch- thick stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
4. Mounted to align with broom holder

D. Custodial Mop and Broom Holder:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc., Basis of Design B-223
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
2. Description: Unit with hooks, holders,.
3. Length: 36 inches.
4. Hooks: Four.
5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
 - a. Rod: Approximately 1/4-inch- diameter stainless steel.

E. Custodial Paper Towel (Roll) Dispenser :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
2. Description: Lever-actuated mechanism permitting controlled delivery of paper rolls in preset lengths.
3. Mounting: Surface mounted.
4. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin).
5. Lockset: Tumbler type.

F. Custodial Soap Dispenser :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following equal to the basis of design:
 - a. American Specialties, Inc.
 - b. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc. Basis of Design B-2012
 - c. Bradley Corporation.
2. Mounting: Vertically oriented, surface mounted.
3. Capacity: 30 OZInsert value.
4. Materials: Brushed Stainless.
5. Refill Indicator: Window type.

2.6 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.031-inch- minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch- minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit, unless otherwise recommended by manufacturer or specified in this Section, and tamper and theft resistant where exposed, and of stainless or galvanized steel where concealed.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
 - 1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.
- C. Shower Seats: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 44 13 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguisher.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. Nystrom.
 - c. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International. (Basis of Design)
 - 1) ALTA 7008-F-WHITE FINISH-FP-VB
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).
 - 1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
 - 2. Finish: Recoatable white finish
- E. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- F. Door Style: Flush opaque panel, frameless, with no exposed hinges, provide for vertical lettering black.
- G. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide recessed door pull and friction latch.
 - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim,, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- H. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.

2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated below.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Decals.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
 3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 5. Install door locks at factory.
- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.
 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
 3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.
- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at height indicated below:
 - 1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.
- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

3.5 ACCESSIBILITY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets:
 - 1. Fire Extinguisher Cabinets must comply with **CBC Sections 11B-307, 11B-308, 11B-309 and 11B-403.**

END OF SECTION

SECTION 10 44 16 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 10 44 13 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
 - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each indicated.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Babcock-Davis.
 - b. Nystrom, Inc.
 - c. Potter Roemer LLC. (Basis of Design)
 2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
 3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
 4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
 5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Regular Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container : UL-rated Class 2A:10B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with sodium bicarbonate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container. (Coordinate with College for maintainence requirements)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 12 36 61.16 - SOLID SURFACING COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Solid surface material countertops.
2. Solid surface material backsplashes.
3. Solid surface material end splashes.
4. Solid surface material apron fronts.
5. Solid surface cabinet faces and doors
6. Solid surface material sinks.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 12 36 61.16 "Solid Surfacing Countertops" for full installation and fitting
2. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for supports
3. Section 06 10 53 "Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry" for all backing and substructure.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For countertop materials.

- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

1. Chain-of-Custody Certificates: For certified wood products. Include statement of costs.
2. Product Data: For adhesives, indicating VOC content.
3. Laboratory Test Reports: For adhesives, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.
4. Product Data: For composite wood products, indicating that product contains no urea formaldehyde.
5. Laboratory Test Reports: For composite wood products, indicating compliance with requirements for low-emitting materials.

- C. Shop Drawings: For countertops. Show materials, finishes, edge and backsplash profiles, methods of joining, and cutouts for plumbing fixtures.

1. Show locations and details of joints.
2. Show direction of directional pattern, if any.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Countertop material, 6 inches square.
2. Wood trim, 8 inches long.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate countertops similar to that required for this Project, and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and execution.
 1. Build mockup of typical countertop as shown on Drawings.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify dimensions of countertops by field measurements after base cabinets are installed but before countertop fabrication is complete.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate locations of utilities that will penetrate countertops or backsplashes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOLID SURFACE COUNTERTOP MATERIALS

- A. Solid Surface Material: Homogeneous-filled plastic resin complying with ICPA SS-1.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Avonite Surfaces.
 - b. Wilsonart International Holdings, Inc.
 - c. Corian (Basis of Design).

2. Type: Provide Standard type or Veneer type made from material complying with requirements for Standard type, as indicated unless Special Purpose type is indicated.
 3. Integral Sink Bowls: Comply with CSA B45.5/IAPMO Z124.
 4. Colors and Patterns: As indicated by manufacturer's designations, refer to finish schedule Match Architect's samples.
- B. Composite Wood Products: Products shall be made using ultra-low-emitting formaldehyde resins as defined in the California Air Resources Board's "Airborne Toxic Control Measure to Reduce Formaldehyde Emissions from Composite Wood Products" or shall be made with no added formaldehyde.
- C. Plywood: Exterior softwood plywood complying with DOC PS 1, Grade C-C Plugged, touch sanded.

2.2 COUNTERTOP FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate countertops according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions and to the AWI/AWMAC/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards."
1. Grade: Premium.
- B. Configuration:
1. Front: Straight, slightly eased at top.
 2. Backsplash: Straight, slightly eased at corner.
 3. End Splash: Matching backsplash.
- C. Countertops: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material secured to top support with front edge built up with same material.
- D. Vertical faces and cabinet doors: 1/4-inch- thick, solid surface material laminated to 3/4-inch- thick particleboard with exposed edges built up, with solid surface material.
- E. Backsplashes: 1/2-inch- thick, solid surface material.
- F. Fabricate tops with shop-applied edges and backsplashes unless otherwise indicated. Comply with solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions for adhesives, sealers, fabrication, and finishing.
1. Fabricate with loose backsplashes for field assembly.
 2. Install integral sink bowls in countertops in the shop.
- G. Joints: Fabricate countertops without joints.
- H. Joints: Fabricate countertops in sections for joining in field.
1. Joint Locations: Not within 18 inches of a sink or cooktop and not where a countertop section less than 36 inches long would result, unless unavoidable.

2. Splined Joints: Accurately cut kerfs in edges at joints for insertion of metal splines to maintain alignment of surfaces at joints. Make width of cuts slightly more than thickness of splines to provide snug fit. Provide at least three splines in each joint.

I. Cutouts and Holes:

1. Undercounter Plumbing Fixtures: Make cutouts for fixtures using template or pattern furnished by fixture manufacturer. Form cutouts to smooth, even curves.
 - a. Provide vertical edges, slightly eased at juncture of cutout edges with top and bottom surfaces of countertop and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - b. Provide vertical edges, rounded to 3/8-inch radius at juncture of cutout edges with top surface of countertop, slightly eased at bottom, and projecting 3/16 inch into fixture opening.
 - c. Provide 3/4-inch full bullnose edges projecting 3/8 inch into fixture opening.
2. Counter-Mounted Plumbing Fixtures: Prepare countertops in shop for field cutting openings for counter-mounted fixtures. Mark tops for cutouts and drill holes at corners of cutout locations. Make corner holes of largest radius practical.
3. Fittings: Drill countertops in shop for plumbing fittings, undercounter soap dispensers, and similar items.

J. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:

1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: Class B or greater.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: Class B or greater

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Adhesive: Product recommended by solid surface material manufacturer.

1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less.
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

B. Sealant for Countertops: Comply with applicable requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surface material countertops and conditions under which countertops will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of countertops.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install countertops level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 8 feet, 1/4 inch maximum. Do not exceed 1/64-inch difference between planes of adjacent units.
- B. Fasten countertops by screwing through corner blocks of base units into underside of countertop. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- C. Fasten subtops to cabinets by screwing through subtops into cornerblocks of base cabinets. Shim as needed to align subtops in a level plane.
- D. Secure countertops to subtops with adhesive according to solid surface material manufacturer's written instructions. Align adjacent surfaces and, using adhesive in color to match countertop, form seams to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- E. Bond joints with adhesive and draw tight as countertops are set. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
 - 1. Install metal splines in kerfs in countertop edges at joints. Fill kerfs with adhesive before inserting splines and remove excess immediately after adjoining units are drawn into position.
 - 2. Clamp units to temporary bracing, supports, or each other to ensure that countertops are properly aligned and joints are of specified width.
- F. Install backsplashes and end splashes by adhering to wall and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears.
- G. Install aprons to backing and countertops with adhesive. Mask areas of countertops and splashes adjacent to joints to prevent adhesive smears. Fasten by screwing through backing. Predrill holes for screws as recommended by manufacturer.

- H. Complete cutouts not finished in shop. Mask areas of countertops adjacent to cutouts to prevent damage while cutting. Make cutouts to accurately fit items to be installed, and at right angles to finished surfaces unless beveling is required for clearance. Ease edges slightly to prevent snipping.
 - 1. Seal edges of cutouts in particleboard subtops by saturating with varnish.
- I. Apply sealant to gaps at walls; comply with Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 17
SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- B. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- C. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.02 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.03 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.04 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.02 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.03 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.04 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 4. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 18
ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.

3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

PART 1 - SECTION 22 05 19

PART 2 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 3 - GENERAL

3.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Dial-type pressure gages.
 - 2. Test plugs.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 22 Section " Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

3.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

3.03 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of gage, from manufacturer.

3.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 4 - PRODUCTS

4.01 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge.
 - b. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - c. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
 - 3. Case: Liquid-filled type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch (114-mm) nominal diameter.
 - 4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2 (DN 8 or DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
 - 6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
 - 7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi (kPa).
 - 8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
 - 9. Window: Glass.

10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

4.02 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Terrice, H. O. Co.
 2. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 (DN 8) or NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F (3450 kPa at 93 deg C).
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

PART 5 - EXECUTION

5.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- B. Install remote-mounted pressure gages on panel.
- C. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- D. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- E. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
 1. Building water service entrance into building.
 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

5.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

5.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

5.04 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
 1. Liquid-filled, direct -mounted, metal case.
 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
 1. Liquid-filled Solid-front, pressure-relief, direct-mounted, metal case.
 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
 - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
 - 2. Test plug with chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic self-sealing rubber inserts.

5.05 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa).
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 160 psi (0 to 1100 kPa).

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 23
GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Bronze ball valves.
 - 2. Bronze swing check valves.
 - 3. Lubricated plug valves.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
 - 2. Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
 - 3. Section 22 13 19 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.03 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. RS: Rising stem.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.

2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 3. Set angle, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 5. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller except plug valves.
 2. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch (50-mm) stem extensions and the following features:
1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
1. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.02 BRONZE BALL VALVES

- A. Three-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Stainless-Steel Trim:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - b. Hammond Valve.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
 - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).

- d. Body Design: Three piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Stainless steel.
- i. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
- j. Port: Full.

2.03 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

- A. Class 150, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - b. NIBCO INC.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa).
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.02 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

3.03 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.04 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, valves.
 - 2. Throttling Service: Ball valves.
 - 3. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with disc.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
 - 1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 - 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.05 LOW-PRESSURE, COMPRESSED-AIR VALVE SCHEDULE (150 PSIG (1035 kPa) OR LESS)

- A. Pipe NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller:
 - 1. Bronze Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 - 2. Ball Valves: Three piece, full port, bronze with stainless-steel trim.
 - 3. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 29
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Fastener systems.
 - 5. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for vibration isolation devices.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
 - 2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
 - 3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 2. Metal framing systems.
 - 3. Equipment supports.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 - 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 - 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
 - 4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
 - 5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.02 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.03 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - c. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 - 3. Standard: MFMA-4.
 - 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with intumed lips.
 - 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 - 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 - 7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized.
 - 8. Paint Coating: Vinyl.
 - 9. Plastic Coating: PVC.

2.04 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.05 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- D. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- E. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.06 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.07 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.08 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.

1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Fastener System Installation:
 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Pipe Stand Installation:
 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- F. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.02 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.03 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.04 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.05 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- G. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- H. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 3. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
 4. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 5. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).

6. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
7. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
8. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
9. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
10. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
11. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
12. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
13. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
14. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
15. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
16. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
17. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
18. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- I. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- J. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.

4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- K. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- L. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- M. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

- N. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- O. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- P. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 48

VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
 - 2. Restraint channel bracings.
 - 3. Restraint cables.
 - 4. Seismic-restraint accessories.
 - 5. Mechanical anchor bolts.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for devices for HVAC equipment and systems.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning & Development (for the State of California).

1.03 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 - 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment.

1.04 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for plumbing piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Welding certificates.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. The method of showing bracing and attachments to the structure for the identified distribution system are as detailed on the approved drawings with project specific notes and details. When bracing and attachments are based on a pre-approved installation guide (E.G. SMACNA or OSHPD OPM), copies of the installation guide or manual shall be available on the job site prior to the start of and during the hanging of the distribution systems. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:
 - 1. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: II.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 2.5.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
 - 2. Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

2.02 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.03 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 APPLICATIONS

- A. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.
- B. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.03 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Piping Restraints:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
 - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- D. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- F. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

- G. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- H. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- I. Drilled-in Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
 - 5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.04 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.05 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 - 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 - 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 - 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.

6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.06 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 05 53
IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipe labels.
 - 2. Stencils.
 - 3. Valve tags.
 - 4. Warning tags.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.03 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.02 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.03 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.02 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.

5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.
- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
1. Domestic Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Green.
 - b. Letter Color: White.
 2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Green.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

3.03 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.
 - c. Cold Water: Green.
 - d. Hot Water: Green.
 2. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: White.
 - b. Hot Water: White.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 07 19
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following plumbing piping services:
 - 1. Supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
 - 2. Domestic hot-water piping.
 - 3. Domestic recirculating hot-water piping.

1.02 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied, if any).

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers,
- B. with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.05 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.06 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:

1. Type I, 850 Deg F (454 Deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ-SSL]. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.02 ADHESIVES

A. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

1. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
2. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.03 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.

2.04 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS

A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. McGuire Manufacturing.
 - b. Plumberex.
 - c. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
 - d. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot-water supply and trap and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
- D. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- E. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.03 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- B. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- C. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- D. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- E. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- F. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- G. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
 - 1. Vibration-control devices.
 - 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.

3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Cleanouts.

3.04 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
- C. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
 1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 3. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 4. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.05 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.
3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "P

2. Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.07 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 2. Underground piping.
 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.08 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Domestic Cold, Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:
 1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) and Smaller: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be the following:
 - a. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1.5 inch thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 16
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.
 - 2. Encasement for piping.

1.02 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.03 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Water Service: Do not interrupt water service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary water service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of water service.
 - 2. Do not interrupt water service without Construction Manager's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61. Plastic piping components shall be marked with "NSF-pw."

2.02 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) and ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Copper Unions:
 - 1. MSS SP-123.
 - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
 - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
 - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- D. Soft Copper Tube: [ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A)] [and] [ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B)] water tube, annealed temper.

2.03 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- B. Form: Sheet.
- C. Color: Natural.

2.04 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
- C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
 - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).

2.05 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
 - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - c. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum at 180 deg F.
 - 4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Nipples:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
 - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
 - c. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Company.
 - 2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
 - 3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
 - 4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig at 225 deg F.

5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install underground copper tube in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A21.5.
- D. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- E. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- F. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements for pressure-reducing valves in Section 22 11 19 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- G. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- H. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- I. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- J. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- K. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- L. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

- R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Section 22 05 19 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints for Copper Tubing: Comply with CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- F. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.04 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
 - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
 - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

3.05 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.

3.06 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 22 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- E. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

3.07 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code.
 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.08 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Section 22 05 53 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.09 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 1. Piping Inspections:
 - a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Piping Tests:
- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
- 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 - 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 - 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 - 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 - 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 - 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.

7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
 - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
 2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller, shall be the following:

1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings and brazed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be the following:
1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 2. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 11 19
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:
 - 1. Backflow preventers.
 - 2. Strainers.
 - 3. Wall hydrants.
 - 4. Water hammer arresters.
 - 5. Trap-seal primer valves.
 - 6. Water Meters
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages For Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages in domestic water piping.

1.02 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.03 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components.
 - 2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

- d. MIFAB, Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

2.02 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Body: Bronze for and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for and larger.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Configuration: Designed for horizontal, straight through flow.
7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: 3/4".
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least flow.

2.03 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs HB-1

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc,

- c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation
- 2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
- 3. Operation: Loose Key.
- 4. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 5. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
- 6. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
- 7. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker or nonremovable hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7
- 8. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
- 9. Operating Key(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

2.04 DRAIN VALVES

- A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:
 - 1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
 - 2. Pressure Rating: minimum CWP.
 - 3. Body: Copper alloy.
 - 4. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
 - 5. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
 - 6. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
 - 7. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
 - 8. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

2.05 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

- A. Water Hammer Arresters WH-A:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - b. PPP Inc.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
 - 3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
 - 4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.06 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

- A. Supply-Type (Single), Trap-Seal Primer Valves TP-1:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.

- b. PPP Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
- 3. Pressure Rating: minimum.
- 4. Body: Bronze.
- 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: threaded, union, or solder joint.
- 6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: threaded or solder joint.
- 7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.
- B. Supply-Type (Multiple), Trap-Seal Primer Valves TP-2:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. PPP Inc.
 - c. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.

2.07 WATER METERS

- A. Turbine-Type Water Meters:
 - 1. Flomec
 - 2. Neptune
 - 3. Or approved equal.
 - 4. Standard: AWWA C701.
 - 5. Pressure Rating: **150 psig (1035 kPa)** working pressure.
 - 6. Body Design: Turbine; totalization meter.
 - 7. Registration: In gallons (liters) or cubic feet (cubic meters) as required by utility company.
 - a. Remote Registration System: Encoder type complying with AWWA C707; modified with signal-transmitting assembly, low-voltage connecting wiring, and remote register assembly as required by utility company.
 - 1) System to be capable of transmitting data using AMR/AMI technology.
 - 8. Case: Bronze.
 - 9. End Connections: Threaded or flanged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.

2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- D. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
1. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 2. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 3. Calibrated balancing valves.
 4. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
1. Test each reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.05 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 13 16
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
 - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.
- B. Seismic Performance: Soil, waste, and vent piping and support and installation shall be capable of withstanding the effects of seismic events determined according to ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures."

1.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Design Calculations: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer for selecting seismic restraints.
- C. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.02 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.03 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 - 1. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, 4 stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) Husky.
 - 2) Clamp-All Corp.
 - 3) Mission Rubber Co.

2.04 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.
- B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, condensate drain piping shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, drawn temper.

3.02 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Basic Materials and Methods."
- B. Install seismic restraints on piping.
- C. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- D. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- E. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn,

double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

- F. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- G. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for all piping.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- H. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- I. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.03 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods."
- B. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- C. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

3.04 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- G. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
 - 2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 48 inches (1200 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical [ABS] [and] [PVC] piping every 48 inches (1200 mm).
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.05 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
 - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 - 4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.06 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.07 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.
- D. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

3.08 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
 - 1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints (for Kitchen Grease Waste system).

- E. Aboveground, condensate drain piping shall be any of the following:
1. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B), water tube, drawn temper.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 13 19
SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following plumbing specialties:
 - 1. Cleanouts.
 - 2. Floor drains.

1.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide components and installation capable of producing piping systems with following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Domestic Water Piping: 125 psig.
 - 2. Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities and shipping, installed, and operating weights. Indicate materials, finishes, dimensions, required clearances, and methods of assembly of components; and piping and wiring connections for the following:
 - 1. Thermostatic water mixing valves and water tempering valves.
 - 2. Water hammer arresters, air vents, and trap seal primer valves and systems.
 - 3. Drain valves, hose bibbs, hydrants, and hose stations.
 - 4. Sleeve penetration systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field test reports.
- D. Maintenance Data: For plumbing specialties to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Water filters.
 - 2. Thermostatic water mixing valves and water tempering valves.
 - 3. Trap seal primer valves and systems.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of plumbing specialties and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Plumbing specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," for piping materials and installation.
- E. NSF Compliance:

1. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic domestic water piping components. Include marking "NSF-pw" on plastic potable-water piping and "NSF-dwv" on plastic drain, waste, and vent piping.
2. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects, Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water plumbing specialties.

1.05 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Water Filter Cartridges: Equal to 200 percent of amount installed for each type and size indicated.
 2. Operating Key Handles: Equal to 100 percent of amount installed for each key-operated hose bibb and hydrant installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.02 CLEANOUTS

- A. Metal Floor Cleanouts FCO:
 1. ASME A112.36.2M, Cast-Iron Cleanouts:
 2. Products:
 - a. Josam Co.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation
 3. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
 4. Size: Same as connected branch.
 5. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
 6. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
 7. Clamping Device: Required.
 8. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
 9. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
 10. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
 11. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
 12. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
 13. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
 14. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.
 15. Standard: ASME A112.3.1.

16. Size: Same as connected branch.
17. Housing: Stainless steel.
18. Closure: Stainless steel with seal.
19. Riser: Stainless-steel drainage pipe fitting to cleanout.

B. Cleanouts, WCO: Comply with ASME A112.36.2M or ASME A112.3.1.

1. Application: Wall cleanout.
2. Products:
 - a. Josam Co.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - c. Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation
3. Body or Ferrule Material: Cast iron.
4. Clamping Device: Required.
5. Outlet Connection: Threaded.
6. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
7. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
8. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Polished bronze.
9. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.

2.03 FLOOR DRAINS

A. Floor Drains, FD-1: Comply with ASME A112.21.1M.

1. Application: Shower drain.
2. Products:
 - a. Josam Co.; Model 30000-Z-A.
 - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Fig. 2005-A.
 - c. Zurn Industries, Inc., Specification Drainage Operation; Model Z-415.
3. Body Material: Gray iron.
4. Seepage Flange: Required.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Exposed Surfaces and Interior Lining: Not required.
8. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
9. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
10. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Chrome.
11. Top Shape: Round.
12. Dimensions of Top or Strainer: 5-inches diameter.
13. Top Loading Classification: Light Duty.
14. Trap Material: Cast iron.
15. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap with trap primer connection.

16. Trap Features: Not required.
17. Provide min. 3-inch waste connection.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- C. Install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor, for floor cleanouts for piping below floors.
- D. Install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall, for cleanouts located in concealed piping.
- E. Install flashing flange and clamping device with each stack and cleanout passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- F. Install vent flashing sleeves on stacks passing through roof. Secure over stack flashing according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.
 2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
 - a. Radius, 30 Inches or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch total depression.
 - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches: Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
 - c. Radius, 60 Inches or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch total depression.
 3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
 4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Fasten wall-hanging plumbing specialties securely to supports attached to building substrate if supports are specified and to building wall construction if no support is indicated.
- I. Fasten recessed-type plumbing specialties to reinforcement built into walls.
- J. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting and recessed-type plumbing specialties.

- K. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.
- L. Install escutcheons at wall, floor, and ceiling penetrations in exposed finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding pipe fittings.

3.02 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect plumbing specialties to piping specified in other Division 22 Sections.
- D. Ground equipment.
- E. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- F. Connect plumbing specialties and devices that require power according to Division 26 Sections.

3.03 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each backflow preventer, thermostatic water mixing valve, and trap seal primer system.
 - 1. Text: Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit.
 - 2. Refer to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for nameplates and signs.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled trap seal primer systems and their installation, including piping and electrical connections. Report results in writing.
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

3.06 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain trap seal primer systems. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 22 13 23
SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Grease interceptors.
 2. Precast-concrete manhole risers.
 3. Sampling ports.

1.02 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
 2. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

1.03 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sanitary waste interceptors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Sewer Services: Do not interrupt services to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sewer services according to requirements indicated:
1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of sewer services without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

- A. Precast-Concrete Grease Interceptors: Comply with ASTM C913.
1. Include rubber-gasketed joints, vent connections, manholes, compartments or baffles, and piping or openings to retain grease and to permit wastewater flow.
 2. Structural Design Loads:
 - a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-16.
 3. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C923 (ASTM C923M), cast or fitted into interceptor walls, for each pipe connection.
 4. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
 5. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum-width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
 - a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Gray Iron: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
- c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."
- 6. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Length by Width by Depth: 70 inches by 128-1/4 inches by 75 inches.
 - b. Number of Compartments: Two.
 - c. Retention Capacity: 1500 gallon.
 - d. Inlet and Outlet Pipe Size: 4 NPS.
 - e. End Connections: Hub.
 - f. Cleanout: Integral or field installed on outlet.
 - g. Vent Pipe Size: 4 NPS.
 - h. Mounting: Below grade.

2.02 PRECAST-CONCRETE MANHOLE RISERS

- A. Precast Concrete Manhole Risers: ASTM C478 (ASTM C478M), with rubber-gasket joints.
 - 1. Structural Design Loads:
 - a. Light-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-8.
 - b. Medium-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-12.
 - c. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-16.
 - d. Walkway Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-03.
 - 2. Length: From top of underground concrete structure to grade.
 - 3. Riser Sections: 3-inch (75-mm) minimum thickness and 24-inch diameter.
 - 4. Top Section: Eccentric cone unless otherwise indicated. Include top of cone to match grade ring size.
 - 5. Gaskets: ASTM C443 (ASTM C443M), rubber.
- B. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, diameter matching manhole frame and cover, and height as required to adjust the manhole frame and cover to indicated elevation and slope.
- C. Manhole Frames and Covers: Ferrous; 24-inch (610-mm) ID by 7- to 9-inch (175- to 225-mm) riser with 4-inch- (100-mm-) minimum-width flange and 26-inch- (660-mm-) diameter cover.
 - 1. Ductile Iron: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Gray Iron: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to the following:
 - a. Grease Interceptors in Sanitary Sewerage System: "GREASE INTERCEPTOR."

2.03 SAMPLING PORTS

- A. Sampling Ports - Precast Concrete SX-1:
 - 1. Jensen Precast
 - 2. Or Approved Equal

3. Description: Factory-fabricated sampling port.
4. Body Material: Precast concrete or Class I/II concrete with design strength of 4500 psi (31,026 kPa) at 28 days.
5. Location: Below grade.
6. Body Interior Diameter: 24-inch (610-mm) diameter.
7. Structural Design Loads:
 - a. Heavy-Traffic Load: Comply with ASTM C890, A-16.
8. Resilient Pipe Connectors: ASTM C923 (ASTM C923M), cast or fitted into walls, for each pipe connection.
9. Grade Rings: Reinforced-concrete rings, 6- to 9-inch (150- to 225-mm) total thickness, to match diameter of manhole frame and cover.
10. Manhole Frames and Covers:
 - a. Ductile Iron: ASTM A536, Grade 60-40-18, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Gray Iron: ASTM A48/A48M, Class 35, unless otherwise indicated.
 - c. Include indented top design with lettering cast into cover, using wording equivalent to "SAMPLING WELL/PORT".

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install precast concrete interceptors according to ASTM C891.
- B. Set interceptors level and plumb.
- C. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
- D. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements.
 1. Set tops 3 inches (75 mm) above finish surface elsewhere unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
- F. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
 1. Above-Floor Installation: Set unit with bottom resting on floor unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
 3. Recessed Floor Installation: Set unit in receiver housing having bottom or cradle supports, with receiver housing cover flush with finished floor.
 4. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.

3.03 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

3.04 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identification materials and installation are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 1. Arrange for installation of green warning tapes directly over piping and at outside edges of underground interceptors.
 - 2. Use warning tapes or detectable warning tape over ferrous piping.
 - 3. Use detectable warning tape over nonferrous piping and over edges of underground structures.
- B. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Grease interceptors.

3.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sanitary waste interceptors from damage during construction period.
- B. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by sanitary waste interceptor installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 223300
ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Equipment room drawing or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which the items described in this Section are shown and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
 - b. Faulty operation of controls.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.
 - 2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.
 - a. Electric, Tankless, Domestic-Water Heaters: One year(s).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Seismic Performance: Commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.
- C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- D. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.
- E. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. AO Smith
2. Rheem
3. Or Approved Equal
4. Standard: UL 1453.
5. Storage-Tank Construction: Non-ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.
 - a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.
 - 1) NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2) NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.
6. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:
 - a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
 - b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
 - c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
 - d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
 - e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
 - f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 - g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 - h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.
7. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

B. Capacity and Characteristics:

1. Capacity: 30 gal..
2. Recovery: 23 gph at 80 deg F temperature rise.
3. Temperature Setting: 140 deg F (60 deg C).
4. Power Demand: 4.5 kilowatts.
5. Heating Elements:
 - a. Number of Elements: Two.
 - b. Kilowatts Each Element: 4.5 kilowatts.

- c. Number of Stages: One.
- 6. Electrical Characteristics:
 - a. Volts: 208.
 - b. Phases: Three.
 - c. Hertz: 60.

2.3 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement in accordance with ASHRAE/IES 90.1.
- B. Domestic-Water Compression Tanks:
 - 1. Description: Steel pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
 - 2. Construction:
 - a. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
 - b. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 - c. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.
 - 3. Capacity and Characteristics:
 - a. Working-Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
 - b. Capacity Acceptable: 4 gal. (15.1 L) minimum.
 - c. Air Precharge Pressure: 80.
- C. Combination Temperature-and-Pressure Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped. Include relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select relief valves with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, in accordance with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, in accordance with layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
 - 1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523 "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- B. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- C. Install dielectric fittings in all locations where piping of dissimilar metals is to be joined. The wetted surface of the dielectric fitting contacted by potable water to contain less than 0.25 percent of lead by weight.
- D. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

3.2 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency:
 - 1. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
 - 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

E. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain tankless, electric, domestic-water heaters. Training to be a minimum of one hour(s).

END OF SECTION 223300

SECTION 224213.13
COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Water closets.
 - 2. Flushometer valves.
 - 3. Toilet seats.
 - 4. Supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for water closets.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 3. Substitution of plumbing fixtures shall be reviewed and approved by the District.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves and electronic sensors to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Water Closets WC-1: Wall mounted, top spud.
1. American Standard
 2. Kohler
 3. Or Approved Equal
 4. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. (4.8 L) per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); top.
 5. Flushometer Valve: WC-1
 6. Toilet Seat: WC-1
 7. Support: WC-1
- B. Water Closets WC-2: Wall mounted, top spud. Accessible.
1. American Standard
 2. Kohler
 3. Or Approved Equal
 4. Bowl:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Type: Siphon jet.
 - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
 - e. Height: Standard.
 - f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
 - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. (4.8 L) per flush.
 - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); top.
 5. Flushometer Valve: WC-2
 6. Toilet Seat: WC-2
 7. Support: WC-2
 8. Water-Closet Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.

2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Battery, Solenoid-Actuator, Piston Flushometer Valves WC-1, WC-2.
1. Sloan Royal 111 SFSM-1.28 TMO

2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
8. Style: Exposed.
9. Actuator: Solenoid complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
10. Trip Mechanism: Battery electronic sensor complying with UL 1951, and listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
11. Consumption: 1.28 gal. (4.8 L) per flush.
12. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1 (DN 25).
13. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).

2.3 TOILET SEATS

A. Toilet Seats WC-1, WC-2

1. Olsonite.
2. Church.
3. Bemis.
4. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
5. Material: Plastic.
6. Type: Commercial (Heavy duty).
7. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
8. Hinge: Self-sustaining, check.
9. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
10. Seat Cover: Not required.
11. Color: White.

2.4 SUPPORTS

A. Water Closet Carrier: WC-1, WC-2.

1. Jr Smith 0210, Jr Smith 0220
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.
3. Description: Waste-fitting assembly, as required to match drainage piping material and arrangement with faceplates, couplings gaskets, and feet; bolts and hardware matching fixture.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before water-closet installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where water closets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Water-Closet Installation:
 - 1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
 - 2. Install accessible, wall-mounted water closets at mounting height for handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- B. Support Installation:
 - 1. Install wall-mounted, back-outlet water-closet supports with waste-fitting assembly and waste-fitting seals; and affix to building substrate.
- C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:
 - 1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
 - 2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
 - 3. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- D. Install toilet seats on water closets.
- E. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:
 - 1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
 - 2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
 - 3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Joint Sealing:
 - 1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
 - 2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
 - 3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Accessible plumbing fixtures shall comply with all the requirements in CBC Division 6.

- H. Clearance around accessible water closets and in toilet compartments shall be 60 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall per CBC Section 11B-604.3.1.
- I. Heights and location of all accessible fixtures shall be mounted according to CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612.
- J. Accessible fixture controls shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-602.3 for drinking fountains, 11B-604.6 for water closets, 11B-604.9.5 for children's water closets, 11B-605.4 for urinals, 11B-606.4 for lavatories and sinks, 11B-607.5 for bathtubs, 11B-608.5 for showers, and 11B-611.3 for washing machines and clothes dryers.
- K. Accessible lavatories and sinks shall be mounted with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34" maximum above the finish floor or ground. Depth of lavatories or sinks shall not interfere with knee and toe clearance provided in accordance with CBC Section 11B-306 when a forward approach is required. CBC Sections 11B-606.3 and 11B-606.7.
- L. Water supply and drain pipes under accessible lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under accessible lavatories and sinks. CBC Section 11B-606.5.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.

- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.13

SECTION 224213.16
COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Urinals.
 - 2. Flushometer valves.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

A. Urinals UR-1 Wall hung, back outlet, blowout.

1. American Standard
2. Kohler
3. Or Approved Equal
4. Fixture:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
 - d. Water Consumption: Water saving.
 - e. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32); top.
 - f. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2 (DN 50); back.
 - g. Color: White.
5. Flushometer Valve: UR-1
6. Waste Fitting:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
 - b. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).
1. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
2. Copy "Urinals" Paragraph below and re-edit for each type of wall-hung, back-outlet, siphon-jet urinal required.

B. Urinals UR-2 Wall hung, back outlet, blowout.

1. American Standard
2. Kohler
3. Or Approved Equal
4. Fixture:
 - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
 - b. Material: Vitreous china.
 - c. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
 - d. Water Consumption: Water saving.
 - e. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32); top.
 - f. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2 (DN 50); back.
 - g. Color: White.
5. Flushometer Valve: UR-2.
6. Waste Fitting:

- a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
 - b. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).
7. Support: ASME A112.6.1M, Type I, urinal carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture. Include rectangular, steel uprights.
 8. Copy "Urinals" Paragraph below and re-edit for each type of wall-hung, back-outlet, siphon-jet urinal required.
 9. Urinal Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.

2.2 FLUSH VALVES

A. Battery Actuator, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves UR-1, UR-2:

1. Sloan
 2. Zurn
 3. Or Approved Equal
4. Standard: ASSE 1037.
 5. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
 6. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
 7. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
 8. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
 9. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
 10. Style: Exposed.
 11. Actuator: Battery Solenoid complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
 12. Trip Mechanism: Battery electronic sensor complying with UL 1951; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency; and marked for intended location and application.
 13. Consumption: 0.125 gal. per flush.
 14. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
 15. Minimum Outlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
5. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.
4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

F. Accessible plumbing fixtures shall comply with all the requirements in CBC Division 6.

G. Clearance around accessible water closets and in toilet compartments shall be 60 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall per CBC Section 11B-604.3.1.

H. Heights and location of all accessible fixtures shall be mounted according to CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612.

- I. Accessible fixture controls shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-602.3 for drinking fountains, 11B-604.6 for water closets, 11B-604.9.5 for children's water closets, 11B-605.4 for urinals, 11B-606.4 for lavatories and sinks, 11B-607.5 for bathtubs, 11B-608.5 for showers, and 11B-611.3 for washing machines and clothes dryers.
- J. Accessible lavatories and sinks shall be mounted with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34" maximum above the finish floor or ground. Depth of lavatories or sinks shall not interfere with knee and toe clearance provided in accordance with CBC Section 11B-306 when a forward approach is required. CBC Sections 11B-606.3 and 11B-606.7.
- K. Water supply and drain pipes under accessible lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under accessible lavatories and sinks. CBC Section 11B-606.5.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224213.16

SECTION 224216.13
COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Lavatories.
 - 2. Faucets.
 - 3. Supply fittings.
 - 4. Waste fittings.
 - 5. Supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for lavatories.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 - 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VITREOUS-CHINA, COUNTER-MOUNTED LAVATORIES

- A. Lavatory L-1: Oval, self-rimming, vitreous china, counter mounted.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. American Standard
 - b. Kohler
 - c. Or Approved Equal
 - 2. Fixture:
 - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.
 - b. Type: Self-rimming for above-counter mounting.
 - c. Nominal Size: Oval, 20 by 17 inches (508 by 432 mm).
 - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: One hole.
 - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
 - f. Color: White.
 - g. Mounting Material: Sealant.
 - 3. Faucet: L-1.
- B. Lavatory L-2: Same as L-1.

2.2 SOLID-BRASS, AUTOMATICALLY OPERATED LAVATORY FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Lavatory Faucets L-1 and L-2: Automatic-type, battery, electronic-sensor-operated, mixing, solid-brass valve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Chicago Faucets; Geberit Company.
 - b. Zurn
 - c. Or Approved Equal
2. Standards: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1 and UL 1951.
 3. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 4. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and fixture receptor.
 5. Body Type: Single hole.
 6. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
 7. Finish: Polished chrome plate.
 8. Maximum Flow Rate: 0.5 gpm (1.5 L/min.).
 9. Mounting Type: Deck, concealed.
 10. Spout: Rigid type.
 11. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
 12. Drain: Grid.

2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
 1. NPS 1/2 (DN 15).
 2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4 (DN 40 by DN 32).

2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated, brass or steel wall flange.
3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

2.5 SUPPORTS

- A. Type II Lavatory Carrier:
 1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories, counters, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- G. Accessible plumbing fixtures shall comply with all the requirements in CBC Division 6.
- H. Clearance around accessible water closets and in toilet compartments shall be 60 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall per CBC Section 11B-604.3.1.

- I. Heights and location of all accessible fixtures shall be mounted according to CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612.
- J. Accessible fixture controls shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-602.3 for drinking fountains, 11B-604.6 for water closets, 11B-604.9.5 for children's water closets, 11B-605.4 for urinals, 11B-606.4 for lavatories and sinks, 11B-607.5 for bathtubs, 11B-608.5 for showers, and 11B-611.3 for washing machines and clothes dryers.
- K. Accessible lavatories and sinks shall be mounted with the front of the higher of the rim or counter surface 34" maximum above the finish floor or ground. Depth of lavatories or sinks shall not interfere with knee and toe clearance provided in accordance with CBC Section 11B-306 when a forward approach is required. CBC Sections 11B-606.3 and 11B-606.7.
- L. Water supply and drain pipes under accessible lavatories and sinks shall be insulated or otherwise configured to protect against contact. There shall be no sharp or abrasive surfaces under accessible lavatories and sinks. CBC Section 11B-606.5.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224216.13

SECTION 224716

PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes pressure water coolers and related components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of pressure water cooler.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For pressure water coolers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filter Cartridges: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each type and size indicated, but no fewer than 1 of each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRESSURE WATER COOLERS

- A. Pressure Water Coolers EWC-1: Wall mounted, wheelchair accessible.
 - 1. Haws

2. Elkay
3. Or Approved Equal.
4. Standards:
 - a. Comply with NSF 61 Annex G.
 - b. Comply with ASHRAE 34, "Designation and Safety Classification of Refrigerants," for water coolers. Provide HFC 134a (tetrafluoroethane) refrigerant unless otherwise indicated.
5. Cabinet: Bi-level with two attached cabinets, all stainless steel.
6. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
7. Control: Push bar
8. Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) tailpiece.
9. Supply: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) with shutoff valve.
10. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) brass P-trap.
11. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for cyst and lead reduction to below EPA standards, with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
12. Cooling System: Electric, with hermetically sealed compressor, cooling coil, air-cooled condensing unit, corrosion-resistant tubing, refrigerant, corrosion-resistant-metal storage tank, and adjustable thermostat.
 - a. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
13. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - a. Cooled Water: 8 gph (0.0084 L/s).
 - b. Ambient-Air Temperature: 90 deg F (32 deg C).
 - c. Inlet-Water Temperature: 80 deg F (27 deg C).
 - d. Cooled-Water Temperature: 50 deg F (10 deg C).
 - e. Electrical Characteristics:
 - 1) Motor Horsepower: 1/5.
 - 2) Volts: 120-V ac.
 - 3) Phase: Single.
 - 4) Hertz: 60.
14. Support: Type II Water Cooler Carrier.
15. Water Cooler Mounting Height: Handicapped/elderly according to ICC A117.1.
16. Provide integral bottle filler.

2.2 SUPPORTS

A. Type II Water Cooler Carrier:

1. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Set freestanding pressure water coolers on floor.
- C. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.
- D. Install mounting frames, affixed to building construction, and attach recessed, pressure water coolers to mounting frames.
- E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball or gate valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.
- G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- I. Accessible plumbing fixtures shall comply with all the requirements in CBC Division 6.
- J. Clearance around accessible water closets and in toilet compartments shall be 60 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the side wall and 56 inches minimum measured perpendicular from the rear wall per CBC Section 11B-604.3.1.
- K. Heights and location of all accessible fixtures shall be mounted according to CBC Sections 11B-602 through 11B-612.
- L. Accessible fixture controls shall comply with CBC Sections 11B-602.3 for drinking fountains, 11B-604.6 for water closets, 11B-604.9.5 for childrens water closets, 11B-605.4 for urinals,

11B-606.4 for lavatories and sinks, 11B-607.5 for bathtubs, 11B-608.5 for showers, and 11B-611.3 for washing machines and clothesdryers.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Install ball or gate shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Install valve upstream from filter for water cooler. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
- D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.
- B. Adjust pressure water-cooler temperature settings.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. After installing fixture, inspect unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.
- D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 224716

SECTION 23 05 17 – SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- E. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- F. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 3. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.

2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system .
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 (DN 150): PVC-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 05 17

SECTION 23 05 29 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 3. Metal framing systems.
 - 4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 5. Fastener systems.
 - 6. Pipe stands.
 - 7. Equipment supports.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
 - 2. Section 230516 "Expansion Fittings and Loops for HVAC Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.
 - 3. Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
 - 4. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
3. Design seismic-restraint hangers and supports for piping and equipment and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
 2. Metal framing systems.
 3. Pipe stands.
 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
 1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
 2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.

3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.

B. Stainless-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
3. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.

C. Copper Pipe Hangers:

1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel or stainless steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - d. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel or stainless steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Hot-dipped galvanized or Mill galvanized.
8. Paint Coating: Vinyl alkyd, Epoxy, Polyester, Acrylic or Alkyd.
9. Plastic Coating: Polyurethane, Epoxy or Polyester.

B. Non-MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Anvil International; a subsidiary of Mueller Water Products Inc.
 - b. Haydon Corporation; H-Strut Division.
 - c. NIBCO INC.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of stainless steel.
7. Coating: Zinc or Paint.

2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. Clement Support Services.
 3. ERICO International Corporation.
 4. PHS Industries, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig (688-kPa) or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig (862-kPa) minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.
- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig (688-kPa), minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches (50 mm) beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated or stainless-steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand:
 - 1. Description: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 2. Bases: One or more; plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- H. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

- I. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- J. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- K. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- L. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- M. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- N. Insulated Piping:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
 - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
 - 5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.
- G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
 - 10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).

11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/8 to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
 12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.

- M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- N. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- O. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.

4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- P. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- R. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

SECTION 23 05 48 – VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Elastomeric isolation pads.
2. Elastomeric isolation mounts.
3. Restrained elastomeric isolation mounts.
4. Housed-spring isolators.
5. Restrained-spring isolators.
6. Housed-restrained-spring isolators.
7. Pipe-riser resilient supports.
8. Resilient pipe guides.
9. Elastomeric hangers.
10. Spring hangers.
11. Snubbers.
12. Restraint channel bracings.
13. Restraint cables.
14. Seismic-restraint accessories.
15. Mechanical anchor bolts.
16. Adhesive anchor bolts.
17. Vibration isolation equipment bases.
18. Restrained isolation roof-curb rails.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing" for devices for plumbing equipment and systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. IBC: International Building Code.
- B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
 2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device and seismic-restraint component required.
 - a. Tabulate types and sizes of seismic restraints, complete with report numbers and rated strength in tension and shear as evaluated by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - b. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
 3. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases. Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 2. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For each vibration isolation and seismic-restraint device.
1. Include design calculations and details for selecting vibration isolators, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation bases complying with performance requirements, design criteria, and analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight, operation, and seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
 - a. Coordinate design calculations with wind load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
 3. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, spring deflection changes, and seismic loads. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.
 4. Seismic-Restraint Details:
 - a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
 - b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events. Indicate association with vibration isolation devices.

- c. Coordinate seismic-restraint and vibration isolation details with wind-restraint details required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.
- d. Preapproval and Evaluation Documentation: By an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and the basis for approval (tests or calculations).

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of vibration isolation device installation and seismic bracing for HVAC piping and equipment with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and restraints, if any.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide a letter by manufacturer representative that all vibration control devices are installed per manufacturer's instructions.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7 and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are unavailable, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: A, B, C, D, E or F.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: II.
 - a. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
 - b. Component Response Modification Factor: 3.5.
 - c. Component Amplification Factor: 2.5.
3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second).
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period.
5. Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - a. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they are subjected.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
3. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
4. Pad Material: Oil and water resistant with elastomeric properties.
5. Surface Pattern: Smooth, Ribbed or Waffle pattern.
6. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.
7. Load-bearing metal plates adhered to pads.
8. Sandwich-Core Material: Resilient and elastomeric.
 - a. Surface Pattern: Waffle pattern.
 - b. Infused nonwoven cotton or synthetic fibers.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Double-Deflection, Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Mounting Plates:
 - a. Top Plate: Encapsulated steel load transfer top plates, factory drilled and threaded with threaded studs or bolts.
 - b. Baseplate: Encapsulated steel bottom plates with holes provided for anchoring to support structure.
3. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.4 RESTRAINED ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION MOUNTS

A. Restrained Elastomeric Isolation Mounts:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
 - d. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
2. Description: All-directional isolator with seismic restraints containing two separate and opposing elastomeric elements that prevent central threaded element and attachment hardware from contacting the housing during normal operation.
 - a. Housing: Cast-ductile iron or welded steel.
 - b. Elastomeric Material: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material.

2.5 HOUSED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.

2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
 - b. Top housing with attachment and leveling bolt, threaded mounting holes and internal leveling device or elastomeric pad.

2.6 RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Laterally Stable, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Housing: Steel housing with vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed.
 - a. Base with holes for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
 - b. Top plate with threaded mounting holes or elastomeric pad.
 - c. Internal leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
3. Restraint: Limit stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
4. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
5. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
6. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
7. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.7 HOUSED-RESTRAINED-SPRING ISOLATORS

A. Freestanding, Steel, Open-Spring Isolators with Vertical-Limit Stop Restraint in Two-Part Telescoping Housing:

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:

- a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
2. Two-Part Telescoping Housing: A steel top and bottom frame separated by an elastomeric material and enclosing the spring isolators. Housings are equipped with adjustable snubbers to limit vertical movement.
 - a. Drilled base housing for bolting to structure with an elastomeric isolator pad attached to the underside. Bases shall limit floor load to 500 psig (3447 kPa).
 - b. Threaded top housing with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.8 PIPE-RISER RESILIENT SUPPORT

- A. Description: All-directional, acoustical pipe anchor consisting of two steel tubes separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene .
 1. Vertical-Limit Stops: Steel and neoprene vertical-limit stops arranged to prevent vertical travel in both directions.
 2. Maximum Load Per Support: 500 psig (3.45 MPa) on isolation material providing equal isolation in all directions.

2.9 RESILIENT PIPE GUIDES

- A. Description: Telescopic arrangement of two steel tubes or post and sleeve arrangement separated by a minimum 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) thick neoprene.
 1. Factory-Set Height Guide with Shear Pin: Shear pin shall be removable and reinsertable to allow for selection of pipe movement. Guides shall be capable of motion to meet location requirements.

2.10 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

- A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.

2. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
3. Dampening Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel to steel contact.

2.11 SPRING HANGERS

- A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - b. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - c. Mason Industries, Inc.
 2. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
 8. Adjustable Vertical Stop: Steel washer with neoprene washer "up-stop" on lower threaded rod.
 9. Self-centering hanger-rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

2.12 SNUBBERS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 2. Mason Industries, Inc.
 3. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory fabricated using welded structural-steel shapes and plates, anchor bolts, and replaceable resilient isolation washers and bushings.
1. Anchor bolts for attaching to concrete shall be seismic-rated, drill-in, and stud-wedge or female-wedge type.

2. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: Oil- and water-resistant neoprene.
3. Maximum 1/4-inch (6-mm) air gap, and minimum 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick resilient cushion.

2.13 RESTRAINT CHANNEL BRACINGS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 2. Hilti, Inc.
 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
 4. Unistrut.
- B. Description: MFMA-4, shop- or field-fabricated bracing assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

2.14 RESTRAINT CABLES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 2. Loos & Co., Inc.
 3. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.
- B. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603 galvanized or ASTM A 492 stainless-steel cables. End connections made of steel assemblies with thimbles, brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; with a minimum of two clamping bolts for cable engagement.

2.15 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT ACCESSORIES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
 4. TOLCO.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- C. Hinged and Swivel Brace Attachments: Multifunctional steel connectors for attaching hangers to rigid channel bracings and restraint cables.

- D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor Bolts: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchor bolts and studs.
- E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices used.
- F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

2.16 MECHANICAL ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - 2. Hilti, Inc.
 - 3. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 4. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type in zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.17 ADHESIVE ANCHOR BOLTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Hilti, Inc.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control, Inc.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Adhesive Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and capsule anchor system containing PVC or urethane methacrylate-based resin and accelerator, or injected polymer or hybrid mortar adhesive. Provide anchor bolts and hardware with zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

2.18 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. California Dynamics Corporation.
 - 2. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 3. Mason Industries, Inc.
- B. Steel Rails: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel rails.

1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Rails shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- C. Steel Bases: Factory-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
- D. Concrete Inertia Base: Factory-fabricated or field-fabricated, welded, structural-steel bases and rails ready for placement of cast-in-place concrete.
1. Design Requirements: Lowest possible mounting height with not less than 1-inch (25-mm) clearance above the floor. Include equipment anchor bolts and auxiliary motor slide bases or rails.
 - a. Include supports for suction and discharge elbows for pumps.
 2. Structural Steel: Steel shapes, plates, and bars complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M. Bases shall have shape to accommodate supported equipment.
 3. Support Brackets: Factory-welded steel brackets on frame for outrigger isolation mountings and to provide for anchor bolts and equipment support.
 4. Fabrication: Fabricate steel templates to hold equipment anchor-bolt sleeves and anchors in place during placement of concrete. Obtain anchor-bolt templates from supported equipment manufacturer.

2.19 RESTRAINED ISOLATION ROOF-CURB RAILS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
1. California Dynamics Corporation.
 2. Kinetics Noise Control.
 3. Mason Industries, Inc.

- B. Description: Factory-assembled, fully enclosed, insulated, air- and watertight curb rail designed to resiliently support equipment and to withstand seismic and wind forces.
- C. Upper Frame: The upper frame shall provide continuous support for equipment and shall be captive to resiliently resist seismic and wind forces.
- D. Lower Support Assembly: The lower support assembly shall be formed sheet metal section containing adjustable and removable steel springs that support the upper frame. The lower support assembly shall have a means for attaching to building structure and a wood nailer for attaching roof materials, and shall be insulated with a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of rigid, glass-fiber insulation on inside of assembly. Adjustable, restrained-spring isolators shall be mounted on elastomeric vibration isolation pads and shall have access ports, for level adjustment, with removable waterproof covers at all isolator locations. Isolators shall be located so they are accessible for adjustment at any time during the life of the installation without interfering with the integrity of the roof.
- E. Snubber Bushings: All-directional, elastomeric snubber bushings at least 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick.
- F. Water Seal: Galvanized sheet metal with EPDM seals at corners, attached to upper support frame, extending down past wood nailer of lower support assembly, and counterflashed over roof materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic- and wind-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Provide a letter by manufacturer's representative that all vibration control devices are installed in full compliance with manufacturer's instruction.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

- A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

- C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 VIBRATION CONTROL AND SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.
- D. Equipment Restraints:
 - 1. Install seismic snubbers on HVAC equipment mounted on vibration isolators. Locate snubbers as close as possible to vibration isolators and bolt to equipment base and supporting structure.
 - 2. Install resilient bolt isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch (3.2 mm).
 - 3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES OSHPD an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- E. Piping Restraints:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in MSS SP-127.
 - 2. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
 - 3. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- F. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- G. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES, or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that provides required submittals for component.
- H. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.
- I. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.
- J. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.
- K. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

- A. Install flexible connections in piping where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where the connections terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting the connections as they approach equipment. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for piping flexible connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Provide evidence of recent calibration of test equipment by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Schedule test with Owner, through Architect, before connecting anchorage device to restrained component (unless postconnection testing has been approved), and with at least seven days' advance notice.
 3. Obtain Architect's approval before transmitting test loads to structure. Provide temporary load-spreading members.
 4. Test at least four of each type and size of installed anchors and fasteners selected by Architect.
 5. Test to 90 percent of rated proof load of device.
 6. Measure isolator restraint clearance.
 7. Measure isolator deflection.
 8. Verify snubber minimum clearances.
 9. Test and adjust restrained-air-spring isolator controls and safeties.

- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust isolators after piping system is at operating weight.
- B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

3.7 VIBRATION ISOLATION EQUIPMENT BASES INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate the location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points and with requirements for concrete reinforcement and formwork specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

END OF SECTION 23 05 48

SECTION 23 05 53 – IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Duct labels.
 - 5. Stencils.
 - 6. Valve tags.
 - 7. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws .
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws .
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm)high.

2.4 DUCT LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Duct Label Contents: Include identification of duct service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, duct size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with duct system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each duct label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

2.5 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) or anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch (0.8-mm) minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
 - 1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.7 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 - 1. Size: Approximately 4 by 7 inches (100 by 178 mm).
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire or Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 - 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 - 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles on each piping system.
 - 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 - 1. Near each valve and control device.
 - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Chilled-Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.
2. Heating Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: Black.
 - b. Letter Color: White.

3.4 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install plastic-laminated or self-adhesive duct labels with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
 1. Blue: For cold-air supply ducts.
 2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
 3. Green: For exhaust-, outside-, relief-, return-, and mixed-air ducts.
 4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
- B. Stenciled Duct Label Option: Stenciled labels, showing service and flow direction, may be provided instead of plastic-laminated duct labels, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch (25 mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- C. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Chilled Water: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
 - b. Hot Water: 2 inches (50 mm), round .
 - c. Gas: 2 inches (50 mm), round.
 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Chilled Water: Natural or Green.

- b. Hot Water: Natural or Green.
 - c. Gas: Yellow.
- 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Chilled Water: Black.
 - b. Hot Water: Black.
 - c. Gas: Black.

3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

SECTION 23 05 93 – TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.
 - b. Variable-air-volume systems.
 - 2. Balancing Hydronic Piping Systems:
 - a. Constant-flow hydronic systems.
 - b. Variable-flow hydronic systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Air-Balance Report for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
 - 2. TAB Report for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation of work performed for ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 15 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 30 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures as specified in "Preparation" Article.
- D. Certified TAB reports.
- E. Sample report forms.
- F. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.
 - 4. Dates of use.
 - 5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
 - 1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB contractor and certified by AABC or NEBB.
 - 2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB contractor and who is certified by AABC or NEBB as a TAB technician.
- B. TAB Conference: Meet with Commissioning Authority on approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Require the participation of the TAB field supervisor and technicians. Provide seven days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.
 - 1. Agenda Items:
 - a. The Contract Documents examination report.
 - b. The TAB plan.
 - c. Coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.
 - d. Coordination of documentation and communication flow.
- C. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 - 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 - 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.

- D. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Commissioning Authority.
- E. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."
- F. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- G. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."
- H. Provide 72 hour trend data for all systems.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.
- B. Partial Owner Occupancy: Owner may occupy completed areas of building before Substantial Completion. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Notice: Provide seven days' advance notice for each test. Include scheduled test dates and times.
- B. Perform TAB after leakage and pressure tests on air and water distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TAB SPECIALISTS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, engage an available TAB Contractor that is a member of AABC or NEBB.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as test ports, gage cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine design data including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems' output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.
- E. Examine equipment performance data including fan and pump curves.
 - 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
 - 2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.
- F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.
- H. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- I. Examine terminal units, such as variable-air-volume boxes, and verify that they are accessible and their controls are connected and functioning.
- J. Examine strainers. Verify that startup screens are replaced by permanent screens with indicated perforations.
- K. Examine three-way valves for proper installation for their intended function of diverting or mixing fluid flows.
- L. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- M. Examine system pumps to ensure absence of entrained air in the suction piping.
- N. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- O. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.

- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 2. Hydronic systems are filled, clean, and free of air.
 3. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 4. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 5. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 6. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 7. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 8. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance", NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems", SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing" and in this Section.
1. Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.2 - "Air Balancing."
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "HVAC Equipment Insulation," and Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, valve position indicators, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.
- E. Compile 72 hour trend data for all systems.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.

- C. For variable-air-volume systems, develop a plan to simulate diversity.
- D. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- E. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- F. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- G. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- H. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- I. Check for airflow blockages.
- J. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- K. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- L. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, rooftop unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.

5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.
 6. Obtain approval from Commissioning Authority for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-AIR-VOLUME SYSTEMS

- A. Compensating for Diversity: When the total airflow of all terminal units is more than the indicated airflow of the fan, place a selected number of terminal units at a minimum set-point airflow with the remainder at maximum-airflow condition until the total airflow of the terminal units equals the indicated airflow of the fan. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.

- B. Pressure-Independent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Set outdoor-air dampers at minimum, and set return- and exhaust-air dampers at a position that simulates full-cooling load.
 2. Select the terminal unit that is most critical to the supply-fan airflow and static pressure. Measure static pressure. Adjust system static pressure so the entering static pressure for the critical terminal unit is not less than the sum of the terminal-unit manufacturer's recommended minimum inlet static pressure plus the static pressure needed to overcome terminal-unit discharge system losses.
 3. Measure total system airflow. Adjust to within indicated airflow.
 4. Set terminal units at maximum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed maximum airflow. Use terminal-unit manufacturer's written instructions to make this adjustment. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 - a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
 6. Remeasure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 7. Measure static pressure at the most critical terminal unit and adjust the static-pressure controller at the main supply-air sensing station to ensure that adequate static pressure is maintained at the most critical unit.
 8. Record final fan-performance data.
- C. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems without Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
1. Balance variable-air-volume systems the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 2. Set terminal units and supply fan at full-airflow condition.
 3. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow and verify operation of the static-pressure controller. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 4. Readjust fan airflow for final maximum readings.
 5. Measure operating static pressure at the sensor that controls the supply fan if one is installed, and verify operation of the static-pressure controller.
 6. Set supply fan at minimum airflow if minimum airflow is indicated. Measure static pressure to verify that it is being maintained by the controller.
 7. Set terminal units at minimum airflow and adjust controller or regulator to deliver the designed minimum airflow. Check air outlets for a proportional reduction in airflow the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

- a. If air outlets are out of balance at minimum airflow, report the condition but leave the outlets balanced for maximum airflow.
8. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow.
 - a. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
- D. Pressure-Dependent, Variable-Air-Volume Systems with Diversity: After the fan systems have been adjusted, adjust the variable-air-volume systems as follows:
 1. Set system at maximum indicated airflow by setting the required number of terminal units at minimum airflow. Select the reduced-airflow terminal units so they are distributed evenly among the branch ducts.
 2. Adjust supply fan to maximum indicated airflow with the variable-airflow controller set at maximum airflow.
 3. Set terminal units at full-airflow condition.
 4. Adjust terminal units starting at the supply-fan end of the system and continuing progressively to the end of the system. Adjust inlet dampers of each terminal unit to indicated airflow. When total airflow is correct, balance the air outlets downstream from terminal units the same as described for constant-volume air systems.
 5. Adjust terminal units for minimum airflow.
 6. Measure static pressure at the sensor.
 7. Measure the return airflow to the fan while operating at maximum return airflow and minimum outdoor airflow. Adjust the fan and balance the return-air ducts and inlets the same as described for constant-volume air systems.

3.8 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports with pertinent design data, and number in sequence starting at pump to end of system. Check the sum of branch-circuit flows against the approved pump flow rate. Correct variations that exceed plus or minus 5 percent.
- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" piping layouts.
- C. Prepare hydronic systems for testing and balancing according to the following, in addition to the general preparation procedures specified above:
 1. Open all manual valves for maximum flow.
 2. Check liquid level in expansion tank.
 3. Check makeup water-station pressure gage for adequate pressure for highest vent.
 4. Check flow-control valves for specified sequence of operation, and set at indicated flow.
 5. Set differential-pressure control valves at the specified differential pressure. Do not set at fully closed position when pump is positive-displacement type unless several terminal valves are kept open.
 6. Set system controls so automatic valves are wide open to heat exchangers.
 7. Check pump-motor load. If motor is overloaded, throttle main flow-balancing device so motor nameplate rating is not exceeded.
 8. Check air vents for a forceful liquid flow exiting from vents when manually operated.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Measure water flow at pumps. Use the following procedures except for positive-displacement pumps:
 - 1. Verify impeller size by operating the pump with the discharge valve closed. Read pressure differential across the pump. Convert pressure to head and correct for differences in gage heights. Note the point on manufacturer's pump curve at zero flow and verify that the pump has the intended impeller size.
 - a. If impeller sizes must be adjusted to achieve pump performance, obtain approval from Commissioning Authority and comply with requirements in Section 232123 "Hydronic Pumps."
 - 2. Check system resistance. With all valves open, read pressure differential across the pump and mark pump manufacturer's head-capacity curve. Adjust pump discharge valve until indicated water flow is achieved.
 - a. Monitor motor performance during procedures and do not operate motors in overload conditions.
 - 3. Verify pump-motor brake horsepower. Calculate the intended brake horsepower for the system based on pump manufacturer's performance data. Compare calculated brake horsepower with nameplate data on the pump motor. Report conditions where actual amperage exceeds motor nameplate amperage.
 - 4. Report flow rates that are not within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- B. Measure flow at all automatic flow control valves to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- C. Measure flow at all pressure-independent characterized control valves, with valves in fully open position, to verify that valves are functioning as designed.
- D. Set calibrated balancing valves, if installed, at calculated presettings.
- E. Measure flow at all stations and adjust, where necessary, to obtain first balance.
 - 1. System components that have Cv rating or an accurately cataloged flow-pressure-drop relationship may be used as a flow-indicating device.
- F. Measure flow at main balancing station and set main balancing device to achieve flow that is 5 percent greater than indicated flow.
- G. Adjust balancing stations to within specified tolerances of indicated flow rate as follows:
 - 1. Determine the balancing station with the highest percentage over indicated flow.
 - 2. Adjust each station in turn, beginning with the station with the highest percentage over indicated flow and proceeding to the station with the lowest percentage over indicated flow.
 - 3. Record settings and mark balancing devices.

- H. Measure pump flow rate and make final measurements of pump amperage, voltage, rpm, pump heads, and systems' pressures and temperatures including outdoor-air temperature.
- I. Measure the differential-pressure-control-valve settings existing at the conclusion of balancing.
- J. Check settings and operation of each safety valve. Record settings.

3.10 PROCEDURES FOR VARIABLE-FLOW HYDRONIC SYSTEMS

- A. Balance systems with automatic two- and three-way control valves by setting systems at maximum flow through heat-exchange terminals and proceed as specified above for hydronic systems.

3.11 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
 - 1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 - 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 - 3. Motor rpm.
 - 4. Efficiency rating.
 - 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 - 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 - 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.12 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.13 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus 5 to Plus 10 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 3. Heating-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.
 - 4. Cooling-Water Flow Rate: Plus or minus 10 percent.

3.14 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: Prepare progress reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

3.15 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Pump curves.
 - 2. Fan curves.
 - 3. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 5. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
 - 6. 72 hour trend data for all systems.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.
 - b. Notable characteristics of systems.

- c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
- 12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
- 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
- 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
- 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
 - 1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 - 2. Water and steam flow rates.
 - 3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 - 4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
 - 5. Terminal units.
 - 6. Balancing stations.
 - 7. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
 - 1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 - 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.

- f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
- 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
 - i. Outdoor airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
 - k. Outdoor-air damper position.
 - l. Return-air damper position.
 - m. Vortex damper position.
- F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:
 - 1. Coil Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Coil type.
 - d. Number of rows.
 - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
 - f. Make and model number.
 - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
 - i. Tube and fin materials.
 - j. Circuiting arrangement.
 - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
 - d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
 - h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
 - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
 - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).

G. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).

H. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:

1. Report Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit number.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
 - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
 - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 - g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - i. Actual air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).

I. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System and air-handling unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Apparatus used for test.
 - d. Area served.
 - e. Make.
 - f. Number from system diagram.
 - g. Type and model number.
 - h. Size.
 - i. Effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - c. Preliminary air flow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
 - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
 - e. Final air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
 - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).
- J. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. System and air-handling-unit identification.
 - b. Location and zone.
 - c. Room or riser served.
 - d. Coil make and size.
 - e. Flowmeter type.
 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Air flow rate in cfm (L/s).
 - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
 - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
 - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
- K. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Service.
 - d. Make and size.
 - e. Model number and serial number.
 - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
 - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).

- h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- i. Pump rpm.
- j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
- k. Motor make and frame size.
- l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- m. Voltage at each connection.
- n. Amperage for each phase.
- o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
- p. Seal type.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
- d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
- i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
- j. Voltage at each connection.
- k. Amperage for each phase.

L. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.16 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

- 1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the final report.
- 2. Check the following for each system:
 - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
 - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
 - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
 - d. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
 - e. Note deviations from the Contract Documents in the final report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and documentation by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made Commissioning Authority.
2. The TAB contractor's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Commissioning Authority.
3. Commissioning Authority shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

C. TAB Work will be considered defective if it does not pass final inspections. If TAB Work fails, proceed as follows:

1. Recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection.
2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may contract the services of another TAB contractor to complete TAB Work according to the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the original TAB contractor's final payment.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.17 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

SECTION 23 07 13 – HVAC INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
4. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230716 "HVAC Equipment Insulation."
2. Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
3. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

- B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
3. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
4. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

- D. Samples: For each type of insulation and jacket indicated. Identify each Sample, describing product and intended use. Sample sizes are as follows:
1. Sheet Form Insulation Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 2. Sheet Jacket Materials: 12 inches (300 mm) square.
 3. Manufacturer's Color Charts: For products where color is specified, show the full range of colors available for each type of finish material.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for

installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Sheet, K-Flex Gray Duct Liner, and K-FLEX LS.
- G. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I; Type II with factory-applied vinyl jacket; Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket; or Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

- H. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation without factory-applied jacket, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. CertainTeed Corp.; Commercial Board.
 - b. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; FBX.
 - c. Johns Manville; 800 Series Spin-Glas.
 - d. Knauf Insulation; Insulation Board.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas 700 Series.
- I. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ or FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.
- J. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
 - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK, IMCOSHEET, NOMALOCK, and NOMAPLY.

2.2 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEMS

- A. Fire-Rated Board: Structural-grade, press-molded, xonolite calcium silicate, fireproofing board suitable for operating temperatures up to 1700 deg F (927 deg C). Comply with ASTM C 656, Type II, Grade 6. Tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements,:
- a. Johns Manville; Super Firetemp M.
- B. Fire-Rated Blanket: High-temperature, flexible, blanket insulation with FSK jacket that is tested and certified to provide a 2-hour fire rating by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
- a. CertainTeed Corp.; FlameChek.
 - b. Johns Manville; Firetemp Wrap.

- c. Thermal Ceramics; FireMaster Duct Wrap.
- d. 3M; Fire Barrier Wrap Products.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aero seal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over duct insulation.
 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 5. Color: Aluminum.
 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
5. Color: White.
6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 5. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. (203 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. (2 strands by 2 strands/sq. mm) for covering ducts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas No. 5.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for ducts.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :

- a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: White or color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following :

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.

2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper .
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.

- a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.

- d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
- E. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white or stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 - 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 - 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 - 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 - 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 - 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 - 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 - 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.
 - b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

- a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CWP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; CD.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; CD.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; TPA, TPC, and TPS.
2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following provide one of the following :
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; CHP-1.
 - 2) GEMCO; Cupped Head Weld Pin.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Cupped Head.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; CHP.
3. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch (0.76 mm) thick by 2 inches (50 mm) square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, aluminum or stainless steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, aluminum or stainless-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than in diameter.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following :
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
 - 2) GEMCO; R-150.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
 - 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

- b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
- 5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than in diameter.
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) GEMCO.
 - 2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.
- C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- D. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel, 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

2.13 CORNER ANGLES

- A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.
- B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), aluminum according to ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14.
- C. Stainless-Steel Corner Angles: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch (25 by 25 mm), stainless steel according to ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.
- B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.

- a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
- 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
- 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).

1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), place pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-

applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
 5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches (450 mm) o.c.
 6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
- B. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches (450 mm) and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches (400 mm) o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches (450 mm), space pins 16 inches (400 mm) o.c. each way, and 3 inches (75 mm) maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
 4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches (50 mm) from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch (13-mm) outward-clinching staples, 1 inch (25 mm) o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

- a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F (10 deg C) at 18-foot (5.5-m) intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm).
5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
 6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

- A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.
 1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
 2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
 3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.
- B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
 1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
 2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
 3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
 5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.
- C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
 1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.
- D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FIRE-RATED INSULATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Where fire-rated insulation system is indicated, secure system to ducts and duct hangers and supports to maintain a continuous fire rating.
- B. Insulate duct access panels and doors to achieve same fire rating as duct.
- C. Install firestopping at penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Fire-stop systems are specified in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.9 FINISHES

- A. Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 - 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect ductwork, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to one location(s) for each duct system defined in the "Duct Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.11 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
4. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.12 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

C. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

D. Concealed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- E. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- F. Concealed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- G. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- H. Exposed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 4. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 5. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- I. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96 kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- J. Exposed, rectangular, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

K. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
3. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
4. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

L. Exposed, outdoor-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) or 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) or 3 inches (75 mm) thick and 2-lb/cu. ft. (32-kg/cu. m), 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) or 6-lb/cu. ft. (96-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.13 ABOVEGROUND, OUTDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are identified below. If more than one material is listed for a duct system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Concealed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

C. Concealed, round and flat-oval, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

D. Concealed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

E. Concealed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- F. Exposed, round and flat-oval, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 3. Mineral-Fiber Pipe and Tank: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- G. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air duct insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
- H. Exposed, supply-air plenum insulation shall be one of the following:
1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches (50 mm) and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. (24-kg/cu. m) nominal density.
 2. Mineral-Fiber Board: 2 inches (50 mm) thick and 3-lb/cu. ft. (48-kg/cu. m) nominal density.

3.14 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:
1. Foil & Paper.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed:
1. Foil & Paper.

3.15 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Ducts and Plenums, Concealed:

1. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
- D. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, up to 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces up to 72 Inches (1800 mm):
1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish
- E. Ducts and Plenums, Exposed, Larger Than 48 Inches (1200 mm) in Diameter or with Flat Surfaces Larger Than 72 Inches (1800 mm):
1. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

SECTION 23 07 19 – HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following HVAC piping systems:
 - 1. Condensate drain piping, indoors and outdoors.
 - 2. Chilled-water and brine piping, indoors and outdoors.
 - 3. Condenser-water piping, indoors and outdoors.
 - 4. Heating hot-water piping, indoors and outdoors.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied if any).
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
 - 3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties.
 - 6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
 - 7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of heat tracing.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Underground Piping Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.
- D. Insulation materials for use on austenitic stainless steel shall be qualified as acceptable according to ASTM C 795.
- E. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- F. Calcium Silicate:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Industrial Insulation Group (IIG); Thermo-12 Gold.
 - 2. Preformed Pipe Sections: Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 3. Flat-, curved-, and grooved-block sections of noncombustible, inorganic, hydrous calcium silicate with a non-asbestos fibrous reinforcement. Comply with ASTM C 533, Type I.
 - 4. Prefabricated Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.
- G. Cellular Glass: Inorganic, incombustible, foamed or cellulated glass with annealed, rigid, hermetically sealed cells. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Foamglas.
 2. Block Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type I.
 3. Special-Shaped Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type III.
 4. Board Insulation: ASTM C 552, Type IV.
 5. Preformed Pipe Insulation without Jacket: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 1.
 6. Preformed Pipe Insulation with Factory-Applied ASJ ASJ-SSL: Comply with ASTM C 552, Type II, Class 2.
 7. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aerocel.
 - b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
 - c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I, or II with factory-applied vinyl jacket, III with factory-applied FSK jacket or III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
 - e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.
- J. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
 - b. Knauf Insulation; 1000-Degree Pipe Insulation.
 - c. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
 - d. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
 2. Type I, 850 deg F (454 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 3. Type II, 1200 deg F (649 deg C) Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type II, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket, with factory-applied ASJ or with factory-applied ASJ-SSL. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

- K. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe Insulation Wicking System: Preformed pipe insulation complying with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with absorbent cloth factory-applied to the entire inside surface of preformed pipe insulation and extended through the longitudinal joint to outside surface of insulation under insulation jacket. Factory apply a white, polymer, vapor-retarder jacket with self-sealing adhesive tape seam and evaporation holes running continuously along the longitudinal seam, exposing the absorbent cloth.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Knauf Insulation; Permawick Pipe Insulation.
 - b. Owens Corning; VaporWick Pipe Insulation.

- L. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ or FSK jacket complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; CrimpWrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; MicroFlex.
 - c. Knauf Insulation; Pipe and Tank Insulation.
 - d. Manson Insulation Inc.; AK Flex.
 - e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe and Tank Insulation.

- M. Phenolic:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Kingspan Tarec Industrial Insulation NV; Koolphen K.
 - b. Resolco International BV; Insul-phen.
2. Preformed pipe insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type III, Grade 1.
3. Block insulation of rigid, expanded, closed-cell structure. Comply with ASTM C 1126, Type II, Grade 1.
4. Factory fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
5. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - a. Preformed Pipe Insulation: ASJ.

- N. Polyisocyanurate: Unfaced, preformed, rigid cellular polyisocyanurate material intended for use as thermal insulation.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Trymer 2000 XP.
 - b. Duna USA Inc.; Corafoam.

- c. Dyplast Products; ISO-25.
 - d. Elliott Company of Indianapolis; Elfoam.
- 2. Comply with ASTM C 591, Type I or Type IV, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.19 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.027 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) after 180 days of aging.
- 3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less, and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less for thickness up to 1 inch (25 mm) as tested by ASTM E 84.
- 4. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
- 5. Factory-Applied Jacket: Requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 - a. Pipe Applications: ASJ, ASJ-SSL, PVDC or PVDC-SSL.
- O. Polyolefin: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armacell LLC; Tubolit.
 - b. Nomaco Insulation; IMCOLOCK, IMCOSHEET, NOMALOCK, and NOMAPLY.
- P. Polystyrene: Rigid, extruded cellular polystyrene intended for use as thermal insulation. Comply with ASTM C 578, Type IV or Type XIII, except thermal conductivity (k-value) shall not exceed 0.26 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.038 W/m x K) after 180 days of aging. Fabricate shapes according to ASTM C 450 and ASTM C 585.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Styrofoam.

2.2 INSULATING CEMENTS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 195.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Super-Stik.
- B. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cement: Comply with ASTM C 196.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Thermokote V.
- C. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Ramco Insulation, Inc.; Ramcote 1200 and Quik-Cote.

2.3 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calcium Silicate Adhesive: Fibrous, sodium-silicate-based adhesive with a service temperature range of 50 to 800 deg F (10 to 427 deg C).
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-97.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 290.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-27.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-30.
 - e. Vimasco Corporation; 760.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Cellular-Glass Adhesive: Two-component, thermosetting urethane adhesive containing no flammable solvents, with a service temperature range of minus 100 to plus 200 deg F (minus 73 to plus 93 deg C).
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-84.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- D. Phenolic and Polyisocyanurate Adhesive: Solvent-based resin adhesive, with a service temperature range of minus 75 to plus 300 deg F (minus 59 to plus 149 deg C).
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 81-33.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- G. Polystyrene Adhesive: Solvent- or water-based, synthetic resin adhesive with a service temperature range of minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (29 to plus 60 deg C).
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-96.

- b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60.
- H. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- I. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 739, Dow Silicone.
 - b. Johns Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
 - c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; Polyco VP Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.4 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.

- b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm (0.009 metric perm) at 43-mil (1.09-mm) dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.03 metric perm) at 35-mil (0.9-mm) dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- D. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for outdoor use on below-ambient services.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Encacel.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 570.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 60-95/60-96.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm (0.033 metric perm) at 30-mil (0.8-mm) dry film thickness.
 - 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 220 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 104 deg C).
 - 4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 33 percent by volume and 46 percent by weight.
 - 5. Color: White.
- E. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above-ambient services.
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-10.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 550.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 46-50.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.

- e. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.
- 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 1.8 perms (1.2 metric perms) at 0.0625-inch (1.6-mm) dry film thickness.
- 3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 82 deg C).
- 4. Solids Content: 60 percent by volume and 66 percent by weight.
- 5. Color: White.

2.5 LAGGING ADHESIVES

- A. Description: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class I, Grade A and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use lagging adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-50 AHV2.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-36.
 - c. Vimasco Corporation; 713 and 714.
 - 3. Fire-resistant, water-based lagging adhesive and coating for use indoors to adhere fire-resistant lagging cloths over pipe insulation.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: 0 to plus 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
 - 5. Color: White.

2.6 SEALANTS

- A. Joint Sealants:
 - 1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass, Phenolic, and Polyisocyanurate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
 - 2. Joint Sealants for Polystyrene Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-70.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.

- c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - 3. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 4. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 5. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 149 deg C).
 - 6. Color: White or gray.
 - 7. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 8. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 405.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
 - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Aluminum.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-76.
 - 2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
 - 3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
 - 4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 121 deg C).
 - 5. Color: White.
 - 6. For indoor applications, sealants shall have a VOC content of 420 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

7. Sealants shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.7 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
 3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 4. FSP Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with polyethylene backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
 5. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perm (0.013 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
 6. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perm (0.007 metric perm) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
 7. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

8. Vinyl Jacket: White vinyl with a permeance of 1.3 perms (0.86 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure A, and complying with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Approximately 2 oz./sq. yd. (68 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm) for covering pipe and pipe fittings.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Chil-Glas Number 10.
- B. Woven Polyester Fabric: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. (34 g/sq. m) with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in. (4 strands by 4 strands/sq. mm), in a Leno weave, for pipe.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Mast-A-Fab.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; Elastafab 894.

2.9 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

- A. Woven Glass-Fiber Fabric: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd. (271 g/sq. m).
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Alpha Associates, Inc.; Alpha-Maritex 84215 and 84217/9485RW, Luben 59.

2.10 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

- A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil-face, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing.
- C. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
 - b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
 - c. Proto Corporation; LoSmoke.
 - d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
3. Color: Color-code jackets based on system. Color as selected by Architect.
4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
 - a. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.

D. Metal Jacket:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; Metal Jacketing Systems.
 - b. ITW Insulation Systems; Aluminum and Stainless Steel Jacketing.
 - c. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.
 - 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
3. Stainless-Steel Jacket: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M.
 - a. Sheet and roll stock ready for shop or field sizing or factory cut and rolled to size.
 - b. Material, finish, and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
 - c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 2.5-mil- (0.063-mm-) thick polysurlyn.
 - d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil- (0.075-mm-) thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
 - e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
 - 1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
 - 2) Preformed 2-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
 - 3) Tee covers.

- 4) Flange and union covers.
 - 5) End caps.
 - 6) Beveled collars.
 - 7) Valve covers.
 - 8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.
- E. Underground Direct-Buried Jacket: 125-mil- (3.2-mm-) thick vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin reinforced with a woven-glass fiber or polyester scrim and laminated aluminum foil.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittwrap.
 - b. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Insulrap No Torch 125.
- F. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil- (1.5-mm-) thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a crosslaminated polyethylene film covered with white or stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Polyguard Products, Inc.; Alumaguard 60.
- G. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- (0.10-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms (0.013 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film.
- H. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- (0.15-mm-) thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms (0.007 metric perms) when tested according to ASTM E 96/E 96M and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
- I. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

2.11 TAPES

- A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 428 AWF ASJ.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0836.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 104 and 105.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Thickness: 11.5 mils (0.29 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.
- B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 491 AWF FSK.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 110 and 111.
 - d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW NT, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6.5 mils (0.16 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch (1.0 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 2 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch (7.2 N/mm) in width.
 7. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.
- C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive; suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 370 White PVC tape.
 - b. Compac Corporation; 130.
 - c. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.
 2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 3. Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).

4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch (0.7 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 500 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch (3.3 N/mm) in width.
- D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ABI, Ideal Tape Division; 488 AWF.
 - b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
 - c. Compac Corporation; 120.
 - d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
 2. Width: 2 inches (50 mm).
 3. Thickness: 3.7 mils (0.093 mm).
 4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch (1.1 N/mm) in width.
 5. Elongation: 5 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch (6.2 N/mm) in width.
- E. PVDC Tape for Indoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Film Thickness: 4 mils (0.10 mm).
 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.
- F. PVDC Tape for Outdoor Applications: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Tape.
 2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
 3. Film Thickness: 6 mils (0.15 mm).
 4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils (0.04 mm).
 5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
 6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch (10.1 N/mm) in width.

2.12 SECUREMENTS

- A. Bands:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ITW Insulation Systems; Gerrard Strapping and Seals.

- b. RPR Products, Inc.; Insul-Mate Strapping, Seals, and Springs.
 - 2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 167 or ASTM A 240/A 240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 3. Aluminum: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch (0.51 mm) thick, 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide with wing seal or closed seal.
 - 4. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size determined by manufacturer for application.
- B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.
- C. Wire: 0.080-inch (2.0-mm) nickel-copper alloy, 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, stainless steel or 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) soft-annealed, galvanized steel.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. C & F Wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
 - 1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.
 - 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated. Before insulating, apply a corrosion coating to insulated surfaces as follows:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: Coat 300 series stainless steel with an epoxy primer 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick and an epoxy finish 5 mils (0.127 mm) thick if operating in a temperature range between 140 and 300 deg F (60 and 149 deg C). Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.
 - 2. Carbon Steel: Coat carbon steel operating at a service temperature between 32 and 300 deg F (0 and 149 deg C) with an epoxy coating. Consult coating manufacturer for appropriate coating materials and application methods for operating temperature range.

- C. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.
- D. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.
- C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.
- E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.
- K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches (100 mm) o.c.
 - a. For below-ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
 5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.
- M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches (100 mm) beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.
- P. For above-ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
 2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
 3. Nameplates and data plates.
 4. Manholes.
 5. Handholes.
 6. Cleanouts.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm) below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

- C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches (50 mm).
 - 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
 - 1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
 - 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.
- B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
 - 1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.
 - 3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
 - 4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets,

- valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below-ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
 6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
 7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below-ambient services and a breather mastic for above-ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
 8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
 9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "union." Match size and color of pipe labels.
- C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.
- D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.
 2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless-steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
 3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges, except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
 4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches (50 mm) over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
 5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF CALCIUM SILICATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install two-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.
3. Apply a skim coat of mineral-fiber, hydraulic-setting cement to insulation surface. When cement is dry, apply flood coat of lagging adhesive and press on one layer of glass cloth or tape. Overlap edges at least 1 inch (25 mm). Apply finish coat of lagging adhesive over glass cloth or tape. Thin finish coat to achieve smooth, uniform finish.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Finish flange insulation same as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed insulation sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of calcium silicate insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.
3. Finish fittings insulation same as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install mitered segments of calcium silicate insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
2. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
3. Finish valve and specialty insulation same as pipe insulation.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CELLULAR-GLASS INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of cellular-glass block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. When preformed sections of insulation are not available, install mitered sections of cellular-glass insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of cellular-glass insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below-ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch (25 mm), and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve body.

3. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
4. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.10 INSTALLATION OF PHENOLIC INSULATION

A. General Installation Requirements:

1. Secure single-layer insulation with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Install 2-layer insulation with joints tightly butted and staggered at least 3 inches (75 mm). Secure inner layer with 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wire spaced at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals. Secure outer layer with stainless-steel bands at 12-inch (300-mm) intervals.

B. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above-ambient services, secure laps with outward-clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders on below-ambient services, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of block insulation of same material and thickness as pipe insulation.

D. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.11 INSTALLATION OF POLYISOCYANURATE INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Secure each layer of insulation to pipe with tape or bands and tighten without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, same thickness of adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) thickness.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyisocyanurate block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.

C. Insulation Installation on Fittings and Elbows:

1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed sections of polyisocyanurate insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.12 INSTALLATION OF POLYOLEFIN INSULATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:

1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.

3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polyolefin sheet insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install cut sections of polyolefin pipe and sheet insulation to valve body.
 2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.13 INSTALLATION OF POLYSTYRENE INSULATION

- A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of insulation with tape or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials. Orient longitudinal joints between half sections in 3- and 9-o'clock positions on the pipe.
 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor barriers, do not staple longitudinal tabs. Instead, secure tabs with additional adhesive or tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic.
 3. All insulation shall be tightly butted and free of voids and gaps at all joints. Vapor barrier must be continuous. Before installing jacket material, install vapor-barrier system.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, and make thickness same as adjacent pipe insulation, not to exceed 1-1/2-inch (38-mm).
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of polystyrene block insulation of same thickness as pipe insulation.
- C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed insulation sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:

1. Install preformed section of polystyrene insulation to valve body.
2. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.

3.14 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where glass-cloth jackets are indicated, install directly over bare insulation or insulation with factory-applied jackets.

1. Draw jacket smooth and tight to surface with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at seams and joints.
2. Embed glass cloth between two 0.062-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick coats of lagging adhesive.
3. Completely encapsulate insulation with coating, leaving no exposed insulation.

B. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- (75-mm-) wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

C. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch (25-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.

1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

D. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch (50-mm) overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches (300 mm) o.c. and at end joints.

E. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:

1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
2. Wrap factory-presizes jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches (50 mm) over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
3. Continuous jacket can be spiral-wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.

4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches (850 mm) or less. The 33-1/2-inch- (850-mm-) circumference limit allows for 2-inch- (50-mm-) overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.15 FINISHES

- A. Pipe Insulation with ASJ, Glass-Cloth, or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
 1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
 - a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- C. Color: Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.
- D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.
- D. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.17 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
 - 1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
 - 2. Underground piping.
 - 3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.18 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F (16 Deg C):
 - 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
- B. Chilled Water and Brine, 40 Deg F (5 Deg C) and below:
 - 1. NPS 10 (DN 250) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - 2. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I, Pipe and Tank Insulation, or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
- C. Chilled Water and Brine, above 40 Deg F (5 Deg C):
 - 1. NPS 10 (DN 250) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

- c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - 2. NPS 12 (DN 300) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I, Pipe and Tank Insulation, or Pipe Insulation Wicking System: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
- D. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
- 1. NPS 10 (DN 300) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - 2. NPS 12 (DN 350) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- E. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and Below:
- 1. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 1 1/2 inch (25 mm) thick.
- F. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, above 200 Deg F (93 Deg C):
- 1. NPS 8 (DN 200) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.19 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

- A. Chilled Water and Brine:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- B. Condenser-Water Supply and Return:
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - b. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - e. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - f. Polyolefin: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - g. Polystyrene: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- C. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, 200 Deg F (93 Deg C) and Below:
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - c. Phenolic: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
 - d. Polyisocyanurate: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.
- D. Heating-Hot-Water Supply and Return, above 200 Deg F (93 Deg C):
 1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
 - a. Calcium Silicate: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - b. Cellular Glass: 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
 - c. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I or II: 2 inches (50 mm) thick.

3.20 INDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.
- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.
- C. Piping, Concealed:
 1. None.
 2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
 3. Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.

4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. None.
2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
5. Stainless Steel, Type 304 or Type 316, Smooth 2B Finish, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

3.21 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

- A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

- B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:

1. None.
2. PVC, Color-Coded by System: 30 mils (0.8 mm) thick.
3. Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
4. Painted Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.032 inch (0.81 mm) thick.
5. Stainless Steel, Type 304, 316, 304 or 316, Smooth 2B Finish, Corrugated or Stucco Embossed: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

D. Piping, Exposed:

1. PVC: 40 mils (1.0 mm) thick.
2. Painted Aluminum, Smooth, Corrugated, Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.040 inch (1.0 mm) thick.
3. Stainless Steel, Type 304, 316, 304 or 316, Smooth 2B Finish, Corrugated, Stucco Embossed or with Z-Shaped Locking Seam: 0.024 inch (0.61 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION 23 07 19

SECTION 23 09 00 – INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes control equipment for HVAC systems and components, including control components for terminal heating and cooling units not supplied with factory-wired controls.
- B. Control System shall be BACnet with open controls architecture.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 230519 "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping" for measuring equipment that relates to this Section.
 - 2. Section 230993 "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls" for requirements that relate to this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. DDC: Direct digital control.
- B. I/O: Input/output.
- C. MS/TP: Master slave/token passing.
- D. PC: Personal computer.
- E. PID: Proportional plus integral plus derivative.
- F. RTD: Resistance temperature detector.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

- A. Comply with the following performance requirements:
 - 1. Graphic Display: Display graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 10 seconds.
 - 2. Graphic Refresh: Update graphic with minimum 20 dynamic points with current data within 8 seconds.

3. Object Command: Reaction time of less than two seconds between operator command of a binary object and device reaction.
4. Object Scan: Transmit change of state and change of analog values to control units or workstation within six seconds.
5. Alarm Response Time: Annunciate alarm at workstation within 45 seconds. Multiple workstations must receive alarms within five seconds of each other.
6. Program Execution Frequency: Run capability of applications as often as five seconds, but selected consistent with mechanical process under control.
7. Performance: Programmable controllers shall execute DDC PID control loops, and scan and update process values and outputs at least once per second.
8. Reporting Accuracy and Stability of Control: Report values and maintain measured variables within tolerances as follows:
 - a. Water Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
 - b. Water Flow: Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
 - c. Water Pressure: Plus or minus 2 percent of full scale.
 - d. Space Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
 - e. Ducted Air Temperature: Plus or minus 1 deg F.
 - f. Outside Air Temperature: Plus or minus 2 deg F.
 - g. Dew Point Temperature: Plus or minus 3 deg F .
 - h. Temperature Differential: Plus or minus 0.25 deg F .
 - i. Relative Humidity: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 - j. Airflow (Pressurized Spaces): Plus or minus 3 percent of full scale.
 - k. Airflow (Measuring Stations): Plus or minus 5 percent of full scale.
 - l. Airflow (Terminal): Plus or minus 10 percent of full scale.
 - m. Air Pressure (Space): Plus or minus 0.01-inch wg.
 - n. Air Pressure (Ducts): Plus or minus 0.1-inch wg.
 - o. Carbon Monoxide: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.
 - p. Carbon Dioxide: Plus or minus 50 ppm.
 - q. Electrical: Plus or minus 5 percent of reading.

1.5 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical literature for each control device. Indicate dimensions, capacities, performance characteristics, electrical characteristics, finishes for materials, and installation and startup instructions for each type of product indicated.
 1. DDC System Hardware: Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number. Include technical data for operator workstation equipment, interface equipment, control units, transducers/transmitters, sensors, actuators, valves, relays/switches, control panels, and operator interface equipment.
 2. Control System Software: Include technical data for operating system software, operator interface, color graphics, and other third-party applications.
 3. Controlled Systems: Instrumentation list with element name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and product data. Include written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.

- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
1. Bill of materials of equipment indicating quantity, manufacturer, and model number.
 2. Schematic flow diagrams showing fans, pumps, coils, dampers, valves, and control devices.
 3. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
 4. Details of control panel faces, including controls, instruments, and labeling.
 5. Written description of sequence of operation.
 6. Schedule of dampers including size, leakage, and flow characteristics.
 7. Schedule of valves including flow characteristics.
 8. DDC System Hardware:
 - a. Wiring diagrams for control units with termination numbers.
 - b. Schematic diagrams and floor plans for field sensors and control hardware.
 - c. Schematic diagrams for control, communication, and power wiring, showing trunk data conductors and wiring between operator workstation and control unit locations.
 9. Control System Software: List of color graphics indicating monitored systems, data (connected and calculated) point addresses, output schedule, and operator notations.
 10. Controlled Systems:
 - a. Schematic diagrams of each controlled system with control points labeled and control elements graphically shown, with wiring.
 - b. Scaled drawings showing mounting, routing, and wiring of elements including bases and special construction.
 - c. Written description of sequence of operation including schematic diagram.
 - d. Points list.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each color required, of each type of thermostat or sensor cover.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.
- B. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certify that each proposed DDC system component is BACnet compatible to tie into the existing BMS system.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.
- D. Software Upgrade Kit: For Owner to use in modifying software to suit future systems revisions or monitoring and control revisions.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.8 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC instrumentation and control system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - 1. Maintenance instructions and lists of spare parts for each type of control device and compressed-air station.
 - 2. Interconnection wiring diagrams with identified and numbered system components and devices.
 - 3. Keyboard illustrations and step-by-step procedures indexed for each operator function.
 - 4. Inspection period, cleaning methods, cleaning materials recommended, and calibration tolerances.
 - 5. Calibration records and list of set points.
- B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation: Include the following:
 - 1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 - 2. Program Software Backup: On a magnetic media or compact disc, complete with data files.
 - 3. Device address list.
 - 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.
 - 5. Software license required by and installed for DDC workstations and control systems.

1.9 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Replacement Materials: One replacement assembly actuator for each unique damper actuator, valve actuator, DDC controller, and thermostat.

1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Automatic control system manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of system components required for this Project.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with ASHRAE 135 for DDC system components.

1.11 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Factory-Mounted Components: Where control devices specified in this Section are indicated to be factory mounted on equipment, arrange for shipping of control devices to equipment manufacturer.

- B. System Software: Update to latest version of software at Project completion.

1.12 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with plans and room details before installation.
- B. Coordinate equipment with Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" and Section 283112 "Zoned (DC Loop) Fire-Alarm System" to achieve compatibility with equipment that interfaces with that system.
- C. Coordinate supply of conditioned electrical branch circuits for control units and operator workstation.
- D. Coordinate equipment with Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" to achieve compatibility of communication interfaces.
- E. Coordinate equipment with Section 262416 "Panelboards" to achieve compatibility with starter coils and annunciation devices.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 CONTROL SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Schneider Electric or approved vendor.
- B. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, and accessories to control mechanical systems.
- C. Control system shall consist of sensors, indicators, actuators, final control elements, interface equipment, other apparatus, accessories, and software connected to distributed controllers operating in multiuser, multitasking environment on token-passing network and programmed to control mechanical systems. An operator workstation permits interface with the network via dynamic color graphics with each mechanical system, building floor plan, and control device depicted by point-and-click graphics.

2.3 DDC EQUIPMENT

- A. Operator Workstation: Tie into existing operator workstation. PC-based microcomputer(s) with minimum configuration as follows:
- B. Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with programmable, nonvolatile, random-access memory; local operator access and display panel; integral interface equipment; and backup power source.
 - 1. Units monitor or control each I/O point; process information; execute commands from other control units, devices, and operator stations; and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
 - d. Software applications, scheduling, and alarm processing.
 - e. Testing and developing control algorithms without disrupting field hardware and controlled environment.
 - 3. Standard Application Programs:
 - a. Electric Control Programs: Demand limiting, duty cycling, automatic time scheduling, start/stop time optimization, night setback/setup, on-off control with differential sequencing, staggered start, antishort cycling, PID control, DDC with fine tuning, and trend logging.
 - b. HVAC Control Programs: Optimal run time, supply-air reset, and enthalpy switchover.
 - c. Chiller Control Programs: Control function of condenser-water reset, chilled-water reset, and equipment sequencing.
 - d. Programming Application Features: Include trend point; alarm processing and messaging; weekly, monthly, and annual scheduling; energy calculations; run-time totalization; and security access.
 - e. Remote communications.
 - f. Maintenance management.
 - g. Units of Measure: Inch-pound and SI (metric).
 - 4. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 5. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
 - 6. BTL Certification: BACnet Testing Laboratories 135-2004 Listed BACnet Building Controller (B-BC).
- C. Local Control Units: Modular, comprising processor board with electronically programmable, nonvolatile, read-only memory; and backup power source.

1. Units monitor or control each I/O point, process information, and download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 2. Stand-alone mode control functions operate regardless of network status. Functions include the following:
 - a. Global communications.
 - b. Discrete/digital, analog, and pulse I/O.
 - c. Monitoring, controlling, or addressing data points.
 3. Local operator interface provides for download from or upload to operator workstation or diagnostic terminal unit.
 4. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Control units shall use ASHRAE 135 protocol and communicate using ISO 8802-3 (Ethernet) datalink/physical layer protocol.
 5. BTL Certification: BACnet Testing Laboratories 135-2004 Listed BACnet Building Controller (B-BC).
- D. I/O Interface: Hardwired inputs and outputs may tie into system through controllers. Protect points so that shorting will cause no damage to controllers.
1. Binary Inputs: Allow monitoring of on-off signals without external power.
 2. Pulse Accumulation Inputs: Accept up to 10 pulses per second.
 3. Analog Inputs: Allow monitoring of low-voltage (0- to 10-V dc), current (4 to 20 mA), or resistance signals.
 4. Binary Outputs: Provide on-off or pulsed low-voltage signal, selectable for normally open or normally closed operation.
 5. Analog Outputs: Provide modulating signal, either low voltage (0- to 10-V dc) or current (4 to 20 mA).
 6. Tri-State Outputs: Provide two coordinated binary outputs for control of three-point, floating-type electronic actuators.
 7. Universal I/Os: Provide software selectable binary or analog outputs.
- E. Power Supplies: Transformers with Class 2 current-limiting type or overcurrent protection; limit connected loads to 80 percent of rated capacity. DC power supply shall match output current and voltage requirements and be full-wave rectifier type with the following:
1. Output ripple of 5.0 mV maximum peak to peak.
 2. Combined 1 percent line and load regulation with 100-mic.sec. response time for 50 percent load changes.
 3. Built-in overvoltage and overcurrent protection and be able to withstand 150 percent overload for at least 3 seconds without failure.
- F. Power Line Filtering: Internal or external transient voltage and surge suppression for workstations or controllers with the following:
1. Minimum dielectric strength of 1000 V.
 2. Maximum response time of 10 nanoseconds.
 3. Minimum transverse-mode noise attenuation of 65 dB.
 4. Minimum common-mode noise attenuation of 150 dB at 40 to 100 Hz.

2.4 UNITARY CONTROLLERS

- A. Unitized, capable of stand-alone operation with sufficient memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements, and with sufficient I/O capacity for the application.
 - 1. Configuration: Local keypad and display; diagnostic LEDs for power, communication, and processor; wiring termination to terminal strip or card connected with ribbon cable; memory with bios; and 72 hour battery backup.
 - 2. Operating System: Manage I/O communication to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow central monitoring and alarms. Perform automatic system diagnostics; monitor system and report failures.
 - 3. ASHRAE 135 Compliance: Communicate using read (execute and initiate) and write (execute and initiate) property services defined in ASHRAE 135. Reside on network using MS/TP datalink/physical layer protocol and have service communication port for connection to diagnostic terminal unit.
 - 4. BTL Certification: BACnet Testing Laboratories 135-2004 Listed BACnet Building Controller (B-BC).
 - 5. Enclosure: Dustproof rated for operation at 32 to 120 deg F.
 - 6. Enclosure: Waterproof rated for operation at 40 to 150 deg F.

2.5 ELECTRONIC SENSORS

- A. Description: Vibration and corrosion resistant; for wall, immersion, or duct mounting as required.
- B. Thermistor Temperature Sensors and Transmitters:
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. Ebtron, Inc.
 - c. Heat-Timer Corporation.
 - d. I.T.M. Instruments Inc.
 - e. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - f. RDF Corporation.
 - 2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 0.5 deg F (0.3 deg C) at calibration point.
 - 3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
 - 4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft. (0.84 sq. m).
 - 5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 18 inches (460 mm) long, rigid; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 10 sq. ft..
 - 6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass or stainless-steel socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches.
 - 7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Exposed.

- c. Thermometer: Exposed.
 - d. Color: White
 - e. Orientation: Vertical.
 - 8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
 - 9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.
- C. RTDs and Transmitters:
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - c. RDF Corporation.
 - 2. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1.0 degree at calibration point.
 - 3. Wire: Twisted, shielded-pair cable.
 - 4. Insertion Elements in Ducts: Single point, 8 inches (200 mm) long; use where not affected by temperature stratification or where ducts are smaller than 9 sq. ft.
 - 5. Averaging Elements in Ducts: 18 inches long, rigid 24 inches; use where prone to temperature stratification or where ducts are larger than 9 sq. ft.; length as required.
 - 6. Insertion Elements for Liquids: Brass socket with minimum insertion length of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
 - 7. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - a. Set-Point Adjustment: Exposed.
 - b. Set-Point Indication: Keyed Exposed.
 - c. Thermometer: Exposed.
 - d. Color: White
 - 8. Outside-Air Sensors: Watertight inlet fitting, shielded from direct sunlight.
 - 9. Room Security Sensors: Stainless-steel cover plate with insulated back and security screws.
- D. Humidity Sensors: Bulk polymer sensor element.
- 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. General Eastern Instruments.
 - c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
 - e. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - f. Vaisala.
 - 2. Accuracy: 2 percent full range with linear output.
 - 3. Room Sensor Range: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity.
 - 4. Room Sensor Cover Construction: Manufacturer's standard locking covers.
 - 5. Duct Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with element guard and mounting plate.

6. Outside-Air Sensor: 20 to 80 percent relative humidity range with mounting enclosure, suitable for operation at outdoor temperatures of 32 to 120 deg F.
 7. Duct and Sensors: With element guard and mounting plate, range of 0 to 100 percent relative humidity.
- E. Pressure Transmitters/Transducers:
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. BEC Controls Corporation.
 - b. General Eastern Instruments.
 - c. MAMAC Systems, Inc.
 - d. ROTRONIC Instrument Corp.
 - e. TCS/Basys Controls.
 - f. Vaisala.
 2. Static-Pressure Transmitter: Nondirectional sensor with suitable range for expected input, and temperature compensated.
 - a. Accuracy: 2 percent of full scale with repeatability of 0.5 percent.
 - b. Output: 4 to 20 mA.
 - c. Building Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 0.25-inch wg.
 - d. Duct Static-Pressure Range: 0- to 5-inch wg.
 3. Water Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
 4. Water Differential-Pressure Transducers: Stainless-steel diaphragm construction, suitable for service; minimum 150-psig operating pressure and tested to 300-psig; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
 5. Differential-Pressure Switch (Air or Water): Snap acting, with pilot-duty rating and with suitable scale range and differential.
 6. Pressure Transmitters: Direct acting for gas, liquid, or steam service; range suitable for system; linear output 4 to 20 mA.
- F. Room sensor accessories include the following:
1. Insulating Bases: For sensors located on exterior walls.

2.6 STATUS SENSORS

- A. Status Inputs for Electric Motors: Comply with ISA 50.00.01, current-sensing fixed- or split-core transformers with self-powered transmitter, adjustable and suitable for 175 percent of rated motor current.
- B. Current Switches: Self-powered, solid-state with adjustable trip current, selected to match current and system output requirements.

2.7 GAS DETECTION EQUIPMENT

- A. Carbon Dioxide Sensor and Transmitter: Single detectors using solid-state infrared sensors; suitable over a temperature range of 23 to 130 deg F and calibrated for 0 to 2000 ppm 5 year minimum calibration interval, with continuous or averaged reading, 4- to 20-mA output, for wall mounting.

2.8 FLOW MEASURING STATIONS

- A. Duct Airflow Station: Combination of air straightener and multiport, self-averaging pitot tube station.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Air Monitor Corporation.
 - b. Ebtron.
 - c. Tek-Air
- B. CHW and HHW Flow Meters: In-line or insertion type meter using vortex shedding or magnetic technology with no moving parts.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. EMCO Hydroflow
 - b. Badger Meter
 - c. ONICON

2.9 THERMOSTATS

- A. Manufacturers:
 - 1. Erie Controls.
 - 2. Danfoss Inc.; Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Div.
 - 3. Heat-Timer Corporation.
 - 4. Sauter Controls Corporation.
 - 5. tekmar Control Systems, Inc.
 - 6. Theben AG - Lumilite Control Technology, Inc.
- B. Line-Voltage, On-Off Thermostats: Bimetal-actuated, open contact or bellows-actuated, enclosed, snap-switch or equivalent solid-state type, with heat anticipator; listed for electrical rating; with concealed set-point adjustment, 55 to 85 deg F set-point range, and 2 deg F maximum differential.

2.10 ACTUATORS

- A. Electric Motors: Size to operate with sufficient reserve power to provide smooth modulating action or two-position action.

1. Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 2. Permanent Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Type: Gear trains completely oil immersed and sealed. Equip spring-return motors with integral spiral-spring mechanism in housings designed for easy removal for service or adjustment of limit switches, auxiliary switches, or feedback potentiometer.
 3. Nonspring-Return Motors for Valves Larger Than NPS 2-1/2: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
 4. Nonspring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running torque of 150 in. x lbf and breakaway torque of 300 in. x lbf.
 5. Spring-Return Motors for Dampers Larger Than 25 Sq. Ft.: Size for running and breakaway torque of 150 in. x lbf.
- B. Electronic Actuators: Direct-coupled type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated torque.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Belimo Aircontrols (USA), Inc.
 2. Valves: Size for torque required for valve close off at maximum pump differential pressure.
 3. Dampers: Size for running torque calculated as follows:
 - a. Parallel-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 7 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - b. Opposed-Blade Damper with Edge Seals: 5 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - c. Parallel-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 4 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - d. Opposed-Blade Damper without Edge Seals: 3 inch-lb/sq. ft. of damper.
 - e. Dampers with 2- to 3-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 1000 to 2500 fpm: Increase running torque by 1.5.
 - f. Dampers with 3- to 4-Inch wg of Pressure Drop or Face Velocities of 2500 to 3000 fpm: Increase running torque by 2.0.
 4. Coupling: V-bolt and V-shaped, toothed cradle.
 5. Overload Protection: Electronic overload or digital rotation-sensing circuitry.
 6. Fail-Safe Operation: Mechanical, spring-return mechanism. Provide external, manual gear release on nonspring-return actuators.
 7. Power Requirements (Two-Position Spring Return): 24-V ac.
 8. Power Requirements (Modulating): Maximum 10 VA at 24-V ac or 8 W at 24-V dc.
 9. Proportional Signal: 2- to 10-V dc or 4 to 20 mA, and 2- to 10-V dc position feedback signal.
 10. Temperature Rating: 40 to 104 deg F.
 11. Temperature Rating (Smoke Dampers): Minus 22 to plus 250 deg F.
 12. Run Time: Less than 120 seconds.

2.11 CONTROL VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Danfoss Inc.; Air Conditioning & Refrigeration Div.

2. Erie Controls.
 3. Hayward Industrial Products, Inc.
 4. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
 5. Neles-Jamesbury.
 6. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Skinner Valve Division.
 7. Pneuline Controls.
 8. Sauter Controls Corporation.
- B. Control Valves: Factory fabricated, of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Characterized Ball Valves: Pressure independent Valves shall have equal percentage flow characteristics for all CV's selected. Nominal body rating shall be not less than 400 psi. Minimum close off rating shall be not less than 200 psi. Valves shall incorporate double EPDM O-rings to prevent leakage through the stem. Valves shall have a flanged bonnet allowing for 4-way mounting of the actuator. Valves used for modulating service shall be sized to provide sufficient control authority on the system. For modulated flow, control valve shall incorporate a characterizing flow disc made of TEFZEL. Valves shall not be sized smaller than two pipe sizes less than the pipe size indicated on the drawings. Reduced port ball valves shall not be accepted.
- D. Butterfly Valves: 200-psig, 150-psig maximum pressure differential, ASTM A 126 cast-iron or ASTM A 536 ductile-iron body and bonnet, extended neck, stainless-steel stem, field-replaceable EPDM or Buna N sleeve and stem seals.
1. Body Style: Lug.
 2. Disc Type: Stainless Steel.
 3. Sizing: 1-psig maximum pressure drop at design flow rate.
- E. Terminal Unit Control Valves: Bronze body, bronze trim, two or three ports as indicated, replaceable plugs and seats, and union and threaded ends.
1. Rating: Class 125 for service at 125 psig and 250 deg F operating conditions.
 2. Sizing: 5-psig maximum pressure drop at design flow rate, to close against pump shutoff head.
 3. Flow Characteristics: Two-way valves shall have equal percentage characteristics; three-way valves shall have linear characteristics.

2.12 DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Air Balance Inc.
 2. Don Park Inc.; Autodamp Div.
 3. TAMCO (T. A. Morrison & Co. Inc.).
 4. United Enertech Corp.
 5. Vent Products Company, Inc.
- B. Dampers: AMCA-rated, opposed-blade design; 0.108-inch- (2.8-mm-) minimum thick, galvanized-steel or 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) minimum thick, extruded-aluminum frames with

holes for duct mounting; damper blades shall not be less than 0.064-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick galvanized steel with maximum blade width of 8 inches (200 mm) and length of 48 inches (1220 mm).

1. Secure blades to 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with oil-impregnated sintered bronze blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
3. Edge Seals, Standard Pressure Applications: Closed-cell neoprene.
4. Edge Seals, Low-Leakage Applications: Use inflatable blade edging or replaceable rubber blade seals and spring-loaded stainless-steel side seals, rated for leakage at less than 10 cfm per sq. ft. (50 L/s per sq. m) of damper area, at differential pressure of 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) when damper is held by torque of 50 in. x lbf (5.6 N x m); when tested according to AMCA 500D.

2.13 CONTROL CABLE

- A. Electronic and fiber-optic cables for control wiring are specified in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that power supply is available to control units and operator workstation.
- B. Verify that duct-, pipe-, and equipment-mounted devices are installed before proceeding with installation.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install software in control units and operator workstation(s). Implement all features of programs to specified requirements and as appropriate to sequence of operation.
- B. Connect and configure equipment and software to achieve sequence of operation specified.
- C. Verify location of thermostats, humidistats, and other exposed control sensors with Drawings and room details before installation. Install devices 48 inches above the floor.
 1. Install averaging elements in ducts and plenums in crossing or zigzag pattern.
- D. Install guards on thermostats in the following locations:
 1. Entrances.
 2. Public areas.
 3. Where indicated.

- E. Install damper motors on outside of duct in warm areas, not in locations exposed to outdoor temperatures.
- F. Install labels and nameplates to identify control components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- G. Install electronic and fiber-optic cables according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.3 ELECTRICAL WIRING AND CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install raceways, boxes, and cabinets according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install building wire and cable according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Install signal and communication cable according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."
 - 1. Conceal cable, except in mechanical rooms and areas where other conduit and piping are exposed.
 - 2. Install exposed cable in raceway.
 - 3. Install concealed cable in raceway.
 - 4. Bundle and harness multiconductor instrument cable in place of single cables where several cables follow a common path.
 - 5. Fasten flexible conductors, bridging cabinets and doors, along hinge side; protect against abrasion. Tie and support conductors.
 - 6. Number-code or color-code conductors for future identification and service of control system, except local individual room control cables.
 - 7. Install wire and cable with sufficient slack and flexible connections to allow for vibration of piping and equipment.
- D. Connect manual-reset limit controls independent of manual-control switch positions. Automatic duct heater resets may be connected in interlock circuit of power controllers.
- E. Connect hand-off-auto selector switches to override automatic interlock controls when switch is in hand position.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest.

2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
3. Test each point through its full operating range to verify that safety and operating control set points are as required.
4. Test each control loop to verify stable mode of operation and compliance with sequence of operation. Adjust PID actions.
5. Test each system for compliance with sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks.

C. DDC Verification:

1. Verify that instruments are installed before calibration, testing, and loop or leak checks.
2. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.
3. Check instrument installation for direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, and other applicable considerations.
4. Check flow instruments. Inspect tag number and line and bore size, and verify that inlet side is identified and that meters are installed correctly.
5. Check temperature instruments and material and length of sensing elements.
6. Check control valves. Verify that they are in correct direction.
7. Check DDC system as follows:
 - a. Verify that DDC controller power supply is from emergency power supply, if applicable.
 - b. Verify that wires at control panels are tagged with their service designation and approved tagging system.
 - c. Verify that spare I/O capacity has been provided.
 - d. Verify that DDC controllers are protected from power supply surges.

D. Replace damaged or malfunctioning controls and equipment and repeat testing procedures.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Calibrating and Adjusting:

1. Calibrate instruments.
2. Make three-point calibration test for both linearity and accuracy for each analog instrument.
3. Calibrate equipment and procedures using manufacturer's written recommendations and instruction manuals. Use test equipment with accuracy at least double that of instrument being calibrated.
4. Control System Inputs and Outputs:
 - a. Check analog inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
 - b. Check analog outputs using milliampere meter at 0, 50, and 100 percent output.
 - c. Check digital inputs using jumper wire.
 - d. Check digital outputs using ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.
 - e. Check resistance temperature inputs at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistant source.
5. Pressure:

- a. Calibrate pressure transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span.
- 6. Temperature:
 - a. Calibrate resistance temperature transmitters at 0, 50, and 100 percent of span using a precision-resistance source.
- 7. Stroke and adjust control valves and dampers, following the manufacturer's recommended procedure, so that valve or damper is 100 percent open and closed.
- 8. Provide diagnostic and test instruments for calibration and adjustment of system.
- 9. Provide written description of procedures and equipment for calibrating each type of instrument. Submit procedures review and approval before initiating startup procedures.
- B. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to three visits to Project during other than normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain HVAC instrumentation and controls. Refer to Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION 23 09 00

SECTION 23 09 80 – MECHANICAL COMMISSIONING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Commissioning is a designed process of documentation, training, adjustment, testing, and verification performed to ensure that the finished facility operates as intended. Provide complete and operational commissioned mechanical systems. The commissioning requirements specified in this section are in addition to the requirements specified in other sections of specifications for this project.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. This section includes the systematic process of commissioning for all sections of Division 23.
 - 1. Commissioning Plan.
 - 2. Commissioning Schedule.
 - 3. Commissioning Basis of Design.
 - 4. Commissioning One-Line Diagrams.
 - 5. Code Compliance Verification.
 - 6. Installation Verification.
 - 7. Control Software Verification.
 - 8. Start-Up Verification.
 - 9. Test, Adjust, and Balance (TAB) Verification.
 - 10. Commissioning Procedure.
 - 11. Functional Performance Test.
 - 12. Operations and Maintenance (O & M) Manuals Verification.
 - 13. Owner Training Verification.
 - 14. Seasonal Commissioning & Occupancy Variation

1.3 EQUIPMENT UTILIZED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Provide the required instruments and components for measurements, verifications, and full commissioning of mechanical systems.
- B. Calibrate the instruments and components in accordance with National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST).

1.4 RELATED DIVISIONS

- A. Related Divisions include Division 2, Division 22, Division 23 and Division 26.

1.5 REFERENCES

- A. ASHRAE: American Society of Heating Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers. The HVAC Commissioning Process ASHRAE Guidelines 1-1996.
- B. NIST: National Institute of Standards and Technology.
- C. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau Procedural Standards for building systems commissioning – latest edition.
- D. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council. The AABC Commissioning Guideline.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Commissioning Authority: The commissioning authority is the designated company that implements the overall commissioning. The commissioning authority shall have commissioned minimum five projects of similar scope to this project in the last five years. The commissioning authority shall be an independent third party company. The mechanical contractor is not eligible to serve as the commissioning authority. The commissioning authority shall be a subcontractor to the general contractor or the owner and not the mechanical contractor. Obtain prior approval.
- B. Test Engineer: The Test Engineer is the person employed by the Commissioning Authority who actually performs the test. The Test Engineer shall have a minimum of three years of experience in Commissioning and a minimum of three years of experience in start-up of similar mechanical systems specified in this project. Obtain prior approval.
- C. Commissioning Agent: The commissioning agent is the person employed by the commissioning authority who oversees the commissioning process and assures coordination with other trades. The commissioning agent shall have a minimum of three years of experience in commissioning and minimum five years of experience in start-up of similar mechanical systems. Obtain prior approval.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination and management: Provide overall coordination and management of the commissioning program. The commissioning team shall be comprised of: contractors, subcontractors, commissioning authority, and owner representatives.
- B. Assure all applicable forms are submitted and are complete for each section of Division 23. The commissioning performed under this section is in addition to commissioning performed by the manufacturer and contractors for each section of Division 23 or each piece of equipment.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE FOR CONTRACTOR'S SHOP DRAWINGS

- A. The shop drawings shall be reviewed and approved by the commissioning authority prior to construction. Assure proper coordination between trades. Assure proper access for service. Review and discuss at monthly commissioning meetings.
- B. Assure the electrical requirements of the actual equipment supplied by mechanical contractor are verified, reviewed, and coordinated with electrical and other trades. Review and discuss at monthly commissioning meetings.

- C. A copy of all mechanical submittals shall be submitted to commissioning authority for review, reference, and coordination.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

- A. Commissioning Quality Assurance: Submit qualification years of experience, certifications, resumes and company profile.
 - 1. Commissioning Authority qualifications and certifications.
 - 2. Test Engineer qualifications.
 - 3. Commissioning Agent qualifications.
- B. General: Submit the following in accordance with general and supplemental conditions of the contract and Division 1 specification sections. Submit a comprehensive and detailed commissioning package within thirty (30) days upon authorization to proceed. The commissioning package shall include all the required submittal items, plans, forms, schedules, and procedures in a 3-ring binder with a detailed table of contents. Upon completion of the commissioning process, resubmit the entire commissioning package along with results, certified forms, and requirements.
 - 1. Commissioning Plan.
 - 2. Commissioning Schedule.
 - 3. Commissioning Basis of Design.
 - 4. Commissioning One-Line Diagrams.
 - 5. Code Compliance Verification.
 - 6. Installation Verification.
 - 7. Control Software Verification.
 - 8. Start-Up Verification.
 - 9. Test, Adjust, and Balance (TAB) Verification.
 - 10. Commissioning Procedure.
 - 11. Functional Performance Test.
 - 12. Operations and Maintenance (O & M) Manuals Verification.
 - 13. Owner Training Verification.
 - 14. Commissioning Authority Qualifications.
 - 15. Test Engineer Qualifications.
 - 16. Commissioning Agent Qualifications.

1.10 COMMISSIONING MEETINGS

- A. Schedule, organize, and coordinate commissioning meetings. The commissioning agent shall lead these meetings. Request attendance of the owner and end-users, and owner's maintenance/staff. Provide a comprehensive agenda to all participants seven calendar days prior to each meeting. Compile and distribute meeting minutes to all participants within seven calendar days after each meeting. The construction coordination meetings by the general contractor are not a substitution for a commissioning meeting. Commissioning meetings shall be conducted in addition to the construction coordination meetings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. Provide test equipment, instruments, components, and tools as required for a complete commissioning of the mechanical system.

2.2 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that equipment is calibrated properly in conformance with National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) and NEBB requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMISSIONING PLAN

- A. Develop a commissioning plan and identify all commissioning activities. The intent of the commissioning plan is to expose all critical issues and resolve them with input from the construction team at early stages of planning.
- B. Identify responsible parties for producing various procedures, reports, Owner Notifications, and forms. Discuss and confirm at monthly commissioning meetings.
- C. Describe the testing and acceptance method for each system. Provide applicable forms. Complete forms to assure acceptable compliance.
- D. Clearly identify each subcontractor's responsibilities and participation in each test.
- E. Clearly identify instruments for each test.
- F. Provide an operational description, defining design criteria, design intent, code requirements, specifics of the equipment to be provided, sequence of operation, operating priorities, and protocols.
- G. 72 Hour Trend Data: Provide 72 hour trend data of all DDC points utilizing the building automation system in accordance with Section 15950. The trend data shall verify the proper operation of all components, equipment and the system. Coordinate with the building automation contractor. Provide separate 72 hour trend data report for heating and cooling modes.
- H. Review the sequence of operation in detail. Assure there is a meaningful plan for implementation. Verify the sequence of operation meets the owner's use requirements. Review and discuss at monthly commissioning meeting.
- I. Request a list of all mechanical equipment with potential for excessive noise and vibration. Field verify the actual location of these equipment. Review and discuss at monthly commissioning meetings.
- J. Field verify and review the outside air intake openings to the building. Examine the approximate exhaust air discharge and plumbing vents. Review and discuss at monthly commissioning meetings.

- K. Request a list of all mechanical equipment and controllers that require emergency power supply. Verify compliance. Review and discuss at commissioning meetings.
- L. Coordinate the entire commissioning plan with control subcontractor and other trades.

3.2 COMMISSIONING SCHEDULE

- A. Integrate functional performance testing and commissioning requirements into the Critical Path Method (CPM) master construction schedule.
 - 1. Prior to the beginning of start-up or functional performance testing activities, update the schedule of commissioning activities.
 - 2. Two weeks prior to the beginning of start-up or functional performance testing activities, provide a detailed two-week look-ahead schedule. The two-week look-ahead schedule shall identify the date, time, beginning location, contractor personnel required, and anticipated duration for each start-up or test activity.
- B. Commissioning of systems shall proceed per the criteria established in the specific sections that follow with activities to be performed on a timely basis. Commissioning of systems may proceed prior to final completion of systems. The Test Engineer must be available to respond promptly to avoid delay to the CPM Schedule.
- C. Problems observed shall be addressed immediately in terms of notification to responsible parties and the engineer. Take actions to correct deficiencies.
- D. Coordination with Owner's Representatives:
 - 1. The commissioning authority shall notify Owner's Representative when start-up and test activities are to take place.
 - 2. Notify the Owner's Representative in writing of the date, time, location, and anticipated duration of start-up and test activities as required in schedule above.
 - 3. Provide written timely notice to Owner's Representative of any changes in date, time, location or anticipated duration of start-up, and test activities. A minimum of 72 hours in advance is required.
- E. Provide a complete and comprehensive schedule for commissioning. Present this schedule in a Microsoft Project format. Coordinate with all parties.

3.3 COMMISSIONING BASIS OF DESIGN

- A. Prepare commissioning basis of design narratives. Incorporate the effect of approved substitution requests, change orders and responses to requests for clarifications. Basis of design includes design criteria and operation descriptions for systems.
 - 1. Design criteria shall include design conditions for each space as follows: indoor dry bulb temperature; indoor relative humidity; outdoor dry bulb temperature; outdoor wet bulb temperature; occupancy and hours.
 - 2. Operations description shall include design intent, basic system type, capacity and sizing criteria, redundancy, diversity, automatic temperature control and sequence of operation,

- intended operation under all seasonal loads, changeover procedures, part-load strategies, occupied/unoccupied modes of operation, design setpoints of control systems with permissible adjustments, operation of system components in life-safety modes, energy conservation procedures, and any other engineered operational mode of the systems.
3. Review the construction documentation detail. Provide a narrative indicating anticipated issues that may impact start-up, test and balance, and commissioning process.
- B. Prepare and update final commissioning basis of design incorporating any changes to the system, equipment, etc. that took place during construction, start-ups, functional testing, etc.

3.4 COMMISSIONING ONE-LINE DIAGRAMS

- A. Provide commissioning one-line diagrams. Incorporate the effect of approved substitution requests, change orders and responses to requests for clarifications. One-line diagrams shall include, but not be limited to; air distribution and hydronic flow as well as control schematics.
1. Provide one-line diagrams for the HVAC supply and return air system. Indicate the specified CFM for each zone. Verify the overall routing and balancing criteria.
 2. Provide one-line diagrams for CHW, HW and other mechanical systems. Verify the overall balancing scheme.
 3. One-line diagrams are intended to support narrative system descriptions, commissioning Basis of Design, and the overall commissioning process.
 4. Examine the construction site to assure proper passage for return air in accordance with the one-line diagram.
 5. Verify the overall building pressurization scheme in reference to outside air, supply air and exhaust air.

3.5 CODE COMPLIANCE VERIFICATION

- A. Review the contractor's shop drawings, generate a report and assure full compliance with California Mechanical Code (CMC), California Plumbing Code (CPC), and National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA), as well as other governing codes. There shall be no exception. Report deficiencies prior to ordering and installing materials. Verify installation compliance upon completion of the project. Verify completion of all required sign offs from regulatory agencies.

3.6 INSTALLATION VERIFICATION

- A. Observation Reports: During construction, observe the work of the prime HVAC and plumbing contractors and subcontractors to ensure that all installations are being made in accordance with the intent of the contract documents. Provide a one page "HVAC Commissioning Observation Report" and a one page "Plumbing Observation Report". Present these at the commissioning meeting.
- B. Before system start-up begins, conduct, document and publish a final installation verification audit/report for both mechanical and plumbing installations. The audit shall include, but not be limited to, a check of:

1. Piping specialties including balance, control, and isolation valves.
 2. Ductwork specialty items including turning devices, balance, fire, smoke, and control dampers, and access doors.
 3. Control sensor types and locations.
 4. Identification of piping, valves, starters, gauges, and thermometers.
 5. Documentation of prestart-up tests performed.
 6. Report deficiencies in regards to any non-ducted supply/return air pathways that may be obstructed by walls or other obstacles.
- C. Verify that the plumbing installation meet the specified guidelines and applicable codes. This, as a minimum, shall include the following:
1. Verification of proper access to plumbing components and valves.
 2. Verification of proper labeling of pipes and components.
 3. Verification of successful completion of specified tests.
 4. Verification of compliance with CPC and ADA requirements.
- D. If any work is found to be incomplete, inaccessible, incorrect, or non-functional, make note of deficiencies, report and correct the deficiencies before system start-up work proceeds.
- E. Upon installation of all equipment, devices, vibration isolators, etc., provide a written confirmation from manufacturer's representative indicating such devices are installed and operating within manufacturer's recommendations and tolerances.

3.7 CONTROL SOFTWARE VERIFICATION

- A. Verify all the required graphic presentations are completed.
- B. Verify the room numbers are updated and correct.
- C. Verify the equipment numbering methods are conducted and meet the facility standards.
- D. Verify that a graphic presentation is shown in each zone.
- E. Verify compatibility and compliance with other equipment as specified.
- F. Verify interface with other systems where specified.
- G. Verify proper software applications for 72-hour trending.
- H. Verify proper programming for the sequence of operation.
- I. Verify proper software licenses are provided to the owner.
- J. Provide a compliance report confirming the results of control software verification as described herein.

3.8 START-UP VERIFICATION

- A. Verify that the start-up procedures recommended by manufacturers are coordinated.

- B. Coordinate and notify Owner of start-up activities. Schedule at least three working days in advance. Commissioning Authority shall physically witness start-up procedures.
- C. Verify that start-up deficiency list forms are prepared to report deficiencies discovered in conjunction with system start-up. Start-up deficiency forms shall indicate the system being started-up; the location and identification of the deficient equipment/material; date of observation; initials of the observer; observed deficiency; date of correction; initials of person making the correction; and corrective action taken.
- D. Issue start-up deficiency report forms to the Contractor for corrective action. Assure and document that all start-up deficiency list items have been corrected. Document compliance.

3.9 TEST, ADJUST, AND BALANCE (TAB) VERIFICATION

- A. Coordinate with air and hydronic balancing contractor. Advise the TAB firm when systems are complete and ready for balancing.
- B. Field verify the conditions above ceiling before ceiling tiles are installed.
- C. Verify the completion of the TAB work prior to commencing any Functional Performance Test (FPT) activities that may be adversely affected by improper balancing.
- D. Randomly check the air and hydronic balancing at the presence of the owner's representative and the mechanical engineer. Document compliance.

3.10 COMMISSIONING PROCEDURE

- A. Sequence of Testing: Commissioning shall proceed from lower to higher levels of complexity. In general, the order of testing from lowest to highest is:
 - 1. Component functional performance tests (of motors, actuators, sensors, VFD's, etc.) and start-up.
 - 2. Equipment functional performance tests (safety devices, low load conditions, etc.).
 - 3. Subsystems functional performance tests.
 - 4. System functional performance tests.
- B. Retesting: Repeat, at no additional cost to the owner, the complete functional test procedure for each test for which acceptable results are not achieved. Repeat test until acceptable results are achieved. Fill out a new functional performance test data form for each retest.
- C. Testing of VFD's: Assure that all the VFD's are tested and balanced by the factory and test and balance company. Verify that unstable frequency ranges are by-passed. Perform random testing to verify. Assure final settings are accurate.
- D. Assure that the commissioning performed by the mechanical contractor and equipment manufacturer for other sections of Division 23 are in conformance with specified requirements.
- E. Correction of Deficiencies:
 - 1. Correct functional performance test deficiencies promptly and schedule retest.

2. Corrections during functional performance test are generally prohibited to avoid consuming the time of personnel waiting for the test, but not involved in making the correction. Exceptions will be allowed if the cause of the failure is obvious and corrective action can be completed in less than five minutes.
- F. Owner's Witnesses: Witnesses will be designated by the Owner to observe the commissioning process. Owner's witnesses shall provide no labor or materials in the commissioning process. The only function of the Owner's witnesses shall be to observe and comment on the progress and results of commissioning.

3.11 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST

- A. Initiate, develop, and document functional performance test procedures. Include functional performance test procedures data sheets for each component, equipment and the system. Determine actual system performance and compliance with the design. Personnel experienced in the technical aspects of each system to be commissioned shall be engaged.
 - B. Test procedures shall fully describe system configuration and steps required for each test and be appropriately documented so that another party can repeat the tests with virtually identical results.
 - C. Acceptance test procedures must confirm the performance of systems. Comply with the requirements of the contract documents. The acceptance test shall meet the design intent and applicable code under which the project was permitted. When a system is accepted, the Commissioning Authority must be assured that the system is complete, works as intended, is correctly documented, and that the Owner's staff is trained in the operation and maintenance of the system.
 - D. The mechanical equipment requires integral safety devices to stop/prevent equipment operation unless minimum safety standards or conditions are met. This shall include adequate oil pressure, proof-of-flow, non-freezing conditions, and maximum head pressure. Functional performance test procedures shall demonstrate the actual performance of safety shutoffs in real or closely-simulated conditions of failure. Document compliance.
 - E. Notify all personnel on the project site prior to any start-up or testing which may create a hazardous or dangerous condition. Coordinate with other trades.
1. Functional Performance Test (FPT) Procedures:
 - a. Each procedure shall have a unique alphanumeric designator.
 - b. The same procedure may be applied to multiple identical pieces of equipment or systems.
 - c. Procedures shall reference the applicable specification section upon which the procedure is based.
 - d. These procedures will be reviewed for technical depth, clarity of documentation, and compliance with acceptance criteria.
 - e. Identify the value for all setpoints and inputs, positions of adjustable devices, including valves, dampers, and switches.
 - f. Identify the range of acceptable results for each condition tested.

- g. FPT procedures shall be detailed test instructions, written with sufficient step-by-step information to allow a test to be repeated under identical conditions with repeatable results.
 - 2. Functional Performance Test (FPT) Data Forms:
 - a. Identify each functional performance test data form by a unique designator consisting of the applicable functional performance test procedure designator followed by a dash digit suffix to distinguish multiple repetitions of the same procedure.
 - b. Include space to record the following: description of the procedure; whether the form is for a retest of a failed procedure; identification and location of the equipment being tested; identification of instrumentation used by serial number; observed conditions at each step of the procedure; acceptable results as specified elsewhere; date of the test; names of technicians performing the procedure; name and signature of the Test Engineer; and name and signature of the Commissioning Authority or Owner-designated witness. Signature of witness shall only indicate concurrence with reported results and observations. Acceptance of the results will be reported separately by the Commissioning Authority after review of the FPT data forms.
 - 3. Functional Performance Test Deficiency Report Forms: Include space to record the following: Associated functional performance test data form number; date of test; name of person reporting the deficiency; description of the observations associated with the failure of the test; cause of the failure, if apparent at the time of the test; date and description of corrective action taken; name and signature of person taking corrective action; and schedule for retest.
- F. Verify proper operation of LON, LAN, or gateway connections to VFD's and other equipment. Verify that all the required information is actually available at the operator's station.

3.12 OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE (O & M) MANUALS VERIFICATION

- A. Review, verify and approve the accuracy of O & M manuals of the work related to commissioning for compliance with the requirements of Division 1 and Division 23.
- B. Assure O & M manuals are concise, to the point, and tailored specifically to this facility.
- C. Assure O & M manuals include standard technical literature relevant to the operation and maintenance of the provided equipment. The literature shall be specifically oriented to the equipment provided, indicating all operation and maintenance procedures, parts lists, assembly/disassembly diagrams, and related information. Wiring diagrams must be complete and specific to the equipment provided. Document compliance.

3.13 OWNER TRAINING VERIFICATION

- A. The purpose of owner training verification is to assure coordination between various sections of Division 23 and to assure the owner's appropriate personnel receive adequate training. In

addition to the training specified under other sections of Division 23, provide 40 hours of total building operation training for mechanical systems.

- B. Coordinate and provide a master training schedule for all Division 23 training requirements for components, equipment, and systems. Present the master training schedule in a Microsoft Office program. Assure training is provided for all critical items. Assure the presenters are qualified. Verify the competency of the owner operators. The training plan shall include the following for each training session:
 - 1. Dates, start and finish times, and locations.
 - 2. Outline of the information to be presented.
 - 3. Names and qualifications of presenters.
 - 4. List of texts and other materials required to support training.
 - 5. Names and positions of those attending.
- C. Obtain assistance from appropriate subcontractors and vendors to provide training for the Owner's operations staff.
- D. Provide videotape documentation of training of the Owner's staff for each system. Training shall be in a classroom setting with the appropriate schematics, hand-outs, and audio/visual training aids. A copy of the training videotape shall be included in the final commissioning report.
- E. Catalog all training videotapes and deliver to the Owner with the O & M manuals.
- F. Host each training session:
 - 1. Provide program overview and curriculum guidance.
 - 2. Obtain signatures of attendees on a sign-in list.
- G. Equipment vendors shall provide training on the specifics of each system and philosophy, troubleshooting, and repair techniques as specified in the relevant sections of this specification.
- H. Installation subcontractors shall provide training on peculiarities specific to this project and job specific experience as specified in the relevant sections of this specification.
- I. Verify emergency procedures and verify disaster recovery plans. Emergency procedures have been provided in the training sessions.

END OF SECTION 23 09 80

SECTION 23 11 23
FACILITY NATURAL-GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.

1.02 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig (690 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: One pressure range. Primary pressure is 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa) but not more than 2 psig (13.8 kPa).

1.04 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch per foot (1:50).
 - 2. Detail mounting, supports, and valve arrangements for pressure regulator assembly.

1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.

- B. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.

1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- D. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Section 08 31 00 "Access Doors."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.

4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
5. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - b. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
 - c. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
 - d. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.

2.02 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.03 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- C. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
 1. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
 2. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
 3. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
 4. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
 5. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 6. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
 7. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
 8. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

9. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

2.04 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Description:
 - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
 - b. Pressure Rating: [125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C)] [150 psig (1035 kPa)] [250 psig (1725 kPa)].
 - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

2.05 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.03 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
 - 3. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.

- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator.

3.04 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other

metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.

3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator.
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.05 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- C. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.06 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.

3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.07 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- C. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
 4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).

3.08 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.09 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification.
- B. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
 - d. Color: Black.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.12 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.13 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- B. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.

- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.14 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa)

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.15 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be the following:
 - 1. Three-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with stainless steel trim.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 23 00 – REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections Section 230001 Mechanical General Provisions, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping and installation for air-conditioning applications.
- B. This section includes the field installation of compressors, condensers, coils, condensing units, and all other fittings, devices, and accessories required to complete the refrigeration systems as shown on the drawings.
- C. For detailed installation instructions, refer to the manufacturer's installation manuals. The contractor shall provide all necessary piping, refrigerant, and accessories required for a complete operating system.
- D. This contractor is responsible for unloading, assembling, and installing all equipment and specialties.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve and refrigerant piping specialty indicated. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
 - 1. Copper Tube and Fittings.
 - 2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
 - 3. Solenoid valves.
 - 4. Hot-gas bypass valves.
 - 5. Filter dryers.
 - 6. Strainers.
 - 7. Pressure-regulating valves.

- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.
- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.50.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8 Class BCuP-5
- E. Flexible Connectors:
 - 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 - 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 - 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
 - 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 - 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Diaphragm Packless Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze; globe design with straight-through or angle pattern.
 - 2. Diaphragm: Phosphor bronze and stainless steel with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem and hand wheel.
 - 4. Seat: Nylon.
 - 5. End Connections: Socket, union, or flanged.
 - 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 - 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- B. Packed-Angle Valves:
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Forged brass or cast bronze.
 - 2. Packing: Molded stem, back seating, and replaceable under pressure.
 - 3. Operator: Rising stem.
 - 4. Seat: Nonrotating, self-aligning polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 5. Seal Cap: Forged-brass or valox hex cap.
 - 6. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
 - 7. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 - 8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.
- C. Service Valves (Shrader Valve):
 - 1. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
 - 2. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Copper spring.
 - 5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
- D. Solenoid Valves: Comply with ARI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
 - 1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 - 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 - 4. End Connections: Threaded.

5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
- E. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
 2. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat Disc: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Threaded.
 5. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
 6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- F. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with ARI 750.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
 5. Suction Temperature: 40 deg F.
 6. Balanced Port design
 7. Externally equalized
 8. Superheat: Adjustable.
 9. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
 10. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.
 11. Working Pressure Rating: 700 psig.
- G. Hot-Gas Bypass Valves: Comply with UL 429; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
1. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Ductile iron or steel.
 2. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
 3. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
 4. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 5. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
 7. End Connections: Socket.
 8. Set Pressure: Adjustable
 9. Throttling Range: Maximum 5 psig.
 10. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 11. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- H. Evaporator Pressure Regulators
1. Maximum rated pressure 450 psig
 2. Adjustable settings up to 150 psig
 3. Normally open design
 4. High side pilot operation
- I. Straight-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

J. Angle-Type Strainers:

1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

K. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:

1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

L. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 710.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: Solid core molecular sieve style
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: Based upon equipment capacity
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

M. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 710.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: Solid core molecular sieve style.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Rated Flow: Based upon equipment capacity

9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

N. Mufflers:

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or flare.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

O. Receivers: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Comply with UL 207; listed and labeled by an NRTL.
2. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
3. Tappings: Inlet, outlet, liquid level indicator, and safety relief valve.
4. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

P. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with ARI 495.

1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

2.3 REFRIGERANTS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.

B. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANTS

- A. Lines NPS 3/4 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Lines NPS 1/2 to NPS 4 for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, drawn- temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 SPLIT-DX SYSTEMS

- A. Install refrigerant piping and accessories as recommended by the manufacturer and this specification.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Nitrogen must be flowed through the inside of the piping system during any brazing operations. The piping system shall be left open at one point to prevent the nitrogen from building up any pressure inside the pipe. The nitrogen must flow into and out of the piping system during brazing to displace any oxygen inside the pipe.
- C. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Manufactured brazed ASME 16.50 fittings shall be used. Field fabricated mitered elbows and tees will not be allowed.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Refer to Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operation" for solenoid valve controllers, control wiring, and sequence of operation.
- M. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- N. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.

- O. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground. Soft copper only is to be used with no joints in the underground portion.
- P. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- Q. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Piping slope shall be 2-1/2" per 20 feet to prevent oil trapping.
 - 2. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 3. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 4. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 5. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- R. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- S. Install pipe sleeves at penetrations in exterior walls and floor assemblies.
- T. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- U. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- V. Install sleeves through floors, walls, or ceilings, sized to permit installation of full-thickness insulation.
- W. Seal pipe penetrations through exterior walls according to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and methods.
- X. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

- D. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- E. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger, support, and anchor products are specified in Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs.
 - 2. Trapeze strut hangers with vibration inserts for multiple horizontal piping
 - 3. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports with copper pipe.
- C. Support multi-floor vertical runs at least at each floor.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. The Contractor shall notify the Architect in advance of any test so that Owner's representatives may be present for tests if desired.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector and by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
 - 2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 250 micrometers. Turn off vacuum pump and isolate system. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.

3.8 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.
- C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.
- D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 - 1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
 - 2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.
 - 3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 - 4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
 - 5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.
- E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

3.9 OPERATION AND CHECK-OUT

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for the proper adjustment of all refrigeration controls in the system, including controls on each refrigeration circuit, air temperature controls in the machine room, remote condenser controls, water regulation valves, or other related controls.
- B. The contractor shall check the compressor overload protectors with the manufacturer's specifications and inform the Architect if they are incorrect.
- C. The contractor shall check and make any adjustments to the controls during the first 4 hours of system operation. The contractor's refrigeration mechanic shall remain on site all day during the first day of full operation of each system.
- D. Include Operation and Check-out report with close-out documents.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00

SECTION 23 31 13 – METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 2. Double-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
 - 3. Single-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
 - 4. Double-wall round and flat-oval ducts and fittings.
 - 5. Sheet metal materials.
 - 6. Duct liner.
 - 7. Sealants and gaskets.
 - 8. Hangers and supports.
 - 9. Seismic-restraint devices.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
 - 2. Section 233119 "HVAC Casings" for factory- and field-fabricated casings for mechanical equipment.
 - 3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports and seismic restraints shall withstand the effects of gravity and seismic loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and ASCE/SEI 7 and SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
 - 1. Seismic Hazard Level A: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.48.
 - 2. Seismic Hazard Level B: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.30.
 - 3. Seismic Hazard Level C: Seismic force to weight ratio, 0.15.

- C. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Seismic-restraint devices.

- B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
2. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that duct systems comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."
3. Leakage Test Report for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4.2.2 - "Duct Leakage Tests."
4. Duct-Cleaning Test Report for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation of work performed for compliance with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 7.2.4 - "Ventilation System Start-up."
5. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For adhesives and sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
6. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For adhesives and sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

- C. Shop Drawings:

1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
2. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
3. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
4. Elevation of top of ducts.
5. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
6. Fittings.
7. Reinforcement and spacing.
8. Seam and joint construction.
9. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
10. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
11. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
12. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
5. Design Calculations: Calculations, for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports; AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports; and AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum," for aluminum supports.
 3. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

- D. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 DOUBLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 2. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - 3. Or approved equal.
- B. Rectangular Ducts: Fabricate ducts with indicated dimensions for the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- E. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
 - 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 - 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 - 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- G. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
- H. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch-(2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent or solid sheet steel.
- I. Formed-on Transverse Joints (Flanges): Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Traverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- J. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND AND FLAT-OVAL DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.

e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension).
- C. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter: Flanged.
- D. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 1. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - 2. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
- E. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.4 DOUBLE-WALL ROUND[AND FLAT-OVAL] DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Lindab Inc.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - 4. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
 - 5. Or approved equal.
- B. Flat-Oval Ducts: Indicated dimensions are the duct width (major dimension) and diameter of the round sides connecting the flat portions of the duct (minor dimension) of the inner duct.
- C. Outer Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse

Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- a. Transverse Joints in Ducts Larger Than 60 Inches (1524 mm) in Diameter:
Flanged.
2. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - a. Fabricate round ducts larger than 90 inches (2286 mm) in diameter with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
 - b. Fabricate flat-oval ducts larger than 72 inches (1830 mm) in width (major dimension) with butt-welded longitudinal seams.
3. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Inner Duct: Minimum 0.028-inch (0.7-mm) perforated galvanized sheet steel having 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) diameter perforations, with overall open area of 23 percent, or solid sheet steel.
- E. Interstitial Insulation: Fibrous-glass liner complying with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.039 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.
 2. Install spacers that position the inner duct at uniform distance from outer duct without compressing insulation.
 3. Coat insulation with antimicrobial coating.
 4. Cover insulation with polyester film complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- F. Interstitial Insulation: Flexible elastomeric duct liner complying with ASTM C 534, Type II for sheet materials, and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 1. Maximum Thermal Conductivity: 0.25 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.034 W/m x K) at 75 deg F (24 deg C) mean temperature.

2.5 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. PVC-Coated, Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Minimum Thickness for Factory-Applied PVC Coating: 4 mils (0.10 mm) thick on sheet metal surface of ducts and fittings exposed to corrosive conditions, and minimum 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick on opposite surface.
 - 3. Coating Materials: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on ducts listed and labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Carbon-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, with oiled, matte finish for exposed ducts.
- E. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304 or 316, as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article; cold rolled, annealed, sheet. Exposed surface finish shall be No. 2B, No. 2D, No. 3, or No. 4 as indicated in the "Duct Schedule" Article.
- F. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M) Alloy 3003, H14 temper; with mill finish for concealed ducts, and standard, one-side bright finish for duct surfaces exposed to view.
- G. Factory- or Shop-Applied Antimicrobial Coating:
 - 1. Apply to the surface of sheet metal that will form the interior surface of the duct. An untreated clear coating shall be applied to the exterior surface.
 - 2. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 - 3. Coating containing the antimicrobial compound shall have a hardness of 2H, minimum, when tested according to ASTM D 3363.
 - 4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 - 5. Shop-Applied Coating Color: Black .
 - 6. Antimicrobial coating on sheet metal is not required for duct containing liner treated with antimicrobial coating.
- H. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
 - 1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- I. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.6 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 2. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 3. Solvent-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Flexible Elastomeric Duct Liner: Preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA Inc.
 - b. Armacell LLC.
 - c. Rubatex International, LLC
 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch- (2.6-mm-) 0.135-inch- (3.5-mm-) diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) galvanized carbon-steel washer.
 2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- (0.41-mm-) thick galvanized steel, aluminum or stainless steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) in diameter.
- D. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."
1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
 2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
 3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
 4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
 5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
 6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s).
 7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches (100 mm) from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches (300 mm) transversely; at 3 inches (75 mm) from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches (450 mm) longitudinally.
 8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm (12.7 m/s) or where indicated.
 9. Secure insulation between perforated sheet metal inner duct of same thickness as specified for outer shell. Use mechanical fasteners that maintain inner duct at uniform distance from outer shell without compressing insulation.
 - a. Sheet Metal Inner Duct Perforations: 3/32-inch (2.4-mm) diameter, with an overall open area of 23 percent.
 10. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.7 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Two-Part Tape Sealing System:
 - 1. Tape: Woven cotton fiber impregnated with mineral gypsum and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
 - 2. Tape Width: 6 inches (152 mm).
 - 3. Sealant: Modified styrene acrylic.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 - 7. Service: Indoor and outdoor.
 - 8. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum.
 - 10. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 11. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
 - 3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
 - 4. Water resistant.
 - 5. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
 - 7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive and negative.
 - 8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 - 9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- D. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
 - 1. Application Method: Brush on.
 - 2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
 - 3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
 - 4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
 - 5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
 - 6. Water resistant.
 - 7. Mold and mildew resistant.
 - 8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.

10. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 11. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.
 12. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
 13. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.
- E. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.
1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
 2. Type: S.
 3. Grade: NS.
 4. Class: 25.
 5. Use: O.
 6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- F. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.
- G. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg (0.14 L/s per sq. m at 250 Pa) and shall be rated for 10-inch wg (2500-Pa) static-pressure class, positive or negative.
 2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
 3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.8 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.
- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A 603.
- E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A 492.
- F. Steel Cable End Connections: Cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

- G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
 - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
 - 3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

2.9 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Kinetics Noise Control.
 - 2. Mason Industries.
 - 3. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
- B. General Requirements for Restraint Components: Rated strengths, features, and applications shall be as defined in reports by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service, the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Structural Safety Factor: Allowable strength in tension, shear, and pullout force of components shall be at least four times the maximum seismic forces to which they will be subjected.
- C. Channel Support System: Shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces and with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end. Include matching components and corrosion-resistant coating.
- D. Restraint Cables: ASTM A 603, galvanized or ASTM A 492, stainless-steel cables with end connections made of cadmium-plated steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for restraining cable service; and with an automatic-locking and clamping device or double-cable clips.
- E. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections or Reinforcing steel angle clamped to hanger rod.
- F. Mechanical Anchor Bolts: Drilled-in and stud-wedge or female-wedge type. Select anchor bolts with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round and flat-oval ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment rooms and enclosures.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm).
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.
- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.

- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- B. Seal ducts to the following seal classes according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":
 - 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
 - 2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
 - 3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class B.
 - 6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class A.
 - 7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
 - 8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) and Lower: Seal Class C.
 - 10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg (500 Pa): Seal Class B.
 - 11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
 - 12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.

4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1 (Table 5-1M), "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches (610 mm) of each elbow and within 48 inches (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m).
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to support the duct and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems."
1. Space lateral supports a maximum of 40 feet (12 m) o.c., and longitudinal supports a maximum of 80 feet (24 m) o.c.
 2. Brace a change of direction longer than 12 feet (3.7 m).
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on ducts that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an evaluation service member of the ICC Evaluation Service, the Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California or an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify the Architect if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.

2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.7 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Leakage Tests:
 1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
 2. Test the following systems:
 - a. Ducts with a Pressure Class Higher Than 3-Inch wg (750 Pa): Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 25 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - b. Supply Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - c. Return Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
 - d. Exhaust Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling

- no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
- e. Outdoor Air Ducts with a Pressure Class of 2-Inch wg (500 Pa) or Higher: Test representative duct sections, selected by Architect from sections installed, totaling no less than 100 percent of total installed duct area for each designated pressure class.
- 3. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
- 4. Test for leaks before applying external insulation.
- 5. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
- 6. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
- C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.
 - 2. Test sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, for cleanliness according to "Vacuum Test" in NADCA ACR, "Assessment, Cleaning and Restoration of HVAC Systems."
 - a. Acceptable Cleanliness Level: Net weight of debris collected on the filter media shall not exceed 0.75 mg/100 sq. cm.
- D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
- B. Supply Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units :
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 1-inch wg (250 Pa) or 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa) or 3-inch wg (750 Pa).

- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Variable-Air-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
 - 4. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg (500 Pa), 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- C. Return Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa) or 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa) or 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa), 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- D. Exhaust Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa), 2-inch wg (500 Pa) or 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.

- c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting Laboratory and Process (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 3 and 4) Air:
 - a. Type 316 or Type 304, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 1) Exposed to View: No. 4 or No. 3 finish.
 - 2) Concealed: No. 2B or No. 2D finish.
 - b. PVC-coated, galvanized sheet steel with thicker coating on duct interior.
 - c. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 3-inch wg (750 Pa), 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) or 6-inch wg (1500 Pa).
 - d. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A Welded seams, joints, and penetrations.
 - e. SMACNA Leakage Class: 3.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa), 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B if negative pressure, and A if positive pressure.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Fan Coil Units, Furnaces, Heat Pumps, and Terminal Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 1-inch wg (250 Pa) or 2-inch wg (500 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 2. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa) or 3-inch wg (750 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 12.
 - 3. Ducts Connected to Equipment Not Listed Above:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg (500 Pa), 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or 4-inch wg (1000 Pa).
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: B.
 - c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 6.
 - d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round and Flat Oval: 6.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:

1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel, Carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer or Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.
2. PVC-Coated Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized or Match duct material.
3. Stainless-Steel Ducts:
 - a. Exposed to Airstream: Match duct material.
 - b. Not Exposed to Airstream: Galvanized or Match duct material.
4. Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized sheet steel coated with zinc chromate.

G. Liner:

1. All exposed ductwork and transfers to be lined.
 - a. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - b. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - c. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - d. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
 - e. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 2 inches (51 mm) thick.
 - f. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

H. Elbow Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s):
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher:
 - 1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - 2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.

- 3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 2. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
 - c. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 3. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
 - 1) Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 3) Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
 - 4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
 - b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches (305 mm) and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches (356 mm) and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.
- I. Branch Configuration:
 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Spin in.
 2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity 1000 fpm (5 m/s) or Lower: 90-degree tap.
 - b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm (5 to 7.6 m/s): Conical tap.
 - c. Velocity 1500 fpm (7.6 m/s) or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

SECTION 23 33 00 – AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Backdraft and pressure relief dampers.
 - 2. Barometric relief dampers.
 - 3. Manual volume dampers.
 - 4. Control dampers.
 - 5. Combination fire and smoke dampers.
 - 6. Flange connectors.
 - 7. Duct silencers.
 - 8. Turning vanes.
 - 9. Duct-mounted access doors.
 - 10. Flexible connectors.
 - 11. Flexible ducts.
 - 12. Duct accessory hardware.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 283111 "Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System" for duct-mounted fire and smoke detectors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. For duct silencers, include pressure drop and dynamic insertion loss data. Include breakout noise calculations for high transmission loss casings.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
 - 2. Product Data for Prerequisite EA 2: Documentation indicating that duct insulation R-values comply with tables in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

- C. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Duct security bars.
 - f. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90 (Z275).
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheets: Comply with ASTM A 480/A 480M, Type 304, and having a No. 2 finish for concealed ducts and No. 4 finish for exposed ducts.
- C. Aluminum Sheets: Comply with ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 3003, Temper H14; with mill finish for concealed ducts and standard, 1-side bright finish for exposed ducts.
- D. Extruded Aluminum: Comply with ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063, Temper T6.
- E. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- F. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch (6-mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches (900 mm) or less; 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches (900 mm).

2.3 BACKDRAFT AND PRESSURE RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.
 - 5. Ruskin Company.
 - 6. United Enertech - Chattanooga, TN.
- B. Description: Gravity balanced.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s).
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 1-inch wg (0.25 kPa).
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades: Multiple single-piece blades, center pivoted, off-center pivoted, or end pivoted, maximum 6-inch (150-mm) width, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet with sealed edges.
- G. Blade Action: Parallel.
- H. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically locked or Neoprene, mechanically locked.
- I. Blade Axles:

1. Material: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel, or Aluminum.
 2. Diameter: 0.20 inch (5 mm).
- J. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum or Galvanized steel.
- K. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- L. Bearings: Steel ball or synthetic pivot bushings.
- M. Accessories:
1. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
 2. Counterweights and spring-assist kits for vertical airflow installations.
 3. Electric actuators.
 4. Chain pulls.
 5. Screen Mounting: Front mounted in sleeve.
 - a. Sleeve Thickness: 20 gage (1.0 mm) minimum.
 - b. Sleeve Length: 6 inches (152 mm) minimum.
 6. Screen Mounting: Rear mounted.
 7. Screen Material: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
 8. Screen Type: Insect.
 9. 90-degree stops.

2.4 BAROMETRIC RELIEF DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 4. Pottorff.
 5. Ruskin Company.
 6. United Enertech.
- B. Suitable for horizontal or vertical mounting.
- C. Maximum Air Velocity: 1000 fpm (5.1 m/s).
- D. Maximum System Pressure: 2-inch wg (0.5 kPa).
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick extruded aluminum or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel, with welded corners or mechanically attached and mounting flange.
- F. Blades:
1. Multiple, 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 2. Maximum Width: 6 inches (150 mm).
 3. Action: Parallel.

4. Balance: Gravity.
 5. Eccentrically pivoted, Off-center pivoted or End pivoted.
- G. Blade Seals: Vinyl or Neoprene.
- H. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Nonferrous metal, Plated steel, Stainless steel or Nonmetallic.
- I. Tie Bars and Brackets:
1. Material: Aluminum or Galvanized steel.
 2. Rattle free with 90-degree stop.
- J. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.
- K. Bearings: Synthetic, Stainless steel or Bronze.
- L. Accessories:
1. Flange on intake.
 2. Adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressures.

2.5 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech.
 2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
 3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized or Stainless-steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.

6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel or Stainless steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve or Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Standard, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech.
2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 - e. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic or Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.

C. Low-Leakage, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.

- c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech.
 - 2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
 - 3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
 - 4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
 - 5. Frames:
 - a. Hat shaped.
 - b. 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
 - c. Mitered and welded corners.
 - d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
 - 6. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized or Stainless, roll-formed steel, 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick.
 - 7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.
 - 8. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve or Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 - 9. Blade Seals: Felt, Vinyl or Neoprene.
 - 10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel or aluminum.
 - 11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
 - 12. Accessories:
 - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.
- D. Low-Leakage, Aluminum, Manual Volume Dampers:
- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Air Balance Inc.; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - d. Pottorff.
 - e. Ruskin Company.
 - f. United Enertech.

2. Comply with AMCA 500-D testing for damper rating.
3. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
4. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
5. Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
6. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10-inch- (2.5-mm-) thick aluminum sheet.
 - d. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050-inch- (1.2-mm-) thick extruded aluminum.
7. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel, Stainless steel or Nonferrous metal.
8. Bearings:
 - a. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve or Stainless-steel sleeve.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
9. Blade Seals: Felt, Vinyl or Neoprene.
10. Jamb Seals: Cambered stainless steel or aluminum.
11. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel or Aluminum.
12. Accessories:
 - a. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration.

E. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 1-inch (25-mm) diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

F. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch (19-mm) hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.6 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. American Warming and Ventilating; a division of Mestek, Inc.
2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.

3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 4. Nailor Industries Inc.
 5. Pottorff.
 6. Ruskin Company.
 7. United Enertech.
- B. Low-leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream, and bearing AMCA's Certified Ratings Seal for both air performance and air leakage.
- C. Frames:
1. Hat shaped.
 2. 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick stainless steel.
 3. Mitered and welded or Interlocking, gusseted corners.
- D. Blades:
1. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 6 inches (152 mm).
 2. Opposed-blade design.
 3. Galvanized-steel, Stainless steel or Aluminum.
 4. 0.064 inch (1.62 mm) thick single skin or 0.0747-inch- (1.9-mm-) thick dual skin.
 5. Blade Edging: Closed-cell neoprene or PVC.
 6. Blade Edging: Inflatable seal blade edging, or replaceable rubber seals.
- E. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter; galvanized steel, stainless steel or nonferrous metal; blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings.
1. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- F. Bearings:
1. Oil-impregnated bronze, Molded synthetic, Oil-impregnated stainless-steel sleeve or Stainless-steel sleeve.
 2. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg (750 Pa) or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
 3. Thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

2.7 COMBINATION FIRE AND SMOKE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 2. Nailor Industries Inc.
 3. Pottorff.
 4. Ruskin Company.

- 5. United Enertech.
- B. Type: Dynamic; rated and labeled according to UL 555 and UL 555S by an NRTL.
- C. Closing rating in ducts up to 4-inch wg (1-kPa) static pressure class and minimum 2000-fpm (10-m/s) velocity.
- D. Fire Rating: 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- (2.4-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded, interlocking, gusseted or mechanically attached corners and mounting flange.
- F. Heat-Responsive Device: Resettable or Replaceable, 165 deg F (74 deg C) rated, fusible links or fire-closure device.
- G. Heat-Responsive Device: Electric resettable link or device and switch package, factory installed, rated.
- H. Smoke Detector: Integral, factory wired for single-point connection.
- I. Blades: Roll-formed, horizontal, interlocking or overlapping, 0.063-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel.
- J. Leakage: Class II.
- K. Rated pressure and velocity to exceed design airflow conditions.
- L. Mounting Sleeve: Factory-installed, 0.05-inch- (1.3-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel; length to suit wall or floor application.
- M. Master control panel for use in dynamic smoke-management systems.
- N. Damper Motors: Two-position action.
- O. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC."
 - 3. Permanent-Split-Capacitor or Shaded-Pole Motors: With oil-immersed and sealed gear trains.
 - 4. Spring-Return Motors: Equip with an integral spiral-spring mechanism where indicated. Enclose entire spring mechanism in a removable housing designed for service or adjustments. Size for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m).

5. Outdoor Motors and Motors in Outdoor-Air Intakes: Equip with O-ring gaskets designed to make motors weatherproof. Equip motors with internal heaters to permit normal operation at minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C).
6. Nonspring-Return Motors: For dampers larger than 25 sq. ft. (2.3 sq. m), size motor for running torque rating of 150 in. x lbf (17 N x m) and breakaway torque rating of 300 in. x lbf (34 N x m).
7. Electrical Connection: 115 V, single phase, 60 Hz.

P. Accessories:

1. Auxiliary switches for signaling, fan control or position indication.
2. Momentary test switch, remote mounted.

2.8 FLANGE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.
- C. Material: Galvanized steel.
- D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.9 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Elgen Manufacturing.
 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 4. SEMCO Incorporated.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- C. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Nonmetal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of resin-bonded fiberglass with acrylic polymer coating; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

- D. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- E. Vane Construction: Double wall.
- F. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches (1200 mm) wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.10 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - 3. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - 4. Pottorff.
 - 5. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 - 6. United Enertech.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."
 - 1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Vision panel.
 - d. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch (25-by-25-mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - e. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
 - 2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
 - 3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches (300 mm) Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches (460 mm) Square: Two hinges or Continuous and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Three hinges or Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
 - d. Access Doors Larger Than 24 by 48 Inches (600 by 1200 mm): Four hinges or Continuous and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- C. Pressure Relief Access Door:
 - 1. Door and Frame Material: Galvanized sheet steel.

2. Door: Double wall with insulation fill with metal thickness applicable for duct pressure class.
3. Operation: Open outward for positive-pressure ducts and inward for negative-pressure ducts.
4. Factory set at 3.0- to 8.0-inch wg (800 to 2000 Pa).
5. Doors close when pressures are within set-point range.
6. Hinge: Continuous piano.
7. Latches: Cam.
8. Seal: Neoprene or foam rubber.
9. Insulation Fill: 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, fibrous-glass or polystyrene-foam board.

2.11 DUCT ACCESS PANEL ASSEMBLIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Flame Gard, Inc.
 3. 3M.
- B. Labeled according to UL 1978 by an NRTL.
- C. Panel and Frame: Minimum thickness 0.0528-inch (1.3-mm) carbon or 0.0428-inch (1.1-mm) stainless steel.
- D. Fasteners: Carbon or Stainless steel. Panel fasteners shall not penetrate duct wall.
- E. Gasket: Comply with NFPA 96; grease-tight, high-temperature ceramic fiber, rated for minimum 2000 deg F (1093 deg C).
- F. Minimum Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa), positive or negative.

2.12 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 3. Elgen Manufacturing.
 4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches (146 mm) wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch- (70-mm-) wide, 0.028-inch- (0.7-mm-) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd. (880 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 93 deg C).
- F. Outdoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with weatherproof, synthetic rubber resistant to UV rays and ozone.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 24 oz./sq. yd. (810 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 530 lbf/inch (93 N/mm) in the warp and 440 lbf/inch (77 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 50 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 45 to plus 121 deg C).
- G. High-Temperature System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric coated with silicone rubber.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 16 oz./sq. yd. (542 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 285 lbf/inch (50 N/mm) in the warp and 185 lbf/inch (32 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- H. High-Corrosive-Environment System, Flexible Connectors: Glass fabric with chemical-resistant coating.
 - 1. Minimum Weight: 14 oz./sq. yd. (474 g/sq. m).
 - 2. Tensile Strength: 450 lbf/inch (79 N/mm) in the warp and 340 lbf/inch (60 N/mm) in the filling.
 - 3. Service Temperature: Minus 67 to plus 500 deg F (Minus 55 to plus 260 deg C).
- I. Thrust Limits: Combination coil spring and elastomeric insert with spring and insert in compression, and with a load stop. Include rod and angle-iron brackets for attaching to fan discharge and duct.
 - 1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
 - 2. Outdoor Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
 - 4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
 - 5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
 - 6. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene.
 - 7. Coil Spring: Factory set and field adjustable for a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement at start and stop.

2.13 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- C. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, aluminum laminate and polyester film with latex adhesive supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
- D. Noninsulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil.
1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 435 deg F (Minus 73 to plus 224 deg C).
- E. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F (Minus 23 to plus 71 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- F. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5-inch wg (125 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 79 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-Value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- G. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, multiple layers of aluminum laminate supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.
1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0-inch wg (250 Pa) negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20 m/s).
 3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 210 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 99 deg C).
 4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
- H. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 0, interlocking spiral of aluminum foil; fibrous-glass insulation; aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 8-inch wg (2280 Pa) positive or negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 5000 fpm (25 m/s).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 250 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 121 deg C).
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

I. Flexible Duct Connectors:

1. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action or Nylon strap in sizes 3 through 18 inches (75 through 460 mm), to suit duct size.

2.14 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers at inlet of exhaust fans or exhaust ducts as close as possible to exhaust fan unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
 1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.
 2. Install aluminum volume dampers in aluminum ducts.
- E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install fire and smoke dampers according to UL listing.

- H. Install duct security bars. Construct duct security bars from 0.164-inch (4.18-mm) steel sleeve, continuously welded at all joints and 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter steel bars, 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. in each direction in center of sleeve. Weld each bar to steel sleeve and each crossing bar. Weld 2-1/2-by-2-1/2-by-1/4-inch (63-by-63-by-6-mm) steel angle to 4 sides and both ends of sleeve. Connect duct security bars to ducts with flexible connections. Provide 12-by-12-inch (300-by-300-mm) hinged access panel with cam lock in duct in each side of sleeve.
- I. Connect ducts to duct silencers with flexible duct connectors or rigidly.
- J. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 - 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 - 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 - 4. At drain pans and seals.
 - 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 - 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire or smoke dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 - 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot (15-m) spacing.
 - 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 - 9. Upstream or downstream from duct silencers.
 - 10. Control devices requiring inspection.
 - 11. Elsewhere as indicated.
- K. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.
- L. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches (200 by 125 mm).
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches (300 by 150 mm).
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches (460 by 250 mm).
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches (530 by 355 mm).
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches (635 by 355 mm).
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches (635 by 430 mm).
- M. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- N. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- O. For fans developing static pressures of 5-inch wg (1250 Pa) and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- P. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch (300-mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

- Q. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch (1500-mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- R. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands or adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- S. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.
- T. Install thrust limits at centerline of thrust, symmetrical on both sides of equipment. Attach thrust limits at centerline of thrust and adjust to a maximum of 1/4-inch (6-mm) movement during start and stop of fans.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
 - 3. Operate fire, smoke, and combination fire and smoke dampers to verify full range of movement and verify that proper heat-response device is installed.
 - 4. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
 - 5. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

SECTION 23 34 23 – HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal Roof Ventilators
 - 2. In-line Centrifugal Fans

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
 - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.
 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Loren Cook Company.
 - 2. PennBarry.
 - 3. Greenheck Fan Cooperation

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
 - 1. Hinged Subbase: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance.
- B. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- C. Belt Drives:
 - 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 - 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 - 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 - 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 - 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- D. Accessories:
 - 1. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 - 2. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch (13-mm) mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 - 3. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch (40-mm) wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 - 1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
 - 2. Overall Height: 8 inches (200 mm).
 - 3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
 - 4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.3 IN-LINE CENTRIFUGAL FANS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - 2. Loren Cook Company.
 - 3. PennBarry.
- C. Housing: Split, spun aluminum with aluminum straightening vanes, inlet and outlet flanges, and support bracket adaptable to floor, side wall, or ceiling mounting.
- D. Direct-Drive Units: Motor mounted in airstream, factory wired to disconnect switch located on outside of fan housing; with wheel, inlet cone, and motor on swing-out service door.
- E. Belt-Driven Units: Motor mounted on adjustable base, with adjustable sheaves, enclosure around belts within fan housing, and lubricating tubes from fan bearings extended to outside of fan housing.
- F. Fan Wheels: Aluminum, airfoil blades welded to aluminum hub.
- G. Accessories:
 - 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 - 2. Volume-Control Damper: Manually operated with quadrant lock, located in fan outlet.
 - 3. Companion Flanges: For inlet and outlet duct connections.
 - 4. Fan Guards: 1/2- by 1-inch mesh of galvanized steel in removable frame. Provide guard for inlet or outlet for units not connected to ductwork.
 - 5. Motor and Drive Cover (Belt Guard): Epoxy-coated steel.

2.4 MOTORS

- A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 - 2. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
- B. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Vibration- and seismic-control devices are specified in Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
 - 1. Secure vibration and seismic controls to concrete bases using anchor bolts cast in concrete base.
- C. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with corrosion-resistant hardware. See Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs. Cadmium-plating is not permitted.
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Division 23 Section "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 - 5. Adjust belt tension.
 - 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 - 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 - 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 - 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 - 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 - 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION 23 34 23

SECTION 23 35 33 – LISTED KITCHEN VENTILATION SYSTEM EXHAUST DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Listed grease ducts.
 - 2. Access doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for listed grease ducts.
- B. Shop Drawings: For listed grease ducts.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
 - 2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 3. Detail fabrication and assembly of hangers and seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
 - 2. AWS D9.1/D9.1M, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for shop and field welding of joints and seams in listed grease ducts and field-fabricated grease ducts.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LISTED GREASE DUCTS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Heat-Fab, Inc.
 - 2. Metal-Fab, Inc.
 - 3. Selkirk Corporation
 - 4. Van-Packer Company, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -listed, and -labeled, double-wall ducts tested according to UL 1978 and rated for 500 deg F (260 deg C) continuously, or 2000 deg F (1093 deg C) for 30 minutes; with positive or negative duct pressure and complying with NFPA 211.
- C. Construction: Inner shell and outer jacket separated by at least a 2-inch (50-mm) annular space filled with high-temperature, ceramic-fiber insulation.
 - 1. Inner Shell: ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless steel.
 - 2. Outer Jacket: Stainless steel where concealed. Stainless steel where exposed.
- D. Gaskets and Flanges: Ensure that gaskets and sealing materials are rated at 1500 deg F (816 deg C) minimum.
- E. Hood Connectors: Constructed from same material as grease duct with internal or external continuously welded or brazed joints.
- F. Accessories: Tees, elbows, increasers, terminations, adjustable roof flashings, storm collars, support assemblies, thimbles, firestop spacers, and fasteners; fabricated from similar materials and designs as vent-pipe straight sections; all listed for same assembly. Include unique components required to comply with NFPA 96 including cleanouts, transitions, adapters, and drain fittings.
- G. Grease Duct Supports: Construct duct bracing and supports from non-combustible material.
 - 1. Design bracing and supports to carry static and seismic loads within stress limitations of the International Building Code.
 - 2. Ensure that bolts, screws, rivets and other mechanical fasteners do not penetrate duct walls.
- H. Comply with ASTM E 2336.
- I. Factory Tests: Test and inspect fire resistance of grease duct system according to ASTM E 2336 in presence of Owner.
 - 1. Allow consultant two days' minimum notification before test is performed.

2.2 ACCESS DOORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings or comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. 3M
 - 2. Acudor Products, Inc.
 - 3. Ductmade Industries, Inc.
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated, -listed, and -labeled, double-wall personnel and maintenance access doors tested according to UL 1978 and rated for 500 deg F (260 deg C) continuously, or 2000 deg F (1093 deg C) for 30 minutes; with positive or negative duct pressure and complying with NFPA 211.
 - 1. Construction: 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm) ASTM A 666, Type 316 stainless-steel inner shell and stainless-steel outer cover with two handles.
 - 2. Fasteners: Stainless-steel bolts and wing nuts.
 - a. Ensure that bolts do not penetrate interior of duct space.
 - 3. Maintenance Access Door Dimensions: 20 x 20 inches (508 x 508 mm).
 - 4. Personnel Access Door Dimensions: 24 x 24 inches (610 x 610 mm).
 - 5. Door Label: Mark door with uppercase lettering as follows: "ACCESS PANEL. DO NOT OBSTRUCT."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. Comply with requirements in Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories."
- B. Coordinate connections to kitchen exhaust hoods with requirements in Section 23 38 13 "Commercial-Kitchen Hoods."
- C. Coordinate connections to exhaust fans with requirements in Section 23 34 16 "Centrifugal HVAC Fans."
- D. Coordinate firestopping where grease ducts penetrate fire separations with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

- E. Comply with minimum clearances from combustibles and minimum termination heights according to product listing or NFPA 211 and UL 2221, whichever is most stringent.
- F. Install airtight personnel and maintenance access doors where indicated.
- G. Seal between sections of grease exhaust ducts according to manufacturer's written installation instructions, using sealants recommended by manufacturer.
- H. Connections: Make grease duct connections according to the International Mechanical Code.
 - 1. Grease duct to exhaust fan connections: Connect grease ducts to inlet side of fan using flanges, gaskets, and bolts.
 - 2. Grease duct to hood connections:
 - a. Make grease duct to hood joints connections using internal or external continuously welded or brazed joints.
 - b. Make watertight grease duct to hood joints connections using flanges, gaskets, and bolts.
- I. Support ducts at intervals recommended by manufacturer to support weight of ducts and accessories, without applying loading on kitchen hoods.
 - 1. Securely attach supports and bracing to structure.
- J. Grease Duct Enclosures: Comply with requirements of the International Building Code and ASTM E 2336.
- K. Coordinate fire-rated enclosure construction with Section 09 21 16.23 "Gypsum Board Shaft Wall Assemblies."
- L. Repair damage to adjacent materials caused by listed kitchen ventilation system exhaust ducts installation.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform air leakage test in presence of Owner before concealment of any portion of the grease duct system.
 - 1. Notify Owner a minimum of two days before test is performed.

END OF SECTION 23 35 33

SECTION 23 36 00 – AIR TERMINAL UNITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Shutoff, single-duct air terminal units.
2. Casing liner.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of air terminal unit.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for air terminal units.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Prerequisite IEQ 1: Documentation indicating that units comply with ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment."
2. Provide LEED submittal requirements for EQc2 – Low Emitting Materials – Adhesives/sealants.

C. Shop Drawings: For air terminal units.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
4. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, seismic restraints, and vibration isolation.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.
2. Include design calculations, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation for selecting hangers and supports and seismic restraints.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tile.
 - 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air terminal units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. Include the following:
 - a. Instructions for resetting minimum and maximum air volumes.
 - b. Instructions for adjusting software set points.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of air terminal units and are based on the specific system indicated.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. NFPA Compliance: Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of air terminal units and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."
- C. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, "Section 6 - Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning."

2.2 SHUTOFF, SINGLE-DUCT AIR TERMINAL UNITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
 - 2. Carnes Company.
 - 3. Carrier Corporation; a unit of United Technologies Corp.
 - 4. ENVIRO-TEC; by Johnson Controls, Inc.
 - 5. Johnson Controls.
 - 6. Krueger.
 - 7. METALAIRE, Inc.
 - 8. Nailor Industries.
 - 9. Price Industries.
 - 10. Raymon-Donco.
 - 11. Titus.
 - 12. Trane.
 - 13. Trox USA Inc.
 - 14. Tuttle & Bailey.
 - 15. Or equal.
- B. Configuration: Volume-damper assembly inside unit casing with control components inside a protective metal shroud.
- C. Casing: 0.040-inch- thick galvanized steel, single wall.
 - 1. Casing Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for closed cell flexible elastomeric duct liner.
 - 2. Air Inlet: Round stub connection or S-slip and drive connections for duct attachment.
 - 3. Air Outlet: S-slip and drive connections, size matching inlet size.
 - 4. Access: Removable panels for access to parts requiring service, adjustment, or maintenance; with airtight gasket.
 - 5. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

- D. Regulator Assembly: System-air-powered bellows section incorporating polypropylene bellows for volume regulation and thermostatic control. Bellows shall operate at temperatures from zero to 140 deg F, shall be impervious to moisture and fungus, shall be suitable for 10-inch wg static pressure, and shall be factory tested for leaks.
- E. Volume Damper: Galvanized steel with peripheral gasket and self-lubricating bearings.
 - 1. Maximum Damper Leakage: AHRI 880 rated, 2 percent of nominal airflow at 3-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. Damper Position: Normally closed.
- F. Attenuator Section: 0.034-inch steel sheet.
 - 1. Attenuator Section Liner: Comply with requirements in "Casing Liner" Article for closed cell flexible elastomeric duct liner.
 - 2. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- G. Hydronic Heating Coils: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch, and rated for a minimum working pressure of 200 psig and a maximum entering-water temperature of 220 deg F. Include manual air vent and drain valve. Reheat coils will have a 6 inch by 6 inch access door or access panel installed within 18" of the upstream side of the reheat coil. Door/access panel to be gasketed and insulated to prevent condensation and thermal loss.
- H. Control devices shall be compatible with temperature controls system specified in Section 23 09 23 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 - 1. Electronic Damper Actuator: 24 V, powered open, spring return.
 - 2. Electronic Thermostat: Refer to Specification section 23 09 23.27 for thermostat requirements.
 - 3. Terminal Unit Controller (Shall be by the BMS contractor): Pressure-independent, variable-air-volume (VAV) controller with electronic airflow transducer with multipoint velocity sensor at air inlet, factory calibrated to minimum and maximum air volumes, and having the following features:
 - a. Occupied and unoccupied operating mode.
 - b. Remote reset of airflow or temperature set points.
 - c. Adjusting and monitoring with portable terminal.
 - d. Communication with temperature-control system specified in Section 23 09 23 "Direct Digital Control (DDC) System for HVAC."
 - 4. Room Sensor: Refer to Specification section 23 09 23.27 for thermostat requirements.
- I. Controls:
 - 1. Suitable for operation with duct pressures between 0.25- and 3.0-inch wg inlet static pressure.
 - 2. System-powered, wall-mounted thermostat.

- J. Control Sequences: See SOO on Common Details.

2.3 CASING LINER

- A. Casing Liner: Fibrous-glass duct liner is prohibited.
- B. Casing Liner: Flexible elastomeric duct liner fabricated of preformed, cellular, closed-cell, sheet materials complying with ASTM C 534, Type II, Grade 1; and with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
1. Minimum Thickness: 3/4 inch.
 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
 3. Liner Adhesive: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and complying with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
 - a. Adhesive VOC Content: 50 g/L or less.
 - b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test assembled air terminal units according to AHRI 880.
1. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, maximum and minimum factory-set airflows, coil type, and AHRI certification seal.
- B. Verification of Performance: Rate air terminal units according to ARI 880.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 5, "Hangers and Supports" and with Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes and for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes and for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 5. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for seismic restraints.

- C. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- D. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT-DEVICE INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers and braces designed to support the air terminal units and to restrain against seismic forces required by applicable building codes. Comply with SMACNA's "Seismic Restraint Manual: Guidelines for Mechanical Systems." Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices in Section 23 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Select seismic-restraint devices with capacities adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads.
- C. Install cables so they do not bend across edges of adjacent equipment or building structure.
- D. Install cable restraints on air terminal units that are suspended with vibration isolators.
- E. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved by an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing and restraints to structure, to flanges of beams, to upper truss chords of bar joists, or to concrete members.
- G. Drilling for and Setting Anchors:
 - 1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items before drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcement or embedded items during drilling. Notify University's Representative if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid prestressed tendons, electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
 - 2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
 - 3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Install heavy-duty sleeve anchors with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
 - 4. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque, using a torque wrench.
 - 5. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior applications and stainless-steel anchors for applications exposed to weather.

3.3 TERMINAL UNIT INSTALLATION

- A. Install air terminal units according to NFPA 90A, "Standard for the Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
- B. Install air terminal units level and plumb. Maintain sufficient clearance for normal service and maintenance.
- C. Install wall-mounted thermostats.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Where installing piping adjacent to air terminal unit, allow space for service and maintenance.
- B. Hot-Water Piping: Comply with requirements in Section 23 21 13 "Hydronic Piping" and Section 23 21 16 Hydronic Piping Specialties," and connect heating coils to supply with shutoff valve, strainer, control valve, and union or flange; and to return with balancing valve and union or flange.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" for connecting ducts to air terminal units.
- D. Make connections to air terminal units with flexible connectors complying with requirements in Section 23 33 00 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. G.Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Label each air terminal unit with plan number, nominal airflow, and maximum and minimum factory-set airflows. Comply with requirements in Section 23 05 53 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for equipment labels and warning signs and labels.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. After installing air terminal units and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Leak Test: After installation, fill water coils and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Air terminal unit will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Verify that inlet duct connections are as recommended by air terminal unit manufacturer to achieve proper performance.
 - 3. Verify that controls and control enclosure are accessible.
 - 4. Verify that control connections are complete.
 - 5. Verify that nameplate and identification tag are visible.
 - 6. Verify that controls respond to inputs as specified.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train University's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain air terminal units.

END OF SECTION 23 36 00

SECTION 23 37 13 – DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
 - 2. Perforated diffusers.
 - 3. Louver face diffusers.
 - 4. Modular core supply grilles.
 - 5. Continuous tubular diffusers.
 - 6. Adjustable bar registers, grilles, registers and grilles.
 - 7. Fixed face registers, grilles, registers and grilles.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 089119 "Fixed Louvers" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
 - 2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
 - 1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
 - 2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For diffusers, registers, and grilles with factory-applied color finishes.
- C. Samples for Verification: For diffusers, registers, and grilles, in manufacturer's standard sizes to verify color selected.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

1. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved: Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 5. Duct access panels.
- B. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

- A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal
 2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
 3. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
 4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 5. Face Size: 24 by 24 inches (600 by 600 mm).
 6. Face Style: Four cone.
 7. Mounting: Surface and T-bar.
 8. Pattern: Adjustable.
 9. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.
- B. Perforated Diffuser:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.

- b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
- 2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows. Material: Steel backpan and pattern controllers, with steel or aluminum face where required.
 - 3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
 - 4. Face Size: 24 by 12 inches (600 by 300 mm).
 - 5. Duct Inlet: Round or Square.
 - 6. Face Style: Flush.
 - 7. Mounting: Surface or T-bar.
 - 8. Pattern Controller: Four louvered deflector patches.
 - 9. Accessories:
 - a. Equalizing grid.
 - b. Plaster ring.
 - c. Safety chain.
 - d. Wire guard.
 - e. Sectorizing baffles.
 - f. Operating rod extension.

C. Louver Face Diffuser:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
- 2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
- 3. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
- 4. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
- 5. Face Size: As indicated in drawings.
- 6. Mounting: Surface and T-bar Snap.
- 7. Pattern: Adjustable core style.
- 8. Accessories:
 - a. Square to round neck adaptor.
 - b. Adjustable pattern vanes.
 - c. Throw reducing vanes.
 - d. Equalizing grid.
 - e. Plaster ring.
 - f. Safety chain.
 - g. Wire guard.
 - h. Sectorizing baffles.
 - i. Operating rod extension.

2.2 HIGH-CAPACITY DIFFUSERS

A. Modular Core Supply Grilles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Throw: Extended distance for airflow rates.
3. Material: Steel.
4. Grilles per Unit: Four.
5. Finish: White baked acrylic.
6. Border: 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) width with countersunk screw holes.
7. Blades:
 - a. Airfoil, individually adjustable horizontally.
 - b. Double deflection.
 - c. Set in modules.
8. Modules: Removable; rotatable.
9. Mounting: Surface.

2.3 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Vertical spaced 1/2 inch (13 mm) apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch (19 mm) apart.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) 1 inch (25 mm) wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
9. Accessories:
 - a. Front-blade gang operator.
 - b. Filter.

B. Adjustable Bar Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 1/2 inch (13 mm) apart.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Rear-Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced 3/4 inch (19 mm) apart.
7. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
8. Mounting: Countersunk screw.

C. Fixed Face Register:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.
7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
8. Accessory: Filter.

D. Fixed Face Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Material: Steel or Aluminum where required.
3. Finish: Baked enamel, white.
4. Face Arrangement: Perforated core.
5. Core Construction: Integral.
6. Frame: 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) wide.

7. Mounting: Countersunk screw.
8. Accessory: Filter.

E. Radial Flow Diffusers

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the products by one of the following:
 - a. Price Industries.
 - b. Titus.
 - c. Krueger.
 - d. Or approved equal.
2. Construction
 - a. The diffuser shall consist of a perforated face that extends below the ceiling by approximately 5.75" and includes an integral plenum with duct connection.
 - b. The face shall be perforated with deflection vanes, quick release latches, and piano hinge connection to the plenum. The hinge shall allow complete separation of the face and plenum. The plenum shall be fully accessible for cleaning with no internal baffles or obstructions. Screw and/or clip mounting shall not be acceptable.
 - c. Diffuser shall be 2-way radial discharge.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, 1

ocate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

SECTION 23 81 26 – SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes split-system air-conditioning units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components. Units are designed for exposed or concealed mounting and may be connected to ducts.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "LEED Requirements".
 - 2. Division 01 Section 019100 "General Commissioning Requirements."
 - 3. Division 23 Section 230980 "Mechanical Commissioning."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
- B. LEED Submittals: Provide cost data breakdown, recycle content and manufacturer name and location.
- C. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- F. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of split-system units and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- D. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- E. Units shall be designed to operate with HCFC-free refrigerants.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size, location, and connection details with roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion on compressors and coils, and one year on parts.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Carrier Air Conditioning; Div. of Carrier Corporation.
 - 2. Trane Company (The); Unitary Products Group.
 - 3. York International Corp.

2.2 EXPOSED EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS

- A. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
 - 1. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
 - 2. Drain Pans: Galvanized steel, with connection for drain; insulated.
 - 3. Ductless unit with finished enclosure exposed in room, adjustable deflection supply grille, return grille and wall mount or suspended support brackets.
- B. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with thermal-expansion valve.
- C. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
- D. Fan Motors: Comply with requirements in 23 Section "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 1. Special Motor Features: Multi-tapped, variable speed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- E. Disposable Filters: 1 inch thick, in fiberboard frames.
- F. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.

2.3 CONCEALED EVAPORATOR-FAN COMPONENTS:

- A. Chassis: Galvanized steel with flanged edges, removable panels for servicing, and insulation on back of panel.
- B. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
- C. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 210/240.
- D. Water Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins spaced no closer than 0.1 inch; leak tested to 300 psig underwater; with a two-position control valve.
- E. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
- F. Fan: Forward-curved, double-width wheel of galvanized steel; directly connected to motor.
- G. Fan Motors:
 - 1. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 - 2. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.

3. Three-phase, permanently lubricated, ball-bearing motors with built-in thermal-overload protection.
 4. Wiring Terminations: Connect motor to chassis wiring with plug connection.
- H. ASHRAE compliance in "Airstream Surfaces" Subparagraph below may be required to comply with Project requirements or authorities having jurisdiction. Retain first subparagraph to comply with LEED Prerequisite IEQ 1.
- I. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
- J. Filters: Permanent, cleanable.
- K. Condensate Drain Pans: Provide factory supplied drainable condensate drain pan with connection at lowest point of pan.

2.4 AIR-COOLED, COMPRESSOR-CONDENSER COMPONENTS

- A. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
- B. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
1. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 2. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
 3. Refrigerant Charge: R-410a.
- C. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins, complying with ARI 210/240, and with liquid subcooler.
- D. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
- E. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
- F. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation below 45 deg F.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Control equipment and sequence of operation are specified in Division 23 Sections "Instrumentation and Control for HVAC" and "Sequence of Operations for HVAC Controls."
- B. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- C. Install roof-mounting compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- D. Install seismic restraints.
- E. Install compressor-condenser components on restrained, spring isolators with a minimum static deflection of 1 inch. Refer to Division 23 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC Piping and Equipment."
- F. Install and connect pre-charged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to unit to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- D. Electrical Connections: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust field-assembled components and equipment installation, including connections, and to assist in field testing. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

- C. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units. Refer to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 23 81 26

SECTION 26 00 10 – SUPPLEMENTAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies supplemental requirements generally applicable to the Contract Work specified in Division 26. This Section is also referenced by related Work specified in other Divisions.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. The general conditions and Division 1 are part of this section and apply to this section as fully as if repeated herein. This section, 260010, applies to all Division 26 categories.

1.2 CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENT INTENT

- A. These construction documents are intended to be diagrammatic and reflect the scope, quality, and character of the work to be performed; all miscellaneous materials and work required for a complete and operational system, though not specifically mentioned, shall be furnished, and installed by the Contractor.
- B. Equipment shown to scale is approximate only and based upon a general class of equipment specified. The Contractor shall confirm sizes, dimensions, weights and locations of all devices, light fixtures, and equipment prior to installation. Dimensioned architectural drawings shall take precedence over diagrammatic layouts shown on these contract documents.
- C. The specifications and the drawings are an integral document and shall be considered complementary to each other. In the case of a conflict between the specifications and the drawings, the more constricting condition shall be enforced.
- D. The Contractor shall be responsible for reporting any discrepancies, errors, or omissions noted prior to bid.
- E. It is the intent of the drawings to indicate schematic routing and placement of devices, fixtures, equipment and conduit. Equipment or devices requiring a precise location shall be dimensioned on other trade documents (architectural, mechanical, etc.). Offsets, elbows, or extensions shall be furnished and installed by the Contractor as necessary to avoid structure, piping, and clearances and to provide a complete and workmanlike installation.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All work, materials and equipment shall comply with the latest versions of the codes, ordinances and regulations enforced by the local government having jurisdiction, including the regulations of serving utilities and any participating government agencies having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with the latest editions of applicable codes, ordinances, regulations and standards of:

1. Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)
2. Insulated Cable Engineers Association (ICEA).
3. Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE).
4. National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA).
5. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
6. National Bureau of Standards (NBS).
7. Certified Ballast Manufacturers (CBM).
8. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
9. Underwriter's Laboratories (UL).
10. California Code of Regulations (Titles 8, 19, 22, 24).
11. California Building Code (CBC).
12. California Electrical Code (CEC).
13. National Electrical Safety Code (NECS).
14. National Electrical Testing Agency (NETA).
15. National Electrical Contractor's Association (NECA).
16. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

C. All materials and equipment shall be listed by and shall bear the label of an approved Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) as approved by the authority having jurisdiction. If none of the approved electrical testing laboratories has published standards for a particular item, then other national independent testing standards, if available, applicable, and approved by the authority having jurisdiction, shall apply and such items shall bear those labels. Where one of the approved electrical testing laboratories has an applicable system listing and label, the entire system shall be so labeled.

D. Where requirements differ, the more stringent shall apply.

1.4 CONTINUITY OF POWER

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than **fourteen (14)** days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.
 3. Coordinate interruption with systems impacted by outage including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Exercising generators.
 - b. Emergency lighting.
 - c. Elevators.
 - d. Fire-alarm systems.
- B. Temporary electrical power shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Arrange to provide temporary electrical power in accordance with serving utility requirements and requirements as specified in Division 01.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittals shall be furnished by Contractor for each device, equipment, conduits, conductors and cables, light fixtures, and lighting controls intended to be used on the project. Submit material list within 2 weeks of Notice to Proceed and obtain review, prior to submission of manufacturer's data and shop drawings.
- B. All materials shown shall be new, of prime quality, and listed as suitable for the application. Materials shall be currently in production and shall be supported by spare parts, repair service, maintenance and factory technical support. Materials of one assembly (switchboards, substations, panelboards, etc.) shall be of one manufacturer unless noted otherwise in the construction documents.
- C. Piecemeal submittals will not be accepted. Incomplete submittals will be rejected at the discretion of the reviewing Engineer. Submit in brochure form with all listings referenced to applicable sections and paragraphs in the specifications. Listing items "as specified" without both name of manufacturer and model number or type (designation) is not acceptable.
- D. Contractor shall submit a complete list of materials and equipment proposed for the project including which is exactly as specified. List to contain only one (1) manufacturer's name and reference to applicable sections and paragraphs of the specifications. List shall be submitted within two (2) weeks of issue of Notice to Proceed. Any material or equipment installed without written approval shall be subject to immediate removal.
- E. Submittal brochures shall be complete and descriptive of the type, make, manufacturer, application, quantity, performance, capacity, ratings, options, dimensions, clearances, weights, nameplate data, special installation requirements, mounting method, NEMA type, NEMA class, environmental restrictions, layout requirements or other information as may be necessary for review of the material.
- F. Submittal brochures for switchboards (or switchgear, if applicable) shall include, as a minimum, the following: single-line diagrams; fault current ratings of buses and devices; device

identification, ratings, layout and characteristics; dimensions; circuit identification; identification label type and method of affixing; mounting; conduit entry point and quantities; NEMA enclosure type; and additional data as required for a complete review.

- G. Submittal brochures for lighting systems shall include, as a minimum, the following: manufacturer; detailed drawing or photograph; dimensions; lamp data; ballast/driver data; certified photometric data from a third-party testing agency; NRTL label listing; fixture number or identification from the drawings; finish color and material; mounting equipment; socket type and rating; environmental ratings (damp location, watertight, explosion-proof, etc.); voltage; input wattage; and additional information as necessary for a complete review.
- H. The Contractor shall be responsible for all aspects of substitutions of material including any additional cost or delay incurred as a result of the substitution. The Contractor shall coordinate all substitutions with other trades, verify code compliance, verify clearances, photometric performance, appearance, suitability, constructability, and availability of the material prior to submitting the substitution for review. The Contractor shall bear the responsibility of any increased costs to other trades which are directly related to the substitution.

1.6 EXISTING CONDITIONS

- A. The contractor shall verify all existing conditions prior to bid and include all costs associated with the existing conditions in the bid. The Contractor shall match the finish and appearance of all existing conditions where construction of new work is adjacent to existing surfaces or equipment.
- B. Coordinate work to be performed in occupied areas and comply with the Owner's requirements such that the Owner's work or ongoing activities are not disrupted by the Contractor. Verify the need for work to be performed during premium hours, evenings, weekends, or holidays prior to bid and include all costs in bid. Bring to the Owner's attention the need and locations for all disruptive work prior to commencement of work.

1.7 UTILITY COMPANY REQUIREMENTS

- A. The contractor shall contact the serving utility company for all utility system requirements prior to commencement of work. Utility work shall include electric power, telephone, data, fiber optic cable, cable television or other utilities as may require connections as a part of this contract. Coordinate and comply with all serving utility company requirements, designs, and schedules. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs associated with failure to contact or coordinate with utility company requirements.
- B. The utility information depicted on the contract documents is for bidding purposes only and shall not be used for construction purposes. All construction shall be performed according to engineered documents provided by the serving utility company. The Contractor shall obtain and coordinate with utility company requirements as a part of this contract and furnish and install all work as a part of this contract.
- C. Verify all connection points, routing, and requirements with the serving utility company prior to commencement of work and coordinate final requirements with other trades.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. All electrical work, materials and equipment provided under this contract shall be guaranteed for a period of one year from the date of acceptance of the work by the Owner. Any failures, problems, or deficiencies experienced during this period due to defective materials or faulty workmanship shall be immediately corrected by the Contractor without cost to the Owner. The Contractor shall be responsible for all damages to the Owner's facility, production, or work product due to deficiencies in the electrical system. Equipment guarantees in excess of one year shall not be superseded by this guarantee

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTION LIMITATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Substitution requests for electrical equipment will be entertained under the following conditions:
 - 1. Notification of Contractor's intent to request substitutions for convenience must be declared during the Electrical Preconstruction Conference so potential risks to system performance and construction schedule may be identified for Contractor's response in submission of the substitution request. Submission of requests for substitutions for convenience must meet the conditions and deadline specified in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" to receive approval.
 - 2. For electrical equipment and systems, substitutions for cause are considered major construction risks. If it is possible that Contractor may need to request substitutions for cause because of equipment unavailability, or inability to meet construction schedule because of lead time, Contractor must declare the possibility during the Electrical Preconstruction Conference to permit establishing a mitigation plan for minimizing risks to system performance and construction schedule.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. The contractor shall arrange for the sequence of construction including the scheduling of long-lead items, expected shutdowns, work of other trades and Owner-scheduled events. The contractor shall coordinate and cooperate with all other trades for a successful completion of the Contract Work.
- B. The contractor shall provide adequate and qualified supervision for the work performed and at no point during the construction shall work be performed without the supervision of a representative of the Contractor.

- C. The drawings show general arrangement of equipment and appurtenances. Follow these drawings as closely as the actual construction will permit. Provide all offsets, fittings, and appurtenances required but not shown on drawings.
- D. All equipment shall be installed plumb and level, orthogonal or parallel to structure and in a professional and skillful manner. All equipment and junction boxes shall be accessible for maintenance, inspection and replacement.
- E. The locations of fixtures, outlets, devices, equipment, etc. indicated on drawings are approximate location only. Verify location and mounting height of outlets/equipment not dimensionally shown on the plans with Architect prior to rough-in. Revision and coordination may be necessary at the time the equipment is installed in order to meet field conditions or other coordination.
- F. Coordinate all equipment points of connection, including voltage, wiring installation method, fuse and overcurrent protection, etc. with equipment vendor. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer of any discrepancies immediately.
- G. Coordinate the placement and sequence of installation for all mounting bolts, conduits, sleeves, etc. that are to be installed in cast-in-situ concrete slabs, concrete walls, and post-tension concrete slabs with the structural drawings prior to rough-in.
- H. Coordinate locations of all penetrations, openings, slots, chases, and sleeves as necessary for the installation of raceways, conductors and equipment. The Contractor shall install access panels in walls or ceilings in coordination with the Architect for all electrical boxes and equipment requiring access. The Contractor shall provide approved fire sealant where required to maintain fire ratings at all penetrations.
- I. Coordinate location of light fixtures, disconnect switches, and controllers in mechanical equipment rooms with other trades contractors prior to installation to avoid any conflicts and to be in compliance with code. Maintain proper mounting heights and clearances.
- J. Examine and compare the contract drawings with contract specifications and report any discrepancies to Architect and Engineer.

3.2 SEISMIC ANCHORAGE

- A. All switchgear and other free standing electrical equipment shall be anchored to withstand seismic forces in this area.
- B. Wall mounted equipment shall be anchored/braced to withstand seismic force.
- C. Cable tray shall be installed complete with all seismic anchoring and bracing.
- D. Conduit supports shall be adequately sized and braced to comply with seismic criteria.

3.3 START UP AND COMMISSIONING

- A. Contractor shall be responsible to provide manufacturer's technician for startup service of each system as indicated. The Contractor shall demonstrate that all systems operate within the manufacturer's recommended performance characteristics, the electrical construction documents, system requirements, and Owner requirements.
- B. The Contractor shall initiate start up of all electrical equipment including operation of all devices, switches, generators, transfer switches, overcurrent protection, disconnect switches, etc. to verify normal operation of all moving parts and electrical performance.
- C. The Contractor shall test, adjust, aim, align, label, clean and complete all systems prior to acceptance by the Owner's Representative.
- D. The Contractor shall test each system per the manufacturer's requirements and shall perform the following system tests:
 - 1. Inspect cables for physical damage and proper connection.
 - 2. Torque test cable connection and tighten in accordance with termination manufacturers recommendations.
 - 3. Infrared scan all connections under loaded conditions and provided color printed images.
 - 4. Insulation resistance test of each cable.
 - 5. Inspect ground system connections.
 - 6. Voltage drop tests on the main grounding electrode of system.
 - 7. Determine the ground resistance between the main grounding system and all major electrical equipment frames, system neutral points.
 - 8. Check rated voltage and phase balance at all equipment, motors and selected devices at full load conditions. Measure no load voltage conditions at each location.
 - 9. Furnish all material, equipment, instruments and labor as required to complete testing.
 - 10. Provide all test results properly bound in PDF format.

3.4 INSTRUCTION MANUAL AND TRAINING

- A. Operating instructions shall be provided by the Contractor at the conclusion of the project for each system and each principal piece of equipment for the use of operating and maintenance personnel. The operating instructions shall include wiring and control diagrams showing the entire system, including, but not limited to, equipment, devices, and control sequences. All operating instructions shall be approved by the University's Representative.

- B. The Contractor shall provide the operation and maintenance manuals to the Owner's Representative at the completion of the project, O&M manuals may be submitted in PDF format. Each manual shall be labeled indicating: the project name; system name; Contractor's name, telephone number, and contact person; and Owner's name. The Contractor shall provide the following minimum information within each manual:
1. List of the Subcontractors performing work on the system including contact names, telephone numbers, and email addresses.
 2. Routine and emergency service contact names, telephone numbers, and email addresses for each system.
 3. Description of system operation.
 4. Single line diagrams and control wiring diagrams.
 5. Detailed product literature with technical information.
 6. Local factory representative contact name, telephone number, and email address.
 7. Sequence of starting, shutdown and operation.
 8. Installation instructions and safety requirements.
 9. Maintenance schedule, testing instructions and performance parameters.
 10. Parts list including recommended spare parts.
- C. Include Automatic operation of the emergency system gear, switchgear and/or subsystem including required component settings (e.g. automatic transfer, medium voltage switchgear, etc.). Include operation of the switchgear and/or subsystems, and any emergency operation capability and procedures.
- D. Safety features built into the switchgear and/or subsystem.
- E. Start-up, checkout and shutdown procedures.
- F. Shop Drawing Manual: Complete set of record shop drawings, cut sheets and brochures.
- G. Owner's staff and maintenance personnel shall be thoroughly trained, minimum four (4) hours, in the use of each system or major piece of equipment installed unless otherwise stated in other sections of Division 26. This training shall be provided as part of the Contractor's base bid to supply the system or equipment. Refer to other sections of Division 26 for additional information. The training is to be scheduled at mutually agreeable times between the Owner's Representative and the Contractor.

3.5 CLEANING AND REPAIR

- A. The Contractor shall provide cutting and patching as required to install the electrical system in this contract. Patching shall be performed with materials which exactly match the adjacent surfaces in color, texture, character, and appearance. All patches must maintain the fire ratings of the original surface and shall be sealed with a U.L. listed and Fire Marshal approved sealant.
- B. The Contractor shall match the finish and appearance of all existing conditions where construction of new work is adjacent to existing surfaces or equipment. The Contractor shall protect all surfaces, structure, furnishings, and finishes not directly affected by cutting or patching. Provide dust and moisture barriers as required during cutting and prior to patching openings.
- C. Vacuum clean the interiors of all switchboards, substations, panelboards, transformers, motor control centers and transfer switches upon completion of all work to remove dust and debris. After cleaning, cover all equipment to prevent any construction dust from recurring. Before equipment is energized, vacuum all interiors a second time to assure clean equipment.

3.6 RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. The Contractor shall prepare as-built documents depicting all revisions to branch circuits, conduit routing, equipment, panel schedules, lighting control schedules, or materials. Drawings shall be in AutoCAD .dwg format and Adobe .pdf formats. Contractor shall provide (1) full-size hard copy print and (1) USB memory stick of all as-built drawings and files. Hand-drawn or “red-line” drawings shall not be accepted. Drawings shall be legible, reproducible, and properly identified such they may be used as a reference for maintenance or construction.

END OF SECTION 26 00 10

SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
 - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 05 13 "Medium-Voltage Cables" for single-conductor and multiconductor cables, cable splices, and terminations for electrical distribution systems with 2001 to 35,000 V.
 - 2. Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2 and 3 control cables.
 - 3. Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems"
 - 4. Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ASTM: American Society of Testing Materials.
- B. ICEA: Insulated Cable Engineers Association.
- C. IEEE: Institute of Electrical & Electronics Engineers.
- D. NEMA: National Electrical Manufacturers Association.
- E. NETA ATS: InterNational Electrical Testing Association - Acceptance Testing Specification.
- F. VFC: Variable frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical data for each type of product, indicating conductor/cable construction, insulation material, thickness of insulation, jacket, cable stranding, and voltage rating of each type of conductor/cable specified, splices and terminations. Indicate date and place of manufacture for each conductor/cable, cable, splice and termination.

- B. Manufacturer's ISO certification.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Independent Testing Agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports. Perform field testing of cables per para 3.8. Submit six (6) copies of field test reports to owner's representative within two (2) weeks of completion of test.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General Requirements: The low voltage power conductors and cable shall be copper, minimum 600V rated unless otherwise indicated. Aluminum conductors and cables shall not be accepted unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Materials and installation shall meet or exceed requirements in the following referenced standards and shall be listed and labelled by UL.
 - 1. ICEA S-93-639/ NEMA WC 74.
 - 2. AEIC CS8.
 - 3. UL 1072.
 - 4. IEEE.
 - 5. ASTM.
 - 6. NEMA.
- C. Conductors and cables shall be of the same manufacturer, and shipped to the job site in original unbroken reels.
- D. Conductors and cables shall be manufactured with in twelve (12) months of installation. Date of manufacture shall be clearly marked on conductors or conductor reels.
- E. Manufacturer shall have minimum ten (10) years experience in the manufacturer of conductors and cables similar to those specified on this project.
- F. Manufacturer shall have ISO 9001 and ISO 9002 certification.
- G. All conductors and cables shall be new and supplied by a local distributor.
- H. American made conductors and cables have been acceptable. If non-domestic product is submitted, notice is hereby given that extensive testing shall be required to insure quality and conformance to the Specifications. All of the testing procedures and results shall be satisfactory to the Owner's representative. The Contractor shall bear all costs for testing and shall be responsible for all costs associated with travel, lodging, etc. for the Owner's Representative to witness the test at the manufacturer's testing facility. The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner at \$1,200 per man day or part thereof for the time required to witness the testing.
- I. Testing: Provide the services of an independent qualified testing laboratory to perform the specified field tests. Notify the College Representatives fourteen (14) days in advance of performance of work requiring testing.

- J. Conductors, cables, splices and terminations shall be manufactured within twelve (12) months of installation. Each item shall have a permanent marking on the product or the original manufacturers' package indicating the date of manufacture unless otherwise noted.
- K. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Testing agency shall be an independent company; shall have been a member of NETA for a minimum of last ten (10) years and has permanent in-house testing engineers and technicians involved with testing of low voltage electrical power conductors and cables similar to those specified on this project.
 - 2. Testing company shall be located with 50 miles radius of the project.
 - 3. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
 - 4. Field Testing technician and supervisor shall have minimum ten (10) years' experience in field testing of low voltage power conductors and cables of the type and rating similar to the conductors and cables to be tested on this project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
 - 1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
 - 2. Southwire Incorporated
 - 3. Alpha Wire.
 - 4. Belden Inc.
 - 5. Encore Wire Corporation..
- B. Conductor Material: Electrical grade, soft drawn annealed copper, 98 percent conductivity, and fabricated in accordance with ASTM and IPCEA standards. Minimum size is number 12 for branch circuits, number 14 stranded for control wiring. Aluminum conductors are not permitted. MC- Cables are not permitted.
- C. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
- D. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for [Type THHN-2-THWN-2] [Type XHHW-2].
- E. VFC Cable:
 - 1. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable.
 - 2. Type TC-ER with oversized crosslinked polyethylene insulation, [spiral-wrapped foil plus 85 percent coverage braided shields and insulated full-size ground wire], and sunlight- and oil-resistant outer PVC jacket.
 - 3. Comply with UL requirements for cables in direct burial applications.
- F. Provide separate neutral with each branch circuit serving outlets. When dedicated neutrals are provided, use color spiral to match associated phase.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers:
 - 1. Spears-DS400 Dri Splice Pre-filled
- B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.
- C. Copper conductors shall be terminated in copper or bronze mechanical connectors or lugs or tool applied compression connections made of copper for all connections except those on wiring devices.
- D. Splices in wires No. 10 and smaller shall be made with twist-on splicing connector in accordance with UL486-C. Connections in wires No. 8 and larger shall be made with compression type connectors in accordance with UL486-A and wrapped with insulated tape in accordance with UL501. Insulating tape shall be applied in a minimum of two layers of half wrap or built to match the overall insulation of the wire.
- E. Splices in underground pull boxes shall be made submersible type and made using “3M” Scotch-cast epoxy kits.
- F. Pressure type connectors are not permitted.

2.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger, except VFC cable, which shall be extra flexible stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway]
- B. Exposed Feeders: [Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway]

- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway].
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway]
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway]
- F. Feeders in Cable Tray: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG].
- G. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway].
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway].
- I. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway]
- J. Branch Circuits Installed below Raised Flooring: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Armored cable, Type AC].
- K. Branch Circuits in Cable Tray: [Type THHN-2-THWN-2, single conductors in raceway] [Type XHHW-2, single conductors larger than No. 1/0 AWG] .
- L. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- M. VFC Output Circuits: [Type XHHW-2 in metal conduit] [Type TC-ER cable][with braided shield][with dual tape shield].

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. All conductors and cables shall be installed in a raceway.
- B. Before installing conductors and cables in existing conduits, verify the continuity of each conduit; each surface conduit is properly supported per code and clear of any debris.
- C. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- D. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- E. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will

not damage cables or raceway.

- F. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- G. Support cables according to Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- H. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 26 05 36 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors].
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Each conductor shall be factory color coded by conductor manufacturer. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage an independent qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections[with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative]:
 - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance conductors, feeder conductors and the conductors feeding the following critical equipment and services] for compliance with requirements.
 - 2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical tests stated in latest NETA Acceptance Testing Specification section 7.3.2 (Inspection and Test Procedures-Cables, Low Voltage-600V Maximum). Certify compliance with test parameters per NETA tables.
 - 3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
- D. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements. Include color scan images.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.
- E. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Grounding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Overhead-line grounding.
 - 2. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 3. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NETA ATS: InterNational Electrical Testing Association - Acceptance Testing Specification.
- B. NETA MTS: InterNational Electrical Testing Association - Maintenance Testing Specification.
- C. NFPA : National Fire Protection Association.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's technical catalog cuts for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Site drawings to scale including details showing location and size of each field connection of grounding system.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Informational Submittals: Plans drawn to scale (1/4"=1'-0") showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding conductors, connectors.

5. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 6. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified independent testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports. Submit written test reports including the following:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals, include the following:
1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells, ground rings, grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA MTS and NFPA 70B]
 - a. Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
 - b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
1. Testing agency shall be an independent company; shall have been a member of NETA for a minimum of last ten (10) years and has permanent in-house testing engineers and technicians involved with testing of grounding systems similar to those specified on this project.
 2. Testing company shall be located within 50 miles radius of the project.
 3. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
 4. Field Testing technician and supervisor shall have minimum ten (10) years' experience in field testing of grounding systems of the type and rating similar to the systems to be tested on this project.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GROUNDING ELECTRODES, CONDUCTORS, CONNECTOR, BUS:

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, or equal:

1. Grounding Connectors, Bars and Rods:
 - a. Erico Inc.; Electrical Product Group
 - b. Framatome Connectors/Burndy Electrical.
 - c. Ideal Industries, Inc.
 - d. O-Z/Gedney Co.; a business of the EGS Electrical Group.
 - e. Thomas & Betts, Electrical.
2. Grounding Conductors and cables:
 - a. Southwire
 - b. American Insulated Wire
 - c. Okonite

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding; if wood, use pressure-treated fir, cypress, or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, [1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm)] in cross section, with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by UL for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, pressure type with at least two bolts.
 - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.
- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- D. Bus-bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression -type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad [3/4 inch by 10 feet (19 mm by 3 m) in diameter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. [8] AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. [6] AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down to specified height above floor; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.

3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING OVERHEAD LINES

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Install two parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
- C. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
- D. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.
- E. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
- F. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.
- G. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches (50 mm) above to 6 inches (150 mm) below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout
- C. Install #4/0 bare copper ground wire loop around the outside perimeter of the manhole, in soil, 12" above bottom of manhole. Cadweld ground wire loop to #4/0 bare copper ground wire connecting all exposed metal parts inside the manhole through a 1" opening at the top of manhole wall. Seal and waterproof opening after wire installation.
- D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.
- E. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Medium Voltage Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items

associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 4/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits in the same conduit containing phase and neutral conductors. Comply with NFPA 70, Article 250, for types, sizes, and quantities of equipment grounding conductors, unless specific types, larger sizes, or more conductors than required by NFPA 70 are indicated.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70. :
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
 - 10. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment. Verify requirements with X-ray equipment supplier prior to rough-ins.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from

panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: In addition to grounding and bonding required by NFPA 70, provide a separate grounding system complying with requirements in TIA/ATIS J-STD-607-A.
1. For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
 2. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-4-by-12-inch (6.3-by-100-by-300-mm) grounding bus.
 3. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
 4. All metallic conduits and cable tray shall be continuously bonded to maintain low resistance ground path and bonded back to the central equipment by the use of bonding jumpers where needed.
- H. [Metal] [and] [Wood] Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode next to the pole and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors. Provide a handhole for the grounding electrode at each pole.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches (50 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade using exothermic welds, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 2. For grounding electrode system, install ground rods at least three rods (unless otherwise indicated on the drawings), spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 26 05 43 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches (300 mm) deep, with cover.

1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
 2. Test Wells near light poles: Coordinate location with landscape drawings and install one at each pole. Test well shall be open bottom and installed on a 12"H bed of gravel or crushed stone (1" size).
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Separately Derived System (SDS): All multiple branch metal water piping laterals originating from outside the area being served by the SDS and which serve the same area being served by the SDS shall be bonded to the common grounding electrode (GE) or the common grounding electrode conductor (GEC). The bonding connection shall be made at each level that the metal water piping serves. When multiple SDS's are installed or a SDS serves multiple levels of a structure, a copper common GEC shall be installed for the SDS as permitted in NFPA 70 article 250.30 (D)3 and sized per article 250.30 (A) and (B).
 3. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 4. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet (18 m) apart.
- I. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
1. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. [4/0] AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.

2. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building's foundation.
- J. Ufer Ground (Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet (6 m) of bare copper conductor not smaller than No. [4]AWG.
 1. If concrete foundation is less than [20 feet (6 m) long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.

3.6 LABELING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for instruction signs. The label or its text shall be green.
- B. Install labels at the telecommunications bonding conductor and grounding equalizer and at the grounding electrode conductor where exposed.
 1. Label Text: "If this connector or cable is loose or if it must be removed for any reason, notify the facility manager."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage an independent qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections. Refer to section
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal[, at ground test wells] [, and at individual ground rods]. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of

- precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - c. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
- 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- G. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
 - 1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: [5] ohms.
 - 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: [5] ohms.
 - 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: [3] ohms.
 - 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: [1] ohm(s).
 - 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: [5] ohms.
 - 6. Manhole Grounds: [10] ohms.
- H. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

SECTION 26 05 29 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 26 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of [**five**] <Insert number> times the applied force.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
 - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Equipment supports.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified together with concrete Specifications.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 07 72 00 "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. ERICO International Corporation.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.
3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch- (14-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c., in at least 1 surface.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. Seasafe, Inc.
 3. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 4. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles, except metal items may be stainless steel.
 5. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their

supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, stainless steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as [required by] [scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in] NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, [EMT] [IMC] [RMC] [EMT, IMC, and RMC] may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
 - 6. To Steel: [Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers

- and nuts] and [Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69] .
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use [3000-psi (20.7-MPa)], 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in [Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."] [Section 03 30 53 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."]
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in [Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting"] [Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting"] [and] [Section 09 96 00 "High Performance Coatings"] <Insert other painting Sections> for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
 - 2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
 - 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 5. Surface raceways.
 - 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 05 43 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. EMT: Electrical metal tubing
- C. ENT: Electrical non-metallic tubing
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- E. HDPE: High density polyethylene pipe
- F. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- G. LFMC: Liquidtite flexible metal conduit
- H. LFNC: Liquidtite flexible non-metallic conduit.
- I. RNC: Rigid non-metallic conduit
- J. RTRC: Reinforced thermosetting resin conduit

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Each conduit shall bear manufacturer's trademark and UL label.
- B. Each type of conduit and fittings shall be of a single manufacturer. Multiple manufacturer's of the same material are not acceptable.
- C. Comply with California Electric Code (CEC)

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit IEQ 4.1: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit IEQ 4: For solvent cements and adhesive primers, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- C. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- D. Samples: For [wireways] [nonmetallic wireways] [and] [surface raceways] and for each color and texture specified, [12 inches (300 mm) long.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.

3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following
1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
 2. Electri-Flex Company.
 3. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.
 4. Republic Conduit.
 5. Robroy Industries.
 6. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 7. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
 8. Wheatland Tube Company; a division of John Maneely Company.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be UL listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, , and marked for intended location and application.
- C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated [rigid steel conduit].
1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
- G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- H. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
- I. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- J. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel

- b. Type: compression.
- 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
- 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- K. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following
 - 1. CANTEX Inc.
 - 2. Condux International, Inc.
 - 3. Electri-Flex Company.
 - 4. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - 5. RACO; a Hubbell company.
 - 6. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
- D. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- F. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- G. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.
- H. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
- I. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.
- J. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- K. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- L. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall have a VOC content of 510 and 550 g/L or less, respectively, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

- M. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following:
1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 2. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
 3. Mono-Systems, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: [Hinged type] [Screw-cover type] unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following
1. Allied Moulded Products, Inc.
 2. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
 3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- D. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.

- E. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- F. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall have a VOC content of 510 and 550 g/L or less, respectively, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- G. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be UL listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following
 - a. Hubbell Wiring Systems
 - b. Wiremold / Legrand.
 - c. Mono-Systems, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems Division.
 - b. Wiremold / Legrand.
 - c. Mono-Systems, Inc.
 - d. Panduit Corp.

2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - 1. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
 - 2. EGS/Appleton Electric.
 - 3. Hoffman; a Pentair company.
 - 4. Hubbell Incorporated; Killark Division.
 - 5. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of EGS Electrical Group.

6. RACO; a Hubbell Company.
 7. Robroy Industries.
 8. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 9. Wiremold / Legrand.
- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Metal Floor Boxes:
1. Material: [Cast metal] [or] [sheet metal].
 2. Type: [Fully adjustable] [Semi-adjustable].
 3. Shape: Rectangular.
 4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 5. Manufacturer: "Legrand" Wiremold Resource RFB Series.
 - a. "Legrand" is a Board of Trustees Approved Sole Source Item. No substitutions will be accepted.
- G. Nonmetallic Floor Boxes: Nonadjustable, [round] [rectangular].
1. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- I. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb (32 kg).
1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be UL listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, and marked for intended location and application.
- J. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- K. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- L. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

- M. Device Box Dimensions: [4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).
- N. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- O. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, [Type 1] [Type 3R] with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
 - 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- P. Cabinets:
 - 1. NEMA 250, [Type 1] [Type 3R][Type 4X] [Type 12] galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
 - 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
 - 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
 - 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
 - 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
 - 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

- A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:
 - 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
 - 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following
 - a. Jensen Precast Inc.
 - b. CDR Systems Corporation; Hubbell Power Systems.
 - c. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.; Christy Concrete Products.
 - d. Synertech Moulded Products; a division of Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 - 2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
 - 3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with [open] [closed] [integral closed] bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.

5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, ["ELECTRIC."]. Boxes containing conductors and cables over 600V, the cover shall include permanently engraved name of the utility company, type of utility (e.g. ELECTRIC), DANGER-HIGH VOLTAGE-KEEP OUT" in minimum 1/2" inch size, block letters.
 7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 8. Handholes [12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long)] and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.
- C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of [polymer concrete] [reinforced concrete] [cast iron] [hot-dip galvanized-steel diamond plate] [fiberglass].
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. CDR Systems Corporation; Hubbell Power Systems.
 - b. NewBasis.
 - c. Nordic Fiberglass, Inc.
 - d. Oldcastle Precast, Inc.; Christy Concrete Products.
 - e. Synertech Moulded Products; a division of Oldcastle Precast, Inc.
 2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
 3. Color of Frame and Cover: Gray.
 4. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with [open] [closed] [integral closed] bottom unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
 6. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 7. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, ["ELECTRIC."]. Boxes containing conductors and cables over 600V, the cover shall include permanently engraved name of the utility company (e.g. UCSD), type of utility (e.g. ELECTRIC), DANGER-HIGH VOLTAGE-KEEP OUT" in minimum 1/2" inch size, block letters.
 8. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 9. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

- A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.

3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: EMT, [RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC]. Use EPC-40PVC inside concrete walls and columns only.
 3. Underground Conduit: Type EPC-40-PVC
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT
 2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT
 3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Mechanical rooms.
 - b. Gymnasiums.
 4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 5. Concealed in concrete walls and columns: RNC Type EPC-40-PVC.
 6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations. All FMC shall be steel.
 7. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
 8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 [stainless steel] [nonmetallic] in kitchens and damp or wet locations.
 9. Raceways serving light fixtures shall be minimum 3/4" steel flex and shall not exceed 6'.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size for all applications including controls.
- D. Raceways and fittings terminating at equipment, enclosure or pullbox shall have a seal tight fittings at the end of the equipment.
- E. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after

- installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10. Set-Screw fittings are prohibited from use.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- F. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- G. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- H. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.
- I. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

3.2 LOW VOLTAGE CONDUIT FILL CAPACITY

- A. Percentage fill to be 40%.
- B. Conduit fill capacity to be 40%.
- C. Extra sleeves for future growth, see the table below.

Conduit to be used	Spare Sleeve or Conduit for future use
1-4	2
5-8	3
9-12	4
13-16	5

- D. Spare conduit lines shall be coordinated per Project basis.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
 - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
 - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor.
- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated
- O. throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use

roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

- S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 250lbs (113 kgs) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Provide acrylic identification tags (2"X4") at each end indicating the source. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- T. Surface Raceways:
 - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
 - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.
- U. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- V. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - W. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - X. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - Y. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
 - Z. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- AA. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change. e.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot

of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

BB. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations

CC. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

DD. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

EE. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

FF. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

GG. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

HH. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

II. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

JJ. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction

as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Top of conduits inside the handhole/box shall be minimum 4 inches above the bottom of the handhole/box.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel (minimum 6 inch high), graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 - 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 - 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

SECTION 26 05 33.13 - CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type ENT duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
4. Type FMC-S duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
9. Solvent cements.

B. Products Installed, but Not Furnished, under This Section:

1. See Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" for electrical equipment labels.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 00 10 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.
2. Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage for Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for nonmetallic underground conduit with conductors (Type NUCC).
3. Section 26 05 43 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior duct banks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Conduit:** A structure containing one or more duct raceways.
- B. Duct Raceway:** A single enclosed raceway for conductors or cable.
- C. Duct Bank:** An arrangement of conduit providing one or more continuous duct raceways between two points.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.

2. Type ENT duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
4. Type FMC-S duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
9. Solvent cements.

B. Sustainable design submittals.

1. Solvent cements.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Manufacturers' Published Instructions:

1. Type EMT-S duct raceways and elbows.
2. Type ENT duct raceways and fittings.
3. Type ERMC-S duct raceways, elbows, couplings, and nipples.
4. Type FMC-S duct raceways.
5. Type LFMC duct raceways.
6. Type PVC duct raceways and fittings.
7. Fittings for conduit, tubing, and cable.
8. Electrically conductive corrosion-resistant compounds for threaded conduit.
9. Solvent cements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE EMT-S DUCT RACEWAYS AND ELBOWS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FJMX; including UL 797.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL FJMX - Steel Electrical Metal Tubing (EMT-S) and Elbows:

1. Material: Steel.

2. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.2 TYPE ENT DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKHU; including UL 1653.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL FKHU - Electrical Nonmetallic Tubing (ENT) and Fittings:
 1. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - b. Fittings:
 - 1) Mechanically Attached Fittings: UL 1653.
 - 2) Solvent-Attached Fittings: UL 651.

2.3 TYPE ERM-C S DUCT RACEWAYS, ELBOWS, COUPLINGS, AND NIPPLES

- A. Performance Criteria:
 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DYIX; including UL 6.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

- C. UL DYIX - Galvanized-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-G), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
 - 1. Exterior Coating: Zinc.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - b. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - c. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. UL DYIX - PVC-Coated-Steel Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit (ERMC-S-PVC), Elbows, Couplings, and Nipples:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Exterior Coating: PVC complying with NEMA RN 1.
 - b. Interior Coating: Zinc with organic top coating.
 - c. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - d. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.
 - e. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: UL 1203.
 - f. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

2.4 TYPE FMC-S DUCT RACEWAYS

- A. Performance Criteria:
 - 1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXUZ; including UL 1.
- B. Source Quality Control:
 - 1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 - 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL DXUZ - Steel Flexible Metal Conduit (FMC-S):
 - 1. Material: Steel.
 - 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.5 TYPE LFMC DUCT RACEWAYS

- A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXHR; including UL 360.
- B. Source Quality Control:
1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL DXHR - Steel Liquidtight Flexible Metal Conduit (LFMC-S):
1. Material: Steel.
 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - b. Colors: As indicated on Drawings.

2.6 TYPE PVC DUCT RACEWAYS AND FITTINGS

- A. Performance Criteria:
1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DZYR; including UL 651.
- B. Source Quality Control:
1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
 2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.
- C. UL DZYR - Schedule 40 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-40) and Fittings:
1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 40.
 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.
- D. UL DZYR - Schedule 80 Rigid PVC Conduit (PVC-80) and Fittings:
1. Dimensional Specifications: Schedule 80.
 2. Options:
 - a. Minimum Trade Size: Metric designator 21 (trade size 3/4).
 - b. Markings: For use with maximum 90 deg C wire.

2.7 FITTINGS FOR CONDUIT, TUBING, AND CABLE

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

C. UL EBMB - Duct Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations:

1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN EBMB; including UL 1203.

D. UL DWTT - Fittings for Type ERMC and Type PVC, Duct Raceways:

1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.
2. Options:
 - a. Material: Die cast.
 - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling. Setscrew couplings with only single screw per conduit are unacceptable.
 - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

E. UL FKAV - Fittings for Type EMT Duct Raceways:

1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FKAV; including UL 514B.
2. Options:
 - a. Material: Die cast.
 - b. Coupling Method: Compression coupling . Setscrew couplings with only single screw per conduit are unacceptable.
 - c. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: UL 651 with flexible bonding jumper.

F. UL DXAS - Fittings for Type LFMC Duct Raceways:

1. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DXAS; including UL 514B.

2.8 ELECTRICALLY CONDUCTIVE CORROSION-RESISTANT COMPOUNDS FOR THREADED CONDUIT

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN FOIZ; including UL Subject 2419.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

2.9 SOLVENT CEMENTS

A. Performance Criteria:

1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN DWTT; including UL 514B.

B. Source Quality Control:

1. Product Data: Prepare and submit catalog cuts, brochures, and performance data illustrating size, physical appearance, and other characteristics of product.
2. Manufacturer's Published Instructions: Prepare and submit installation, testing, and operating instructions for product.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SELECTION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A.** Unless more stringent requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with NFPA 70 for selection of duct raceways. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

B. Outdoors:

1. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERM C.
2. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM C.
 - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
3. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: Corrosion-resistant EMT.
4. Concealed Aboveground: EMT.
5. Concrete Encased in Trench: PVC-40.
6. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

C. Indoors:

1. Hazardous Classified Locations: ERM C.
2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: ERM C. Locations include the following:
 - a. Loading docks.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 - d. Gymnasiums.
3. Exposed and Subject to Physical Damage: ERM C. Locations include the following:
 - a. Locations less than 2.5 m (8 ft) above finished floor.
4. Exposed and Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
5. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: Corrosion-resistant EMT.
7. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.

D. Duct Fittings: Select fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.

1. ERM C: Provide threaded-type fittings unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUITS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

A. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions.

B. Reference Standards for Installation: Unless more stringent installation requirements are specified in Contract Documents or manufacturers' published instructions, comply with the following:

1. Type EMT-S: Article 358 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
2. Type ENT: Article 362 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 102.
3. Type ERM C-S: Article 344 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
4. Type FMC-S: Article 348 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
5. Type LFMC: Article 350 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 101.
6. Type PVC: Article 356 of NFPA 70 and NECA NEIS 111.
7. Expansion Fittings: NEMA FB 2.40.
8. Consult Architect for resolution of conflicting requirements.

C. Special Installation Techniques:

1. General Requirements for Installation of Duct Raceways:
 - a. Complete duct raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
 - b. Provide stub-ups through floors with coupling threaded inside for plugs, set flush with finished floor. Plug coupling until conduit is extended above floor to final destination or a minimum of 2 ft (0.6 m) above finished floor.

- c. Install no more than equivalent of three 90-degree bends in conduit run. Support within 12 inch (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- d. Make bends in duct raceway using large-radius preformed ells except for parallel bends. Field bending must be in accordance with NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Provide only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- e. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- f. Support conduit within 12 inch (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- g. Install duct sealing fittings at accessible locations in accordance with NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed duct raceways, install fitting in flush steel box with blank cover plate having finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install duct sealing fittings in accordance with NFPA 70.
- h. Install devices to seal duct raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal interior of duct raceways at the following points:
 - 1) Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2) Where an underground service duct raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3) Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
 - 4) Conduit extending into pressurized duct raceway and equipment.
 - 5) Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
 - 6) Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- i. Do not install duct raceways or electrical items on "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.
- j. Do not install conduits within 2 inch (50 mm) of the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- k. Keep duct raceways at least 6 inch (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal duct raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- l. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits metric designator 53 (trade size 2) and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length. Ream inside of conduit to remove burrs.
- m. Install pull wires in empty duct raceways. Provide polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200 lb (90 kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inch (300 mm) of slack at both ends of pull wire. Cap underground duct raceways designated as spare above grade alongside duct raceways in use.
- n. Install duct raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures without hubs with locknuts on both sides of enclosure wall. Install locknuts hand tight, plus one-quarter turn more.
 - 1) Termination fittings with shoulders do not require two locknuts.
- o. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to metric designator 35 (trade size 1-1/4) and insulated throat metal bushings on metric designator 41 (trade size 1-1/2) and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

2. Types ERM C:
 - a. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound that maintains electrical conductivity to threads of duct raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's published instructions.
3. Type ERM C-S-PVC:
 - a. Follow manufacturer's installation instructions for clamping, cutting, threading, bending, and assembly.
 - b. Provide PVC-coated sealing locknut for exposed male threads transitioning into female NPT threads that do not have sealing sleeves, including transitions from PVC couplings/female adapters to Type ERM C-S-PVC elbows in direct-burial applications. PVC-coated sealing locknuts must not be used in place of conduit hub. PVC-coated sealing locknut must cover exposed threads on Type ERM C-S-PVC duct raceway.
 - c. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated duct raceway with manufacturer-approved corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
4. Types FMC and LFM C:
 - a. Provide a maximum of 72 inch (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
5. Types PVC:
 - a. Do not install Type PVC, Type HDPE, or Type EPEC conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 122 deg F (50 deg C). Conductor ratings must be limited to 75 deg C except where installed in a trench outside buildings with concrete encasement, where 90 deg C conductors are permitted.
 - b. Comply with manufacturer's published instructions for solvent welding and fittings.
6. Duct Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 - a. Arrange duct raceways to cross building expansion joints with expansion fittings at right angles to the joint.
 - b. Arrange duct raceways to ensure that each is surrounded by minimum of 2 inch (50 mm) of concrete without voids.
 - c. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless locations have been specifically approved by Architect.
 - d. Change from ENT to PVC-40 before rising above floor.
7. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 - a. Provide EMT or ERM C for duct raceways.
 - b. Provide a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

8. Duct Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration:
 - a. Provide insulating bushings to protect conductors, including conductors smaller than 4 AWG. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
9. Duct Fittings: Install fittings in accordance with NEMA FB 2.10 guidelines.
 - a. ERMC-S-PVC: Provide only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Provide sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 - b. EMT: Provide setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 - c. Flexible Conduit: Provide only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit type. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
10. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - a. Install in runs of aboveground PVC that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that have straight-run length that exceeds 25 ft (7.6 m). Install in runs of aboveground ERMC and EMT conduit that are located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that have straight-run length that exceeds 100 ft (30 m).
 - b. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for the following locations:
 - 1) Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - 2) Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
 - 3) Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
 - 4) Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.
 - c. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
 - d. Install expansion fittings at locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 - e. Install expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
11. Duct Raceways Penetrating Rooms or Walls with Acoustical Requirements: Seal duct raceway openings on both sides of rooms or walls with acoustically rated putty.

12. Identification: Provide labels for conduit assemblies, duct raceways, and associated electrical equipment.

- a. Provide warning signs.

D. Interfaces with Other Work:

1. Coordinate installation of new products with existing conditions.
2. Coordinate with Section 07 84 13 "Penetration Firestopping" for installation of firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
3. Coordinate with Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduit hangers and supports.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33.13

SECTION 26 05 43 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct bank.
 - 2. Handholes and boxes.
 - 3. Manholes.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding of Electrical Systems".

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.
- B. PVC coated GRS: PVC coated Galvanized rigid steel conduit
- C. PVC: Poly Vinyl Chloride
- D. NETA: InterNational Testing Association

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
 - 2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
 - 3. Accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
 - 4. Warning tape.
 - 5. Warning planks.
 - 6. Pull ropes.
- B. Shop Drawings for Precast or Factory-Fabricated Underground Utility Structures: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other work, and accessories, including the

following:

1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 2. Reinforcement details.
 3. Frame and cover design and manhole frame support rings.
 4. Ladder details.
 5. Grounding details.
 6. Cable racks, insert. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, pulling-in and lifting irons, and sumps.
 7. Joint details.
- C. Shop Drawings for Factory-Fabricated Manholes, Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete: Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details, including the following:
1. Duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
 2. Cover design. Include details of factory engraved markings as specified.
 3. Grounding details.
 4. Cable racks, inserts. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.
1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified California registered professional electrical engineer.
- B. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858. Certificates shall be signed by manufacturer's structural engineer. Include name and date.
- C. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency.
- D. Source quality-control test reports.
- E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Comply with ANSI C2.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

- D. Each conduit shall bear manufacturer's trademark and UL label. Conduits and fittings shall be of a single manufacturer. Multiple manufactures for the same material are not acceptable.
- E. Comply with California Electric Code (CEC).

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.
- B. Deliver precast concrete manholes, handholes and other underground utility structures when the site is ready for installation. Store precast concrete and other factory-fabricated underground utility structures at Project site (if necessary) as recommended by manufacturer to prevent physical damage. Arrange so identification markings are visible.
- C. Lift and support precast concrete units only at designated lifting or supporting points.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify College no fewer than fourteen (14) days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without College Representative's written permission.
 - 3. Existing electrical service shall be shut down by owner's authorized personnel. Coordinate with owner in advance.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.
- B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
- B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators and associated fasteners in quantities equal to

[5] percent of quantity of each item installed (minimum six of each type).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT

- A. Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1. Plastic-Coated Rigid Steel Conduit and Fittings: Rigid steel conduit and fittings with an extruded polyvinyl chloride jacket, minimum 40 mils. The jacket shall have high tensile strength, shall be highly resistant to corrosion and shall not oxidize or deteriorate or shrink when exposed to sunlight and weather. The jacket shall be flame retardant and shall not support combustion. The interior of the conduit shall have a urethane coating, minimum 2 mils.
- B. RNC: Heavy wall design; NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B. Make all fittings watertight with solvent-weld recommended by the conduit manufacturer and specifically manufactured for the purpose.

2.2 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Tube and Conduit
 - 2. Cantex, Inc.
 - 3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
 - 4. JM Eagle
- B. Duct Accessories:
 - 1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
 - 2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches (300 by 600 by 76 mm) in size, manufactured from 6000-psi (41-MPa) concrete.
 - a. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
 - b. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) deep letters.

2.3 PRECAST CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Christy Concrete Products.
 2. Oldcastle Precast Group.
 3. Jensen Precast
- B. Comply with ASTM C 858 for design and manufacturing processes.
- C. Description: Factory-fabricated, reinforced-concrete, monolithically poured walls and bottom unless open-bottom enclosures are indicated. Frame and cover shall form top of enclosure and shall have traffic load rating consistent with that of handhole or box.
1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof cast-iron frame, with cast-iron cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 2. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof steel frame, with steel cover with recessed cover hook eyes and tamper-resistant, captive, cover-securing bolts.
 3. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 4. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, [NAME OF SERVING UTILITY COMPANY] ["ELECTRIC."] ["TELEPHONE."] ["GROUNDING"] [As indicated for each service.]
 5. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Extensions and Slabs: Designed to mate with bottom of enclosure. Same material as enclosure.
 - a. Extension shall provide increased depth of [12 inches (300 mm)].
 - b. Slab: Same dimensions as bottom of enclosure, and arranged to provide closure.
 7. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or frames and covers of handholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls.
 - b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
 - c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 8. Duct Entrances in Handhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
 - b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of handholes to facilitate racking of cable.
 9. Handholes [12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)] and larger shall have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.4 HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Description: Comply with SCTE 77.
1. Color: [Gray] [Green].
 2. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have closed bottom, unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
 4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, [NAME OF SERVING UTILITY COMPANY] ["ELECTRIC."] ["TELEPHONE."] [As indicated for each service.]
 6. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 7. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
 8. Handholes [12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long)] and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.5 PRECAST MANHOLES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Christy Concrete Products.
 2. Oldcastle Precast Group.
 3. Jensen Precast
- B. Comply with ASTM C 858[, with structural design loading as specified in Part 3 "Underground Enclosure Application" Article] and with interlocking mating sections, complete with accessories, hardware, and features.
1. Windows: Precast openings in walls, arranged to match dimensions and elevations of approaching ducts and duct banks plus an additional 12 inches (300 mm) vertically and horizontally to accommodate alignment variations.
 - a. Windows shall be located no less than 6 inches (150 mm) or from interior surfaces of walls, floors, or roofs of manholes, but close enough to corners to facilitate racking of cables on walls. Windows shall be no less than 12 inches (300 mm) from the floor to avoid water intrusion into the underground ducts.
 - b. Window opening shall have cast-in-place, welded wire fabric reinforcement for field cutting and bending to tie in to concrete envelopes of duct banks.
 - c. Window openings shall be framed with at least two additional No. 4 steel reinforcing bars in concrete around each opening.
 2. Duct Entrances in Manhole Walls: Cast end-bell or duct-terminating fitting in wall for each entering duct.
 - a. Type and size shall match fittings to duct or conduit to be terminated.
 - b. Fittings shall align with elevations of approaching ducts and be located near interior corners of manholes to facilitate racking of cable.

- C. Concrete Knockout Panels: 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick, for future conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- D. Joint Sealant: Asphaltic-butyl material with adhesion, cohesion, flexibility, and durability properties necessary to withstand maximum hydrostatic pressures at the installation location with the ground-water level at grade.

2.6 CAST-IN-PLACE MANHOLES

- A. Description: Underground utility structures, constructed in place, complete with accessories, hardware, and features. Include concrete knockout panels for conduit entrance and sleeve for ground rod.
- B. Materials: Comply with ASTM C 858 and with Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Structural Design Loading: As specified in Part 3 "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

2.7 UTILITY STRUCTURE ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Bilco Company (The).
 - 2. Christy Concrete Products.
 - 3. Neenah Foundry Company.
 - 4. Oldcastle Precast Group.
 - 5. Underground Devices, Inc.
 - 6. Utility Concrete Products, LLC.
- B. Manhole Frames, Covers, and Chimney Components: Comply with structural design loading specified for manhole.
 - 1. Frame and Cover: Weatherproof, [gray cast iron complying with ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B 29 inches (737 mm).
 - a. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
 - b. Special Covers: Recess in face of cover designed to accept finish material in paved areas.
 - 2. Cover Legend: Cast in. Selected to suit system.
 - a. Legend: "ELECTRIC-LV" for duct systems with power wires and cables for systems operating at 600 V and less.
 - b. Legend: "Name of serving utility company"; "ELECTRIC-HV"; "Manhole/Handhole number as indicated on the drawings" for duct systems with medium-voltage cables.
 - c. Legend: "Name of serving utility company"; "SIGNAL"; "Manhole/Handhole number as indicated on the drawings" for communications, data, and telephone

duct systems.

3. Manhole Chimney Components: Precast concrete rings with dimensions matched to those of roof opening.
 - a. Mortar for Chimney Ring and Frame and Cover Joints: Comply with ASTM C 270, Type M, except for quantities less than 2.0 cu. ft. (60 L) where packaged mix complying with ASTM C 387, Type M, may be used.
- C. Manhole Sump Frame and Grate: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30B, gray cast iron.
- D. Pulling Eyes in Concrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforcing-bar fastening insert, 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter eye, and 1-by-4-inch (25-by-100-mm) bolt.
 1. Working Load Embedded in 6-Inch (150-mm), 4000-psi (27.6-MPa) Concrete: 13,000-lbf (58-kN) minimum tension.
- E. Pulling Eyes in Nonconcrete Walls: Eyebolt with reinforced fastening, 1-1/4-inch- (32-mm-) diameter eye, rated [2500-lbf (11-kN)] < minimum tension.
- F. Pulling-In and Lifting Irons in Concrete Floors: 7/8-inch- (22-mm-) diameter, hot-dip galvanized, bent steel rod; stress relieved after forming; and fastened to reinforcing rod. Exposed triangular opening.
 1. Ultimate Yield Strength: 40,000-lbf (180-kN) shear and 60,000-lbf (270-kN) tension.
- G. Bolting Inserts for Concrete Utility Structure Cable Racks and Other Attachments: Flared, threaded inserts of noncorrosive, chemical-resistant, nonconductive thermoplastic material; 1/2-inch (13-mm) ID by 2-3/4 inches (69 mm) deep, flared to 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum at base.
 1. Tested Ultimate Pullout Strength: 12,000 lbf (53 kN) minimum.
- H. Expansion Anchors for Installation after Concrete Is Cast: Zinc-plated, carbon-steel-wedge type with stainless-steel expander clip with 1/2-inch (13-mm) bolt, 5300-lbf (24-kN) rated pullout strength, and minimum 6800-lbf (30-kN) rated shear strength.
- I. Cable Rack Assembly: Steel, hot-dip galvanized, except insulators.
 1. Stanchions: T-section or channel; 2-1/4-inch (57-mm) nominal size; punched with 14 holes on 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) centers for cable-arm attachment.
 2. Arms: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide, lengths ranging from 3 inches (75 mm) with 450-lb (204-kg) minimum capacity to 18 inches (460 mm) with 250-lb (114-kg) minimum capacity. Arms shall have slots along full length for cable ties and be arranged for secure mounting in horizontal position at any vertical location on stanchions.
 3. Insulators: High-glaze, wet-process porcelain arranged for mounting on cable arms.
- J. Cable Rack Assembly: Nonmetallic. Components fabricated from nonconductive, fiberglass-reinforced polymer.
 1. Stanchions: Nominal 36 inches (900 mm) high by 4 inches (100 mm) wide, with

- minimum of 9 holes for arm attachment.
2. Arms: Arranged for secure, drop-in attachment in horizontal position at any location on cable stanchions, and capable of being locked in position. Arms shall be available in lengths ranging from 3 inches (75 mm) with 450-lb (204-kg) minimum capacity to 20 inches (508 mm) with 250-lb (114-kg) minimum capacity. Top of arm shall be nominally 4 inches (100 mm) wide, and arm shall have slots along full length for cable ties.
- K. Duct-Sealing Compound: Nonhardening, safe for contact with human skin, not deleterious to cable insulation, and workable at temperatures as low as 35 deg F (2 deg C). Capable of withstanding temperature of 300 deg F (150 deg C) without slump and adhering to clean surfaces of plastic ducts, metallic conduits, conduit coatings, concrete, masonry, lead, cable sheaths, cable jackets, insulation materials, and common metals.
- L. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arranged for attachment to wall and floor of manhole. Ladder and mounting brackets and braces shall be fabricated from nonconductive, structural-grade, hot-dip galvanized steel. Ladder shall be removable if necessary.
- M. Cover Hooks: Heavy duty, designed for lifts 60 lbf (270 N) and greater required.

2.8 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
1. Tests of materials shall be performed by a independent testing agency.
 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or the manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Ducts for Electrical Cables Over 600 V: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40 PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type [EPC-40]-PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Ducts for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type [EPC-40]-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Ducts for Electrical Branch Circuits: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40 PVC, in direct-buried duct

bank, unless otherwise indicated.

- E. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40 PVC, in concrete-encased duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: [RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC installed in [direct-buried] [concrete-encased] duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Underground Ducts Crossing [Paved Paths] [Walks] [and] [Driveways] [Roadways] RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.2 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less[, Including Telephone, Communications, and Data Wiring]:
 - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, [H-20] structural load rating.
 - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Nondeliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: [Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-20] [Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15] [Fiberglass enclosures with polymer concrete frame and cover, SCTE 77, Tier 15] [Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, SCTE 77, Tier 15] [High-density plastic, SCTE 77, Tier 15] structural load rating.
 - 3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: [Precast concrete, AASHTO HB 17, H-10] [Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8] [Heavy-duty fiberglass units with polymer concrete frame and cover, SCTE 77, Tier 8] [High-density plastic, SCTE 77, Tier 8] structural load rating.
 - 4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: [Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin] [High-density plastic], structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
- B. Manholes: [Precast] [or] [cast-in-place] concrete.
 - 1. Units Located in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths by Heavy or Medium Vehicles: H-20 structural load rating according to AASHTO HB 17.

3.3 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 32 92 00 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 32 93 00 "Plants."

- D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures.

3.4 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Slope: Pitch ducts a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope ducts from a high point in runs between two manholes to drain in both directions.
- B. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius [12.5 feet (4 m)], both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated. For underground ducts containing MV and HV cables, use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius 25 feet (7.5 m) both horizontally and vertically. Number of bends on ducts for HV and MV systems, telephone and signal systems shall not exceed two (2) 90 degrees.
- C. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.
- D. Duct Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. for 5-inch (125-mm) ducts, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.
 - 1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
 - 2. Direct-Buried Duct Banks: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each conduit in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole.
 - 3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.
- E. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid PVC coated steel conduit at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall without reducing duct line slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 26 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."
- F. Do not install conduits underneath a building except where the service/feeder/branch circuit conduits enter the building.
- G. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.
- H. Pulling Cord: Install minimum 1/8 inch thick test nylon cord with minimum 250 pounds per foot tensile strength in ducts, including spares.
- I. Concrete-Encased Ducts: Support ducts on duct separators.
 - 1. Separator Installation: Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than [5] spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Stagger separators approximately

- 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
2. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.
 - a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of ducts as their temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
 - b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (19-mm) reinforcing rod dowels extending 18 inches (450 mm) into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.
 3. Pouring Concrete: Spade concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between conduits and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto ducts. Use a plank to direct concrete down sides of bank assembly to trench bottom. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.
 4. Encase all feeder ducts in a 3 inch concrete envelope. Extend envelope with 3 inches beyond all external surfaces of all outer most ducts. Do not over pour the concrete.
 5. Concrete encasement shall be minimum 3000 psi. All underground ducts containing MV and HV cables (above 600V) shall be encased in red concrete. Concrete shall be premixed during batching with 1-1/2 lbs of red ocher dye per sack of cement.
 6. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct banks where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
 7. Forms: Use walls of trench to form side walls of duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
 8. Minimum Space between Ducts: 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts and exterior envelope wall, and 12 inches (300 mm) 4 inches (100 mm) between power and signal ducts.
 9. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles, unless otherwise indicated. Minimum depth below grade in all areas shall be 36 inches (900 mm) for underground ducts containing MV and HV ducts.
 10. Stub-Ups: Use manufactured PVC coated rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple PVC coated steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
 - b. Stub-Ups to Equipment: For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
 11. Warning Tape: Bury warning tape approximately 12 inches (300 mm) below grade above all concrete-encased ducts and duct banks. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches (75 mm) of the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional tapes 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.

J. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:

1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than [5] spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers.
3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
4. Install backfill as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches (100 mm) over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."
6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts for like services and 12 inches (300 mm) between power and signal ducts.
7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below the frost line.
9. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor, unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout the length of the elbow.
10. Install manufactured PVC coated rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
 - a. Couple PVC coated steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
 - b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend PVC coated steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
11. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches (300 mm) above direct-buried ducts and duct banks, placing them 24 inches (600 mm) o.c. Align planks along the width and along the centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional plank for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional planks 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

A. Cast-in-Place Manhole Installation:

1. Finish interior surfaces with a smooth-troweled finish.

2. Windows for Future Duct Connections: Form and pour concrete knockout panels 1-1/2 to 2 inches (38 to 50 mm) thick, arranged as indicated.
 3. Cast-in-place concrete, formwork, and reinforcement are specified in Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:
1. Comply with ASTM C 891, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
 3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of 12 inches thick crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch (25-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevations:
1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches (380 mm) below finished grade.
 2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. In other areas, set manhole frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
 3. Install handholes with bottom below the frost line, below grade.
 4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
 5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.
- D. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.
- E. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.
1. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
 2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings to support frame and cover and to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for cast-iron frame to chimney.
- F. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in [Section 07 13 53 "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing."] [Section 07 13 54 "Thermoplastic Sheet Waterproofing."] After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- G. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 07 11 13 "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts have been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.
- H. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, [and] cable arms, [and insulators,]as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

- I. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.
- J. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (98 mm) for manholes and 2 inches (50 mm) for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.
- K. Warning Sign: Install "Confined Space Hazard" warning sign on the inside surface of each manhole cover.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting ducts to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of ducts, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by the manufacturer.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of 12 inches thick crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.7-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below the frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in the enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for ducts and conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on [compacted earth.
 - 1. Concrete: 3000 psi (20 kPa), 28-day strength, complying with Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
 - 2. Dimensions: [10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep).

3.7 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During construction, partially completed duct lines shall be protected from the entrance of debris such as mud, sand and dirt by means of suitable conduit plugs. As each section of a duct line is completed from manhole to vault, a testing mandrel not less than 12 inches long with a diameter 1/4-inch less than the size of the duct, shall be drawn through each duct, after which a brush having the diameter of the duct, and have stiff bristles shall be drawn through until the conduit is clear of all particles of earth, sand, gravel and other foreign materials. Conduit plugs shall then be immediately installed. Underground conduits, which terminate inside the building below grade, or which slope so that water might flow into building, shall be sealed at termination after installation of wires.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground ducts and utility structures.
 - 2. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
 - 3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 26 05 43

SECTION 26 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
 - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, products by one of the following manufacturers
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. CALPICO, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - e. Proco Products, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: [Stainless steel] of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 - a. Presealed Systems.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 - 2. Sealant shall have VOC content of <Insert value> g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide [1/4-inch (6.4-mm)] annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm)] above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install PVC Coated cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 26 05 44

SECTION 26 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SCOPE

- A. All general conditions and supplementary general conditions apply to the work of this section. Provide and perform the vibration isolation work as indicated, specified, and required.
- B. Principal work included in this Section:
 - 1. Flexible conduits at motor connections

1.2 VIBRATION ISOLATION AND NOISE CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Flexible Electrical Connections:
 - 1. At connections to motors or other vibrating equipment

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. The IBC: International Building Code.
- B. CC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.
- C. 2016 California Building Code (CBC).

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic restraints are to be based upon the prevailing building code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLEXIBLE CONNECTIONS

- A. For conduit under 1 inch OD: Use "flexible" conduit with slack at least 3 feet or 15 diameters long, whichever is the longer or provide a flexible coupling as defined above.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES:

- A. Install vibration isolators per manufacturer's directions.
- B. Flexible electrical connections.
 - 1. Electrical connections to all vibration isolated equipment shall be flexible, and made a way which does not impair or restrain the function of the aforementioned vibration isolation system.
- C. All vibration isolation devices, including auxiliary steel bases shall be designed and furnished by a single manufacturer or supplier, who will be responsible for adequate coordination of all phases of this work.
- D. Vibration Isolation Hangers
 - 1. The isolators shall be installed with the isolator hanger box as close as possible to the structure.

END OF SECTION 26 05 48

SECTION 26 05 53 IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Identification for raceways.
 - 2. Identification of power and control cables.
 - 3. Identification for conductors.
 - 4. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 5. Warning labels and signs.
 - 6. Instruction signs.
 - 7. Equipment identification labels.
 - 8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's catalog cut sheets for each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.
- C. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969. Adhesive type labels shall be used for

only applications indicated in this section.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual; and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POWER AND CONTROL RACEWAY IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway size.
- B. Colors for Raceways Carrying Feeders and Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- C. Colors for Raceways Carrying Feeders and Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Vinyl Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- E. Snap-Around Labels for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- G. Tape and Stencil for Raceways Carrying Circuits More Than 600 V: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers diagonally over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.

- H. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- I. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, [0.015 inch (0.38 mm)] thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
 - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 2. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
 - 3. Use write-on tags for temporary service only if specified on the documents.

2.2 ARMORED AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.
- B. Colors for Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V and Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage and system or service type.
- C. Colors for Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."
- D. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- E. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches (50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- F. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

2.3 POWER AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each cable size.
- B. Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and

chemical- resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the cable diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.

- D. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around cable it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.
- E. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- F. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, [0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
 - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 2. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.
- G. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- H. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.

2.4 CONDUCTOR AND CABLES IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color coding of conductors: Provide color coded insulation by conductor manufacturer. Coordinate with Division 26, Section "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables". If permitted by owner's representative, install color coding conductor tape for temporary installations only.
- B. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Self-Laminating Polyester Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive that provides a clear, weather- and chemical- resistant, self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the conductor diameter such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
- D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeve, with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeve with diameter sized to suit diameter of conductor it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tube with machine-printed

identification label. Sized to suit diameter of and shrinks to fit firmly around conductor it identifies. Full shrink recovery at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

- G. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- H. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to conductor or cable. Provide for temporary installations only.
 - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 2. Labels for Tags: Self-adhesive label, machine-printed with permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer, sized for attachment to tag.
- I. Medium voltage cable tag: Laminated Micrata type, 5" x 3½", nameplates engraved with 5/32- inch high black letters on white background for normal power and red letters on white background for emergency power.
 - 1. Feeder or circuit number.
 - 2. Size of MV cable and equipment grounding conductor.
 - 3. Point of origin and point of destination.
 - 4. Date of installation
 - 5. Name of installing contractor
- J. Provide tags on each pull rope of spare conduits showing starting point and end point of spare conduits.

2.5 FLOOR MARKING TAPE

- A. 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with [black and white] [yellow and black] stripes and clear vinyl overlay.

2.6 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Tape:
 - 1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
 - 2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - 3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert, and not subject to degrading when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
- B. Color and Printing:
 - 1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1 through ANSI Z535.5.
 - 2. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: CAUTION-BURIED ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE.
 - 3. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: CAUTION-BURIED TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE.
- C. Tag: Type I:
 - 1. Pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, [continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,]compounded for direct-burial service.
 - 2. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).

3. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
 4. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf (133.4 N), and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).
- D. Tag: [Type II]:
1. Multilayer laminate consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin, bright-colored, [continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,]compounded for direct-burial service.
 2. Thickness: 12 mils (0.3 mm).
 3. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (17.6 kg/100 sq. m).
 4. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 400 lbf (1780 N), and 11,500 psi (79.2 MPa).
- E. Tag: Type ID
1. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 2. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).
 3. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
 4. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
 5. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 70 lbf (311.3 N), and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).
- F. Tag: Type IID
1. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core, bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
 2. Overall Thickness: 8 mils (0.2 mm).
 3. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
 4. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft. (16.6 kg/100 sq. m).
 5. 3-Inch (75-mm) Tensile According to ASTM D 882: 300 lbf (1334 N), and 12,500 psi (86.1 MPa).

2.7 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory-printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs:
1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.

3. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs:
 1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396- inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
 2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
 3. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM) for electrical service 600V or less."
 3. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 60 INCHES (915 MM) for electrical service above 600V and upto 15000V."
 4. High Voltage Equipment Warning "DANGER - HIGH VOLTAGE - KEEP OUT".
 5. Provide other warning labels and signs as required by applicable code and regulation.

2.8 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick for signs up to 20 sq. inches (129 sq. cm) and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick for larger sizes.
 1. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.
- B. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

2.9 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- B. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm) except designation which will be in 1/2 inch letters unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Stenciled Legend: Provide stenciled labels to identify major equipment numbers (e.g. transformers, MV switches etc) indicated on drawings, in nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be [2 inch (50 mm)] <Insert dimension>. Verify letter

height with Owner's representative prior to start of work. Stencil labels shall be provided in addition to engraved laminated labels specified in para D above.

- D. Labels shall include the following information. Color of nameplate shall be black for equipment connected to normal power, red for equipment connected to emergency power, and blue for equipment connected to Un-interruptible Power Supply. Color of letters shall be white.
 - 1. Panel or equipment designation.
 - 2. Rating: Volt, Amps, No. of phase and wires, horsepower, etc.
 - 3. AIC Rating (RMS Symmetrical Amps).
 - 4. Fed from information.
 - 5. Manufacturer Shop Order number.
 - 6. Date of Installation.
 - 7. Other information as requested by Owner.
- E. For medium-voltage switchgear:
 - 1. Use 1 inch to identify equipment designation
 - 2. Use 3/4 inch to identify voltage rating and source
 - 3. Use 1/2 inch to identify individual feeder breakers and buckets
 - 4. Use 1/4 inch to identify control switches, indicating lights, and other miscellaneous devices on the bucket door.
- F. Adhesive labels and nameplates are not acceptable.

2.10 WIRING DEVICES LABELS

- A. Identify wiring devices with heavy duty clear vinyl polyester tape "Weber" unless otherwise indicated. Provide labels on the device cover plate made of non-metallic materials. Color of letters shall be black for device connected to normal power, color of letters shall be red for device connected to emergency power. Labels shall be printed, flexible, self-adhesive type. In addition write the circuit no. (e.g. 1PA-2) on the inside of the device cover plate of non-metallic material using a permanent marker.
- B. For stainless steel cover plates, engrave information on the device cover plate.
- C. Device (receptacles, switches etc.) label shall include panel designation, circuit number and room number.
- D. Lighting devices including gateways, controller, bridges, sensors, switches shall have room number, circuit number, controller number and location.

2.11 CABLE TIES

- A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black except where used for color-coding.

- B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self extinguishing, one piece, self locking, Type 6/6 nylon.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
 - 3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
 - 4. Color: Black.
- C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self locking.
 - 1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
 - 2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C), According to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
 - 3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
 - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
 - 5. Color: Black.

2.12 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Select paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- G. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings

in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.

- H. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- I. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
 - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- J. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- (75-mm-) high black letters on 20-inch (500-mm) centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:
 - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 - 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 - 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- B. Accessible Raceways, Armored and Metal-Clad Cables, More Than 600 V: [Self-adhesive vinyl labels. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than 30 A, and 120 V to ground: Identify with self-adhesive vinyl label bands. Install labels at 10-foot (3-m) maximum intervals.
- D. Accessible Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive vinyl labels with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
 - 1. Emergency Power
 - 2. Power
 - 3. UPS

Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600V or less: Provide factory color coded conductors as indicated in Division 26 "Low Voltage Power Conductors and Cables". Color coding tape may be field applied (if specified on the documents or permitted in writing by Owner's representative) to identify phase conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, handholes and other locations where conductors are spliced and terminated. For existing buildings, indicate whether requirements apply to both old and new wiring or to new wiring only. Below applies only to phase conductors. Color-coding of grounded and grounding conductors is dictated by NFPA 70. Verify that Owner does

not require another color-code. Colors for factory-assembled cable, such as MC and AC, must match colors listed in first paragraph below. .

1. Color-Coding for Phase Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeders and branch-circuit conductors.
 - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG, if authorities having jurisdiction permit
 - b. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - 4) Neutral : White
 - 5) Ground Green
 - c. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Brown.
 - 2) Phase B: Orange.
 - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
 - 4) Neutral : Grey
 - 5) Ground : Green
 - d. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use Laminated Micrata type, 5" x 3½", nameplates engraved with 5/32-inch high black letters on white background for normal power and red letters on white background for emergency power. Include the circuit designation to match owner's existing standard.
- F. Install instructional sign including the color-code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use **[self-adhesive vinyl labels]** with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- H. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations provide heat-shrink preprinted tubes with the conductor designation.
- I. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach [write-on tags] [marker tape] to conductors and list source.
- J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

- K. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable.
 - 1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 - 2. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.
 - 3. During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above the line at 12 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.
- L. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall be as required by NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- M. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.
 - 1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
 - 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
 - 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 - 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- N. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- O. Emergency Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer, load shedding.
- P. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems.
 - 1. Labeling Instructions:
 - a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label [Stenciled legend 4 inches (100 mm) high].
 - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
 - d. Fasten labels with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
 - 2. Equipment to Be Labeled:
 - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panel board manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be engraved laminated acrylic label.

- b. Enclosures, electrical, telecom, alarm and communication system cabinets.
- c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- d. Switchgear.
- e. Switchboards.
- f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panel boards or equipment supplied by the secondary. For pad-mount transformers- indicate type and size of fuses on a separate 3" X 5" plastic laminated label and install on the inside surface of the door of the transformer.
- g. Substations.

- h. Emergency power system boxes and enclosures.
- i. Motor-control centers.
- j. Enclosed switches including ATS.
- k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- l. Enclosed controllers.
- m. Variable-speed controllers.
- n. Push-button stations.
- o. Power transfer equipment including transfer switches.
- p. Contactors.
- q. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- r. Battery-inverter units.
- s. Battery racks.
- t. Power-generating units.
- u. Monitoring and control equipment.
- v. UPS equipment.
- w. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

SECTION 26 05 72 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes a computer-based, fault-current study to determine the minimum interrupting capacity of Medium Voltage (MV) and Low Voltage (LV) circuit protective devices.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- B. One-Line Diagram: A diagram which shows, by means of single lines and graphic symbols, the course of an electric circuit or system of circuits and the component devices or parts used therein.
- C. Protective Device: A device that senses when an abnormal current flow exists and then removes the affected portion from the system.
- D. RMS: Root Mean Square
- E. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- F. Service: The conductors and equipment for delivering electric energy from the serving utility to the wiring system of the premises served.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: Submit the following after the approval of system protective devices submittals. Submittals shall be in digital form on a CD and include one print copy in a three ring binder.
 - 1. Short-circuit study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Short-circuit study and equipment evaluation report; signed, dated, and sealed by a qualified California registered professional engineer.
 - a. Submit study report for action prior to receiving final approval of the power distribution equipment submittals. If formal completion of studies will cause delay in equipment manufacturing, obtain approval from University Representative for preliminary submittal of sufficient study data to ensure that the selection of devices and associated characteristics is satisfactory.
 - b. Revised single-line diagram, reflecting field investigation results and results of

short-circuit study.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Short-Circuit Study Software Developer, Short-Circuit Study Specialist and Field Adjusting Agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For short-circuit study software, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are unacceptable.
- B. Short-Circuit Study Software Developer Qualifications: An entity that owns and markets computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. The computer program shall be developed under the charge of a licensed professional engineer who holds IEEE Computer Society's Certified Software Development Professional certification.
- C. Short-Circuit Study Specialist Qualifications: Professional engineer in charge of performing the study and documenting recommendations, registered and licensed in State of California with minimum ten years experience in performing OC Protective Device Short Circuit Studies for facilities of similar size and scope. The study specialist shall be located within 75 miles radius of the project and be available to meet on short notice. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of this professional engineer.
- D. Field Adjusting Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to adjust overcurrent devices and to conduct the testing indicated at site, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association (NETA) and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE

- A. ETAP Program.
- B. Comply with IEEE 399 and IEEE 551.
- C. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall have the capability to calculate "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- D. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output.

2.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY REPORT CONTENTS

- A. Executive summary.
- B. Study descriptions, purpose, basis, and scope. Include case descriptions, definition of terms, and guide for interpretation of the computer printout.
- C. One-line diagram, showing the following for normal and emergency/standby power system:
 - 1. MV and LV Protective device designations and ampere ratings including fuses.
 - 2. Cable size and lengths.
 - 3. Transformer kilovolt ampere (kVA) and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Motor and generator designations and kVA ratings.
 - 5. Switchgear, switchboard, motor-control center, and panelboard designations.
 - 6. Variable Speed Drives
 - 7. UPS and Central battery Inverters
 - 8. Motor Control Panels
 - 9. Motor controllers
- D. Comments and recommendations for system improvements, where needed.
- E. Protective Device Evaluation:
 - 1. Evaluate equipment and protective devices shown on single line diagrams and compare to short-circuit ratings. Include existing devices which are part of the primary electrical system to remain, and are to be reconnected to the new equipment under this project.
 - 2. Tabulations of circuit breaker, fuse, and other protective device ratings versus calculated short-circuit duties.
 - 3. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 4. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 5. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
- F. Short-Circuit Study Input Data: As described in "Power System Data" Article in the Evaluations.
- G. Short-Circuit Study Output:
 - 1. Medium Voltage and Low-Voltage Fault Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Equivalent impedance.
 - 2. Momentary Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. Calculated asymmetrical fault currents:

- 1) Based on fault-point X/R ratio.
 - 2) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 1.6.
 - 3) Based on calculated symmetrical value multiplied by 2.7.
3. Interrupting Duty Report: Three-phase and unbalanced fault calculations, showing the following for each overcurrent device location:
 - a. Voltage.
 - b. Calculated symmetrical fault-current magnitude and angle.
 - c. Fault-point X/R ratio.
 - d. No AC Decrement (NACD) ratio.
 - e. Equivalent impedance.
 - f. Multiplying factors for 2, 3, 5, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a symmetrical basis.
 - g. Multiplying factors for 2, 3, 5, and 8-cycle circuit breakers rated on a total basis.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Obtain all data necessary for the conduct of the study.
 1. Verify completeness of data supplied on the one-line diagram. Call any discrepancies to the attention of University's Representative.
 2. For equipment provided that is Work of this Project, use characteristics submitted under the provisions of action submittals and information submittals for this Project.
 3. For relocated equipment and that which is existing to remain, obtain required electrical distribution system data by field investigation and surveys, conducted by qualified technicians and engineers. The qualifications of technicians and engineers shall be qualified as defined by NFPA 70E.
 4. For existing equipment reconnected to a new power source.
- B. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support the short-circuit study. Comply with recommendations in IEEE 551 as to the amount of detail that is required to be acquired in the field. Field data gathering shall be under the direct supervision and control of the engineer in charge of performing the study, and shall be by the engineer who holds NETA ETT Level III certification or NICET Electrical Power Testing Level III certification.
 1. Product Data for Project's overcurrent protective devices involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 2. Obtain electrical power utility impedance at the service.
 3. Power sources and ties.
 4. For transformers, include kVA, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, X/R ratio, taps measured in percent, and phase shift.
 5. For reactors, provide manufacturer and model designation, voltage rating, and impedance.
 6. For circuit breakers and fuses, provide manufacturer and model designation. List type of breaker, type of trip, SCCR, current rating, and breaker settings.
 7. Generator short-circuit current contribution data, including short-circuit reactance, rated kVA, rated voltage, and X/R ratio.
 8. Busway manufacturer and model designation, current rating, impedance, lengths, and

- conductor material.
- 9. Motor horsepower and NEMA MG 1 code letter designation.
- 10. Cable sizes, lengths, number, conductor material and conduit material (magnetic or nonmagnetic).

3.2 SHORT-CIRCUIT STUDY

- A. Perform study following the general study procedures contained in IEEE 399.
- B. Calculate short-circuit currents according to IEEE 551.
- C. Base study on the device characteristics supplied by device manufacturer.
- D. The extent of the electrical power system to be studied is indicated on Drawings.
- E. Begin short-circuit current analysis at the service, extending down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
 - 1. To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10 kA or less and to mechanical equipment control panel where fault current is 5kA or less.
 - 2. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Study all cases of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- F. The calculations shall include the ac fault-current decay from induction motors, synchronous motors, and asynchronous generators and shall apply to low- and medium-voltage, three-phase ac systems. The calculations shall also account for the fault-current dc decrement, to address the asymmetrical requirements of the interrupting equipment.
 - 1. For grounded systems, provide a bolted line-to-ground fault-current study for areas as defined for the three-phase bolted fault short-circuit study.
- G. Calculate short-circuit momentary and interrupting duties for a three-phase bolted fault at each of the following:
 - 1. Electric utility's supply termination point.
 - 2. Incoming switchgear.
 - 3. Unit substation primary and secondary terminals.
 - 4. Medium and Low-voltage switchgear.
 - 5. Motor-control centers and motor controllers.
 - 6. Variable Frequency Drives.
 - 7. Control panels.
 - 8. Standby generators and automatic transfer switches.
 - 9. Branch circuit panelboards.
 - 10. Disconnect switches and Circuit Breakers.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Make minor modifications to equipment as required to accomplish compliance with short-circuit study.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train University's operating and maintenance personnel in the use of study results.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 26 05 73 - OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICE COORDINATION STUDY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes computer-based, fault-current, overcurrent protective device coordination studies and arc flash study. Protective devices shall be set based on results of the protective device coordination study.
 - 1. Coordination of series-rated devices is permitted where indicated on Drawings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For computer software program to be used for studies.
- B. Other Action Submittals: The following submittals shall be made after the approval process for system protective devices has been completed. Submittals **may** be in digital form if requested by the architect/engineer.
 - 1. Coordination-study input data, including completed computer program input data sheets.
 - 2. Study and Equipment Evaluation Reports.
 - 3. Coordination-Study Report.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For coordination-study specialist.
- B. Product Certificates: For coordination-study and fault-current-study computer software programs, certifying compliance with IEEE 399.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Studies shall use computer programs that are distributed nationally and are in wide use. Software algorithms shall comply with requirements of standards and guides specified in this Section. Manual calculations are not acceptable.
- B. Coordination-Study Specialist Qualifications: An entity experienced in the application of computer software used for studies, having performed successful studies of similar magnitude on electrical distribution systems using similar devices.
 - 1. Professional engineer, licensed in the state where Project is located, shall be responsible

for the study. All elements of the study shall be performed under the direct supervision and control of engineer.

- C. Comply with IEEE 242 for short-circuit currents and coordination time intervals.
- D. Comply with IEEE 399 for general study procedures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPUTER SOFTWARE DEVELOPERS

- A. Available Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, companies offering computer software programs that may be used in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Computer Software Developers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. CGI CYME.
 - 2. EDSA Micro Corporation.
 - 3. ESA Inc.
 - 4. Operation Technology, Inc.
 - 5. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.
 - 6. ETAP

2.2 COMPUTER SOFTWARE PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE 399.
- B. Analytical features of fault-current-study computer software program shall include "mandatory," "very desirable," and "desirable" features as listed in IEEE 399.
- C. Computer software program shall be capable of plotting and diagramming time-current-characteristic curves as part of its output. Computer software program shall report device settings and ratings of all overcurrent protective devices and shall demonstrate selective coordination by computer-generated, time-current coordination plots.
 - 1. Optional Features:
 - a. Arcing faults.
 - b. Simultaneous faults.
 - c. Explicit negative sequence.
 - d. Mutual coupling in zero sequence.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine Project overcurrent protective device submittals for compliance with electrical distribution system coordination requirements and other conditions affecting performance. Devices to be coordinated are indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. Proceed with coordination study only after relevant equipment submittals have been assembled. Overcurrent protective devices that have not been submitted and approved prior to coordination study may not be used in study.

3.2 POWER SYSTEM DATA

- A. Gather and tabulate the following input data to support coordination study:
 - 1. Product Data for overcurrent protective devices specified in other electrical Sections and involved in overcurrent protective device coordination studies. Use equipment designation tags that are consistent with electrical distribution system diagrams, overcurrent protective device submittals, input and output data, and recommended device settings.
 - 2. Impedance of utility service entrance.
 - 3. Electrical Distribution System Diagram: In hard-copy and electronic-copy formats, showing the following:
 - a. Circuit-breaker and fuse-current ratings and types.
 - b. Relays and associated power and current transformer ratings and ratios.
 - c. Transformer kilovolt amperes, primary and secondary voltages, connection type, impedance, and X/R ratios.
 - d. Generator kilovolt amperes, size, voltage, and source impedance.
 - e. Cables: Indicate conduit material, sizes of conductors, conductor material, insulation, and length.
 - f. Busway ampacity and impedance.
 - g. Motor horsepower and code letter designation according to NEMA MG 1.
 - 4. Data sheets to supplement electrical distribution system diagram, cross-referenced with tag numbers on diagram, showing the following:
 - a. Special load considerations, including starting inrush currents and frequent starting and stopping.
 - b. Transformer characteristics, including primary protective device, magnetic inrush current, and overload capability.
 - c. Motor full-load current, locked rotor current, service factor, starting time, type of start, and thermal-damage curve.
 - d. Generator thermal-damage curve.
 - e. Ratings, types, and settings of utility company's overcurrent protective devices.
 - f. Special overcurrent protective device settings or types stipulated by utility company.
 - g. Time-current-characteristic curves of devices indicated to be coordinated.
 - h. Manufacturer, frame size, interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical, ampere or current sensor rating, long-time adjustment range, short-time adjustment range, and instantaneous adjustment range for circuit breakers.
 - i. Manufacturer and type, ampere-tap adjustment range, time-delay adjustment range, instantaneous attachment adjustment range, and current transformer ratio for overcurrent relays.
 - j. Panelboards, switchboards, motor-control center ampacity, and interrupting rating in amperes rms symmetrical.

3.3 FAULT-CURRENT STUDY

- A. Calculate the maximum available short-circuit current in amperes rms symmetrical at circuit-breaker positions of the electrical power distribution system. The calculation shall be for a current immediately after initiation and for a three-phase bolted short circuit at each of the following:
 - 1. Switchgear and switchboard bus.
 - 2. Medium-voltage controller.
 - 3. Motor-control center.
 - 4. Distribution panelboard.
 - 5. Branch circuit panelboard.
- B. Study electrical distribution system from normal and alternate power sources throughout electrical distribution system for Project. Include studies of system-switching configurations and alternate operations that could result in maximum fault conditions.
- C. Calculate momentary and interrupting duties on the basis of maximum available fault current.
- D. Calculations to verify interrupting ratings of overcurrent protective devices shall comply with [IEEE 141] [IEEE 241] and IEEE 242.
 - 1. Transformers:
 - a. ANSI C57.12.10.
 - b. ANSI C57.12.22.
 - c. ANSI C57.12.40.
 - d. IEEE C57.12.00.
 - e. IEEE C57.96.
 - 2. Medium-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE C37.010.
 - 3. Low-Voltage Circuit Breakers: IEEE 1015 and IEEE C37.20.1.
 - 4. Low-Voltage Fuses: IEEE C37.46.
- E. Study Report:
 - 1. Show calculated X/R ratios and equipment interrupting rating (1/2-cycle) fault currents on electrical distribution system diagram.
 - 2. Show interrupting (5-cycle) and time-delayed currents (6 cycles and above) on medium- and high voltage breakers as needed to set relays and assess the sensitivity of overcurrent relays.
- F. Equipment Evaluation Report:
 - 1. For 600-V overcurrent protective devices, ensure that interrupting ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 2. For devices and equipment rated for asymmetrical fault current, apply multiplication factors listed in the standards to 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.
 - 3. Verify adequacy of phase conductors at maximum three-phase bolted fault currents; verify adequacy of equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors at maximum ground-fault currents. Ensure that short-circuit withstand ratings are equal to or higher than calculated 1/2-cycle symmetrical fault current.

3.4 COORDINATION STUDY

- A. Perform coordination study using approved computer software program. Prepare a written report using results of fault-current study. Comply with IEEE 399.
 - 1. Calculate the maximum and minimum 1/2-cycle short-circuit currents.
 - 2. Calculate the maximum and minimum interrupting duty (5 cycles to 2 seconds) short-circuit currents.
 - 3. Calculate the maximum and minimum ground-fault currents.
- B. Comply with [IEEE 141] [IEEE 241] [IEEE 242] recommendations for fault currents and time intervals.
- C. Transformer Primary Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - 1. Device shall not operate in response to the following:
 - a. Inrush current when first energized.
 - b. Self-cooled, full-load current or forced-air-cooled, full-load current, whichever is specified for that transformer.
 - c. Permissible transformer overloads according to IEEE C57.96 if required by unusual loading or emergency conditions.
 - 2. Device settings shall protect transformers according to IEEE C57.12.00, for fault currents.
- D. Motors served by voltages more than 600 V shall be protected according to IEEE 620.
- E. Conductor Protection: Protect cables against damage from fault currents according to ICEA P-32-382, ICEA P-45-482, and conductor melting curves in IEEE 242. Demonstrate that equipment withstands the maximum short-circuit current for a time equivalent to the tripping time of the primary relay protection or total clearing time of the fuse. To determine temperatures that damage insulation, use curves from cable manufacturers or from listed standards indicating conductor size and short-circuit current.
- F. Coordination-Study Report: Prepare a written report indicating the following results of coordination study:
 - 1. Tabular Format of Settings Selected for Overcurrent Protective Devices:
 - a. Device tag.
 - b. Relay-current transformer ratios; and tap, time-dial, and instantaneous-pickup values.
 - c. Circuit-breaker sensor rating; and long-time, short-time, and instantaneous settings.
 - d. Fuse-current rating and type.
 - e. Ground-fault relay-pickup and time-delay settings.
 - 2. Coordination Curves: Prepared to determine settings of overcurrent protective devices to achieve selective coordination. Graphically illustrate that adequate time separation exists between devices installed in series, including power utility company's upstream devices. Prepare separate sets of curves for the switching schemes and for emergency periods where the power source is local generation. Show the following information:
 - a. Device tag.
 - b. Voltage and current ratio for curves.
 - c. Three-phase and single-phase damage points for each transformer.
 - d. No damage, melting, and clearing curves for fuses.
 - e. Cable damage curves.
 - f. Transformer inrush points.

- g. Maximum fault-current cutoff point.
- G. Completed data sheets for setting of overcurrent protective devices.

END OF SECTION 26 05 73

SECTION 26 08 00 COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. System specific commissioning
 - 2. Electrical systems to be commissioned are as follows:
 - a. Electrical Switchgear
 - b. Electrical Panel boards
 - c. Electrical Transformers
 - d. Grounding Systems
 - e. Electrical Power Metering Systems
 - f. Interface with building energy management system

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 PRE-FUNCTIONAL CHECKLIST

- A. Only the sample checklists are provided in this section as an indication of the format and rigor of the required pre-functional checklists and documentation (refer to Section 26 08 00 - Exhibit A). Though not developed specifically for this project, they show the extent of checks involved associated with typical installations. Actual Pre-Functional Checklist shall be prepared by the Commissioning Authority (CA) upon review of all the contractor submittals, including manufacturer's installation instructions.
- B. These checklists do not take the place of the manufacturer's recommended checkout and start-up procedures or report or those used by the Testing Agency.
- C. Regardless of whether the CA includes them or not, checks, inspections, safety measures, quality control measures and start-up procedures recommended by the manufacturer shall be implemented by the Contractor prior to initiation of the commissioning activity.
- D. The Commissioning Coordinator (CC) employed by the Contractor shall be responsible for directing all Pre-Functional Check lists provided by the CA. The CC shall engage subcontractors and vendors service representatives with expertise in the specific equipment or system to determine whether the equipment or system passes the checks detailed in the Pre-Functional Checklist.
- E. CC shall communicate the actual schedule for the execution of the Pre-Functional Checks to the CA.
- F. The Commissioning Authority (CA) may choose to participate in the inspection of items along with the Contractor and his specialty subcontractors and vendors, including the Testing Agency.

In addition, CA reserves the right to inspect any or all of the items on his own in order to satisfy that the installation conforms to the design objectives and the system is ready for Functional Testing.

2.2 ACCEPTANCE TESTING

- A. Contractor shall engage the services of a recognized corporately and financially independent testing firm for the purpose of performing inspections and tests on all new electrical equipment supplied in this contract and on existing equipment affected by the new addition or as specified.
- B. Prior to energization, the Independent Testing Firm shall perform visual and mechanical inspections and electrical tests on all newly installed equipment supplied within this contract. All inspections and tests shall be in accordance with the indicated test standards as specified in Division 26 and the manufacturer's instruction manuals.
- C. Upon completion of equipment Acceptance Testing, the Independent Testing Firm shall perform system function tests on all new electrical equipment supplied within this contract and existing affected equipment to prove the correct interaction of all sensing, processing and action devices and evaluate the performance of all integral components and their functioning as a complete unit to effect the design result.
- D. Manufacturers recommended test to be done on switchgear and GFCI protection equipment before the 1 year warranty expiration shall be done by the contractor at their expense before the termination of the warranty period.
- E. Any deficiencies identified by initial Acceptance Testing rectified by the Contractor and retested by the Independent Testing Firm at Contractors expense until specified requirements are met. Final acceptance of the electrical power system by the Engineer is contingent upon the satisfactory compliance of the Acceptance Testing.

END OF SECTION 23 08 00

SECTION 26 09 23 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Time switches.
 - 2. Photoelectric switches.
 - 3. Standalone daylight-harvesting switching controls.
 - 4. Indoor occupancy sensors.
 - 5. Outdoor motion sensors.
 - 6. Lighting contactors.
 - 7. Emergency shunt relays.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show installation details for occupancy and light-level sensors.
 - 1. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
 - 2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.
 - 3. Screenshot Mockup of diagram and controls over graphical floorplan.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans drawn to scale (1/4"=1'-0"), on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:.
 - 1. Location of occupancy sensors and relationships between adjacent architectural and structural components and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
Layout shall be prepared by the sensor manufacturer.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. All outdoor lights to be controlled by Nlights Control System Acuity brand with Eclipse Controller.
- B. "Nlight" Control System is a Board of Trustees Approved Sole Source Item. No substitutions will be accepted.
- C. Electronic Time Switches: Solid state, programmable, with alphanumeric display; complying with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Contact Configuration: [SPST] [DPST] [DPDT] <Insert configuration>.
 3. Contact Rating: [30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac] [20-A ballast load, 120-/240- V ac]
 4. Programs: Eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule[and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays].
 5. Programs: Two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week[and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays].
 6. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with eight on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule.
 7. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule with a skip-a-day weekly schedule.
 8. Programs: <Insert number> channels; each channel is individually programmable with two on-off set points on a 24-hour schedule, allowing different set points for each day of the week.
 9. Programs: each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 10. Programs: ; each channel is individually programmable with 40 on-off operations per week, plus four seasonal schedules that modify the basic program, and an annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 11. Programs: annual holiday schedule that overrides the weekly operation on holidays.
 12. Circuitry: Allow connection of a photoelectric relay as substitute for on-off function of a program[on selected channels].
 13. Astronomic Time: [All] [Selected] channels.
 14. Automatic daylight savings time changeover.
 15. Battery Backup: Not less than seven days reserve, to maintain schedules and time clock.
- D. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for

- intended location and application.
- 2. Contact Configuration: [SPST] [DPST] [SPDT] [DPDT] <Insert configuration>.
- 3. Contact Rating: [30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac] [20-A ballast load, 120-/240- V ac].
- 4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
- 5. Astronomic time dial.
- 6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
- 7. Skip-a-day mode.
- 8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of [16] hours.

2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 - 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. Description: Solid state, with [SPST] [DPST] dry contacts rated for [1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive] , to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range[, and a directional lens in front of the photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off].
 - 3. Time Delay: Fifteen second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 - 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
 - 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
- C. Description: Solid state, with [SPST] [DPST] dry contacts rated for 1800 VA, to operate connected load, complying with UL 773.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 - 3. Time Delay: Thirty-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
 - 4. Lightning Arrester: Air-gap type.
 - 5. Mounting: Twist lock complying with NEMA C136.10, with base.

2.3 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING SWITCHING CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 - 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
 - 2. “Nlight” Control System is a Board of Trustees Approved Sole Source Item. No substitutions will be accepted.

- B. Ceiling-Mounted Switching Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate power pack[mounted on luminaire], to detect changes in indoor lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories:
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
 - 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the associated power pack, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered by the power pack.
 - 4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for [20] A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for [15] A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for [1] hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 - 5. General Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 10 to 200 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 - 6. Atrium Space Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 100 to 1000 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 - 7. Skylight Sensors Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1000 to 10,000 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
 - 8. Time Delay: Adjustable from 5 to 300 seconds to prevent cycling.
 - 9. Set-Point Adjustment: Equip with deadband adjustment of 25, 50, and 75 percent above the "on" set point, or provide with separate adjustable "on" and "off" set points.
 - 10. Test Mode: User selectable, overriding programmed time delay to allow settings check.
 - 11. Control Load Status: User selectable to confirm that load wiring is correct.
 - 12. Indicator: Two digital displays to indicate the beginning of on-off cycles.

2.4 DAYLIGHT-HARVESTING DIMMING CONTROLS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 - 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand with Eclipse Controller.
- B. System Description: Sensing daylight and electrical lighting levels, the system adjusts the indoor electrical lighting levels. As daylight increases, the lights are dimmed.
 - 1. Lighting control set point is based on two lighting conditions:
 - a. When no daylight is present (target level).
 - b. When significant daylight is present.
 - 2. System programming is done with two hand-held, remote-control tools.
 - a. Initial setup tool.
 - b. Tool for occupants to adjust the target levels by increasing the set point up to 25 percent, or by minimizing the electric lighting level.
- C. Ceiling-Mounted Dimming Controls: Solid-state, light-level sensor unit, with separate controller unit, to detect changes in lighting levels that are perceived by the eye.
 - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 - 2. Sensor Output: 0- to 10-V dc to operate electronic dimming ballasts. Sensor is powered by controller unit.

3. Power Pack: Sensor has 24-V dc, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
4. Light-Level Sensor Set-Point Adjustment Range: 20 to 60 fc.

2.5 INDOOR OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Wall- or ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
 1. UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 5. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. PIR Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
 1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
 2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot-high ceiling.
- D. Ultrasonic Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy .
 1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
 2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.

4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet when mounted on a 10-foot-high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet.
- E. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.
1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
 2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
 3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.

2.6 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application[, and shall comply with California Title 24].
 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
 3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V, 1200-VA fluorescent at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag WS1:
1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of [900 sq. ft.] [2100 sq. ft].
 2. Sensing Technology: [PIR] [Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic].
 3. Switch Type: [SP.] [SP, dual circuit.] [SP, manual "on," automatic "off."] [SP, field selectable automatic "on," or manual "on" automatic "off."]
 4. Voltage: [Match the circuit voltage] [120 V] [277 V] [Dual voltage, 120 and 277 V]; [passive-infrared] [dual-technology] type.
 5. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 7. Concealed "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds, and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
 8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.
- D. Wall-Switch Sensor Tag WS2:
1. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..

2. Sensing Technology: PIR.
3. Switch Type: [SP.] [SP, dual circuit.] [SP, manual "on," automatic "off."] [SP, field selectable automatic "on," or manual "on" automatic "off."]
4. Voltage: [Match the circuit voltage] [120 V] [277 V] [Dual voltage, 120 and 277 V]; [passive-infrared] [dual-technology] type.
5. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
7. Concealed "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds, and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.

2.7 HIGH-BAY OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer
 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. General Description: Solid-state unit. The unit is designed to operate with the lamp and ballasts indicated.
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and to half-power when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights to half-power that is adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 16 minutes.
 3. Continuous Lamp Monitoring: When lamps are dimmed continuously for 24 hours, automatically turn lamps on to full power for 15 minutes for every 24 hours of continuous dimming.
 4. Operating Ambient Conditions: 32 to 149 deg F.
 5. Mounting: Threaded pipe.
 6. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 7. Detector Technology: PIR.
 8. Power and dimming control from the lighting fixture ballast that has been modified to include the dimming capacitor and MyzerPORT option.
- C. Detector Coverage: User selectable by interchangeable PIR lenses, suitable for mounting heights from 12 to 50 feet.
- D. Accessories: Obtain manufacturer's installation and maintenance kit with laser alignment tool for sensor positioning and power port connectors.

2.8 EXTREME-TEMPERATURE OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturer
 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. Description: Ceiling-mounted, solid-state, extreme-temperature occupancy sensors with a

separate power pack.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended application in damp locations.
 2. Operation: Turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 30 minutes.
 3. Operating Ambient Conditions: From minus 40 to plus 125 deg F.
 4. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 5. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 6. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind cover.
 7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 10 fc; keep lighting off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Detector Technology: PIR. Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in..
 2. Detection Coverage (Room): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1500 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch-high ceiling.
 3. Detection Coverage (High Bay): Detect occupancy within 25 feet when mounted on a 25-foot-high ceiling.

2.9 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Solid-state outdoor motion sensors.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application[, and shall comply with California Title 24].
 2. [PIR] [Dual-technology (PIR and infrared)] type, weatherproof. Detect occurrences of 6-inch-minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in.. Comply with UL 773A.
 3. Switch Rating:
 - a. Lighting-Fixture-Mounted Sensor: [500-VA fluorescent]
 - b. Separately Mounted Sensor: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 4. Switch Type: [SP.] [SP, dual circuit.] [SP, manual "on," automatic "off."] [SP, field selectable automatic "on," or manual "on" automatic "off."][With bypass switch to

- override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.]
5. Voltage: [120-V] [277-V] [Dual voltage, 120- and 277-V] type.
 6. Detector Coverage:
 - a. Standard Range: 210-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..
 - b. Long Range: 180-degree field of view and 110-foot detection range.
 7. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 8. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 9. Concealed "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds, and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
 10. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and help eliminate false "off" switching.
 11. Operating Ambient Conditions: Suitable for operation in ambient temperatures ranging from minus 40 to plus 130 deg F, rated as "raintight" according to UL 773A.

2.10 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. Description: Electrically operated and [mechanically] [electrically] held, combination-type lighting contactors with [fusible switch] [nonfused disconnect], complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation. Verify faulty level with Short Circuit and Coordination Study for OCPDs.
 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
 4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.
- C. BAS Interface: Provide hardware interface to enable the BAS to monitor and control lighting contactors.
 1. Monitoring: On-off status,
 2. Control: On-off operation

2.11 EMERGENCY SHUNT RELAY

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following manufacturers
 1. Nlights Control System Acuity brand.
- B. Description: Normally closed, electrically held relay, arranged for wiring in parallel with manual [or automatic switching contacts; complying with UL 924.

1. Coil Rating: [120] [277] V.

2.12 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- B. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90 percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

3.2 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.3 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch.
- B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in

junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
 - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.
- C. Each N-light device shall be addressed in the programming with the corresponding Campus, bld # and Room #

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within [12] months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting sensors to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to [two] visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
 - 1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.
 - 2. For daylighting controls, adjust set points and deadband controls to suit Owner's operations.
 - 3. Align high-bay occupancy sensors using manufacturer's laser aiming tool.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Coordinate demonstration of products specified in this Section with demonstration requirements for low-voltage, programmable lighting control systems specified in Section 26 09 43.13

"Addressable-Fixture Lighting Controls" and Section 26 09 43.23 "Relay-Based Lighting Controls."

- B. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices. Training shall be held on site after the system, devices are completely functional. Date and time shall be selected at the convenience of the owner's personnel.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

SECTION 26 09 43 NETWORK LIGHTING CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Network lighting control system and components:
 - 1. Touch panel controls
 - 2. Lighting management panels
 - 3. Lighting management modules
 - 4. Low voltage wall stations
 - 5. Power interfaces
 - 6. Wired sensors

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Section 26 27 26 Wiring Devices
- B. Section 26 51 13 Interior Lighting Fixtures

1.3 SUMMARY

- A. The lighting control system specified in this section shall provide time-based, sensor-based (both occupancy and daylight), and manual lighting control
- B. The system shall be capable of turning lighting loads on/off as well as dimming lights (if lighting load is capable of being dimmed). Specific dimmers will be capable of “dimming lights to off”
- C. All system devices shall be networked together, enabling digital communication between devices, and shall be individually addressed.
- D. The system architecture shall be capable of enabling stand-alone groups (rooms) of devices to function in some default capacity, even if network connectivity to the greater system is lost.
- E. The system architecture shall facilitate remote operation via a computer connection.
- F. The system shall not require any centrally hardwired switching equipment.
- G. The system shall be capable of wireless, wired, or hybrid wireless/wired architectures.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Datasheets (general device descriptions, dimensions, electrical specifications, wiring details, nomenclature)
- B. Riser Diagrams – typical per room type (detailed drawings showing device interconnectivity of devices)
- C. Other Diagrams – as needed for special operation or interaction with other system(s)

- D. Example Contractor Startup/Commissioning Worksheet – must be completed prior to factory start-up
- E. Hardware and Software Operation Manuals
- F. Other operational descriptions as needed

1.5 PROJECT CLOSEOUT DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide a factory published manual
 - 1. Warranty
 - 2. Technical support contact
 - 3. Electronic manual on manufacturer's website for free download

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All steps in sensor manufacturing process shall occur in North America; including population of all electronic components on circuit boards, soldering, programming, wiring, and housing.
- B. All components and the manufacturing facility where product was manufactured must be RoHS compliant.
- C. In high humidity or cold environments, the sensors shall be conformably coated and rated for condensing humidity and -40 degree Fahrenheit (and Celsius) operation.
- D. All applicable products must be UL / CUL Listed or other acceptable national testing organization.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Only install equipment after the following site conditions are maintained:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature 14 to 105 degrees F (-10 to 40 degrees C)
 - 2. Relative Humidity less than 90% non-condensing
- B. Standard electrical enclosures are permanently installed
- C. Equipment is protected from dust, debris and moisture

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Five (5) year 100% parts replacement

1.9 MAINTENANCE & SUSTAINABILITY

- A. Provide new parts, upgrades, and/or replacements available for a minimum of 5 years available to the end user
- B. Provide free telephone technical support

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable: Acuity Brands Lighting, Inc. – System: nLight by Acuity Controls – Sole Source
- B. Basis of controls design Manufacturer: Acuity Brands, One Lithonia Way, Conyers GA 30012, www.acuitycontrols.com

2.2 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

- A. System shall have an architecture that is based upon three main concepts; 1) intelligent lighting control devices 2) standalone lighting control zones 3) network backbone for remote or time based operation.
- B. Intelligent lighting control devices shall consist of one or more basic lighting control components; occupancy sensors, photocell sensors, relays, dimming outputs, manual switch stations, and manual dimming stations. Combining one or more of these components into a single device enclosure should be permissible so as to minimize overall device count of system.
- C. System must interface directly with intelligent LED luminaires such that only CAT-5 cabling is required to interconnect luminaires with control components such as sensors and switches
- D. Intelligent lighting control devices shall communicate digitally, require <7 mA of current to function (Graphic wall stations excluded), and possess RJ-45 style connectors.
- E. Lighting control zones shall consist of one or more intelligent lighting control components, be capable of stand-alone operation, and be capable of being connected to a higher level network backbone.
- F. Devices within a lighting control zone shall be connected with CAT-5e low voltage cabling in any order.
- G. Lighting control zone shall be capable of automatically configuring itself for default operation without any start-up labor required.
- H. Individual lighting zones must continue to provide a user defined default level of lighting control in the event of a system communication failure with the backbone network or the management software becoming unavailable.
- I. Power for devices within a lighting control zone shall come from either resident devices already present for switching (relay device) or dimming purposes, controls enabled luminaires, or from the network backbone. Standalone “bus power supplies” shall not be required in all cases.
- J. All switching and dimming for a specific lighting zone shall take place within the devices located in the zone itself (i.e. not in remotely located devices such as panels) to facilitate system robustness and minimize wiring requirements. Specific applications that require centralized or remote switching shall be capable of being accommodated.
- K. System shall have one or more primary wall mounted network control “gateway” devices that are

capable of accessing and controlling connected system devices and linking into an Ethernet LAN.

- L. System shall use “bridge” devices that route communication and distribute power for up to 8 directly connected lighting zones together for purposes of decreasing system wiring requirements.
- M. System shall be capable of wirelessly connecting a lighting zone to a WiFi (802.11n) wireless data network for purposes of eliminating the “bridge” devices and all cabling that connects zones to bridge devices.
- N. WiFi enabled devices shall be able to detect when WiFi network is down and revert to a user directed default state.
- O. WiFi-enabled devices shall be capable of current monitoring
- P. WiFi-enabled devices shall utilize WPA2 AES encryption
- Q. WiFi-enabled devices shall be able to connect to 802.11b/g/n WiFi networks
- R. WiFi-enabled devices shall have two local RJ-45 port for communicating with non WiFi-enabled system devices
- S. System shall have a web-based software management program that enables remote system control, status monitoring, and creation of lighting control schedules and profiles.
- T. Individual lighting zones shall be capable of being segmented into several “local” channels of occupancy, photocell, and switch functionality for more advanced configurations and sequences of operation.
- U. Devices located in different lighting zones shall be able to communicate occupancy, photocell (non-dimming), and switch information via either the wired or WiFi backbone.
- V. System shall be capable of operating a lighting control zone according to several sequences of operation. System shall be able to change a spaces sequence of operation according to a time schedule so as to enable customized time-of-day, day-of-week, utilization of a space. Note: Operating modes should be utilized only in manners consistent with local energy codes.
 - 1. Auto-On / Auto-Off (via occupancy sensors)
 - a. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on when occupant is detected.
 - b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
 - c. Pressing a switch will turn lights off. The lights will remain off regardless of occupancy until switch is pressed again, restoring the sensor to Automatic On functionality.
 - 2. Manual-On / Auto-Off (also called Semi-Automatic)
 - a. Pushing a switch will turn lights on.
 - b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
 - 3. Manual-On to Auto-On/Auto-Off
 - a. Pushing a switch will turn lights on.
 - b. After initial lights on, zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights on/off according to occupancy/vacancy and/or daylight conditions.
 - c. Sequence can be reset via scheduled (ex. daily each morning) events.
 - 4. Auto-to-Override On
 - a. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on when occupant is detected.

- b. Zone lighting then goes into an override on state for a set amount of time, or until the next time event returns the lighting to an auto-off style of control.
 - c. Sequence can be reset via scheduled (ex. daily each morning) events.
- 5. Manual-to-Override On
 - a. Pushing a switch will turn lights on.
 - b. Zone lighting then goes into an override on state for a set amount of time or until the next time event returns the lighting to an auto-off style of control.
 - c. Sequence can be reset via scheduled (ex. daily each morning) events.
- 6. Auto On / Predictive Off
 - a. Zones with occupancy sensors automatically turn lights on when occupant is detected.
 - b. Zones with occupancy and/or photocell sensors turn lights off when vacancy or sufficient daylight is detected.
 - c. Pressing the switch will turn the lights off and a short “exit timer” begins. After the timer expires, sensor scans the room to detect whether occupant is still present. If no occupancy is detected, zone returns to auto-on. If occupancy is detected, lights must be turned on via the switch.
- 7. Multi-Level Operation (multiple lighting levels per manual button press)
 - a. Operating mode designed specifically for bi-level applications.
 - b. Enables the user to cycle through up to four potential on/off/dim low/dim high lighting states using only a single button.
 - c. Eliminates user confusion as to which of two buttons controls which load
 - d. Three different transition sequences are available in order to comply with energy codes or user preference).
 - e. Mode available as a setting on all devices that have single manual on/off switch (ex. nPODM, nPODM-DX, nWSX LV).
 - f. Depending on the sequence selected, every button push steps through relay/dimming states according to below table
 - g. In addition to achieving bi-level lighting control by switching loads with relays, the ability to command dimming outputs to “step” in a sequence that achieves bi-level operation is present.

		State of load after each pushbutton press			
MLO Mode		1st Press	2nd Press	3rd Press	4th Press
2-State (Alternating)	Load A	On	Off	Off	-
	Load B	Off	On	Off	-
2-State (Both On, A First)	Load A	On	On	Off	-
	Load B	Off	On	Off	-
2-State (Both On, B First)	Load A	Off	On	Off	-
	Load B	On	On	Off	-
3-State	Load A	On	Off	On	Off
	Load B	Off	On	On	Off
A and B On ¹	Load A	On	Off	-	-
	Load B	On	Off	-	-
A On Only ¹	Load A	On	Off	-	-
	Load B	Off	Off	-	-
A and B On & Dim High ¹	Load A	High	Off	-	-
	Load B	High	Off	-	-
Dim Low /High	Load A	Low	High	Off	-
Dim Low / High	Load A	High	Low	Off	-

NOTE 1: Modes for use only when Auto-On state of Load A & B is different than first MLO state

- W. A taskbar style desktop application shall be available for personal lighting control.
- X. An application that runs on “smart” handheld devices (such as an Apple® iPhone®) shall be available for personal lighting control.
- Y. Control software shall enable logging of system performance data and presenting this information in a web-based format and downloadable to .CSV files.
- Z. Control software shall enable integration with a BMS via BACnet IP, although a hardware BACnet IP integration solution is also available.
- AA. System shall provide the option of having pre-terminated plenum rated CAT-5e cabling supplied with hardware.

2.3 INDIVIDUAL DEVICE SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Control module (gateway)
 - Control module shall be a device that facilitates communication and time-based control of downstream network devices and linking into an Ethernet network.
 - Devices shall have a user interface that is capable of wall mounting, powered by low voltage, and have a touch screen.
 - Control device shall have three RJ-45 ports for connection to the graphic touch screen, other backbone devices bridges) or directly to lighting control devices(up to 128 per port).
 - Device shall automatically detect all devices downstream of it.
 - Device shall have a standard and astronomical internal time clock.

6. Device shall have one RJ-45 10/100 BaseT Ethernet connection.
7. Device shall have a USB port
8. Each control gateway device shall be capable of linking 1500 devices to the management software, with reduced memory version capable of support up to 400 devices.
9. Device shall be capable of using a dedicated static or DHCP assigned IP address.
10. Network Control Gateway device shall be the following nLight model

Series: nGWY2

B. Networked system occupancy sensors

1. Occupancy sensors shall sense the presence of human activity within the desired space and fully control the on/off function of the lights.
2. Sensors shall utilize passive infrared (PIR) technology, which detects occupant motion, to initially turn lights on from an off state, thus preventing false on conditions. Ultrasonic or Micro-wave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
3. For applications where a second method of sensing is necessary to adequately detect maintained occupancy (such as in rooms with obstructions), a sensor with an additional “dual” technology shall be used.
4. Dual technology sensors shall have one of its two technologies not require motion to detect occupancy. Acceptable dual technology includes PIR/Microphonics (also known as Passive Dual Technology or PDT) which both looks for occupant motion and listens for sounds indicating occupants. Sensors where both technologies detect motion (PIR/Ultrasonic) shall not be acceptable.
5. All sensing technologies shall be acoustically passive, meaning they do not transmit sound waves of any frequency (for example in the Ultrasonic range), as these technologies have the potential for interference with other electronic devices within the space (such as electronic white board readers). Acceptable detection technologies include Passive Infrared (PIR), and/or Microphonics technology. Ultrasonic or Microwave based sensing technologies shall not be accepted.
6. Sensors shall be available with zero or one integrated dry contact switching relays, capable of switching 1 amp at 24 VAC/VDC (resistive only).
7. Sensors shall be available with one or two occupancy “poles”, each of which provides a programmable time delay.
8. Sensors shall be available in multiple lens options which are customized for specific applications.
9. Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
10. All sensors shall have two RJ-45 ports or capable of utilizing a splitter.
11. All sensors shall have the ability to detect when it is not receiving valid communication (via CAT-5 connections) and blink its LED in a pattern to visually indicate of a potential wiring issue
12. Every sensor parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
13. Sensors shall be able to function together with other sensors in order to provide expanded coverage areas by simply daisy-chain wiring together the units with CAT-5 cabling.
14. Sensors shall be equipped with an automatic override for 100 hour burn-in of lamps. This feature must be available at any time for lamp replacements.

15. Wall switch sensors shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
16. Wall switch sensors must meet NEC grounding requirements by providing a dedicated ground connection and grounding to mounting strap. Line and load wire connections shall be interchangeable. Sensor shall not allow current to pass to the load when sensor is in the un-occupied (Off) condition.
17. Wall switch sensors shall have optional features for photocell/daylight override, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
18. Wall switch sensors shall be available in four standard colors (Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray)
19. Wall switch sensors shall be available with optional raise/lower dimming adjustment controls.
20. Wall switch sensors shall be the following nLight model numbers, with device color and optional features as specified:
 nWSX (PIR, 1 Relay)
 nWSX PDT (Dual Tech, 1 Relay)
 nWSX LV (PIR, No Relay)
 nWSX PDT LV (Dual Tech, No Relay)
 nWSX LV NL (PIR w/ Night Light, No Relay)
 nWSX PDT LV NL (Dual Tech w/ Night Light, No Relay)
 nWSX LV DX (PIR, No Relay, Raise/Lower Dim Ctrl)
 nWSX PDT LV DX (Dual Tech, No Relay, Raise/Lower Dim Ctrl)
21. Network system shall have sensors that can be embedded into luminaire such that only the lens shows on luminaire face.
22. Embedded sensors shall be capable of both PIR and Dual Technology occupancy detection
23. Embedded sensors shall have an optional photocell
24. Embedded sensors shall be the following nLight model number:
 nES 7 (PIR, No Relay)
 nES 7 ADCX (PIR w/ Photocell, No Relay)
 nES PDT 7 (Dual Technology, No Relay)
 nES PDT 7 ADCX (Dual Technology w/ Photocell, No Relay)
25. Network system shall also have ceiling, fixture, recessed, & corner mounted sensors available.
26. Sensors shall have optional features for photocell/daylight override, dimming control, and low temperature/high humidity operation.
27. Sensors shall be the following nLight model numbers, with device options as specified:

Model # Series	Occupancy Poles	# of Relays	Lens Type	Detection Technology
nCM(B) 9	1	-	Standard	PIR
nCM(B) 9 2P	2	-	Standard	PIR
nCM 9 RJB	1	-	Standard	PIR
nCM 9 2P RJB	2	-	Standard	PIR

nCM(B) PDT 9	1	-	Standard	Dual
nCM(B) PDT 9 2P	2	-	Standard	Dual
nCM PDT 9 RJB	1	-	Standard	Dual
nCM PDT 9 2P RJB	2	-	Standard	Dual
nCM(B) 10	1	-	Extended	PIR
nCM(B) 10 2P	2	-	Extended	PIR
nCM 10 RJB	1	-	Extended	PIR
nCM 10 2P RJB	2	-	Extended	PIR
nCM(B) PDT 10	1	-	Extended	Dual
nCM(B) PDT 10 2P	2	-	Extended	Dual
nCM PDT 10 RJB	1	-	Extended	Dual
nCM PDT 10 2P RJB	2	-	Extended	Dual
nRM 9	1	-	Standard	PIR
nRM PDT 9	1	-	Standard	Dual
nRM 10	1	-	Extended	PIR
nRM PDT 10	1	-	Extended	Dual
nRM 6	1	-	High Bay	PIR
nRM 50	1	-	Aisle Way	PIR
nWV 16	1	-	Wide View	PIR
nWV PDT 16	1	-	Wide View	Dual
nHW13	1	-	Hallway	PIR
nCM(B) 6	1	-	High Bay	PIR
nCM 6 RJB	1	-	High Bay	PIR

C. Networked system daylight (photocell and/or dimming) sensors

1. Photocell shall provide for an on/off set-point, and a deadband to prevent the artificial light from cycling. Delay shall be incorporated into the photocell to prevent rapid response to passing clouds.
2. Photocell and dimming sensor's set-point and deadband shall be automatically calibrated through the sensor's microprocessor by initiating an "Automatic Set-point Programming" procedure. Min and max dim settings as well as set-point may be manually entered.
3. Deadband setting shall be verified and modified by the sensor automatically every time the lights cycle to accommodate physical changes in the space (i.e., furniture layouts, lamp depreciation, or lamp outages).
4. Photocell and dimming sensors shall be equipped with an automatic override for 100 hour burn-in of lamps. This feature must be available at any time for lamp replacements.

(Note:

This function should be performed prior to any dimming of the lamps including the "auto

- set- point” setting.)
5. Combination units that have all features of on/off photocell and dimming sensors shall also be available.
 6. A dual zone option shall be available for On/Off Photocell, Automatic Dimming Control Photocell, or Combination units. The second zone shall be capable of being controlled as an “off- set” from the primary zone.
 7. Sensor shall be the following nLight model numbers, with device options as specified:
 - nCM(B) PC (RJB) (on/off)
 - nCM(B) PC DZ (RJB) (on/off control, dual zone)
 - nCM(B) ADCX (RJB) (remote automatic dimming control photocell)
 - nCM(B) ADCX DZ (RJB) (remote automatic dimming control photocell, dual zone)
 - nRM PC (on/off)
 - nRM PC DZ (on/off, dual zone)
 - nRM ADCX (remote automatic dimming control photocell)
 - nRM ADCX DZ (remote automatic dimming control photocell, dual zone)
 8. Network system shall have dimming photocells that can be embedded into luminaire such that only the lens shows on luminaire face.
 9. Embedded sensors shall be the following nLight model number: nES ADCX (Dimming Photocell)

D. Networked System Power (Relay) Packs

1. Power Packs shall incorporate one Class 1 relay, a 0-10 VDC dimming output, and contribute low voltage power to the rest of the system. Secondary Packs shall incorporate the relay and 0-10 VDC or line voltage dimming output, but shall not be required to contribute system power. Power Supplies shall provide system power only, but are not required to switch line voltage circuit. Auxiliary Relay Packs shall switch low voltage circuits only.
2. Power Packs shall accept 120 or 277 VAC (or optionally 347 VAC), be plenum rated, and provide Class 2 power to the system.
3. All devices shall have two RJ-45 ports.
4. Every Power Pack parameter shall be available and configurable remotely from the software and locally via the device push-button.
5. Power Pack shall securely mount to junction location through a threaded ½ inch chase nipple or be capable of being secured within a luminaire ballast channel. Plastic clips into junction box shall not be accepted. All Class 1 wiring shall pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads. Note: UL Listing under Energy Management or Industrial Control Equipment automatically meets this requirement, whereas Appliance Control Listing does not meet this safety requirement.
6. When required by local code, Power Pack must install inside standard electrical enclosure and provide UL recognized support to junction box. All Class 1 wiring is to pass through chase nipple into adjacent junction box without any exposure of wire leads.
7. Power Packs and Power Supplies shall be available that are WiFi enabled.
8. Power Packs (Secondary) shall be available that provide up to 16 Amp switching of all lighting load types.
9. Power Packs shall be available that provide up to 5 Amps switching of all lighting load types as well as 0-10 VDC dimming or fluorescent ballasts/LED drivers.
10. Specific Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 5 Amps of switching and can dim 120 VAC incandescent lighting loads or 120/277 VAC line voltage dimmable fluorescent ballasts (2-wire and 3-wire versions).

11. Specific Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 5 Amps of switching and can dim 120/277 VAC magnetic low voltage transformers.
12. Specific Secondary Packs shall be available that provide up to 4 Amps of switching and can dim 120 VAC electronic low voltage transformers.
13. Specific Power/Secondary Packs shall be available that are UL924 listed for switching of Emergency Power circuits.
14. Specific Secondary Packs shall be available that control louver/damper motors for skylights.
15. Specific Secondary Packs shall be available that provide a pulse on/pulse off signal for purposes of controlling shade systems via relay inputs.
16. Power (Secondary) Packs shall be available that provide up to 20 Amps switching of general purposed receptacle (plug-load) control.
17. Power (Relay) Packs and Supplies shall be the following nLight model numbers:
 - nPP16 (Power Pack w/ 16A relay)
 - nPP16 D (Power Pack w/ 16A relay and 0-10VDC dimming output)
 - nPP16 WIFI (Power Pack w/ 16A relay, WIFI enabled)
 - nEPP5 D (Power Pack w/ 5A relay and 0-10VDC dimming output)
 - nSP16 (Secondary Pack w/ 16A relay)
 - nPP16 ER (UL924 Listed Secondary Pack w/ 16A relay for switching emergency power circuits)
 - nPP16 D ER UL924 Listed Secondary Pack w/ 16A relay and 0-10VDC dimming output for switching/dimming emergency power circuits)
 - nSP5 PCD 2W (Secondary Pack w/ 5A relay and incandescent dimming or 2-wire line voltage fluorescent dimming output)
 - nSP5 PCD 3W (Secondary Pack w/ 5A relay and 3-wire line voltage fluorescent dimming output)
 - nSP5 PCD MLV (Secondary Pack w/ 5A relay and magnetic low voltage dimming output)
 - nSP5 PCD ELV 120 (Secondary Pack w/ 4A relay and electronic low voltage dimming output)
 - nSP5 2P LVR (Louver/Damper Control Pack)
 - nSHADE (Pulse On/Off Control Pack)
 - nPP20 PL (Secondary Pack w/ 20A relay for general purpose receptacle load)
 - nPS 80 (Auxiliary Bus Power Supply)
 - nPS 80 WIFI (Auxiliary Bus Power Supply, WiFi enabled)
 - nAR 40 (Low voltage auxiliary relay pack)

E. Networked System Relay & Dimming Panels

1. Panel shall incorporate up to 4 normally closed latching relays capable of switching 120/277 VAC or up to 2 Dual Phase relays capable of switching 208/240/480 VAC loads.
2. Relays shall be rated to switch up to a 30A ballast load at 277 VAC.
3. Panel shall provide one 0-10VDC dimming output paired with each relay.
4. Panel shall power itself from an integrated 120/277 VAC supply.
5. Panel shall be capable of operating as either two networked devices or as one.
6. Panel shall supply current limited low voltage power to other networked devices connected via CAT-5.
7. Panel shall provide auxiliary low voltage device power connected wired directly to a dedicated terminal connection.

8. Power (Relay) Packs and Supplies shall be the following nLight model numbers:
nPANEL 4 (Panel w/ four 120/277 VAC relays and four 0-10 VDC dimming outputs)
nPANEL 2 480 (Panel w/ two dual phase relays (208/240/480 VAC) and two 0-10 VDC dimming outputs)
- F. Networked Auxiliary Input / Output (I/O) Devices
 1. Devices shall be plenum rated and be inline wired, screw mountable, or have an extended chase nipple for mounting to a 1/2" knockout.
 2. Devices shall have two RJ-45 ports
 3. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
 4. Specific I/O devices shall have a dimming control output that can control 0-10 VDC dimmable ballasts or LED drivers by sinking up to 20 mA of current.
 5. Specific I/O devices shall have an input that reads a 0-10 VDC signal from an external device.
 6. Specific I/O devices shall have a switch input that can interface with either a maintained or momentary switch and run a switch event (toggle the lighting load) or run a local/remote control profile.
 7. Specific I/O devices shall sense state of low voltage outdoor photocells.
 8. Specific I/O devices shall enable RS-232 communication between lighting control system and Touch Screen based A/V control systems.
 9. Specific I/O devices shall sense momentary and maintained contact closures, and either toggle a connected load after a momentary contact or ramp the load high/low during a maintained contact (stopping when the contact releases).
 10. Auxiliary Input/Output Devices shall be the following nLight model numbers:
nIO D (I/O device with 0-10 dimming output)
nIO 1S or nIO RLX (I/O device with contact closure or 0-10VDC dimming input)
nIO NLI (Input device for detecting state of low voltage outdoor photocell; sold in nIO PC KIT only)
nIO X (Interface device for communicating with RS-232 enabled AV Touch Screens)
- G. Networked LED Luminaires
 1. Networked LED luminaire shall have a mechanically integrated control device
 2. Networked LED luminaire shall have two RJ-45 ports available (via control device directly or incorporated RJ-45 splitter)
 3. Networked LED luminaire shall be able to digitally network directly to other network control devices (sensors, photocells, switches, dimmers)
 4. Networked LED luminaire shall provide low voltage power to other networked control devices (excluding EMG versions)
 5. System shall be able to turn on/off specific LED luminaires without using a relay, if LED driver supports "sleep mode"
 6. System shall be able to maintain constant lumen output over the specified life of the LED luminaire (also called lumen compensation) by varying the input control power (and thus saving up to 20% power usage).

7. System shall indicate (via a blink warning) when the LED luminaire has reached its expected life (in hrs).
 8. Integrated control devices shall be the following nLight model series:
 - nIO LEDG (ER)
 - nIO EZ PH (ER)
 - nPS 80 EZ (ER)
 - nEPS 60 IO EZ
 - nEIO EZ LC (ER)
- H. Networked System Wall Switches & Dimmers
1. Devices shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
 2. Communication and low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
 3. All devices shall have two RJ-45 ports.
 4. All devices shall provide toggle switch control. Dimming control and low temperature/high humidity operation are available options.
 5. Devices shall be available in four colors (Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray).
 6. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall provide tactile and LED user feedback.
 7. Devices with mechanical push-buttons shall be made available with custom button labeling
 8. Devices with a single “on” button shall be capable of selecting all possible lighting combinations for a bi-level lighting zone such that the user confusion as to which of two buttons (as is present in multi-button scenarios) controls which load is eliminated.
 9. Wall switches & dimmers shall be the following nLight model numbers, with device options as specified:
 - nPODM (single on/off, push-buttons, LED user feedback)
 - nPODM DX (single on/off, single dimming raise/lower, push-buttons, LED user feed- back)
 - nPODM 2P (dual on/off, push-buttons, LED user feedback)
 - nPODM 2P DX (dual on/off, dual dimming raise/lower, push-buttons, LED user feed- back)
 - nPODM 4P (quad on/off, push-buttons, LED user feedback)
 - nPODM 4P DX (quad on/off, quad dimming raise-lower, push-buttons, LED user feed-back)
- I. Networked System Graphic Wall Station
1. Device shall have a 3.5” full color touch screen for selecting up to 16 programmable lighting control preset scenes or acting as up to 16 on/off/dim control switches.
 2. Devices shall be available in four colors (Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray).
 3. Device shall enable configuration of all switches, dimmers, and lighting preset scenes via password protected setup screens.
 4. Device shall enable user supplied .jpg screen saver image to be uploaded.
 5. Device shall surface mount to single-gang switch box.
 6. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply.
 7. Device shall have a micro-USB style connector for local computer connectivity.

8. Device shall have two RJ-45 ports for communication
 9. Device shall be the following nLight model
number: nPOD GFX
- J. Networked System Scene Controllers
1. Device shall have two, three, four, or eight buttons for selecting programmable lighting control profiles or acting as on/off switches.
 2. Devices shall be available in four colors (Ivory, White, Light Almond, Gray).
 3. Device shall recess into single-gang switch box and fit a standard GFI opening.
 4. Devices shall provide LED user feedback.
 5. Communication and Class 2 low voltage power shall be delivered to each device via standard CAT-5 low voltage cabling with RJ-45 connectors.
 6. All devices shall have two RJ-45 ports.
 7. Device shall be capable of reprogramming other devices in its zone so as to implement user selected lighting scene.
 8. Device shall be capable of selecting a lighting profile be run by the system's upstream Gateway so as to implement selected lighting profile across multiple zones (and not just its local zone).
 9. Device shall have LEDs indicating current selection.
 10. Scene Selector device shall be the following nLight model
number: nPODM 2S (2 Scene, push-button)
nPODM 4S (4 Scene, push-button)
nPODM 4S DX (4 Scene, push-button, On/Off/Raise/Lower)
nPODM 2L (2 Adjustable Preset Levels, push-button,
On/Off) nPODM 2L AB (2 Scene, push-button,
On/Off/High/Low)
nPODM 4L DX (4 Adjustable Preset Levels, push-button, On/Off/Raise/Lower)
- K. Communication Bridges
1. Device shall surface mount to a standard 4" x 4" square junction box.
 2. Device shall have 8 RJ-45 ports.
 3. Device shall be capable of aggregating communication from multiple lighting control zones for purposes of minimizing backbone wiring requirements back to Control Gateway.
 4. Device shall be powered with Class 2 low voltage supplied locally via a directly wired power supply or delivered via a CAT-5 cabled connection.
 5. Device shall be capable of redistributing power from its local supply and connect lighting control zones with excess power to lighting control zones with insufficient local power. This architecture also enables loss of power to a particular area to be less impactful on network lighting control system.
 6. Communication Bridge devices shall be the following nLight model numbers:
nBRG 8 (8 Ports)

2.4 LIGHTING CONTROL PROFILES

- A. Changes to the operation of the system shall be capable of being made in real-time or scheduled via lighting control profiles. These profiles are outlines of settings that direct how a collection of devices function for a defined time period.
- B. Lighting control profiles shall be capable of being created and applied to a single device, zone of devices, or customized group of zones.
- C. All relays and dimming outputs shall be capable of being scheduled to track or ignore information regarding occupancy, daylight, and local user switches via lighting control profiles.
- D. Specific device parameters (e.g. sensor time delay and photocell set-point) shall be configurable via a lighting control profile.
- E. All lighting control profiles shall be stored on the network control gateway device, with a system backup on the software's host server.
- F. Lighting control profiles shall be capable of being scheduled to run according to the following calendar options: start date/hour/minute, end date/hour/minute, and sunrise/sunset +/- timed offsets.
- G. Sunrise/sunset times shall be automatically derived from location information using an astronomical clock.
- H. Daylight savings time adjustments shall be capable of being performed automatically, if desired.
- I. Lighting control profile schedules shall be capable of being given the following recurrence settings: daily, weekday, weekend, weekly, monthly, and yearly.
- J. Software shall provide a graphical tool for easily viewing scheduled lighting control profiles.

2.5 MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE

- A. Every device parameter (e.g. sensor time delay and photocell set-point) shall be available and configurable remotely from the software
- B. The following status monitoring information shall be made available from the software for all devices for which it is applicable: current occupancy status, current PIR Status, current Microphonics Status, remaining occupancy time delay(s), current photocell reading, current photocell inhibiting state, photocell transitions time remaining, current dim level, device temperature, and device relay state(s).
- C. The following device identification information shall be made available from the software: model number, model description, serial number, manufacturing date code, custom label(s), and parent network device.
- D. A printable network inventory report shall be available via the software.
- E. A printable report detailing all system profiles shall be available via the software.
- F. Software shall require all users to login with a User Name and Password.

- G. Software shall provide at least three permission levels for users.
- H. All sensitive stored information and privileged communication by the software shall be encrypted.
- I. All device firmware and system software updates must be available for automatic download and installation via the internet.
- J. Software shall be capable of managing systems interconnected via a WAN (wide area network)

2.6 BMS COMPATIBILITY

- A. System shall provide a BACnet IP gateway as a downloadable software plug-in to its management software.
- B. BACnet IP connection shall also be available utilizing JACE-600 hardware unit.
- C. BACnet IP hardware shall be capable of supporting up to 1500 total devices across up to 5 total Gateways
- D. BACnet IP connection shall communicate information gathered by networked system to other building management systems.
- E. BACnet IP connection shall translate and forward lighting relay and other select control commands from BMS system to networked control devices via profiles stored in the system Gateway. All system devices shall be available for polling for devices status.
- F. BACnet IP hardware device shall be the following nLight model
name: nBACnet

2.7 SYSTEM ENERGY ANALYSIS & REPORTING SOFTWARE

- A. System shall be capable of reporting lighting system events and performance data back to the management software for display and analysis.
- B. Intuitive graphical screens shall be displayed in order to facilitate simple viewing of system energy performance.
- C. An "Energy Scorecard" shall be display that shows calculated energy savings in dollars, KWHr, or CO2.
- D. Software shall calculate the allocation of energy savings to different control measures (occupancy sensors, photocells, manual switching, etc).
- E. Energy savings data shall be calculated for the system as a whole or for individual zones.
- F. A time scaled graph showing all relay transitions shall be presented.
- G. A time scaled graph showing a zones occupancy time delay shall be presented
- H. A time scaled graph showing the total light level shall be presented.

- I. User shall be able to customize the baseline run-time hours for a space.
- J. User shall be able to customize up to four time-of-day billing rates and schedules.
- K. Data shall be made available via a .CSV file

2.8 START-UP & SUPPORT FEATURES

- A. To facilitate start-up, all devices daisy-chained together (using CAT-5) shall automatically be grouped together into a functional lighting control zone.
- B. All lighting control zones shall be able to function according to default settings once adequate power is applied and before any system software is installed.
- C. Once software is installed, system shall be able to auto-discover all system devices without requiring any commissioning.
- D. All system devices shall be capable of being given user defined names.
- E. All devices within the network shall be able to have their firmware upgraded remotely and without being physically uninstalled for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.
- F. All sensor devices shall have the ability to detect improper communication wiring and blink it's LED in a specific cadence as to alert installation/startup personnel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 START-UP & SUPPORT FEATURES

- A. To facilitate start-up, all devices daisy-chained together (using CAT-5) shall automatically be grouped together into a functional lighting control zone.
- B. All lighting control zones shall be able to function according to default settings once adequate power is applied and before any system software is installed.
- C. Once software is installed, system shall be able to auto-discover all system devices without requiring any commissioning.
- D. All system devices shall be capable of being given user defined names.
- E. All devices within the network shall be able to have their firmware reprogrammed remotely and without being physically uninstalled for purposes of upgrading functionality at a later date.
- F. All sensor devices shall have the ability to detect improper communication wiring and blink its LED in a specific cadence as to alert installation/startup personnel.
- G. The manufacturer shall provide the services of a factory authorized representative to field verify and commission the installation. The field visit shall be for a minimum of 3 days time for each commissioning visit. The manufacturer representative shall include appropriate time to allow for repeat visits as required for a fully functional system.

3.2 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to

adjust, operate, and maintain Lighting Control System and related equipment as specified. Refer to Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training." Training shall be held on site after the complete system is installed, fully functional and tested.

1. Coordinate this training with Owner's Representative

END OF SECTION 26 09 43

SECTION 26 23 00 – LOW-VOLTAGE SWITCHGEAR

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes metal-enclosed, low-voltage power circuit-breaker switchgear rated 1000 V and less for use in ac systems.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Section 26 00 80 "Testing Specifications"
 - 2. Section 26 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls For Electrical Systems"
 - 3. Section 26 05 73 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study" for short-circuit rating of devices and for setting of overcurrent protective devices.
 - 4. Section 26 09 13 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control" for interfacing communication and metering requirements.
 - 5. Section 26 28 13 "Fuses."
 - 6. Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" for transient voltage surge suppressors for low-voltage power, control, and communication equipment that may be located in secondary section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance Testing Specifications.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. NETA: Inter-National Electrical Testing Association.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Switchgear shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to SEI/ASCE 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's technical data and catalog cuts for each type of switchgear, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Shop drawings prepared by the factory engineer for each type of switchgear and related equipment shall include the following information:
 - 1. Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Include the following:
 - a. Tabulation of installed devices with features and ratings.
 - b. Enclosure types and details.
 - c. Outline and general arrangement drawing showing dimensions, shipping sections, and weights of each assembled section.
 - d. Bus configuration with size and number of conductors in each bus run, including phase, neutral, and ground conductors of main and branch buses.
 - e. Current rating of buses.
 - f. Short-time and short-circuit current rating of switchgear assembly.
 - g. Nameplate legends.
 - h. Mimic-bus diagram.
 - i. Utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
 - j. UL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - k. Features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer installed and field installed wiring.
- C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified finish. Manufacturer's color charts showing colors available for mimic bus.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Ceiling and Floor plans to scale (1/4"=1'-0") showing dimensioned layout, required working clearances, and required area above and around switchgear where pipe and ducts are prohibited. Show switchgear layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate field measurements.
- B. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that switchgear, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces defined in Section 26 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems." Include the following:
 - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
 - b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the

- unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- D. Field quality-control test reports. Submit within two (2) weeks of completion of tests.
- E. Updated mimic-bus diagram reflecting field changes after final switchgear load connections have been made, for record.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchgear and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fuses: [Six] of each type and rating used. Include spares for potential transformer fuses, control power fuses, and fuses and fusible devices for fused circuit breakers.
 2. Indicating Lights: [Six] of each type installed.
 3. Touchup Paint: [3] containers of paint matching enclosure finish, each 0.5 pint.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. American made products have been acceptable to the Owner. If non-domestic products are submitted, notice is hereby given that extensive testing shall be required to insure quality and conformance to the Specifications. Testing shall be done by a recognized lab acceptable to the College and all tests shall be witnessed by Owner's personnel. All testing procedures and test results shall be satisfactory to the Owner. Contractor shall be responsible for arranging the tests, for transportation, food and lodging for minimum of one Owner's representative to witness the test at the testing lab. Include all costs for the above in the bid.
- B. Contractor shall ensure that the manufacturer has a minimum of 15 years experience in the production of Switchgears similar to the type and size specified in this project. Furnish a list of minimum three (3) installations with similar equipment completed within the last five (5) years. Include name and telephone number of the facility engineer for each installation.
- C. Manufacturer shall have ISO 9001 Certification.

- D. Manufacturer shall have ability to readily provide replacement parts for a minimum period of ten (10) years, from the date of completion of the project. Furnish a letter from the manufacturer indicating the above statement.
- E. Switchgear shall be assembled at the manufacturer's own manufacturing facility using its own major devices (e.g., circuit breakers) for the assembly. These devices shall be normally carried by the manufacturer as standard catalog items.
- F. Each switchgear shall comply with seismic zone applicable to the project. Unless otherwise indicated, verify requirements with Architect or Structural Engineer of Record (SEOR). Provide certified test reports of shake table test done by manufacturer of switchgear on similar units.
- G. Materials and equipment shall be new, modern in design and shall not have been in prior service except as required by factory tests. Major components (e.g., primary switch, transformer, and switchboard) shall be manufactured within twelve (12) months of installation.
- H. Source Limitations: Obtain switchgear through one source from a single manufacturer through a local distributor. All power distribution equipment shall be of the same manufacturer as the substation.
- I. Comply with IEEE C37.20.1
- J. Comply with NFPA 70.
- K. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
- L. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of switchgear are based on the specific system indicated.
- M. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, and marked for intended use.
- N. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Testing agency shall be an independent company with the experience to conduct field testing as indicated; shall have been a member of Inter-National Testing Association (NETA) for a minimum of last ten (10) years.
 - 2. The company shall have permanent in-house testing engineers and technicians.
 - 3. Testing company shall be located with 50 miles radius of the project.
 - 4. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
 - 5. Field Testing technician and supervisor shall have minimum ten (10) years' experience in field testing of unit substations similar to the type and rating specified on this project.
 - 6. Refer to section 26 00 80 "Testing Specifications" for additional information.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver switchgear in sections of lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.
- B. Store switchgear indoors in clean dry space with uniform temperature to prevent condensation.

Protect switchgear from exposure to dirt, fumes, water, corrosive substances, and physical damage.

- C. If stored in areas subjected to weather, cover switchgear to provide protection from weather, dirt, dust, corrosive substances, and physical damage. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchgear; install electric heating (250 W per section) to prevent condensation.

1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace building components and structures to provide pathway for moving switchgear into place.
- B. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify College no fewer than (fourteen) 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without College's written permission.
 - 3. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities. Contractor shall provide standby power if the proposed interruption is for more than two (2) hours, Include associated cost in the bid.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchgear, including clearances between switchgear, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 40 deg C.
 - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.12 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchgear and components with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including conduit, piping, equipment, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required clearances for workspace and equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.13 Warranty:

- A. The contractor shall provide a complete 3 year warranty, including all labor and materials. Warranty shall cover on-site repairs and replacements of defective components by manufacturer's trained technicians within 24 hours.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Square D; Schneider Electric
 2. Cutler-Hammer, Inc.; Eaton Corporation.
 3. General Electric Company.
 4. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

2.2 RATINGS

- A. Nominal System Voltage: [480 V, 3] [480/277 V, 4] [240 V, 3] [208/120 V, 4] wire, 60 Hz.
- B. Main-Bus Continuous: [4000] [3200] [2000] [1600] A.
- C. Short-Time and Short-Circuit Current: Match rating of highest-rated circuit breaker in switchgear assembly.
- D. Switchgear and the devices shall be fully rated for the available fault current unless otherwise noted.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Factory assembled and tested and complying with IEEE C37.20.1.
- B. Indoor Enclosure Material: Steel.
- C. Outdoor Enclosure [Walk-in] [Non Walk-in] Galvanized steel. [NEMA 4X Stainless Steel] [NEMA 3R Stainless Steel] .
- D. Outdoor Enclosure Fabrication Requirements: Weatherproof; integral structural-steel base frame with factory-applied asphaltic undercoating; and each compartment equipped with the following features:
1. Structural design and anchorage adequate to resist loads imposed by [125-mph] wind.
 2. Space heater operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, sized to prevent condensation.
 3. Louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter; arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.
 4. Hinged front door with padlocking provisions.
 5. Interior light with switch.
 6. Weatherproof duplex receptacle.
 7. Common internal aisle of sufficient width to permit protective-device withdrawal, disassembly, and servicing in aisle.
 8. Aisle access doors with outside padlocking provisions and interior panic latches.
 9. Aisle space heaters operating at one-half or less of rated voltage, controlled with thermostat and humidistat connected in parallel.
 10. Vaporproof fluorescent aisle lights with low-temperature ballasts, controlled by wall

- switch at each entrance.
11. GFCI duplex receptacles, a minimum of two, located in aisle.
 12. Aisle ventilation louvers equipped with insect and rodent screen and filter and arranged to permit air circulation while excluding insects, rodents, and exterior dust.
- E. Finish: IEEE C37.20.1, manufacturer's standard gray finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on phosphatizing-treated metal surfaces.
- F. Section barriers between main and tie circuit-breaker compartments shall be extended to rear of section.
- G. Bus isolation barriers shall be arranged to isolate line bus from load bus at each main and tie circuit breaker.
- H. Circuit-breaker compartments shall be equipped to house drawout-type circuit breakers and shall be fitted with hinged outer doors.
- I. Fabricate enclosure with removable, hinged, rear cover panels to allow access to rear interior of switchgear.
- J. Auxiliary Compartments: Match and align with basic switchgear assembly. Include the following:
1. Utility metering compartment that complies with utility company requirements.
 2. Bus transition sections.
 3. Incoming-line pull sections.
 4. Hinged front panels for access to metering, accessory, and blank compartments.
 5. Pull box on top of switchgear for extra room for pulling cable, with removable top, front, and side covers and ventilation provisions adequate to maintain air temperature in pull box within same limits as switchgear.
 - a. Set pull box back from front to clear circuit-breaker lifting mechanism.
 - b. Bottom: Insulating, fire-resistant material with separate holes for cable drops into switchgear.
 - c. Cable Supports: Arranged to ease cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.
- K. Bus bars connect between vertical sections and between compartments. Cable connections are not permitted.
1. Main Phase Bus: Uniform capacity the entire length of assembly.
 2. Neutral Bus: [100] percent of phase-bus ampacity, except as indicated. Equip bus with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Include braces for neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders.
 3. Vertical Section Bus Size: Comply with IEEE C37.20.1, including allowance for spare circuit breakers and spaces for future circuit breakers.
 4. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
 5. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Silver- or tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade with copper circuit-breaker line connections.
 6. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity or tin-plated,
 7. Use silver-plated copper or tin-plated aluminum for connecting circuit-breaker line to

- aluminum bus.
8. Use copper for connecting circuit-breaker line to copper bus.
 9. Contact Surfaces of Buses: Silver plated.
 10. Feeder Circuit-Breaker Load Terminals: Silver-plated copper bus extensions equipped with pressure connectors for outgoing circuit conductors.
 11. Ground Bus: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent minimum conductivity, with pressure connector for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors, minimum size 1/4 by 2 inches.
 12. Supports and Bracing for Buses: Adequate strength for indicated short-circuit currents.
 13. Neutral bus equipped with pressure-connector terminations for outgoing circuit neutral conductors. Neutral-bus extensions for busway feeders are braced.
 14. Neutral Disconnect Link: Bolted, uninsulated, 1/4-by-2-inch copper bus, arranged to connect neutral bus to ground bus.
 15. Provide for future extensions from either end of main phase, neutral, and ground bus by means of predrilled bolt-holes and connecting links.
 16. Bus-Bar Insulation: Individual bus bars or spray-applied, flame-retardant insulation.
 - a. Sprayed Insulation Thickness: 3 mils, minimum.
 - b. Bolted Bus Joints: Insulate with secure joint covers that can easily be removed and reinstalled.

2.4 COMPONENTS

- A. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.
 1. Potential Transformers: Secondary-voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
 2. Current Transformers: Ratios as indicated; burden and accuracy class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.
- B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: UL-listed or -recognized, microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:
 1. Inputs from sensors or 5-A current-transformer secondaries, and potential terminals rated to 600 V.
 2. Switch-selectable digital display of the following:
 - a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 1 percent.
 - d. Three-Phase Real Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - e. Three-Phase Reactive Power: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
 - h. Integrated Demand, with Demand Interval Selectable from 5 to 60 Minutes: Plus or minus 2 percent.
 - i. Accumulated energy, in megawatt hours (joules), plus or minus 2 percent; stored values unaffected by power outages for up to 72 hours.
 3. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.
- C. Analog Instruments: Rectangular, 4-1/2-inch square, accurate within 1 percent, semiflush mounting, with antiparallax 250-degree scale and external zero adjustment, complying with ANSI C39.1.
 1. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded scale range of normal voltage plus 10 percent.

2. Voltmeter Selector Switch: Rotary type with off position to provide readings of phase-to-phase and phase-to-neutral voltages.
 3. Ammeters: Cover an expanded scale range of bus rating plus 10 percent.
 4. Ammeter Selector Switch: Permits current reading in each phase and keeps current-transformer secondary circuits closed in off position.
 5. Locate meter and selector switch on circuit-breaker compartment door for indicated feeder circuits only.
 6. Watt-Hour Meters: Flush- or semiflush-mounting type, 5 A, 120 V, 3 phase, 3 wire; with 3 elements, 15-minute indicating demand register, and provision for testing and adding pulse initiation.
 7. Recording Demand Meter: Usable as totalizing relay or indicating and recording maximum demand meter with 15-minute interval.
 - a. Operation: Meter counts and records a succession of pulses entering two channels.
 - b. Housing: Drawout, back-connected case arranged for semiflush mounting.
- D. Relays: Comply with IEEE C37.90, types and settings as indicated; with test blocks and plugs.
- E. Surge Arresters: Distribution class, metal-oxide-varistor type. Comply with IEEE C62.11 and NEMA LA 1.
1. Install in cable termination compartments flush mounted on the front panel and connect in each phase of circuit.
 2. Coordinate rating with circuit voltage.
- F. Provision for Future Devices: Equip compartments with rails, mounting brackets, supports, necessary appurtenances, and bus connections.
- G. Control Power Supply: Control power transformer supplying 120-V control circuits through secondary disconnect devices. Include the following features:
1. Dry-type transformers, in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA, including primary and secondary fuses.
 2. Two control power transformers in separate compartments with necessary interlocking relays; each transformer connected to line side of associated main circuit breaker.
 - a. Secondary windings connected through a relay or relays to control bus to effect an automatic transfer scheme.
 - b. Secondary windings connected through an internal automatic transfer switch to switchgear control power bus.
 3. Control Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses with current-limiting and overload protection.
 4. Fuses are specified in Section 26 28 13 "Fuses."
- H. Control Wiring: Factory installed, complete with bundling, lacing, and protection; and complying with the following:
1. Flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.
 2. Conductors sized according to NFPA 70 for duty required.

2.5 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Description: Comply with IEEE C37.13.
- B. Ratings: Fully rated. As indicated for continuous, interrupting, and short-time current ratings for each circuit breaker; voltage and frequency ratings same as switchgear.
- C. Operating Mechanism: Mechanically and electrically trip-free, stored-energy operating mechanism with the following features:
 - 1. Normal Closing Speed: Independent of both control and operator.
 - 2. Slow Closing Speed: Optional with operator for inspection and adjustment.
 - 3. Stored-Energy Mechanism Electrically charged, with optional manual charging.
 - 4. Operation counter.
- D. Trip Devices: Solid-state, overcurrent trip-device system consisting of one or two current transformers or sensors per phase, a release mechanism, field replaceable and the following features:
 - 1. Functions: Field adjustable Long-time-delay, short-time-delay, and instantaneous-trip functions, independent of each other in both action and adjustment.
 - 2. Temperature Compensation: Ensures accuracy and calibration stability from minus 5 to plus 40 deg C.
 - 3. Field-adjustable, time-current characteristics.
 - 4. Current Adjustability: Dial settings and rating plugs on trip units or sensors on circuit breakers, or a combination of these methods.
 - 5. Three bands, minimum, for long-time- and short-time-delay functions; marked "minimum," "intermediate," and "maximum."
 - 6. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for long-time- and short-time-trip functions. Equip short-time-trip function for switchable I^2t operation.
 - 7. Pickup Points: Five minimum, for instantaneous-trip functions.
 - 8. Ground-fault protection with at least three short-time-delay settings and three trip-time-delay bands; adjustable current pickup. Arrange to provide protection for the following:
 - a. Three-wire circuit or system.
 - b. Four-wire circuit or system.
 - c. Four-wire, double-ended substation.
 - 9. Trip Indication: Labeled, battery-powered lights or mechanical targets on trip device to indicate type of fault.
- E. Auxiliary Contacts: For interlocking or remote indication of circuit-breaker position, with spare auxiliary switches and other auxiliary switches required for normal circuit-breaker operation, quantity as indicated. Each consists of two Type "a" and two Type "b" stages (contacts) wired through secondary disconnect devices to a terminal block in stationary housing.
- F. Drawout Features: Circuit-breaker mounting assembly equipped with a racking mechanism to position circuit breaker and hold it rigidly in connected, test, and disconnected positions. Include the following features:
 - 1. Interlocks: Prevent movement of circuit breaker to or from connected position when it is closed, and prevent closure of circuit breaker unless it is in connected, test, or disconnected position.
 - 2. Circuit-Breaker Positioning: An open circuit breaker may be racked to or from connected, test, and disconnected positions only with the associated compartment door closed unless live parts are covered by a full dead-front shield. An open circuit breaker may be manually withdrawn to a position for removal from the structure with the door open. Status for connection devices for different positions includes the following:

- a. Test Position: Primary disconnect devices disengaged, and secondary disconnect devices and ground contact engaged.
 - b. Disconnected Position: Primary and secondary devices and ground contact disengaged.
- G. Arc Chutes: Readily removable from associated circuit breaker when it is in disconnected position, and arranged to permit inspection of contacts without removing circuit breaker from switchgear.
- H. Padlocking Provisions: For installing at least three padlocks on each circuit breaker to secure its enclosure and prevent movement of drawout mechanism.
- I. Operating Handle: One for each circuit breaker capable of manual operation.
- J. Electric Close Button: One for each electrically operated circuit breaker.
- K. Mechanical Interlocking of Circuit Breakers: Uses a mechanical tripping lever or equivalent design and electrical interlocks.
- L. Key Interlocks: Arranged so keys are attached at devices indicated. Mountings and hardware are included where future installation of key-interlock devices is indicated.
- M. Undervoltage Trip Devices: Instantaneous, with adjustable pickup voltage.
- N. Undervoltage Trip Devices: Adjustable time-delay and pickup voltage.
- O. Shunt-Trip Devices: Where indicated.
- P. Fused Circuit Breakers: Circuit breaker and fuse combinations complying with requirements for circuit breakers and trip devices and with the following:
- 1. Fuses: NEMA FU 1, Class L current limiting, sized to coordinate with and protect associated circuit breaker.
 - 2. Circuit Breakers with Frame Size 1600 A and Smaller: Fuses on line side of associated circuit breaker, on a common drawout mounting, arranged so fuses are accessible only when circuit breaker is in disconnected position.
 - 3. Circuit Breakers with Frame Sizes More Than 1600 A: Fuses and circuit breakers may be installed in separate compartments on separate drawout mountings. Fuse drawout element is interlocked with associated power circuit breaker to prevent drawing out fuse element unless circuit breaker is in open position.
 - 4. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Positive means of tripping and holding circuit breaker in open position when a fuse opens. Open-fuse status is indicated at front of circuit breaker or fuse drawout element.
- Q. Indicating Lights: To indicate circuit breaker is open or closed, for main and bus tie circuit breakers interlocked either with each other or with external devices.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Accessory Set: Furnish tools and miscellaneous items required for circuit-breaker and switchgear test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

1. Racking handle to manually move circuit breaker between connected and disconnected positions.
 2. Portable test set for testing all functions of circuit-breaker, solid-state trip devices without removal from switchgear.
 3. Relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchgear meters and switchgear class relays.
 4. Remote racking device for racking out the breaker out of the switchgear from a distance of 30 feet (approx) from the switchgear.
- B. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus for Outdoor Switchgear: Portable, floor-supported, roller-base, elevating carriage arranged for moving circuit breakers in and out of compartments. The apparatus shall be located in a separate section built by the manufacturer as part of the switchgear line up.
- C. Circuit-Breaker Removal Apparatus for Indoor Switchgear: Overhead-circuit-breaker lifting device, track mounted at top front of switchgear and complete with hoist and lifting yokes matching each size of drawout circuit breaker installed.
- D. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Identified and compartmented steel box or cabinet with lockable door.
- E. Storage for Manual: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

2.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Mimic Bus: Continuous mimic bus, arranged in single-line diagram format, using symbols and lettered designations consistent with approved mimic-bus diagram.
1. Mimic-bus segments coordinated with devices in switchgear sections to which applied, to produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchgear components and connections.
 2. Medium: Painted graphics, as selected by Architect.
 3. Color: Contrasting with factory-finish background; as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads. Include as-built data for low-voltage power switchgear and connections as follows:
1. Frame size of each circuit breaker.
 2. Trip rating for each circuit breaker.
 3. Conduit and wire size for each feeder.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces where switchgear will be installed for compliance with installation tolerances, required clearances, and other conditions affecting performance.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with applicable portions of NECA 400.
- B. Anchor switchgear assembly to 4-inch, channel-iron floor sill embedded in concrete base and attach by bolting.
 - 1. Sills: Select to suit switchgear; level and grout flush into concrete base.
 - 2. Design each fastener and support to carry load indicated by seismic requirements and according to seismic-restraint details. See Section 26 05 48 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for seismic-restraint requirements.
 - 3. Concrete Bases: 4 inches high, reinforced, with chamfered edges. Extend base no more than 3 inches in all directions beyond the maximum dimensions of switchgear unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support. Construct concrete bases according to Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchgear units and components.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs as specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Diagram and Instructions:
 - 1. Frame and mount under clear acrylic plastic on the front of switchgear.
 - a. Operating Instructions: Printed basic instructions for switchgear, including control and key-interlock sequences and emergency procedures.
 - b. System Power Riser Diagrams: Depict power sources, feeders, distribution components, and major loads.
 - 2. Storage for Maintenance: Include a rack or holder, near the operating instructions, for a copy of maintenance manual.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Ground equipment according to Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- B. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each switchgear bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:

1. Inspect switchgear installation, including wiring, components, connections, and equipment.
 2. Verify that electrical control wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal by means of point-to-point continuity testing. Verify that wiring installation complies with requirements in electrical Sections.
 3. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 4. Assist in field testing of equipment including pretesting and adjusting of equipment and components.
 5. Report results in writing within two weeks of completion of inspection and start up checks.
- C. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- D. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in latest NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters. Each report shall be signed by the testing technician and reviewed by the testing supervisor. Include name of testing technician and supervisor. Perform NETA tests and inspections for each of the following NETA categories:
 - a. Switchgear.
 - b. Circuit breakers.
 - c. Protective relays.
 - d. Instrument transformers.
 - e. Metering and instrumentation.
 - f. Ground-fault systems.
 - g. Battery systems.
 - h. Surge arresters.
 - i. Capacitors.
 2. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- E. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchgear. Remove front and rear panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchgear 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switchgear checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, scan color photos and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics according to results in Section 26 05 73 "Overcurrent Protective Device Coordination Study."
- B. Set field-adjustable, protective-relay trip characteristics.

3.7 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, inspect interior and exterior of switchgear. Remove paint splatters and other spots. Vacuum dirt and debris; do not use compressed air to assist in cleaning. Repair exposed surfaces to match original finish.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to switchgear, according to manufacturer's written instructions, throughout periods when switchgear environment is not controlled for temperature and humidity within manufacturer's stipulated service conditions.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchgear.

END OF SECTION 26 23 00

SECTION 26 24 16 – PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
 - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
 - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.

5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
7. Include evidence of UL listing for SPD as installed in distribution board and panelboard.
8. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
9. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in distribution board and panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.
11. Wiring Diagrams: Submit wiring diagrams detailing power, signal, and control systems, clearly differentiating between manufacturer-installed wiring and field-installed wiring, and between components provided by the manufacturer and those provided by others.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain distribution boards and panelboards, overcurrent protective devices and accessories through one source from a single manufacturer through a local distributor unless otherwise indicated. All power distribution equipment shall be of the same manufacturer.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NEMA PB 1.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:
 - 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.
- B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:
 - 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
- C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Construction Manager and University no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Notify Construction Manager and University no fewer than 30 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service that require shut downs that last multiple days, and require shut down of buildings.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's and Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by

a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets with 2500 hour salt spray test. All panelboards shall have double hinged covers.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4
 - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Corrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
 - 2. Finishes:
 - a. All steel parts shall be cleaned and zinc-phosphate pre-treatment applied prior to paint application.
 - b. Paint color shall be ANSI-61; TGIC polyester powder, applied electrostatically through air. Following paint application, parts shall be baked to produce a hard durable finish. The average thickness of the paint film shall be 2.0 mils. Paint film shall be uniform in color and free from blisters, sags, flaking and peeling.
 - c. Adequacy of paint finish to inhibit the build up of rust on ferrous metal materials shall be tested and evaluated per paragraphs 5.2.8.1-7 of ANSI C37.20.2 Salt spray withstand tests in accordance with ASTM Test Method 1654 and #B-117 shall be performed on a periodic basis at the factory to provide conformance with the corrosion resistance standard of at least 2500 hours minimum.
- F. Incoming Mains:
 - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
 - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
 - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
 - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 - 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 - 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
 - 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.

5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
- I. Future Devices: Panelboards shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Per drawings.
- J. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Siemens Energy.
 2. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- C. Mains: as indicated on drawings.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Siemens Energy.
 2. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

- C. Mains: as indicated on drawings.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
- F. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Siemens Energy.
 - 2. Square D; by Schneider Electric.
 - 3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
- B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
 - 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 26 28 13 "Fuses."
 - 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
 - b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks
- C. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers for frame size up to 250A:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers for frame size 400A and above.
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 - 1. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault

- protection (6-mA trip). Provide in compliance with CEC requirements and indicated on drawings
2. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 3. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration. Provide in compliance with CEC requirements and indicated on drawings
 4. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
 5. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
 - g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second time delay.
 - h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
 - i. Auxiliary Contacts: Two, SPDT switches with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
 - j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
 - k. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in on or off position.
 - l. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.

2.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
 - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 26 05 48 Electrical System Vibration Isolation and Seismic Restraints.
 - 3. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 26 05 48 Electrical System Vibration Isolation and Seismic Restraints.
- E. Mount top of trim 90 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- G. Mounting panelboards with space behind is recommended for damp, wet, or dirty locations. The steel slotted supports in the following paragraph provide an even mounting surface and the recommended space behind to prevent moisture or dirt collection.
- H. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
 - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.

- I. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- J. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate University's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- D. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as

recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform University of effect on phase color coding.
 - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 - 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the University. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 - 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

SECTION 26 27 13 – ELECTRICITY METERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes equipment for [electricity metering by utility company and electricity metering by University.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. KY Pulse: Term used by the metering industry to describe a method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay opening and closing in response to the rotation of the disk in the meter.
- B. PC: Personal computer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's technical data for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For electricity-metering equipment.
 - 1. Dimensioned plans and sections or elevation layouts.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring. Identify terminals and wiring designations and color-codes to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance. Indicate recommended types, wire sizes, and circuiting arrangements for field-installed wiring, and show circuit protection features.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification for Electricity-Metering Equipment: Submit certification that equipment components and their mounting and anchorage provisions have been designed to remain in place without separation of any parts or loosening of factory-made connections when subjected to the seismic forces and shall include the following:
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
 - 2. Detailed description of equipment mounting and anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data. include the following:
 - 1. Application and operating software documentation.
 - 2. Software licenses.
 - 3. Software service agreement.
 - 4. Hard copies of manufacturer's operating specifications, design user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on CD-ROM of the hard-copy Submittal.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Owner's Meters in switchgear/switchboard/distribution board shall be installed by the manufacturer at the factory.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Receive, store, and handle modular meter center according to NECA 400.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted in writing under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify University no fewer than fourteen (14) days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without University's written permission.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 70E.
 - 4. Provide temporary standby power through a standby diesel quiet type back-up generator complete with fuel and 7/24 monitoring if the existing service interruption exceeds 2 hours. Coordinate additional requirements with owner minimum fourteen days in advance. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Electrical Service Connections: Coordinate with utility companies and components they

furnish as follows:

1. Comply with requirements of utilities providing electrical power services.
2. Coordinate installation and connection of utilities and services, including provision for electricity-metering components.

1.11 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Technical Support: Beginning with Substantial Completion, provide software support for [two] years from the date of acceptance of the project by the owner.
- B. Upgrade Service: Update software to latest version at Project completion. Install and program software upgrades that become available within [two] <Insert number> years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system. Upgrade shall include new or revised licenses for use of software at no additional cost to the owner.
 1. Provide 30 days' notice to Owner to allow scheduling and access to system and to allow Owner to upgrade his computer equipment if necessary.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT FOR ELECTRICITY METERING BY UTILITY COMPANY

- A. Meters will be furnished by utility company.
- B. Current-Transformer Cabinets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- C. Meter Sockets: Comply with requirements of electrical-power utility company.
- D. Meter Sockets: Steady-state and short-circuit current ratings shall meet indicated circuit ratings.
- E. Modular Meter Center: Factory-coordinated assembly of a main service disconnect device, wireways, tenant meter socket modules, and tenant feeder circuit breakers arranged in adjacent vertical sections. Assembly shall be complete with interconnecting buses and other features as specified below.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following.
 - a. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric
 - b. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - c. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - d. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc..
 - e. Electrotech
 2. Comply with requirements of utility company for meter center.
 3. Housing: NEMA 250, [Type 1] [Type 3R] enclosure.
 4. Minimum Short-Circuit Rating: [65,000] A symmetrical at rated voltage.

5. Main Disconnect Device: Circuit breaker, series-combination rated for use with downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
6. Main Disconnect Device: Fusible switch, series-combination rated by circuit-breaker manufacturer to protect downstream feeder and branch circuit breakers.
7. Tenant Feeder Circuit Breakers: Series-combination-rated molded-case units, rated to protect circuit breakers in downstream tenant and to house loadcenters and panelboards that have 10,000-A interrupting capacity.
 - a. Identification: Complying with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" with legend identifying tenant's address.
 - b. Physical Protection: Tamper resistant, with hasp for padlock.
8. Meter Socket: Rating coordinated with indicated tenant feeder circuit rating.
9. Surge Protection: For main disconnect device, comply with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."

2.2 EQUIPMENT FOR ELECTRICITY METERING BY OWNER

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the
 1. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric
 2. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit
 3. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution
 4. Electrotech
- B. Provide energy meter for monitoring lighting loads, power loads and mechanical equipment loads in all buildings. Metering shall also be provided for larger equipments consistent with current California energy code and title 24 requirements.
- C. General Requirements for Owner's Meters:
 1. Comply with UL 1244.
 2. Meters used for billing shall have an accuracy of [0.2] [0.5] [1.0] percent of reading, complying with requirements in ANSI C12.20.
 3. Meters shall be certified by [California Type Evaluation Program] as complying with [Title 4, California Code of Regulations, Article 2.2]
 4. Enclosure: NEMA 250, [Type 1] [Type 3R] [4X Stainless Steel] minimum, with hasp for padlocking or sealing.
 5. Meters installed outdoor shall be in NEMA 4X stainless steel enclosure. Meter in enclosure shall be factory installed and assembled with strip heaters controlled by thermostat.
 6. Identification: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 7. Memory Backup: Self-contained to maintain memory throughout power outages of 72 hours, minimum.
 8. Sensors: Current-sensing type, with current or voltage output, selected for optimum range and accuracy for meters indicated for this application.
 - a. Type: [Split] [and] [solid] core.

9. Current-Transformer Cabinet: Listed or recommended by metering equipment manufacturer for use with sensors indicated.
 10. Building Automation System (BAS) Interface: One digital KY pulse to a user-definable increment of energy measurement. Match signal to BAS input and arrange to convey the instantaneous, integrated, demand level measured by meter to provide data for processing and possible programmed demand control action by destination system.
- D. Kilowatt-hour Meter: Electronic three-phase meters, measuring electricity used.
1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
 2. Display: LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours and current kilowatt load. Retain accumulated kilowatt-hour in a nonvolatile memory, until reset.
 3. Display: Digital electromechanical counter, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours.
- E. Kilowatt-hour/Demand Meter: Electronic [single] [three] [single- and three]-phase meters, measuring electricity use and demand. Demand shall be integrated over a [15-minute] <Insert value> interval.
1. Voltage and Phase Configuration: Meter shall be designed for use on circuits with voltage rating and phase configuration indicated for its application.
 2. Display: LCD with characters not less than 0.25 inch (6 mm) high, indicating accumulative kilowatt-hours, [current time and date,]current demand,[and] historic peak demand[, and time and date of historic peak demand]. Retain accumulated kilowatt-hour and historic peak demand in a nonvolatile memory, until reset.
- F. Data Transmission Cable: Transmit KY pulse data over Class 1 control-circuit conductors in raceway. Comply with Section 26 05 23 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."
- G. Software: PC based, a product of meter manufacturer, suitable for calculation of utility cost allocation and billing.
1. Utility Cost Allocation: Automatically import energy-usage records to allocate energy costs
 2. Tenant or Activity Billing Software: Automatically import energy-usage records to automatically compute and prepare [tenant bills] [activity demand and energy-use statements] based on metering of energy use[and peak demand]. Maintain separate directory for each tenant's historical billing information. Prepare summary reports in user- defined formats and time intervals.
 3. Accessories:
 - a. Fuses: Provide fuses to protect meters.
 - b. Shunting Devices: Provide shunting devices for maintenance of meters.
- H. Accessories:
1. Fuses: Provide fuses to protect meters.
 2. Shunting Devices: Provide shunting devices for maintenance of meters.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with equipment installation requirements in NECA 1.
- B. Install meters furnished by utility company. Install raceways and equipment according to utility company's written requirements. Provide empty conduits for metering leads and extend grounding connections as required by utility company.
- C. Install modular meter center according to NECA 400 switchboard installation requirements.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Series Combination Warning Label: Self-adhesive type, with text as required by NFPA 70.
 - 2. Equipment Identification Labels: Adhesive film labels with clear protective overlay. For residential meters, provide an additional card holder suitable for printed, weather-resistant card with occupant's name.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Connect a load of known kilowatt rating, 1.5 kW minimum, to a circuit supplied by metered feeder.
 - 2. Turn off circuits supplied by metered feeder and secure them in off condition.
 - 3. Run test load continuously for eight hours minimum, or longer, to obtain a measurable meter indication. Use test-load placement and setting that ensures continuous, safe operation.
 - 4. Check and record meter reading at end of test period and compare with actual electricity used, based on test-load rating, duration of test, and sample measurements of supply voltage at test-load connection. Record test results. This shall be done in the presence of Owner's Meter Shop Personnel. Coordinate through Owner's Representative.
- C. Electricity metering will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 27 13

SECTION 26 27 26 – WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
 - 2. Weather-resistant receptacles.
 - 3. Snap switches
 - 4. Wall-switch
 - 5. Wall Plates.
 - 6. Finishes
 - 7. Indoor ceiling mounted occ. Sensor
 - 8. Wall Box mounted occ. Sensor

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination:
 - 1. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices, Inc.; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - 3. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.3 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper Wiring Devices, Inc.; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

- d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description:

- 1. Straight blade, feed-through type.
- 2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
- 3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cooper Wiring Devices, Inc.; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
 - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
 - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour).

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

- 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Single Pole:
 - 1) Cooper; AH1221.
 - 2) Hubbell; 1221.
 - 3) Leviton; 1221-2.
 - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC1.
 - b. Three Way:
 - 1) Cooper; AH1223.
 - 2) Hubbell; HBL1223
 - 3) Leviton; 1223-2.
 - 4) Pass & Seymour; CSB20AC3.

2.6 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

- 1. All plates shall be of stainless steel construction.

2. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 3. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished, Type 302 stainless steel.
 4. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
 5. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.7 FINISHES

- A. Device Color:
1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Stainless Steel unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.

2.8 INDOOR CEILING MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide nLight Control System Acuity brand
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy sensors with a separate power pack.
1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
 2. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
 3. Sensor Output: Contacts rated to operate the connected relay, complying with UL 773A. Sensor is powered from the power pack.
 4. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A ballast load at 120- and 277-V ac, for 13-A tungsten at 120-V ac, and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
 5. Mounting:
 - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
 - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
 - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
 6. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
 7. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
 8. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc; turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that

control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in., and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s.
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. when mounted on a 96-inch- high ceiling.

2.9 SWITCHBOX MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Light Control System Acuity brand
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox.
 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application, and shall comply with California Title 24.
 2. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F.
 3. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA fluorescent at 120 V, 1200-VA fluorescent at 277 V, and 800-W incandescent.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor:
 1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft.
 2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
 3. Switch Type: SP, manual "on," automatic "off."
 4. Voltage: Match the circuit voltage
 5. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc. The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
 6. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
 7. Concealed "off" time-delay selector at 30 seconds, and 5, 10, and 20 minutes.
 8. Adaptive Technology: Self-adjusting circuitry detects and memorizes usage patterns of the space and helps eliminate false "off" switching.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device

boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.

2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
10. All receptacles and switches installed in restroom shall be installed in an easily accessible space. Each device location in restroom shall be coordinated with College facility prior to setting up of boxes.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle, switch and power devices with panelboard identification, circuit number and room number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Identify each sensor and switch with panelboard identification, circuit number, room number and lighting controller name and location of lighting controller. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
 - 2. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
 - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- C. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

SECTION 26 28 13 – FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in [control circuits] [enclosed switches] [panelboards] [switchboards] [enclosed controllers] [and] [motor-control centers].
 2. Plug fuses rated 125-V ac and less for use in plug-fuse-type [enclosed switches] [fuseholders] [and] [panelboards].
 3. Plug-fuse adapters for use in Edison-base, plug-fuse sockets.
 4. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.[Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.]
 5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.
 6. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. include the following:
1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
 2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse.[Submit on translucent log-log graph paper.]
 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Fuses: Equal to [10] percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than [two] of each size and type.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than [40 deg F (5 deg C)] or more than [100 deg F (38 deg C)].

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
 2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
 3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
 4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

2.3 PLUG FUSES

- A. Characteristics: UL 248-11, nonrenewable plug fuses; 125-V ac.

2.4 PLUG-FUSE ADAPTERS

- A. Characteristics: Adapters for using Type S, rejection-base plug fuses in Edison-base fuseholders or sockets; ampere ratings matching fuse ratings; irremovable once installed.

2.5 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key- coded cam lock and pull.
 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: [Class L, fast acting] [Class L, time delay] [Class RK1, fast acting] [Class RK1, time delay] [Class J, fast acting] [Class J, time delay] [Class T, fast acting].
 - 2. Feeders: [Class L, fast acting] [Class L, time delay] [Class RK1, fast acting] [Class RK1, time delay] [Class RK5, fast acting] [Class RK5, time delay] [Class J, fast acting] [Class J, time delay].
 - 3. Motor Branch Circuits: [Class RK1] [Class RK5], time delay.
 - 4. Other Branch Circuits: [Class RK1, time delay] [Class RK5, time delay] [Class J, fast acting] [Class J, time delay].
 - 5. Control Circuits: Class CC, [fast acting] [time delay].
- B. Plug Fuses:
 - 1. Motor Branch Circuits: [Edison-base type, dual] [Edison-base type, single] [Type S, dual] [Type S, single]-element time delay.
 - 2. Other Branch Circuits: [Edison-base type, single-element fast acting] [Edison-base type, dual-element time delay] [Edison-base type, single-element time delay] [Type S, dual- element time delay] [Type S, single-element time delay].

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install plug-fuse adapters in Edison-base fuse holders and sockets. Ensure that adapters are irremovable once installed.
- C. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s).

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13

SECTION 26 43 13 – SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes field-mounted SPDs for low-voltage (120 to 600 V) power distribution and control equipment.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 26 24 13 "Switchboards" for factory-installed SPDs.
 - 2. Section 26 24 16 "Panelboards" for factory-installed SPDs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. I nominal: Nominal discharge current.
- B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.
- C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: The pair of electrical connections where the VPR applies.
- D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.
- E. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.
- F. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
 - 2. Product Certificates: For transient voltage surge suppression devices, signed by the

product manufacturer certifying compliance with the following standards UL 1449 and UL 1283.

3. Copy of UL Category Code VZCA certification, as a minimum, listing the tested values for VPRs, I nominal ratings, MCOVs, type designations, OCPD requirements, model numbers, system voltages, and modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports. Include the following:
 1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with the requirements.
 3. Failed test results and corrective action taken to achieve the requirements.
- B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include emergency, operation and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. American made products have been acceptable to the Owner. If non-domestic products are submitted, notice is hereby given that extensive testing shall be required to insure quality and conformance to the Specifications. Testing shall be done by a recognized lab acceptable to the Owner and all tests shall be witnessed by Owner's personnel. Testing procedures and test results shall be satisfactory to the College. Contractor shall be responsible for arranging the tests, for transportation, food and lodging for minimum of one Owner's representative to witness the test at the testing lab. Include all costs for the above in the bid.
- B. Contractor shall ensure that the manufacturer has a minimum of 15 years' experience in the production of Surge Protective Devices (SPDs) similar to the type and size specified in this project.
- C. Manufacturer shall have ISO 9001 Certification.
- D. Manufacturer shall have ability to readily provide replacement parts for a minimum period of ten

(10) years, from the date of completion of the project. Furnish a letter from the manufacturer confirming the availability.
- E. Surge Protective Devices (SPDs) shall be assembled at the manufacturer's own manufacturing facility using its own major components (e.g., trip units) for the assembly. These devices shall be normally carried by the manufacturer as standard catalog items.
- F. Provide certified test reports of shake table test done by manufacturer on similar units.

- G. Materials and equipment shall be new, modern in design and shall not have been in prior service except as required by factory tests. Controllers shall be manufactured within six months of installation.
- H. Source Limitations: Obtain Surge Protective Devices (SPDs), overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, through one source from a single manufacturer through a local distributor unless otherwise noted. Comply with NFPA 70.
- I. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.
- J. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of Surge Protective Devices (SPDs) are based on the specific system indicated.
- K. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100 and marked for intended location and application.
- L. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member of NETA;
 - 1. Testing agency shall be an independent company; shall have been a member of NETA for a minimum of last ten (10) years and has permanent in-house testing engineers and technicians involved with testing of Surge Protective Devices, OCPDs, switches and breakers similar to those specified on this project.
 - 2. Testing company shall be located within 50 miles radius of the project.
 - 3. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.
 - 4. Field Testing technician and supervisor shall have minimum ten (10) years' experience in field testing of Surge Protective Devices (SPDs), OCPDs, switches and circuit breakers similar to the type and rating specified on this project.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to replace or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following manufacturers:
 - 1. Schneider Electric Industries SAS
 - 2. Advanced Protection Technologies Inc. (APT).
 - 3. Eaton Corporation.
 - 4. GE Zenith Controls.
 - 5. LEA International; Protection Technology Group.
 - 6. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.

7. PowerLogics, Inc..
8. Siemens Industry, Inc.

2.2 GENERAL SPD REQUIREMENTS

- A. SPD with Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with UL 1449 and 1283
- D. Comply with ANSI/IEEE C62.41-2002 and C62.5-2002
- E. MCOV of the SPD shall be at least 125 percent of the nominal system voltage.

2.3 PANEL SUPPRESSORS

- A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, Type 1, Type 2.
 1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
 2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
 3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.
- B. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than 100 kA. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
- C. Comply with UL 1283.
- D. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V and 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 1. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V and 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
 4. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V and 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.
- E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:
 1. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
 2. Line to Ground: 700 V.
 3. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
 4. Line to Line: 1200 V.

- F. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.
- G. I nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 4X. Outdoor enclosure shall have temper proof screws and be lockable with a padlock.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Class 2 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG, complying with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cables: Multiconductor cable with copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG, complying with Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install an OCPD or disconnect as required to comply with the UL listing of the SPD.
- C. Install SPDs with conductors between suppressor and points of attachment as short and straight as possible, and adjust circuit-breaker positions to achieve shortest and straightest leads. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length. Do not bond neutral and ground.
- D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.
- E. Wiring:
 - 1. Power Wiring: Comply with wiring methods in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
 - 2. Controls: Comply with wiring methods in Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and Specifications.
 2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.
- B. An SPD will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Complete startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests, and reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.
- C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 26 43 13

SECTION 26 51 00 – INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, ballasts, and drivers.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.
4. Lighting fixture supports.
5. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 26 09 23 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI/NFPA 70, National Electrical Code
- B. IESNA LM-79, Electrical and Photometric Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products
- C. IESNA LM-80, Approved Method for Measuring Lumen Maintenance of LED Light Sources
- D. IESNA TM-21, Luminaire Classification System for Indoor Luminaires
- E. UL1598, Standard for Safety of Luminaires

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show details of nonstandard or custom lighting fixtures. Indicate dimensions, weights, methods of field assembly, components, features, and accessories. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, from manufacturer.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Luminaires shall be fully assembled and individually electrically tested prior to shipment.
- D. Manufacturers of LED luminaires shall demonstrate a suitable testing program to ensure system reliability and to substantiate lifetime claims.
- E. The sole use of IESNA LM-80 data to predict luminaire lifetime is not acceptable.
- F. At time of manufacture, electrical and light technical properties shall be recorded for each luminaire. At a minimum, this should include lumen output, CCT, and CRI. Each luminaire shall utilize a unique serial numbering scheme. Technical properties must be made available for a minimum of 5 years after the date of manufacture.
- G. Luminaires shall be provided with a minimum 5 year warranty covering, LEDs, drivers and paint finish.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, product(s) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Minimum Color temperature for LED fixtures: 4000-4200K.
- D. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- E. Sheet Metal Components: Steel unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- F. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- G. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - a. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. UV stabilized.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 DRIVERS FOR LED FIXTURES

- A. Electronic Driver for LED Fixtures: Comply with UL 1310 Class 2 requirements for dry and damp locations. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Rated for 50,000 hours of life, unless otherwise noted.
 2. Sound Rating: Class A.
 3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: 15 percent or less.
 4. Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
 5. 0-10V Dimming Standard (Step Dimming does not qualify)

2.4 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
 1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
 2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
 - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

2.5 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.

1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15minutes when power is restored after an outage.

2.6 LED FIXTURES

- A. Interior Recessed Lights: Lithonia 2VTL4.- Sole Source
- B. Except as otherwise indicated, provide LED luminaires, of types and sizes indicated on fixture schedules.
- C. Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Each Luminaire shall consist of an assembly that utilizes LEDs as the light source. In addition, a complete luminaire shall consist of a housing, LED array, and electronic driver (power supply).
 2. Each luminaire shall be rated for a minimum operational life of 50,000 hours utilizing a minimum ambient temperature of (25°C).
 3. Light Emitting Diodes tested under LM-80 Standards for a minimum of 12,000 hours.
 4. Color Rendering Index (CRI) of 82 at a minimum.
 5. Color temperature 4000K, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Rated lumen maintenance at 70% lumen output for 50,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Fixture efficacy of 60 Lumens/Watt, minimum.
 8. 5 year luminaire warranty, minimum.
 9. Photometry must comply with IESNA LM-79.
 10. The individual LEDs shall be constructed such that a catastrophic loss of the failure of one LED will not result in the loss of the entire luminaire.
 11. Luminaire shall be constructed such that LED modules may be replaced or repaired without the replacement of the whole fixture.
- D. Technical Requirements
 1. Luminaire shall have a minimum efficacy of 60 lumens per watt. The luminaire shall not consume power in the off state.
 2. Operation Voltage: The luminaire shall operate from a 50 HZ to 60 HZ AC line over a voltage ranging from 120 VAC to 277 VAC. The fluctuations of line voltage shall have no visible effect on the luminous output.
 3. Power Factor: The luminaire shall have a power factor of 0.9 or greater.

4. THD: Total harmonic distortion (current and voltage) induced into an AC power line by a luminaire shall not exceed 15 percent.
5. Operational Performance: The LED circuitry shall prevent visible flicker to the unaided eye over the voltage range specified above.

E. Thermal Management

1. The thermal management (of the heat generated by the LEDs) shall be of sufficient capacity to assure proper operation of the luminaire over the expected useful life.
2. The LED manufacturer's maximum thermal pad temperature for the expected life shall not be exceeded.
3. Thermal management shall be passive by design. The use of fans or other mechanical devices shall not be allowed.
4. The luminaire shall have a minimum heat sink surface such that LED manufacturer's maximum junction temperature is not exceeded at maximum rated ambient temperature.

2.7 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70 for minimum fixture supports.
- C. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
 3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.

- D. Connect wiring according to Section 26 05 19 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF SECTION 26 51 00

SECTION 26 52 13 – EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting.
2. Exit signs.
3. Materials.
4. Luminaire support components.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 00 10 "Supplemental Requirements for Electrical" for additional abbreviations, definitions, submittals, qualifications, testing agencies, and other Project requirements applicable to Work specified in this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
 - a. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - b. Include physical description of unit and dimensions.
 - c. Battery and charger for light units.
 - d. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - e. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests by, or under supervision of, qualified luminaire photometric testing laboratory, for each luminaire type.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
 - a. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
 - b. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - c. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule:

1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations must be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer Extended Warranty for Emergency and Exit Lighting: Installer warrants that fabricated and installed emergency luminaires and exit signs, including batteries, perform in accordance with specified requirements and agrees to repair or replace components and assemblies that fail to perform as specified within extended warranty period.
 1. Extended Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion; full coverage for labor, materials, and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70 and UL 924, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 101.
- C. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

2.2 EXIT SIGNS

- A. General Characteristics: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Sign:
 1. Options:
 - a. Operating at nominal voltage per luminaire schedule on drawings.
 - b. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.

- c. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
- C. Self-Luminous Sign:
 - 1. Options:
 - a. Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs must be guaranteed by manufacturer to maintain minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for 10 years.
 - b. Use strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release stored energy when light is removed. Include universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

2.3 METAL FINISHES

- A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.4 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 0.106 inch (2.69 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- C. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices must be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- D. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Attached to structural members in walls.
 - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- E. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inch (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
 - 3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
 - 4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.
- F. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:
 - 1. Secure to outlet box, if provided.
 - 2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
 - 3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Nonconforming Work:

1. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.
2. Remove and replace defective units and retest.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace luminaires and exit signs that are damaged or caused to be unfit for use by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 26 52 13

SECTION 26 56 00 – EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior luminaires with lamps and ballasts.
 - 2. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.
 - 3. Poles and accessories.
 - 4. Luminaire lowering devices.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 265100 "Interior Lighting" for exterior luminaires normally mounted on exterior surfaces of buildings.
 - 2. Section 260519 "Low Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables".

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AASHTO: American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
- B. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- C. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. IESNA: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America
- F. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- H. Pole: Luminaire support structure, including tower used for large area illumination.
- I. Standard: Same definition as "Pole" above.

1.4 STRUCTURAL ANALYSIS CRITERIA FOR POLE SELECTION

- A. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- B. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2224 N), distributed as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
- C. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa) applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M Ice Load Map.
- D. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire and banners and banner arms, calculated and applied as stated in AASHTO LTS-4-M.
 - 1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 49.2 feet (15 m) in height is [100 mph (45 m/s)] [90 mph (40 m/s)]
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: [1.0] .
 - b. Minimum Design Life: [50 years]
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: [1.0].
 - 2. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is [100 mph (45 m/s)] [90 mph (40 m/s)] <Insert value from AASHTO LTS-4-M for this Project>.
 - a. Wind Importance Factor: [1.0]
 - b. Minimum Design Life: [25 years]
 - c. Velocity Conversion Factors: [1.0].

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each luminaire, pole, and support component, arranged in order of lighting unit designation indicated on Contract Documents. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's dimensioned scale drawings showing in complete detail the fabrication of all lighting fixtures including overall dimensions, finishes, metal thickness, glass thickness, type, fabrication methods, support method, ballasts, transformers, sockets, type of shielding, reflectors, trims, hinges, gaskets, provisions for relamping and all other information to show compliance with contract documents.
 - 2. Physical description of luminaire, including materials, dimensions, effective projected area, and verification of indicated parameters.
 - 3. Details of attaching luminaires and accessories.
 - 4. Details of installation and construction.
 - 5. Luminaire materials.
 - 6. Photometric data based on laboratory tests of each luminaire type, complete with indicated lamps, ballasts, and accessories. Photometric data shall be developed according to methods of IESNA.
 - a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
 - b. Manufacturer Certified Data: Photometric data shall be certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory

Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

7. Photoelectric relays.
 8. Ballasts, including energy-efficiency data.
 9. Lamps, including life, output, CCT, CRI, lumens, and energy-efficiency data.
 10. Materials, dimensions, and finishes of poles.
 11. Means of attaching luminaires to supports, and indication that attachment is suitable for components involved.
 12. Anchor bolts for poles.
 13. Manufactured pole foundations.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Anchor-bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
 3. Design calculations, certified by a qualified professional engineer, indicating strength of screw foundations and soil conditions on which they are based.
 4. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
 5. For outdoor pathway, parking and roadway luminaires submit photometric calculations with point by point summary layout plan. isocandela charts, coefficients of utilization and IES roadway distribution classification.
 6. Maintenance and operating instructions including tools required, types of cleaners to be used, replacement parts and final as-built shop drawings and name of the project, Architect and Lighting Consultant.
- C. Samples: For products designated for sample submission in the Exterior Lighting Device Schedule. Each Sample shall include lamps and ballasts.
- D. Fixtures under the contract shall be identical with the approved sample fixture. No fixture used as a sample shall be allowed to be installed on the project.
- E. In the event the submission are disapproved, the fixtures shall be returned to the contractor to immediately make a new submission of the fixture in compliance with the contract documents at no additional cost to the owner.
- F. All charges for these shipments shall be prepaid by the contractor.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements in AASHTO LTS-4-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations by a professional engineer.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For [luminaires][and poles] [luminaire lowering devices] to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps: [One for every 100] of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least two (2) of each type.
 2. Glass and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: [One for every 100] f each type and rating installed. Furnish at least two (2) of each type.
 3. Ballasts: [One for every 100] of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least two (2) of each type.
 4. Globes and Guards: [One for every 20] > of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least two (2) ~~one~~ of each type.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Materials and appurtenances as well as workmanship provided under this section shall conform to highest commercial standards, and as specified and as indicated on drawings. Fixture parts and components not specifically identified or indicates shall be made of materials most appropriate to their use or function and as such resistant to corrosion and thermal and mechanical stresses encountered in the normal application and function of the fixtures.
- B. All fixtures shall be manufactured to a consistent level of quality. Size, color and component shall be identical for all fixtures of same types.
- C. All fixtures and components shall be made in accordance with applicable codes and standards such as NEC, CEC and bear the label of independent laboratories such as Underwriters Laboratories (UL) or Factory Mutual (FM).
- D. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- E. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: UL Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- G. Comply with IEEE C2, "National Electrical Safety Code."

- H. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B 660.
- B. Store poles on decay-resistant-treated skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.
- C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below ground line.
- D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.
- E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. For poles with nonmetallic finishes, handle with web fabric straps.

1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs or alterations from special warranty coverage.
 - 1. Warranty Period for Luminaires: [Five] years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Warranty Period for Metal Corrosion: [Five] years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: [Five] years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 4. Warranty Period for Poles: Repair or replace lighting poles and standards that fail in finish, materials, and workmanship within manufacturer's standard warranty period, but not less than [five] years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product indicated on Drawings and/or specifications.

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Luminaires for external pole light application: Quadro H2 LED by Selux Corp.
- B. Luminaires for external pole light for street and roadway Illumination: Cree LEDWAY series: STR-LWY.

- C. Luminaires for external wall pack application: Impact Elite LED Cylinder ISC by McGraw Edison.
- D. Minimum Color temperature for LED fixtures: 4000-4200K.
- E. Luminaires shall comply with UL 1598 and be UL listed and labeled for installation in wet locations.
- F. Lateral Light Distribution Patterns: Comply with IESNA RP-8 for parameters of lateral light distribution patterns indicated for luminaires.
- G. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- H. Sheet Metal Components: Corrosion-resistant aluminum unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- I. Housings: Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosures that will not warp, sag, or deform in use. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- J. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses. Designed to disconnect ballast when door opens.
- K. Exposed Hardware Material: Stainless steel.
- L. Plastic Parts: High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
- M. Light Shields: Metal baffles, factory installed and field adjustable, arranged to block light distribution to indicated portion of normally illuminated area or field.
- N. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- O. Lenses and Refractors Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- P. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- Q. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning," to

- remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.
 - a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
 - b. Color: Match Architect's sample of [manufacturer's standard] [custom] color.
 - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- R. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: [Light bronze] [Medium bronze] [Dark bronze] [Black].
- S. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps and ballasts. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
1. Label shall include the following lamp and ballast characteristics:
 - a. "USES ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter code (T-4, T-5, T-8, T-12), tube configuration (twin, quad, triple), base type, and nominal wattage for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - c. Lamp type, wattage, bulb type (ED17, BD56, etc.) and coating (clear or coated) for HID luminaires.
 - d. Start type (preheat, rapid start, instant start) for fluorescent and compact fluorescent luminaires.
 - e. ANSI ballast type (M98, M57, etc.) for HID luminaires.
 - f. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

- A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

- B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay.[Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.]
 - 1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
 - 2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLES AND SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-4-M.
 - 1. Wind-Load Strength of Poles: Adequate at indicated heights above grade without failure, permanent deflection, or whipping in steady winds of speed indicated in "Structural Analysis Criteria for Pole Selection" Article.
 - 2. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual equivalent projected area of luminaires and brackets by a factor of [1.1] <Insert number> to obtain the equivalent projected area to be used in pole selection strength analysis.
- B. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Mountings, Fasteners, and Appurtenances: Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.
 - 1. Materials: Shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
 - 2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Anchor-Bolt Template: Plywood or steel.
- D. Handhole: Oval-shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with gasketed cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws
- E. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- F. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.
- G. Breakaway Supports: Frangible breakaway supports, tested by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, according to AASHTO LTS-4-M.

2.5 STEEL POLES

- A. Not permitted.

2.6 ALUMINUM POLES

- A. Luminaires for external pole light application: Quadro H2 LED by Selux Corp
- B. Luminaires for external pole light for street and roadway Illumination: Cree LEDWAY series: STR-LWY.
- C. Poles: Seamless, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B 429/B 429M, Alloy 6063-T6 with access handhole in pole wall.
- D. Poles: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), 5052-H34 marine sheet alloy with access handhole in pole wall.
 - 1. Shape: [Round, tapered] [Round, straight] [Square, tapered] [Square, straight].
 - 2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
- E. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaire or luminaires and brackets indicated, and securely fastened to pole top.
- F. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.
- G. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, with pole and adapter fittings of cast aluminum. Adapter fitting welded to pole and bracket, then bolted together with stainless-steel bolts.
 - 1. Tapered oval cross section, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire.
 - 2. Finish: Same as [pole] [luminaire].
- H. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
- I. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: medium satin; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - a. Color: [Light bronze] [Medium bronze] [Dark bronze] [Black] [As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range].

2.7 POLE ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex Receptacle: 120 V, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly complying with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for ground-fault circuit-interrupter type.
 - 1. [Recessed], 36 inches above finished grade.
 - 2. Nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, weatherproof in use, cover, that when mounted results in NEMA 250, [Type 3R] [Type 4X] enclosure.
 - 3. With cord opening.
 - 4. With lockable hasp and latch that complies with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.
- B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.
- C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts. Finish same as pole.
- D. Transformer Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and accept [ballast(s)] [indicated accessories].
- E. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:
 - 1. Banner Arms:
 - 2. Flag Holders:
 - 3. Ladder Rests:

2.8 LOWERING SYSTEM FOR LUMINAIRES

- A. Arrange system to lower luminaire[assembly] to a servicing position within 36 inches (900 mm) of finished grade in winds up to 30 mph (49 km/h) and to provide for manual plug connection to electrical power in the lowered position for testing.
- B. Coordinate with luminaire and pole manufacturers for assembly details, wind-load and vibration analysis, and compatibility of materials for electrolysis-free attachment and connection for luminaire mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch.
- C. Structural and Mechanical Design: Use a minimum safety factor of 5.0 for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.
- D. Luminaire Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple [ring] [carriage]-mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.
 - 1. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires manually disconnects inside pole base, using weatherproof multipin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.
 - 2. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires automatically disconnects at a weatherproof multipin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnects when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.
- E. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing and multiple mechanical latches.

Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to the servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal, or by other means acceptable to Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

- F. Lowering Cable: [Zinc-electroplated-] [or] [stainless-]steel aircraft cable.
- G. Portable Winch: [Manual] [120-V electric] type. [One] required.
 - 1. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
 - 2. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with [15 feet (5 m)] of cable.
- H. Winch Transformer: Portable, totally enclosed, encapsulated, single-phase, dry type. Primary rated at lighting-circuit voltage; secondary rated at 120 V. Permanent, primary and secondary, twist-locking plug connectors on pigtails shall match pole-base power outlet and winch plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- B. Fasten luminaire to indicated structural supports.
 - 1. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming

3.2 POLE INSTALLATION

- A. Alignment: Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on the pole.
- B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on Drawings:
 - 1. Fire Hydrants and Storm Drainage Piping: [60 inches (1520 mm)] .
 - 2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communication, and Sewer Lines: [10 feet (3 m)]
 - 3. Trees: [15 feet (5 m)] from tree trunk.
- C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts, and tighten top nuts to torque level recommended by pole manufacturer.
 - 1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and

- approved by manufacturer.
 - 2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
 - 3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
 - 4. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
- E. Embedded Poles with Tamped Earth Backfill: Set poles to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
- 1. Dig holes large enough to permit use of tampers in the full depth of hole.
 - 2. Backfill in 6-inch (150-mm) layers and thoroughly tamp each layer so compaction of backfill is equal to or greater than that of undisturbed earth.
- F. Embedded Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than one-sixth of pole height.
- 1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
 - 2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days, and finish in a dome above finished grade.
 - 3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through concrete dome. Arrange to drain condensation from interior of pole.
 - 4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.
- G. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete Paved Areas: Install poles with minimum of 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with [pea gravel] <Insert material> to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.
- H. Raise and set poles using web fabric slings (not chain or cable).

3.3 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.
- B. Install on concrete base with top [4 inches (100 mm)] above finished grade or surface at bollard location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTING LUMINAIRES

- A. Install on concrete base with top [4 inches (100 mm)] above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground metal poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.
- B. Ground nonmetallic poles and support structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
 - 2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
 - 3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundations.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed fixture for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- B. Illumination Observations: Verify normal operation of lighting units after installing luminaires and energizing circuits with normal power source.
 - 1. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Illumination Tests:
 - 1. Measure light intensities at night. Tests shall be witnessed by Architect and/or Owner's representative. Provide two (2) weeks advance notice. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IESNA testing guide(s):
 - a. IESNA LM-5, "Photometric Measurements of Area and Sports Lighting Installations."
 - b. IESNA LM-50, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Lighting Installations."
 - c. IESNA LM-52, "Photometric Measurements of Roadway Sign Installations."
 - d. IESNA LM-64, "Photometric Measurements of Parking Areas."
 - e. IESNA LM-72, "Directional Positioning of Photometric Data."
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. [Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train] Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaire lowering devices.

END OF SECTION 26 56 00